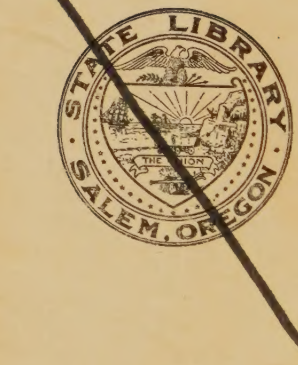
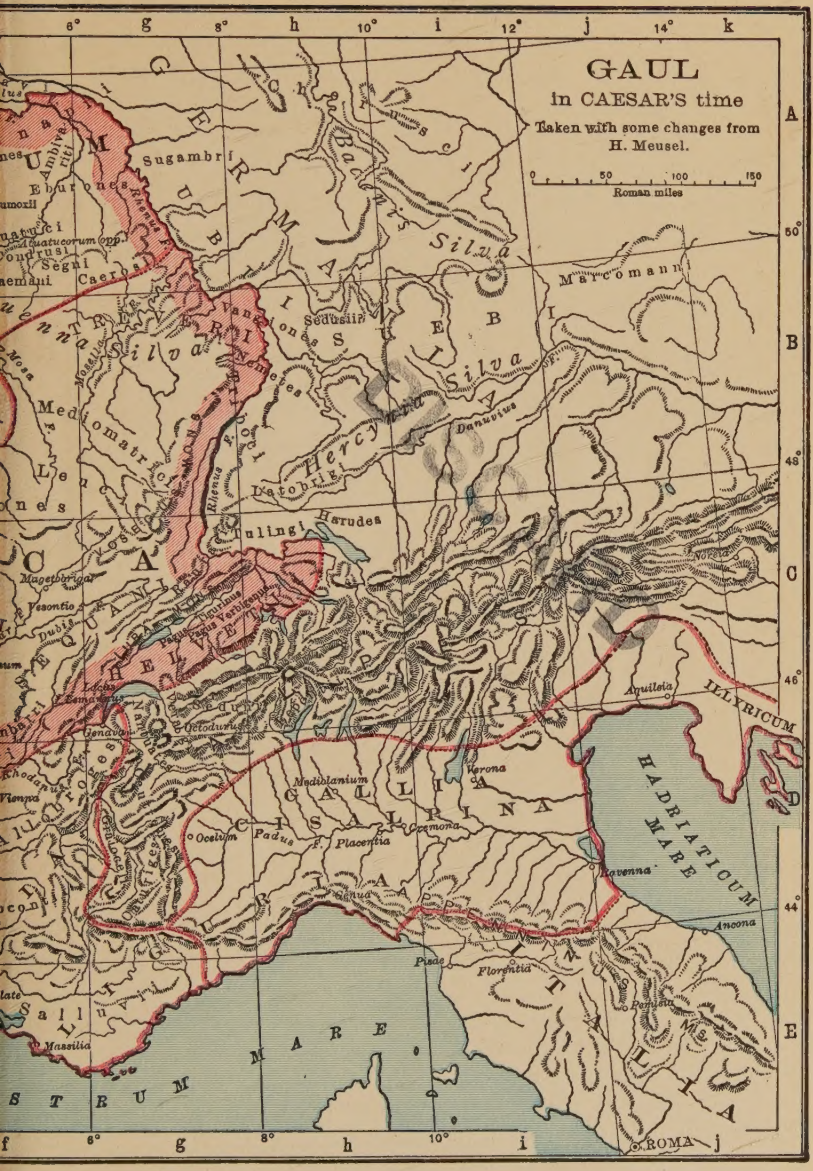
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

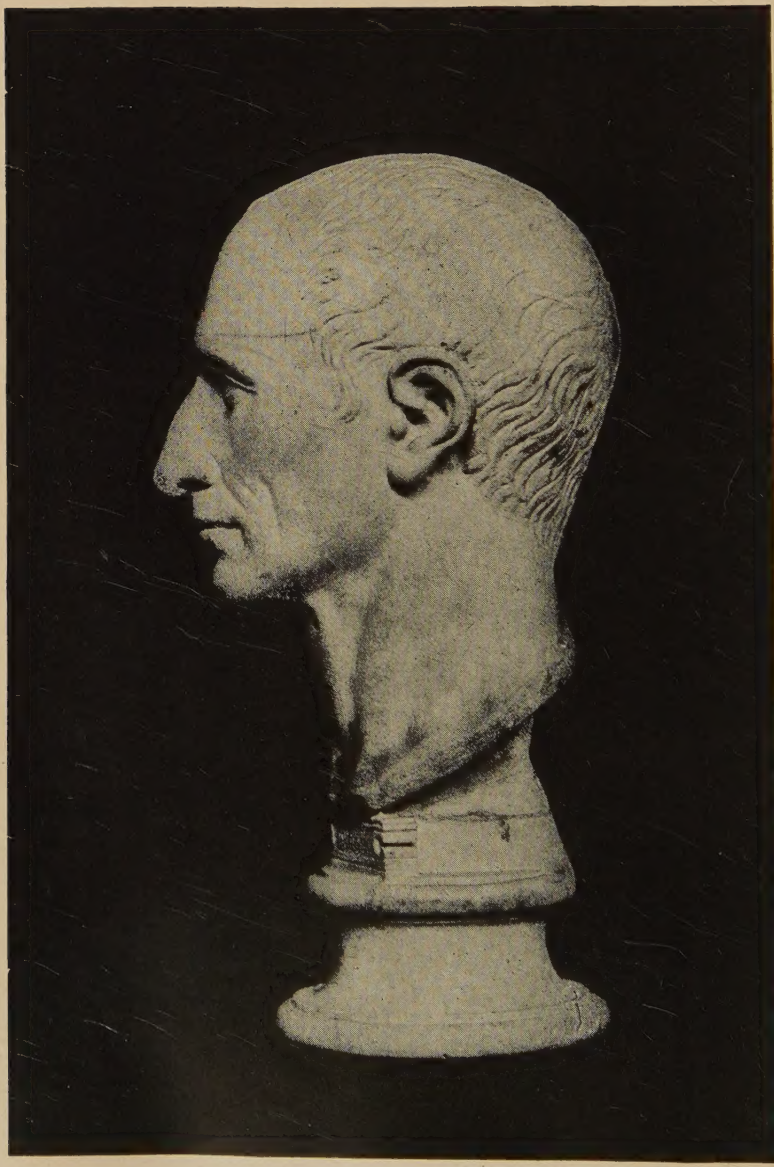
REVISED

WALKER


STATE LIBRARY
SALEM, OREGON

Greenwich
Cassi?
Cenimagni
Ancalites?
Segontiaci?
Bibroci?
Cantium
Portus Itius
Morini
Atrebates
Caleti
Samarobriva
Bellovaci
Durocor
Lutecia
Venelli
Aulerci Eburovices
Ambibari
Diablintes
Aul. Cenomani
Redones
Carnutes
Namnetes
Liger F.
Pictones
Lemonum
Avaricum
Gergobina
Boii
Ambrarenses
Salnantes
Petrocorii
Uxellodunum
Cocosates
Vocates
Nitiobroges
Eleutheti
Galatæ
Sotiates
Ausci
Elusates
Tarusates
Cantabri
Vascones
Iberus
Tarraco
Iberi
Cerretani
Silbanes
Bergistani
Lacetani
Garumna F.
Tolosa
Narbo
Carcaso
Tectosages
Volcæ
Arecomici
Helvii
Cenabum
Vellaunodunum
Agedincum
Segusia
Matrona
Parisii
Meldi
Senones
Lingones
Sequani
Helvetii
Rhodanus F.
Arar F.
Allobroges
Vienna
Cabellio
Aquæ Sextiæ
Massilia
Ligures
Alpes
Pyrenæi Montes
Oceanus Britannicus
Oceanus Gallicus
Mare Mediterraneum
Hispania
Gallia
Britannia
Celtæ
Aquitania
Belgica
Narbonensis
Gallia Togata


GAUL
in CAESAR'S time
Taken with some changes from H. Meusel.
0 50 100 150
Roman miles
GERMANIA
Hercynia Silva
Silva Marciana
Silva Bacenis
Marcomani
Sedusii
Suebi
Danuvius
Rhenus
Helvetii
Sequani
Mediomatrici
Treveri
Ubii
Sugambri
Catalauni
Remi
Belgae
Hirudes
Aquileia
ILLYRICUM
HADRIATICUM MARE
Verona
Mediolanium
GALLIA CISALPINA
Cremona
Ocelum
Padus
Placentia
Genua
Ravenna
Ancona
Pisae
Florentia
ITALIA
Massilia
MARE
ROMA
A
B
C
D
E
f
g
h
i
j
6°
8°
10°
12°
14°
48°
46°
44°
50°



GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
From a bust in the British Museum

Caesar's Gallic War

BOOKS I—IV

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES,
VOCABULARY, AND
GRAMMATICAL
APPENDIX

BY
ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER
The University of Kansas

Revised Edition

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO ATLANTA NEW YORK
1926

WITHDRAWN
Pierce Library
Eastern Oregon University
From EOU Library
1 Avenue
La Grande, OR 97850

COPYRIGHT, 1926,
BY
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
267.1

Grateful acknowledgment is made to the many sources from which the illustrations in this book have been secured. Whether or not the picture is copyrighted, credit is given in the list of illustrations wherever the source is direct.

PREFACE

The present book is a revision of the edition of 1907. The purposes and the plan of this book are the same as of that; but every part has been given a searching examination, and many changes have been made with a view to carrying out better the original purposes. The chief aims of the editor in preparing both editions have been:

1. *To emphasize the essentials of the Latin language.*

The Grammatical Appendix contains all the grammar needed for the study of Caesar, and its inclusion in the book makes its use easier than that of a separate volume. Nevertheless, references are given to five standard grammars for those who prefer to use one of them or wish to compare their statements. Throughout the notes the grammatical references emphasize the important matters; and, in particular, a carefully worked out system of references to the absolutely essential principles is used in the notes on Book I, **1-29** and Book II. This is explained on page 68, paragraph 5.

There is a tendency at present to emphasize the applications of Latin. This is right, provided it does not lead to a slighting of the exact knowledge of Latin. It is to be hoped that no teacher will forget that a pupil cannot possibly apply what he does not know. The "objectives" listed in the Report of the Classical Investigation, so far as they can be attained by the study of Latin at all, can be attained only by exact knowledge of Latin. This is clearly stated in the Report, Chapter V, Section 1.

Moreover, whatever method of teaching is employed, it is impossible to read a genuine Latin sentence without an accurate knowledge both of the inflectional forms and of their uses; that is, of syntax. The Report urges with renewed emphasis the recommendation that has been made by every similar report for many years, that pupils be taught to comprehend

Latin in the Latin order; and that a clear distinction be recognized between such comprehension and the translation into English, which should be attempted only after comprehension. In attempting to follow this advice, one must remember that this method requires a more exact and instantaneous recognition of forms and of their possible uses than the usual analytic method does. The exact process of reading Latin in the Latin order is not described in the Report. It is most fully stated in Hale's *Art of Reading Latin*, published by Mentzer, Bush and Co. If the inexperienced teacher finds himself unable to teach the method recommended in the Report, he should find comfort in the words of the Report: "We recognize that successful results have been and can be attained by other methods." But let him remember, too, the words which follow immediately: "We also realize that successful results depend more on the *thoroughness* with which Latin is taught than on any other one factor."

One who wishes to teach the reading of Latin in the Latin order will find no other genuine Latin so well adapted to the purpose as that of Caesar. Even his longest sentences tell the details of their story in the order in which they occurred. If the main verb comes last in the sentence, after a succession of **cum**'s and **ubi**'s and ablatives absolute, it is because the action of the main verb came last. One who really knows the forms and the comparatively few constructions used by Caesar can follow the meaning through most of the sentences without difficulty.

2. *To help the pupil follow the story understandingly.*

It is surely a pedagogical mistake to let the pupil carry away from the study of Caesar nothing but a memory of ablatives absolute and indirect discourse. Caesar tells an interesting story and tells it well. Men of every calling, from professors to emperors, have studied it and written about it. The interest in finding out what Caesar did should serve as an incentive to solve his sentences. Moreover, a neglect of Caesar's thought is

wrong in principle. The habit of careful attention to the subject-matter is the one thing best worth cultivating, whether one reads English or a foreign language; and this should not be forgotten in teaching Caesar.

Therefore as much as possible has been done in the notes and maps to assist in an understanding of the narrative, without introducing any discussion of disputed points. Every effort has been made to adopt the most reasonable theory for each campaign, and to make every note, plan, and map consistent with that theory.

The pupil's progress through the story must be slow, and, however well he understands each move in Caesar's game, he will have difficulty in grasping the whole. It is hoped that the campaign maps may lessen this difficulty by putting before the eyes the total results of the campaigns. In each map the route is laid out on a map of all Gaul, because only in this way can the relation of any one campaign to the whole of Caesar's task be kept constantly before the mind. The system of coloring shows the condition of Gaul at the end of each campaign—how much had been reduced by fighting, how much had yielded without fighting, and how much was yet untouched. A comparison of any two maps will show the results of the intervening operations. Since the scale of these maps made it impossible to show geographical details on them, other maps are given when needed.

3. *To exclude the non-essentials.*

Many things are known or are guessed about ancient military science which in no way help the pupil to understand Caesar. Many facts and theories of grammar are suggested by Caesar's language which the pupil might find useful at some later day, but which help him neither in translating Caesar nor in writing the Latin composition which should accompany the reading. An honest attempt has been made to give what is helpful and to exclude the useless lumber, though it is not hoped that all teachers would draw the line where the editor has drawn it.

4. *To give the pupil every legitimate help in preparing his work.*

The notes and the meanings of all new words are given on the same page with the text for which they are needed. Words are given only once in the page vocabularies, or twice if they occur first in I, **30-54**; and the number of times each word occurs in the first four books is indicated, as explained on page 68, paragraph 2. Pupils should be encouraged to master at their first appearance the primary meanings of words which are to occur frequently. The page vocabularies in the present edition do not repeat the full definitions from the general Vocabulary at the end of the book, unless those definitions are short. They give the primary meaning of the word, and only such other meanings as are needed for the passage at hand.

The notes on the early books now give somewhat more translation than in the former edition, thus making easier the transition from the beginner's book.

The annotated edition, so abundantly supplied with helps, is intended solely for preparation before the class hour, not for use in class. A separate text edition is supplied free by the publishers with every copy of the book. Pupils should be required to get these, use them in class, and leave them in the classroom between recitations. The battle plans are included in the new text edition, which removes one reason for bringing the annotated edition to the class.

5. *To facilitate the omission of parts of Books I-IV and the substitution of parts of Books V-VII.*

The wisdom of such substitutions is perhaps debatable. The story of Books I-IV is fairly complete in itself. It tells the successive steps by which Caesar first gained possession of all Gaul and then secured his conquest against interference from Germany and Britain. The second expedition to Britain added nothing to Roman territory; and the remainder of Books V-VII tells, not of new conquests, but of uprisings and their suppression. On the other hand, Book I contains most of Caesar's indirect discourse, a construction for which the pupil

has little need in his further study of Latin; and parts of the last three books are undeniably more interesting than parts of the first four. The editor recommends the omission of at least I, **30-54,** with its overload of indirect discourse.

To facilitate any desired omission, the story of each book is told at its beginning, so that there need be no break in following the events. Book I, **30-54** may be omitted without breaking the system followed in the page vocabularies, because every new word occurring in those chapters is repeated in the vocabularies of the following books if it occurs in them. The whole of Book I may be omitted without losing the benefit of the systematic grammar references, because the references given in I, **1-29** are repeated in the notes of Book II.

In the present edition, notes, maps, and illustrations have been added for the latter half of Book V, probably the most interesting story in Caesar, and for the siege of Avaricum, VII, **15-28,** the fullest account of taking a town by the agger. These additions give a wider range of selection from the last three books and make it possible to read everything in those books which, in the opinion of the editor, should be thought of as a substitute for parts of the first four. The text of Books V-VII, however, is printed in full. The unannotated portions, like the selections from the *Civil War* which are given in the text edition, are available for sight reading.

The Chief Changes in the New Edition

In the preceding pages mention has been made of some changes—the annotation of new portions of Books V and VII, the simplification of the page vocabularies, additional help given in the notes of the early books, and the inclusion of the battle plans in the text edition. A few other points should be mentioned.

Many illustrations have been added, to make clearer the methods of warfare of both Romans and Gauls, to give some idea of Gallic civilization, and to show the actual scenes of events when such views help in understanding the story.

A number of new maps and plans have been added, wherever they seemed likely to help in understanding the story. At a few points recent discoveries and discussions have required changes in the maps. A new map of Roman possessions at the time when Caesar entered Gaul should help in understanding the importance to Rome of Caesar's conquest.

The chief operations of the World War in the country which was Gaul are described in new sections of the Introduction and illustrated by a new map. The notes also call attention to geographical correspondences between Caesar's war and the World War.

Some changes have been made in the text, usually for clearness and simplicity. Meusel's last published text and Mr. Holmes's edition of the Gallic War have been the chief authorities for these changes. Where they agree in bracketing a word or a sentence, the editor has felt free to omit it altogether if he chose. And, in general, when the true reading is doubtful, he has chosen the easier one.

The Index has been divided into a Grammatical Index and an Index of Persons, Places, and Things. The latter is much fuller than the corresponding portions of the Index in the earlier edition. It is hoped that these Indexes will prove helpful to both teachers and students.

I express my sincere and hearty thanks to the teachers who have given me suggestions for improvement; to my own students, who have helped me come to a decision on many doubtful points in the study of Caesar; to the publishers, who have given me every assistance; and especially to their editorial office, which has labored unremittingly toward a perfection which we could not hope to attain.

Arthur Tappan Walker

The University of Kansas
July 16, 1926

CONTENTS

PAGE

PREFACE 1
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS 9
LIST OF MAPS AND COLORED PLATES 15
INTRODUCTION 17
I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns 17
II. Life of Caesar 20
III. Chronological Table 28
IV. Caesar as General 29
V. Caesar as Author 30
VI. The Gauls 32
VII. Caesar's Army 35
VIII. Caesar's War and the World War 54
IX. Caesar's Geography 60
A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY 62
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS 64
BOOK I, **1-29** 65
BOOK I, **30-54** 143
BOOK II 195
BOOK III 257
BOOK IV 299
THE DIRECT FORM OF THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II . 345
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX 355
VOCABULARY . . . . . (*following* 456) 1
GRAMMATICAL INDEX 86
INDEX OF PERSONS, PLACES, AND THINGS 93

FIG. 1
TRAJAN'S COLUMN

TWO SOURCES OF ILLUSTRATIONS

TRAJAN'S COLUMN

About one hundred and fifty years after Caesar conquered Gaul, the Emperor Trajan similarly conquered the Dacians, who lived in modern Rumania (see map, p. 19). To commemorate his victory he set up this column, which is still standing in Rome. The statue of St. Peter is now on its top, instead of that of Trajan, which stood there originally. Around the column winds a spiral series of carvings, picturing the events of the war. The ribbon of carvings is about three and a half feet wide and 660 feet long, and contains some twenty-five hundred human figures.

These carvings are the most complete and accurate representations we have of Roman arms and methods. Although they are later than Caesar's time, they illustrate his story very well; for Roman arms had changed but little, and Trajan conducted the same kind of warfare. Therefore this book shows several reproductions of scenes from the column. Moreover, many of the cuts which show details of arms, though credited to other sources, were originally drawn from figures on the column.

In one respect the carvings are not true to nature. The figures of men had to be large enough to be seen from the ground. Therefore such things as walls, camps, and bridges had to be reduced in size; and a few figures have to be used to represent a large number, as when Trajan addresses his soldiers, and only seven figures are shown.

The cuts credited to Cichorius in the following list are taken from his *Reliefs der Traianssäule*, Berlin, 1896. His excellent plates are from photographs of casts which are exhibited in the Lateran Museum at Rome.

COINS

Most of the cuts of coins are made from drawings of the coins, not from photographs. This brings out the designs better, since the coins themselves often show the designs only faintly. The crudeness of the designs on Gallic coins is not due to poor drawing, but to the poor workmanship on the coins. Gallic coins were often copies of Greek coins, or copies of copies. The copying of copies went on until the last artists probably did not themselves know what the original design was meant to be; so that, for example, what started as the figure of a horse became only a group of meaningless curves.

The spelling of names on Gallic coins does not always agree with that of Caesar. This is partly because the Gauls themselves did not always agree in their spelling, partly because Caesar chose to make the foreign names look more like Latin, and partly because he did not always catch the exact sounds as he heard them spoken.

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG. PAGE

Profile view of the bust of Caesar in the British Museum (photograph) . . . . . *frontispiece*

1. Trajan's Column (drawing from a photograph) 8
2. Front view of the bust of Caesar in the British Museum (photograph, The University Prints) 17
3. A coin of Caesar (Barclay V. Head, *A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients*, 66: 18) 20
4. A civic crown (E. C. F. Babelon, *Description historique des monnaies de la republique romaine*, 2, 139: 30) 22
5. A coin of Caesar (Babelon, 14: 16) 22
6. A coin of Caesar (Head, 66: 17) 24
7. Portraits of Pompey (Babelon, 345-6, 10, 11, 12, 14) 25
8. A coin of Caesar (Babelon, 29: 52) 26
9. A coin of Caesar (Babelon, 19: 30) 27
10. Two coins of Caesar Octavianus (Babelon, 47: 98 and 48: 101) . . 27
11. Statue of Caesar in the *Palazzo dei Conservatori*, Rome (photograph, Alinari) 29
12. Bust of Caesar in the Museum of Naples (photograph) 31
13. Gallic warriors (H. Rheinhard, *C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii de Bello Gallico*, Tafel XXV, 4, 5, 6) 33
14. A trophy of Gallic arms (Raimund Oehler, *Bilder-Atlas zu Cäsars Büchern de Bello Gallico*, XXII, 73) 34
15. A Roman soldier's shoe (Ludwig Lindenschmidt, *Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres während der Kaiserzeit*, XII, 13) 36
16. *Galea* (Stephen Cybulski, *Tabulae quibus antiquitates Graecae et Romanae illustrantur*, V, 5) 36
17. *Lōrīca* (Cybulski, V, 8) 37
18. *Pīla* (drawing) 37
19. Roman sword and scabbard (drawing, after Rheinhard, XX, 6a and 6b) 38
20. Legionary soldier on the march (Cybulski, VI) 38
21. A centurion (Lindenschmidt, I, 6) 40
22. Decorations for gallantry (Lindenschmidt, I, 2, 5) 40
23. The eagle of the legion (Rheinhard, XX-XXI, 3a) 41
24. *Signifer* (Lindenschmidt, III, 2) 41
25. *Tuba* (Cybulski, V, 23) 42
26. *Cornū* (Cybulski, V, 22) 42

FIG. PAGE
27. Light-armed soldier (drawing, after Rheinhard, XVI, 2) 43
28. Cavalry standard bearer (Oehler, II, 10) 43
29. Plan of a Roman camp (drawing, after Rüstow) 44
30. *Vāllum* and *fossa* (drawing) 45
31. Camp on the Axona (drawing, after Napoleon) 46
Storming an ancient town (Rheinhard, XIV) . . . . . *facing* 47
32. *Aciēs triplex* (drawing) 48
33. Gallic wall (Oehler, XXVII, a, c) 49
34. Side view of agger in process of construction (drawing) 50
35. Soldiers building an agger (Oehler, XIX, 61) 50
36. *Pluteī* (drawing) 51
37. *Musculus* (drawing) 51
38. Battering-ram (Rheinhard, XXII-XXIII, 19) 51
39. *Vīnea* (drawing) 52
40. *Ballista* (Rheinhard, XXII-XXIII, 3) 52
41. Catapult (drawing, after Oehler) 53
42. Two coins of Mark Antony (Head, 66: 23 and 25) 54
43. A coin of Caesar (Head 69: 22) 70
44. A Gallic spear head (Joseph Déchelette, *Manuel d'archéologie préhistorique celtique et gallo-romaine*, II, 3, 1145: 478, 8) . . . 71
45. A coin of the Helvetii (Adrien Blanchet, *Traité des monnaies gauloises*, 470: 531) 73
46. A coin of the Haedui (Blanchet, 406: 425) 74
47. A Gallic coin (Head, 67: 5) 77
48. View from Lake Geneva to Mount Jura (photograph) 80
49. Gallic mill (Déchelette, 1387: 617, 1, 3) 85
50. Pas de l' Écluse—Mill Race Gorge (photograph, belonging to the Kansas State Normal College, Emporia, Kansas, taken by F. L. Black) 88
51. The Rhone (photograph, Black) 90
52. A Gallic coin (Head, 57: 1) 93
53. Section of Caesar's wall (drawing, after Napoleon) 95
54. The Rhone just below Geneva (photograph) 96
55. A coin of the Segusiavi (Blanchet, 425: 468) 101
56. The sluggish Arar (Saone) (photograph, Black) 104
57. Soldiers crossing a pontoon bridge (Cichorius, Tafel VII) . . . 107
58. A coin of the Bellovaci (Blanchet, 369: 348) 108
59. A coin of the Haedui (Blanchet, 162: 15) 111
60. A Roman auxiliary cavalryman (Lindenschmidt, VIII, 1) . . . 112
61. A coin of the Aulerci Eburovices (Blanchet, 323: 233) 113
62. Gallic helmets (Déchelette, 1156: 484) 114
63. Gallic bits (Déchelette, 1199: 511, 1, 2) 116
64. A coin of the Haedui (Blanchet, 408: 430) 119
65. A coin of the Bituriges (Head, 67: 3) 120
66. Gallic spear head (Déchelette, 1145: 478, 1) 125

FIG. PAGE
67. Gallic swords in their scabbards (Déchelette, 1110: 457, 1, 2) . 126
68. Gallic method of suspending sword from belt (Déchelette, 1115: 461) 126
69. A Gallic coin (Head, 67: 4) 127
70. Site of the Helvetian camp (photograph, Black) 129
71. View across the battlefield (photograph, Black) 133
72. A Gallic spear point (Déchelette, 1144: 478, 6) 134
73. One-half mold for spear point (J. Evans, *Ancient Bronze Implements*, 433) 134
74. Gallic shield (Déchelette, 1169: 493) 136
75. A coin of the Lingones (Blanchet, 389: 397) 138
76. Helvetian yoke (Déchelette, 1194: 509) 140
77. Ancient cart and wagon (drawing, after Oehler, VII, 29) 141
78. The general addresses his troops and confers with envoys (Cichorius, Tafel XXI) 147
79. A coin of the Arverni (Blanchet, 419: 455) 149
80. A coin of the Aulerci (Blanchet, 303: 195) 150
81. A coin of the Coriosolites (Blanchet, 315: 217) 153
82. A coin of the Sequani (Blanchet, 402: 419) 154
83. A Gallic coin (Blanchet, 317: 222) 157
84. Reconstruction of a German sword and scabbard (Déchelette, 1133) 159
85. A coin of the Treveri (Blanchet, 352: 307) 161
86. The hill at Vesontio (photograph, Black) 165
87. The country about Vesontio (Ch. Brossard, *Géographie pittoresque et monumentale de la France*, III, 300) 167
88. A coin of the Leuci (Blanchet, 390: 399) 170
89. The boundary of Alsace (Brossard, III, 255) 172
90. A coin of the Mediomatrici (Blanchet, 396: 410) 176
91. A coin of the Redones (Blanchet, 312: 209) 179
92. Ancient Gallic bit (Déchelette, 1201: 513) 181
93. A Gallic coin (Blanchet, 314: 214) 182
94. An ancient mold for spear heads (Evans, 437) 185
95. The general directs work on fortifications (Cichorius, Tafel LXXI) 186
96. The site of Caesar's small camp (photograph, Black) 188
97. The site of Caesar's large camp (photograph, Black) 190
98. A bit of plate mail (Lindenschmidt, XIII, 11) 192
99. A Roman shield (Cybulski, V, 20) 200
100. A coin of the Remi (Blanchet, 379: 379) 202
101. A British coin (J. Evans, *Coins of the Ancient Britons*, II, 14) . 205
102. Roman soldiers at work (Cichorius, Tafel XV) 207
103. A slinger (drawing, after Rheinhard, XVI, 1) 213
104. A sling (Rheinhard, XX, 11) 216
105. A leaden slug (Oehler, VI) 218

FIG. PAGE
106. The beginning of a battle (Cichorius, Tafel XXIV) 220
107. Gallic wall (Oehler, XXIV, 80) 222
108. A coin of the Suessiones (Blanchet, 377: 376) 224
109. A coin of the Ambiani (Blanchet, 371: 355) 226
110. A coin of the Nervii (Blanchet, 351: 306) 227
111. Refugees (Cichorius, Tafel LXXVI) 229
112. *Vexillum* (Cybulski, V, 18) 234
113. Soldiers at work (Rheinhard, XIX, 1) 236
114. A coin of the Atrebates (Blanchet, 345: 298) 238
115. A coin of the Viromandui (Blanchet, 375: 372) 239
116. A Roman and a Gallic cavalryman (photographs of models in the Museum of Saint-Germain) 240
117. A centurion (Lindenschmidt, I, 6) 242
118. A hand-to-hand fight (Cichorius, Tafel LXXXVI) 245
119. A tower (Cybulski, IX) 249
120. The enemy makes submission (Cichorius, Tafel LIV) 251
121. A coin of the Atuatuci (Blanchet, 357: 317) 252
122. A Gallic scabbard and sword (Déchelette, 961: 401, 1, 2) . . . 254
123. Bust of Caesar in Louvre (photograph, The University Prints) . 256
124. Probable site of Galba's camp (photograph) 264
125. A coin of the Aulerci Diablintes (Blanchet, 305: 199) 267
126. A bit of the coast of Brittany (photograph, Underwood and Underwood) 268
127. A coin of the Pictones (Blanchet, 297: 178) 270
128. A coin of the Namnetes (Blanchet, 301: 189) 273
129. A coin of Brutus (Babelon, 384: 11) 275
130. The town of Batz (Brossard, II, 217) 277
131. *Falx* (Rheinhard, XXII-XXIII, 21) 280
132. A Roman galley (Rheinhard, XV) 281
133. Prow of Roman galley (Cybulski, IV) 283
134. A coin of the Venelli (Blanchet, 309: 203) 284
135. A coin of the Lexovii (Blanchet, 320: 228) 286
136. A coin of Crassus (Babelon, 134: 18) 288
137. A coin of the Sotiates (Blanchet, 287: 160) 290
138. The varied occupations of soldiers (Cichorius, Tafel XIII) . . 293
139. A coin of the Morini (Blanchet, 346: 300) 296
140. Road building and devastation (Cichorius, Tafel XL) 298
141. A Gallic sword (photograph) 303
142. A British coin (Evans, *Coins*, III, 9) 305
143. A British coin (Evans, *Coins*, III, 11) 307
144. A British coin (Evans, *Coins*, III, 10) 312
145. The Romans strengthen their fortifications and receive a submissive delegation (Cichorius, Tafel XCVI) 315
146. *Cassis* (Cybulski, V, 1) 319
147. Caesar's bridge (drawing) 320

FIG. PAGE
148. Pile driver (drawing) 321
149. A British coin (Evans, *Coins*, III, 12) 322
150. The Rhine at Bonn (photograph) 325
151. Entrance of harbor at Boulogne (Brossard, I, 339) 329
152. Cliffs near Dover (retouched photograph, Keystone View Company) 331
153. The shore south of Deal (photograph, H. Franklin and Son, Deal, England) 332
154. The eagle (Cybulski, V, 17) 334
155. Cliffs east of Dover (photograph, E. V. Bowles, Dover, England) 337
156. A British coin (Evans, *Coins*, I, 11) 339
157. British war chariot (Rheinhard, XXII-XXIII, 7) 340
158. Looking north from the entrance of Boulogne Harbor (Brossard, I, 339) 343

MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

PAGE

Gaul (*colored*) . . . . . *inside front cover*
Roman possessions when Caesar went to Gaul 19
World War battle lines 57
An ancient idea of geography 61
Campaign Map for Book I, **1-29** (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 67
The Rhone between Geneva and Mt. Jura 87
Battle with the Helvetii—first stage 131
Battle with the Helvetii—second stage 135
Campaign Map for Book I, **30-54** (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 145
Vesontio (Besançon) 163
Battle with Ariovistus 187
Campaign Map for Book II (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 197
Battle on the Axona (Aisne) 214
Battle on the Sabis (Sambre) 231
The town of the Atuatuci 247
Campaign Map for Book III (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 259
Galba's camp 261
Operations against the Veneti 272
A town of the Veneti 276
Campaign Map for Book IV (*colored*) . . . . . *facing* 301
Map for IV, **7-19** 309
Caesar's First Invasion of Britain 326

COLORED PLATES

Roman officers and soldiers (Lehmann's *Kulturgeschichtliche Bilder*, 12) . . . . . *facing* 111
The meeting of Caesar and Ariovistus (Gurlitt, *History Pictures*, 3) . . . . . *facing* 175
A Roman camp (Gurlitt, 1) . . . . . *facing* 287
Caesar's Landing in Britain (Gurlitt, 5) . . . . . *facing* 334

INTRODUCTION

I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns

1. The *Commentaries on the Gallic War* are Caesar's own story of how he conquered the peoples living in what is now France and some of the lands bordering on France. He has told his story simply and directly. It was his genius that made the conquest possible, and the story could not be true without making this evident; but he has spoken of himself as if the writer and the general were different men, and there is no boasting. He has not explained to us the great importance of the war to the Roman State; there is no suggestion of its importance to his personal career; much less has he hinted at his own importance in the history of Rome and the world. These things must be learned from a study of history, not from Caesar's story.

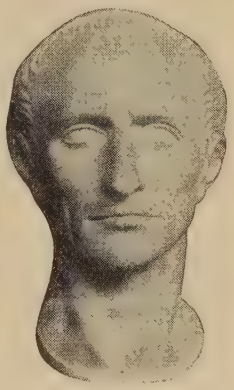


Fig. 2
CAESAR
This bust is in the British Museum. Compare the frontispiece, which is a profile view of the same bust.

2. **Effect on Rome.** Rome was the governing nation of ancient times. In Caesar's time she had conquered the other nations which touched the Mediterranean, and was governing most of them as provinces; that is, she sent Roman governors to them and collected taxes from them. In this way she governed a comparatively narrow strip of land in southern Gaul;

and as this was the particular province which Caesar was sent to govern, he calls it simply "the Province," **Prōvincia** (see map). This province was only partially protected by mountains and rivers from the semicivilized and warlike Gauls on the north; and for this reason it could never be sure of peace and safety until the rest of Gaul was conquered. Moreover, the land on the north was productive and well worth having. Therefore Caesar's conquest of Gaul was justified, from a Roman point of view, both by the value of the land and by the necessity of protecting the Province.

3. **Effect on Gaul.** But there was a better reason for that conquest. Though the Gauls were brave, they were no match for the less civilized Germans, who lived across the Rhine. Just at the time when Caesar took command of his province the Germans had begun crossing the Rhine in great numbers and were driving the Gauls out of their homes. If this movement had not been checked, the homeless Gauls would have been driven to attack Roman territory; and if the Gauls had been exterminated between the Germans and the Romans, then the Romans would have found the Germans still more dangerous neighbors than the Gauls. For the Gauls themselves, too, it was far better to be conquered by the civilized Romans than by the uncivilized Germans. The one means of safety for both Gauls and Romans was that the Romans should govern all the country west of the Rhine and should hold the Germans at bay on the other side of that great river. This was the result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul; and this result is the great justification of his bloody warfare there.

4. **Effect on Caesar.** In their effect on Caesar's own career the Gallic campaigns were all-important, and his career changed the course of history. In Gaul he gained military experience and the devotion of his army. By the aid of that army he overthrew a constitution under which the Roman State was going to ruin, and laid the foundations of an empire which lived for centuries. No doubt he did this from selfish and

ROMAN POSSESSIONS WHEN CAESAR WENT TO GAUL

Roman possessions are shown approximately by the dark shading; but some boundaries were not clearly defined, and Rome virtually controlled some other countries. The pressing need of Rome was to extend her boundaries to the Rhine and the Danube. Caesar extended them to the Rhine; his immediate successors, to the Danube.

ambitious motives; but his ambition was so great that it could never have been satisfied until he had brought the empire he ruled to the highest possible degree of excellence, and his genius was so great that he saw the needful measures and the means to carry them out. The daggers of his assassins gave him too short a time to complete his work; but he did enough to prove himself the greatest man in Roman history.

II. Life of Caesar

5. Early Years, and Choice of Party. Gaius Julius Caesar was born in the year 100 B.C.,[1] on the twelfth day of the month which was then called Quintilis, but which we now, in his honor, call July. Tradition traced the descent of the Julian family back beyond the foundation of Rome, and even to the goddess Venus as its remote ancestor. Caesar, therefore, belonged to the Roman nobility, and in the continuous strife between the Senatorial, or Aristocratic, and the Democratic parties, might have been expected to side with the aristocrats. For he must have expected to enter the Senate, as he actually did; and the Senatorial party wished the Senate to be supreme, while the Democratic party insisted that all important questions be put to the vote of the people. But none of his own family had been very conspicuous in the state, and his aunt had married Marius, the greatest leader of the Democratic party, the great general who had saved Rome by his victories over the Cimbri and Teutoni. It was natural that his am-

Fig. 3

A COIN OF CAESAR

Left: Head of the goddess Venus, who was mother of Aeneas, hero of Vergil's great epic, the *Aeneid*.

Right: Aeneas carrying his aged father, Anchises, and a divine statue from burning Troy.

Caesar claimed descent from this family.

1. Or perhaps in 102. If he was born in 100, he held all the important offices two years earlier than the law allowed.

bition should be fired by his uncle's career, and that his sympathies should incline toward the Democratic party. In his fourteenth year Marius made him priest of Jupiter, an office of some honor and few duties; and in 84, after the death of Marius, he deliberately identified himself with the Democratic party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of the new leader of that party, Cinna.

6. **Overthrow of Caesar's Party.** But the power of the Democratic party was almost at an end. In 83 Sulla, the leader of the Aristocratic party, returned to Italy with his victorious army, after fighting for several years against Mithridates, in the East. A bloody contest drove the Democrats from power; and in 82 the victor, determined to make a revival of that party impossible, slaughtered its eminent men and so changed the constitution of the state that the Senate was in full control. The young Caesar, as nephew of Marius and son-in-law of Cinna, was too conspicuous to be overlooked. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia. Caesar refused, and had to flee for his life until influential friends persuaded Sulla to pardon him. Sulla's grudging consent is said to have been coupled with the warning that Caesar would prove as dangerous as many Mariuses.

7. **Weakness of Opposite Party.** But the form of government set up by Sulla did not stand long, and the years which followed his death made more and more clear the need of some strong man who should give order and stability to the state. During those same years Caesar was testing and developing the powers which were to make him the man to do this work.

8. **Revival of Caesar's Party.** When Sulla died, in 78, the Senate was in complete control: the Democratic party had neither a leader nor any chance to use its strength. Gradually the Senate lost this control, until, in 70, under the consuls Pompey and Crassus, the changes made by Sulla were completely done away with and the Democratic party again had an opportunity, if it could but find a leader. For a time Pom-

Pierce Library
Eastern Oregon University
1410 L Avenue

pey seemed likely to be this leader. In 66 the people, contrary to the wishes of the Senatorial party, elected him general to serve against Mithridates. This gave him supreme control in Asia Minor, but kept him out of Rome for the next four years.

FIG. 4
A CIVIC CROWN
Ob Civis Servatos = (*Given*) *for the Saving of Citizens.*

9. Development of Caesar's Powers. During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of gaining distinction as general. A born politician, he loved the game of politics for its own sake as well as for its rewards. An excellent orator, both by nature and by training, he used his oratorical powers in furthering the plans of his party. He made friends easily, and his influence over them was strong. Therefore, before he was old enough to take office he was a great favorite with the people and a much-sought-for ally in political scheming; and he was elected without difficulty to the offices of Quaestor (for 68), Aedile (for 65), and Praetor (for 62). The greatest test of his popularity came in 63, when the office of Pontifex Maximus fell vacant and Caesar was elected to this most honorable position over the strongest candidate the Senatorial party could put forward.

FIG. 5
A COIN OF CAESAR
Left: Head of the goddess Ceres. **Co(n)s(ul) Tert(io)** = *Consul for the Third Time*, and **Dict(ator) iter (um)** = *Dictator for the Second Time.*
Right: The sacred symbols of the Pontifex Maximus, **Augur,** and **Pont(ifex) Max(imus).** (The Pontifex Maximus was the highest officer of the state religion.)

10. Caesar's First Military Command. But in spite of ability and popularity, in the year 63 Caesar was thought of as only

a shrewd politician. Rome looked upon Pompey as her greatest man, because he was her greatest general; and Caesar knew that if he should come into conflict with Pompey his shrewdness could never prove a match for Pompey's army and generalship. Caesar felt that he too must be a general, but he did not know whether he could be; for he had never had an opportunity to try his powers. The opportunity offered itself in 61, when he was sent to govern a part of Spain. There he fought with great success against some of the native tribes. His victories were not very important in themselves, and they attracted no great attention in Rome; but they showed Caesar what he could do and made him eager for a larger field of operations.

11. **Caesar's Consulship.** Caesar now wanted the consulship, the highest office in the state; if he got it he intended to carry through some measures which would be opposed by the Senatorial party. He therefore needed strong friends. Pompey had returned in triumph from the war with Mithridates, but the Senate had refused to grant some reasonable requests which he had made of it. Crassus, perhaps the wealthiest Roman, had a strong liking for secret politics, especially for political deals which might throw money-making opportunities his way. With these two men Caesar made a secret agreement that each should further the interests of the others; and thus Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed what is known in history as the First Triumvirate, a mere personal agreement, with no public sanction. The influence of Pompey and Crassus helped in securing Caesar's election to the consulship for the year 59, and also assisted him, when consul, in passing measures which were for the advantage of each of the three allies. For himself Caesar took a five-year term of office as governor of Cisalpine Gaul (the northern part of Italy), Illyricum (north and east of the Adriatic Sea), and Transalpine Gaul (then including only the southern part of France). See map, p. 19. To protect these provinces he was given an army of four legions.

12. Caesar's Command in Gaul. In 58, therefore, Caesar entered upon his command. Partly because it was best for the Province and the State (**2** and **3**), and partly because he needed the training and the reputation of a general (**10**), he determined to conquer all the rest of Gaul. How he did this he tells us himself in the *Commentaries;* and a brief summary prefixed to each book in this edition makes it unnecessary to tell the story here. Since he found the five years originally given him too short for the full accomplishment of his purpose, he secured an additional five years. By the year 50 the last trace of resistance to Roman authority had been crushed, and Caesar's great task was completed. Moreover, he now had a perfectly disciplined veteran army, enthusiastically devoted to its leader.

FIG. 6

A COIN OF CAESAR

Left: Head of Venus.
Right: A trophy of Gallic arms, and two weeping captives, symbolizing the subjugation of Gaul. (See Fig. 14, p. 34.)

13. Outbreak of Civil War. It was high time that Caesar should have his hands free, for a greater task lay before him. For several years Pompey and Crassus had looked out for his interests in Rome. But in 53 Crassus was killed in battle; and at about the same time Pompey began to feel jealous of Caesar's success and fearful of his power. He gradually turned away from Caesar and attached himself to the Senatorial party, which had always hated Caesar. On the first day of the year 49 the Senate voted that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen, though the time for which the command had been given him had not yet expired. Caesar was then in Cisalpine Gaul, and his reply was an immediate march, with his army, toward Rome.

14. Weakness of the Constitutional Government. But during Caesar's absence from Rome the complete failure of the constitutional form of government had shown that the so-called

republic could not exist much longer. Trials and elections were decided by bribery and bloodshed. The governing party had been so weak that for one entire year a succession of riots had prevented the holding of elections. Now when it was attacked by Caesar it again showed its weakness. Although it had taken steps which were sure to bring on civil war it had done nothing to prepare for that war, except to appoint Pompey its commander in chief. In about two months Caesar had marched victoriously from one end of Italy to the other, and Pompey set sail from southern Italy with his army and most of the Senate, leaving Rome and Italy in Caesar's hands.

FIG. 7

PORTRAITS OF POMPEY

One side of four different coins is shown here.

15. Civil War Makes Caesar Master of Rome. But the hardest fighting of his life lay before Caesar. Pompey had crossed the Adriatic only to gain time for preparation. Besides, while Pompey's strong army lay on the east of Italy, there was another large army of Caesar's enemies in Spain, on the west. But Caesar's magnificent army and wonderful generalship carried him through all difficulties. In 49 he marched to Spain and defeated his enemies there. In 48 he followed Pompey across the Adriatic and utterly routed his army in the great battle of Pharsalus. Pompey himself fled to Egypt, and was assassinated by order of the counselors of the Egyptian king. Caesar followed him to Egypt with an insufficient force and was blockaded for several months in the city of Alexandria by the Egyptian army. Meanwhile the remnants of Pompey's army made their way to the northern coast of Africa, and a new army was there organized to oppose Caesar. In 46 Caesar defeated

this army, too, at Thapsus, so decisively that he is said to have lost but fifty men, while fifty thousand of the enemy fell. Then the sons of Pompey rallied the last opponents of Caesar, in Spain, for a final struggle, and Caesar's victory at Munda in 45 made him the undisputed master of the Roman world.

FIG. 8

A COIN OF CAESAR

Left: The Temple of Clemency. **Clementiae Caesaris** = *To the Clemency of Caesar.*

(Caesar was the first victor in Roman civil war who shed no needless blood.)

Right: **P. Sepullius Macer,** the commissioner of coinage who had the coins made.

16. Caesar as Statesman. Caesar was no mere soldier, and it was from no choice of his own that he spent all these years in fighting. He became a general because that was the only way to achieve his purpose of becoming sole ruler of Rome. But that purpose was not prompted wholly by personal ambition. He had begun as a politician and had matured into a great statesman. There had been many abuses in the State, and the civil war had brought in confusion as well. With characteristic energy and clear-sightedness he set himself to bring order out of chaos, to organize the whole empire, and to improve its details. To carry out this work he needed the best men in the state, regardless of party; hence he pardoned those who had fought against him and gave some of them positions of high honor and great responsibility. He reformed the calendar. He took measures to remedy the financial disorders of the country. He planned a codification of the laws. He intended to carry out some great engineering feats, among others the cutting of a canal through the Isthmus of Corinth. In order to protect the frontiers of the empire he planned military expeditions against the Parthians and the nations along the Danube.

17. Assassination of Caesar. Such enormous plans needed time for their execution, and time was denied to Caesar. A form of government which had stood for centuries could not be over-

thrown without grieving some true lovers of their country. One man could not make himself the master of all others, who had previously been his equals, without arousing jealousy. One man could not select the men to fill all offices without disappointing many. Men of all these classes, patriots, would-be rivals, and disappointed office seekers, joined in a conspiracy, and on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., Caesar fell beneath their daggers while presiding over a meeting of the Senate. The history of the following years shows the folly of this murder. For themselves the assassins reaped only death, since in a very few years every one whose fate is known had died by violence. For the State the deed was equally disastrous, since the assassination of Caesar merely caused a bloody civil war to intervene between his rule and that of Augustus.

FIG. 9

A COIN OF CAESAR

This was made in 44 B.C., the year of Caesar's assassination.

Left: Head of Calpurnia, Caesar's wife. **Caes(ar) Dic(tator) Quar(to)** = *Caesar Dictator for the Fourth Time.*

Right: A laurel wreath. **Co(n)s(ul) Quinq(uies)** = *Consul for the Fifth Time.*

FIG. 10

TWO COINS OF CAESAR OCTAVIANUS

Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus, was the nephew, adopted son, and successor of Julius Caesar. He punished the assassins, and made the Senate deify Caesar. **Divos Julius** = *the Deified Julius;* accompanying these words is a laurel wreath on one coin, the head of Julius on the other. **Divi F(ilius)** = *Son of the Deified;* accompanying these words on each coin is the head of Octavianus. He is said to have worn the beard shown on one coin in token of mourning for Julius.

III. Chronological Table

B.C.	Caesar's Age.	
100		Birth of Caesar, July 12.
86	14	Marius appoints Caesar Priest of Jupiter. Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.
84	16	Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator.
82	18	Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.
80	20	Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene.
78	22	Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.
74	26	Caesar sails to Rhodes to study oratory.
73	27	Caesar is chosen Pontifex. He returns to Rome and is elected Military Tribune.
70	30	Consulship of Pompey and Crassus. The Sullan constitution is overthrown.
68	32	Caesar is Quaestor.
65	35	Caesar is Curule Aedile.
63	37	Caesar is elected Praetor and Pontifex Maximus. Cicero is Consul. Conspiracy of Catiline exposed.
62	38	Caesar is Practor.
61	39	Caesar is Propraetor in Farther Spain.
60	40	"First Triumvirate" is formed. Caesar is elected Consul.
59	41	Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.
58	42	Caesar is Proconsul in Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.
57	43	Caesar conquers the Belgae. Recall of Cicero.
56	44	Caesar's campaign in Brittany.
55	45	Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompey and Crassus are Consuls for the second time.
54	46	Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.
53	47	Caesar deals with northeastern Gaul. Crassus is slain in Parthia.
52	48	Caesar crushes a general revolt of the Gauls.
51-50	49-50	Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.
50	50	The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.
49	51	Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.
48	52	Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is killed in Egypt. The "Alexandrian War."
47	53	Caesar, again Dictator, reorganizes the government.
46	54	The "African War." The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus.
45	55	The "Spanish War." Battle of Munda.
44	56	Caesar Dictator for life. Assassinated March 15

IV. Caesar as General

19. The *Commentaries* present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

Fig. 11
CAESAR
Statue in the *Palazzo dei Conservatori*, Rome.

20. Characteristics as General. The *Commentaries* reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. When it suited his purpose he was deliberate and cautious, watching for the best opportunity to strike a crushing blow. Yet in an emergency he would coolly carry out the most daring plans, so that he sometimes appears even reckless; but this apparent recklessness was the result of swift and unerring decision, based

on a keen insight into the character and probable action of his opponents. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his forces and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

21. **Power over His Men.** Caesar won the entire devotion of his army, and this was one of the secrets of his success. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He saw to it that they had an abundance of supplies. He cautioned them against unnecessary risk in battle, and sometimes refused to allow them to fight in dangerous places even when they wished to do so. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. But such statements only partially account for his ascendency over their minds. He possessed in the fullest measure that combination of natural qualities which makes a man a born leader. Therefore his army was the obedient instrument of his will and endured unexampled hardships without a murmur.

V. Caesar as Author

22. Caesar's genius was many-sided, and he might have been no less eminent as an orator and an author than as a statesman and a general, if he had chosen those fields of activity for their own sake. Even as it was, though he spoke and wrote mainly for political effect, he was recognized by his contemporaries as an orator second only to Cicero; and the simplicity, clearness, and terseness of his *Commentaries* have made them a classic from his day to our own. In the purity of their Latinity they rank with Cicero's works as the best that have come down to

us. The interest of the narrative and the quality of the generalship shown in it have made the book a favorite with some of the world's greatest generals. The great Napoleon, for example, recommended it to his officers and himself wrote an abstract of it.

23. Purpose in Writing the *Commentaries on the Gallic War.* Yet the book was written hastily, probably in the winter of 52-51, after the events narrated in Book VII; and it was written for a political purpose. Absent from Rome and deprived of his two chief supporters by the death of Crassus and the alienation of Pompey, Caesar wished to put himself in a good light before the Roman people. With such a purpose he might have been expected to misstate some facts; and there have been many attempts to show that he did so. But a fair examination of these attempts shows that not one of them is well-founded. There may be occasional mistakes, where Caesar was forced to rely on information furnished him by the Gauls; but it cannot be proved that there is a single intentional false statement in the whole work.

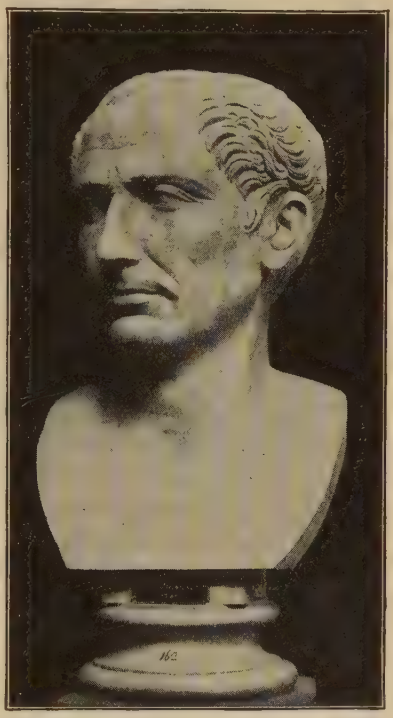


FIG. 12
CAESAR
Bust in the Museum of Naples

24. Caesar's Other Writings. In addition to the *Commentaries*

on the Gallic War, in seven books, we have Caesar's *Commentaries on the Civil War*, in three books. Besides these we know of other works, now lost. We hear of some poetry and a collection of jests. He wrote a treatise on grammar while traveling rapidly from Rome to Spain. He wrote a treatise on astronomy when he reformed the calendar. He wrote an attack on Cato to counteract the effect of certain books which in praising Cato attacked Caesar. All this shows his versatility; but probably no one of these works would have been very valuable if it had been preserved.

VI. The Gauls

25. First Appearance of the Gauls in History. Some seven centuries before Christ, a tall, fair-haired race of men, the Gauls, began crossing the Rhine and conquering the original inhabitants of the country on its west. In time they overran everything as far as the Pyrenees, partly destroying the original inhabitants, partly uniting with them. About five centuries before Christ, they began crossing the Alps and settling in northern Italy, and in 390 B.C. they took Rome and burned it. Rome was then but a small city, governing only the part of Italy which immediately surrounded it.

26. First Decline of Gallic Power. But from that time on the power of Rome increased and that of the Gauls decreased. A little more than two centuries before Christ, after desperate fighting, the Romans conquered and held northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul. Again in the years from 123 to 118 there was hard fighting with Gauls, and at the end Rome controlled that part of Gaul which Caesar calls the Province (2).

27. Invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni. In 113 began the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the most terrible danger of Rome since the day when the Gauls burned the city. It is not known whether they were Germans or Gauls, and probably the Romans of the time did not discriminate between the two races. They crossed the Rhine with their women and children, and marched

FIG. 13
GALLIC WARRIORS

slowly through Gaul, leaving a waste wherever they had passed. Several Roman armies met them and were cut to pieces. At last they made ready to invade Italy, the Teutoni by the western Alps, the Cimbri by the eastern. But the great Marius was now in command of a Roman army. In 102 he met the Teutoni and destroyed them. In 101 he joined the other Roman army and destroyed the Cimbri.

28. Geographical Divisions of Gaul in Caesar's Time. In Caesar's time Cisalpine Gaul was almost as Roman as any other part of Italy. From it Caesar recruited his legions and levied new ones; and later he gave its inhabitants the right of Roman citizenship. The Province was peaceable and loyal to Rome,

although the Allobroges had rebelled only a few years before. Caesar's task was the subjugation of all the rest of the Gauls, the inhabitants of all the country lying north of the Province and west of the Rhine. This is the country which he calls Gallia. However, he divides it into three parts and often uses the name Gallia of only the great central part, Gallia Celtica, where the Gallic stock was purest. In the southwestern part, Aquitania, fewer of the Gallic invaders had settled, and the population consisted largely of descendants of the original inhabitants. In the northeastern part, Belgium, Germans had settled in large numbers.

FIG. 14

A TROPHY OF GALLIC ARMS

Such trophies were erected to celebrate victories, and were composed of arms of the defeated enemy. This contains standards, a helmet, a cuirass, spears, war trumpets, and shields. The figures below represent the conquered Gauls.

29. Factions in Gaul. If Caesar had found Gaul a compact nation his task would have been more difficult than it was. But faction and division seem to have been a part of the Gallic nature, and he took advantage of this characteristic. Gaul was cut up into many small states, each feeling itself rightfully independent. These states fought frequently with one another, and the weaker of them were either forced into dependence on the stronger or voluntarily attached themselves to stronger states for protection. In this way loose leagues or confederations were formed, between which rivalry and warfare went on. In Gallia Celtica the chief confederations were the one headed by the Haedui and the one formerly headed by the Arverni, but in Caesar's time headed by the Sequani. But the evils of faction did not stop here. The individual states, for the most part, had no strong governments. Apparently most of them had been governed by kings one or two generations before Caesar's time; but a series of revolutions had generally abolished the

kingly office and had substituted magistrates elected yearly. The real power lay in the hands of rich nobles. Each of these nobles lived surrounded by numerous slaves and retainers; and as there was no power strong enough to keep them in order, individual nobles or leagues of nobles sometimes pushed their continuous rivalries to the point of civil war.

30. Caesar's Use of the Gallic Factions. This factional spirit was of great assistance to Caesar, for he usually found means to attach one faction or the other to himself. For example, at the outset he found two factions in the state of the Haedui, headed by two brothers, Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, and Dumnorix, hostile to them. By strengthening Diviciacus and checking Dumnorix he secured the help of the state. The state was the leader of one of the two leagues in Celtic Gaul, and Caesar thus secured the submission of all the states in that league without fighting for it. In fact, not only did he have their passive submission, but he obtained from them provisions and men to use in conquering other parts of Gaul.

31. Gallic Civilization. The details of the Gallic manners and customs can be learned best from Chapters **11-20** of Book VI. It will be enough to say here that in Caesar's time the Gauls were not wild barbarians, but had attained a considerable degree of civilization. They had long passed the stage of roaming about from one part of the country to another; though we find, in the first book of the *Commentaries*, that for special reasons the Helvetii intended to leave their homes and find new ones. They had roads and bridges and towns of considerable size, fortified by well-built walls.

VII. Caesar's Army

THE LEGIONS

32. The legions formed the strength of Caesar's army. When the enemy met him in hand-to-hand battle, the legions bore the brunt of the fighting and won him the victory. But since they consisted of heavily armed, and therefore comparatively slow,

foot soldiers, and since their weapons were useless at any considerable distance, the legions needed the assistance of cavalry and light-armed infantry, to complete their success.

33. **Organization of the Legion.** In theory a legion consisted of 6000 men; but battles, accidents, and disease so reduced this number that Caesar's legions probably averaged about 4000 men, or even less. The following table gives the divisions of a legion and their theoretical strength:

century [**centum**, hundred]	= 100 men
2 centuries = 1 maniple	= 200 men
3 maniples = 1 cohort	= 600 men
10 cohorts = 1 legion	= 6000 men

In theory, again, the legions were made up of Roman citizens; but in fact a large part of Caesar's legionary soldiers came from Cisalpine Gaul, which had not yet received the right of citizenship. However, it was thoroughly Romanized, and, in spirit at least, Caesar's legionaries were Roman citizens.

EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

(See Fig. 19, and Plate II. facing p. 111)

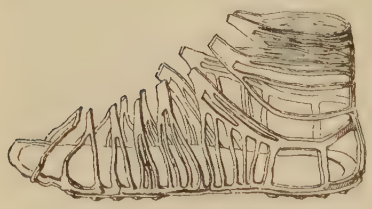


FIG. 15
A ROMAN SOLDIER'S SHOE
In the Museum at Mainz, Germany.

34. **Clothing.** *a.* A sleeveless woolen shirt, reaching nearly to the knees.

b. Tight-fitting leather trousers, or perhaps merely bandages wrapped about the legs.

c. Shoes or sandals.

d. A heavy cloak for bad weather. This served also as a blanket at night.

FIG. 16
GALEA

35. **Armor.** *a.* A helmet (**galea**, Fig. 16) of leather strengthened by bands of metal.

b. A leather cuirass (**lōrīca,** Fig. 17), a coat strengthened by bands of metal across the shoulders, breast, and back.

c. A curved wooden shield (**scūtum**), covered with leather, and having a metal boss in the center. It was about four feet high and two and a half feet wide.

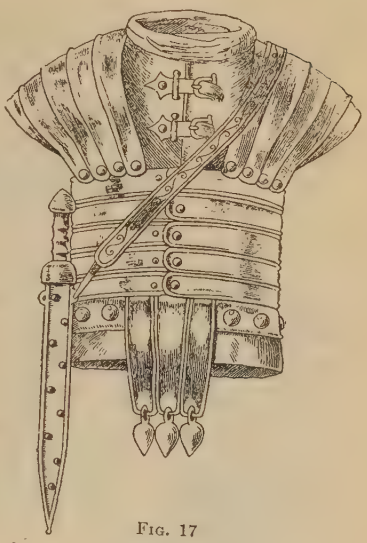


FIG. 17
LŌRĪCA
This is drawn from Trajan's Column, and may not be just what Caesar's men wore.

36. **Arms.** *a.* A heavy wooden javelin (**pīlum,** Fig. 18), with a long iron point which was strong enough to pierce any armor but was likely to bend as it did so. Therefore it could not easily be withdrawn when it had pierced a shield, and could not be thrown back by the enemy. After the battle the javelins were gathered and straightened by the Romans. Each soldier carried but one javelin.

FIG. 18
PĪLA
One is earlier, the other later, than Caesar's time.

We have no exact description of Caesar's **pīlum.** The cut on the left is of one used before Caesar's time, the one on the right is later than his time. It may have been between six and seven feet long, and may have weighed as much as eleven pounds.

b. A straight, heavy, two-edged sword (**gladius,** Fig. 19), about two feet long, adapted for either cutting or thrusting, but used chiefly for thrusting. Its scabbard (**vāgīna**) hung from a belt (**balteus**) which passed over the left shoulder. The sword was thus on the right

side, out of the way of the shield. But the higher officers, who carried no shield, wore the sword on the left side.

FIG. 19
ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

37. Individual Baggage. Besides his personal belongings each soldier carried a leather water bag, cooking utensils, and several days' rations of grain, which seems to have been apportioned out only twice a month. All this, weighing from thirty to forty-five pounds, was made into a pack (**sarcina**) and strapped on a forked stick; this the soldier carried on his shoulder. Perhaps he carried his share of the tools needed for entrenching the camp; or they may have gone with the heavy baggage (**46**). With his arms and armor he must have had a load of some seventy pounds, about that of a modern soldier. While encumbered by their packs the soldiers were said to be **impedītī.** If the army was attacked on the march the packs were stacked in one place under guard, and the soldiers were then **expedītī.** At other times, however, **expedītī** means that the army was not accompanied by the train of heavy baggage (**53**), but the soldiers were carrying their packs. But such marches demanded speed, and doubtless the packs were lightened.

FIG. 20
LEGIONARY SOLDIER ON THE MARCH
For details, see **34-37**.

OFFICERS OF THE LEGIONS

(See Plate II, facing p. 111)

38. Lēgātus. All governors of provinces were given several **lēgātī,** deputies or assistants. These legates were not strictly military officers, but were to be employed by the governors in any way they saw fit. Caesar introduced the innovation of putting a legate in command of each legion just before a battle. When one or more legions were detached from the main army for special service, Caesar put a legate in command; and legates were left in command of the winter quarters during Caesar's absence. But no one legate was in permanent command of any one legion.

39. Quaestor. The quaestors were financial officers, elected yearly by the people at Rome. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province, so that Caesar always had one with him. He took charge of the pay and the supplies of the army. When he was competent, Caesar employed him in battle as he did his legates, putting him in command of a legion.

40. Praefectus Fabrum. The chief of engineers had charge of such matters as the building of bridges, construction of camps, erection of siege works, repair of artillery, and the refitting of ships. He probably had special assistants, but the actual labor was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks.

41. Tribūnus. No single officer permanently commanded a legion, as our colonels command regiments. Each legion had six tribunes, who took the chief command in rotation, while the rest probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special service. In Caesar's army many of the tribunes were experienced and capable officers, who did good service; but others were young men without military experience, who had been appointed only because they were friends or relatives of influential men at Rome whom Caesar wished to please. It was for this reason that Caesar put his legates and

quaestor in command of the legions in battle. On the march or in camp a tribune was in command.

42. Centuriō. The centurions commanded centuries, and there were therefore sixty in each legion. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle. They fought in the ranks like the men and were expected to set the men an example of conspicuous bravery. In battle their position was at the right of their men, the post of danger, because the shields were carried on the left arm. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as their skill and gallantry. For instances of heroic centurions it is worth while to read V, **44**; VI, **38**; and VII, **50**, 10-21. They could hope for no promotion above the rank of centurion; but there were grades of centurions from one to the other of which they rose. The highest of all was the first centurion of the first cohort, the **prīmipīlus.** He and a few others, perhaps the other five of the first cohort, were called centurions of the first rank (**centuriōnēs prīmōrum ōrdinum,** or **prīmī ōrdinēs**), and were commonly summoned to councils of war along with the tribunes and legates.

Fig. 21

A CENTURION

This is the monument of a centurion named Caelius. He wears the civic crown (9) and many other decorations for gallantry. He carries the cane of vine which was the centurion's badge of office, since centurions had the right of flogging soldiers.

Fig. 22

DECORATIONS FOR GALLANTRY

These are enlargements of such decorations as are worn by Caelius (Fig. 21).

STANDARDS OF THE LEGIONS

43. Aquila. Each legion had as its standard a bronze or silver eagle (**aquila**), carried on the top of a wooden staff. It was regarded with almost religious respect, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could befall the legion. It was in charge of the first centurion of the first cohort, and was carried by a man of conspicuous strength and bravery, called the **aquilifer.**

FIG. 23
THE EAGLE OF THE LEGION

44. Signum. Each cohort had its own standard (**signum**), carried by a **signifer** (Fig. 24). These standards were of various forms—an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the staff, below the figure, were fastened the decorations of honor which had been bestowed on the cohort—disks, half moons, wreaths, and tassels. The diversity of form was necessary in order that each soldier might recognize easily the standard of his own cohort. In hasty preparation for battle each man found his place by looking for his stand-

FIG. 24
SIGNIFER

He was the standard bearer of the cohort. On Trajan's Column the *signifer* wears the skin of a wild animal over his head and shoulders, but we do not know that the standard bearers in Caesar's army did.

ard; and all through the battle he regulated his movements by those of his standard. For this reason the technical terms for such maneuvers as advancing and retreating are **signa īnferre, signa referre,** etc.

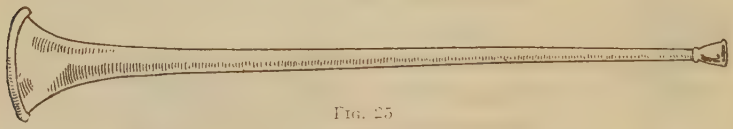


FIG. 25
TUBA

45. **Musical Instruments.** There were no bands, and the only use made of musical instruments was in the giving of signals. The only instrument mentioned by Caesar in the *Gallic War* is the **tuba** (Fig. 25) a straight, brazen trumpet, blown by a **tubicen;** but others were probably used as well (Fig. 26).

BAGGAGE OF THE LEGION

46. The heavy baggage (**impedīmenta**) consisted of tents, provisions, hand-mills for grinding grain, engines of war, etc., and was carried on pack horses or mules (**iūmenta**). These were driven or led by the drivers (**mūliōnēs**) and camp servants (**cālōnēs**), who were probably slaves.

FIG. 26
CORNŪ

AUXILIARY INFANTRY AND CAVALRY

47. **Infantry.** The light-armed infantry, which Caesar usually calls **auxilia,** contained no Roman citizens. Caesar had slingers (**funditōrēs,** see Fig. 103, p. 213) from the Balearic Islands, and archers (**sagittāriī**) from Crete and Numidia; but most of his light-armed infantry was drawn from

friendly Gallic tribes and was armed in the native fashion. He put little reliance on them for serious fighting, but made them useful in various ways: as skirmishers, to delay the enemy's attack; as raiders; in making fortifications at a critical time; for mere show, to impress the enemy with his numbers; and in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were prefects (**praefectī**). Their standard was a banner (**vexillum,** Fig. 112, p. 234) attached to a horizontal cross-piece at the end of a staff.

FIG. 27
LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER

48. Cavalry. Caesar had no Roman cavalry. During his first six years in Gaul he had none but Gallic cavalry, but in the seventh year he secured some Germans and found them much more effective. They were useless against a line of infantry, but met the enemy's cavalry. Caesar employed them especially as scouts and raiders, or in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were **praefectī,** and their standards were **vexilla** (**47** and Fig. 28).

FIG. 28
CAVALRY STANDARD BEARER

THE CAMP

49. A Roman army never halted even for one night without fortifying its camp (**castra**) with a wall and trench. This must have cost two or three hours of hard work; but it made the army safe from attack, and so allowed the general to choose his own time and place for battle; and in case of defeat the camp was a place of refuge.

50. Location and Form of Camp. Whenever it was possible the camp was built on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, so that the Roman army could form its line of battle in front of

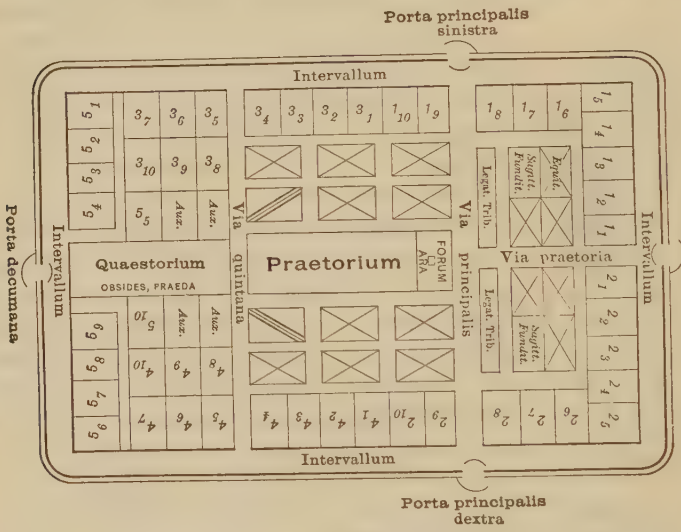


FIG. 29

PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP

The *Praetōrium* was the general's headquarters, so called because the old name for general was *praetor*. The *Porta Praetōria* was the front gate, out of which the general led his army. The rear gate was called *Decumāna* because when there was only one legion, the tenth (*decima*) cohort was quartered by it. The *intervāllum* was a space left free for the movement of soldiers in defending the camp.

the camp and make the enemy charge up hill. The normal shape of the camp was a square or oblong, but it had to be accommodated to the shape of the hill. Fig. 29 shows the normal shape, while Fig. 30 shows the actual shape of one of Caesar's camps. See also Plate IV, facing p. 287. Within the camp, streets were laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, and every legion, every cohort, every maniple, had always the same location. Fig. 29 shows the normal arrangement for a camp which would accommodate five legions.

51. Fortifications of Camp (Fig. 30). The size of the trench (**fossa**) varied, but was usually about nine feet wide and seven deep. The earth, dug out with spades and carried in baskets,

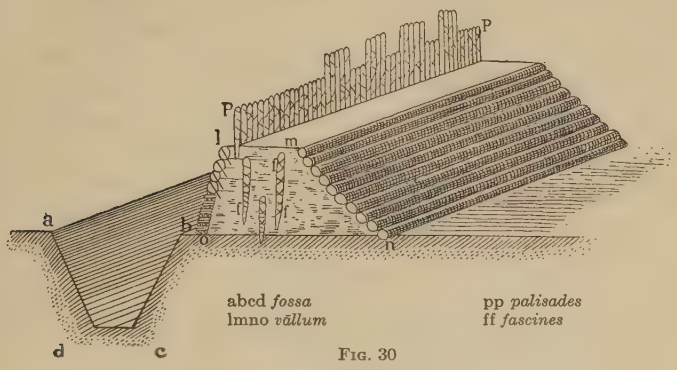


FIG. 30

VĀLLUM AND *FOSSA*

was piled up just inside the trench to make the wall (**vāllum**). This wall was faced partly with sods, partly with bundles of sticks (fascines), so that it was quite steep on the outside. Other fascines were put inside the wall, to strengthen it. It stood about six feet high, was wide enough on top to let the soldiers move about comfortably in fighting, and sloped so gradually toward the inside that soldiers could easily ascend it. Sometimes this slope was faced with logs, so as to make steps. On the outer edge of the top stood a row of palisades (**vāllī**), about four feet high, which served as a breastwork. In case of an attack the enemy would be halted by the ditch several feet from the wall, and be completely exposed to the Roman javelins, while the defenders stood on a higher position, protected by a breastwork, and could throw their missiles with great effect. In times of especial danger, towers (**turrēs**) were erected at intervals on top of the wall.

52. Gates of Camp. Usually there was one gate (**porta**) on each of the four sides; but in the camp represented in Fig. 31

there were two gates in front, where the soldiers had most occasion to pass in and out. The gates were mere openings in the wall, about forty feet wide as a rule. Fig. 31 shows how they were protected. A short curved wall projected into the camp from the left side of the gate. A line of soldiers stood in the gate, and another manned this wall. If the enemy got into the opening they would be exposed on their shieldless side to a shower of missiles from the wall. Ordinarily this was a sufficient protection, and it left the gates open for a sudden charge from within. But in times of great emergency the gates could be walled up solidly.

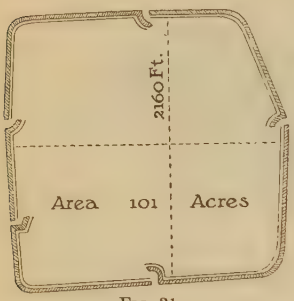


Fig. 31
CAMP ON THE AXONA, II, 8

THE MARCH

53. Line of March. The vanguard usually consisted of cavalry and light-armed infantry. Under ordinary circumstances each legion was followed by a train of pack animals carrying its baggage; but in the near neighborhood of the enemy all the baggage was brought together, preceded by most of the legions and followed by the rest.

54. Length of March. The length of a day's march of course varied greatly, according to the nature of the country and the need for haste. As the soldier had to carry perhaps seventy pounds of arms and baggage, and as the army had to halt early in the afternoon to give time for making camp, the rate of march of the army could be nothing like that of an unencumbered individual. Probably when there was no need of haste the average march was no more than twelve to fifteen miles, and a day of rest was given about every fifth day. But Caesar, like Napoleon, owed much of his success to his power of inspiring his army to great efforts on the march. When he speaks

PLATE I—STORMING AN ANCIENT TOWN

1. *Turris.* 2. *Testūdō arietāria.* 3. *Testūdō.* 4. *Onager.* 5. *Ballista.*

of forced marches (**magna itinera, maxima itinera**), we are to think of marches of from eighteen to twenty-five miles a day, or even more. On one occasion he marched four legions, without baggage, fifty Roman miles in less than thirty hours, including all stops.

THE BATTLE

55. Since the legions had to do the serious work of fighting, the line of battle was arranged solely with reference to their tactics. When the enemy were within the short range of the Roman javelins they were met by a volley of these deadly missiles and their ranks were thus broken. Immediately the Romans charged, and the rest of the battle was fought at close quarters with the sword. When possible, therefore, the line of battle was drawn up facing down a gentle slope. This gave greater range to the javelins and greater impetus to the charge; while the enemy must begin the battle breathless from a charge up the hill. The auxiliary infantry might be posted in front of the line, but it was expected to do no more than delay the attack of the enemy and then get out of the way. More often it was posted on the flanks, sometimes merely as a show of strength. The cavalry might meet the cavalry of the enemy. Otherwise it usually merely awaited the rout of the enemy, when it pursued and cut to pieces the fugitives.

56. Line of Battle. The line of battle was commonly triple (**triplex aciēs**), though sometimes only double (**duplex aciēs**). In the triple line of battle the first line was composed of the first four cohorts of each legion, standing side by side, with no intervals between the cohorts. Three cohorts of each legion formed the second line, which stood a short distance behind the first, ready to relieve it when it became exhausted in the battle. The remaining three cohorts of each legion formed the third line, in the rear, and were held as a reserve for any emergency. Each of these lines was eight or ten men deep, and only the front rank of the first line could engage in the

battle at any one moment. But that rank would fight vigorously for a few moments, then fall back and be relieved by the next rank, and so on until all the men of the first line had been engaged. Then it was relieved as a whole by the second line.

The men in the ranks did not stand shoulder to shoulder, but with some interval between them; otherwise the front rank could never have used the sword. See what Caesar says about

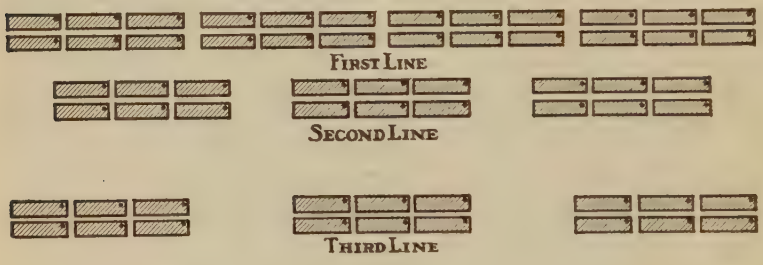


Fig. 32

ACIĒS TRIPLEX

In actual combat there was not even so much space between the units of the first line as is shown here. The dots indicate the positions of the centurions. The first cohort is on the extreme right of the first line; the fourth, on the left.

the twelfth legion in II, 25, 3-4, and 16-17. In relieving the ranks the men stepped back and forth through these intervals. Doubtless much of their training was in doing this without confusion.

57. Orbis. When surrounded by the enemy and hard pressed, a body of men would form what is now called a hollow square, and what the Romans called a circle (**orbis**), with the baggage and camp servants inside the ring of armed men.

THE CAPTURE OF TOWNS

58. A great part of Caesar's military operations consisted in the capture of walled towns. The fortification of these towns was rather primitive, but it was quite effective (Fig. 33). The face of the wall showed regular rows of log ends separated by

huge stones. No one log could be grappled and pulled out, for they were all fastened together far within the wall. The logs would not burn, for they were each imbedded in stone and earth. A battering-ram could demolish a solid stone wall, but the framework of timbers defied it. Therefore Caesar relied little on making breaches in the walls and entering in that way. But there were three other possible methods—a blockade, a sudden assault, and a formal siege.

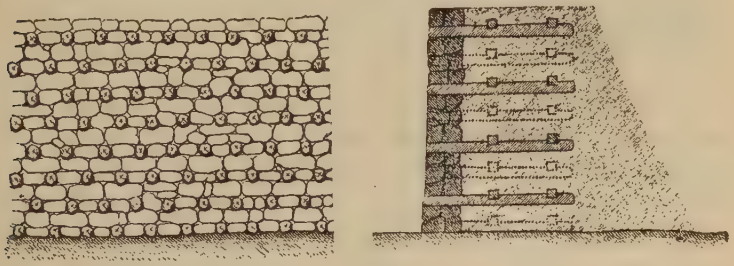


FIG. 33

GALLIC WALL

The cut on the left is a front view, as described in VII, 23; that on the right a cross section.

59. Blockade (obsidiō). A ring of fortifications could be built around the town, and the place starved into submission. But this was too slow a method to be employed unless all other methods were hopeless, and Caesar used it only once in the Gallic War (VII, 68-90).

60. Sudden Assault (oppugnātiō repentīna). If a town had low walls and few defenders, it might be taken by a sudden assault. Archers and slingers kept the wall partly clear of defenders. Soldiers approached the wall in safety by holding their shields over their heads and letting them overlap, forming a **testūdō** (tortoise, Plate I, 3). If there was a trench around the wall, they filled it with bundles of brushwood (**crātēs,** fascines). Then they mounted the wall by means of scaling ladders (**scālae,** Plate I). But such towns would usually surrender without a struggle, so that the method was little used.

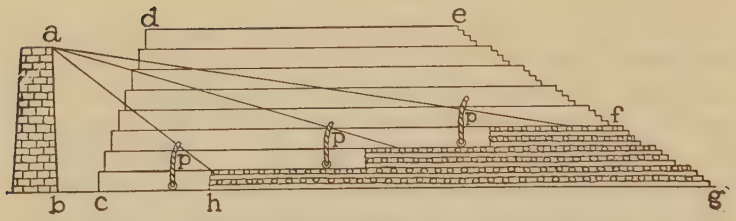


FIG. 34

SIDE VIEW OF AGGER IN PROCESS OF CONSTRUCTION

a b, the enemy's wall. *f g h*, part already constructed. *c d e f h*, part to be constructed. *a b c d*, part to be filled in with earth and rubbish at the last moment. *p p p*, lines of *pluteī* protecting the workmen. The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the *pluteī*.

61. Formal Siege (oppugnātiō). The favorite method was by the use of the **agger** and tower (**turris**). The agger was a great causeway, built of logs and earth, which sloped gradually up toward the top of the wall. Generally it was not intended to be as high as the wall. In that case a tower, several stories high, was pushed up the causeway on rollers. From the upper stories, which rose higher than the wall, archers and slingers and artillery shot down the defenders. When the tower was near enough, a drawbridge was let down from one of the stories to the top of the wall, and the Romans charged across it. Sometimes the causeway was as high as the wall, and thus itself gave access to its top (Fig. 34). Sometimes, if the wall was low and the ground about it level, no causeway was

FIG. 35

SOLDIERS BUILDING AN AGGER (?)

If this is an agger, it is disproportionately small. See p. 8. When timber could be got, the agger was built up in this way and then covered with earth. Therefore an agger could be burned (VII, 24, 8). Two soldiers in front are working a piece of artillery. Two other pieces stand on the camp wall in the background.

built, and the tower was pushed over the ground to the wall. Then a battering-ram might be hung in the lowest story, and the drawbridge was let down from one of the upper stories. Plate I illustrates this method of using the tower, as well as several other devices; but the city is not a Gallic town. We do not know the height of Caesar's towers. One ancient writer tells us they should have from ten to twenty stories and should be from 60 to 120 cubits high, about 90 to 180 feet.

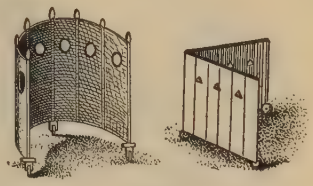


FIG. 36
PLUTEĪ

62. Means of Protecting the Besiegers. In building the agger and carrying on the other operations of a siege the assailants had to approach within easy range of missiles from the wall; hence they made use of several forms of protection:

a. The **pluteus** (Fig. 36) was a heavy shield, several feet high, mounted on wheels. A line of these, parallel to the wall, gave protection to men working immediately behind it; and they could be moved forward as the work advanced.

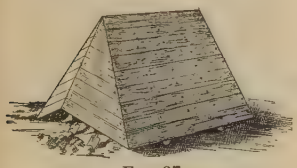


FIG. 37
MUSCULUS

b. The **musculus** (Fig. 37) was a hut with one end open and the other end partially closed. Its roof was strong enough to withstand the shock of great stones which might be dropped upon it from the wall. It could be pushed up to the wall, and under its shelter men could dig out the foundation of the wall.

c. The **testūdō arietāria** (Plate I, 2) was a similar hut in which hung a battering-ram (**ariēs**), a heavy timber capped with iron, intended to be swung against the wall.

d. The **vīnea** (Fig. 39) was a lighter hut, open at both ends. A

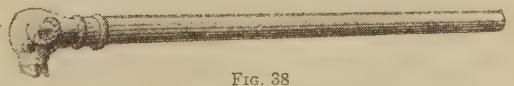


FIG. 38
BATTERING-RAM

number of these placed end to end made a safe covered gallery extending from a point out of range up to the **musculī, testūdinēs,** or **pluteī.**

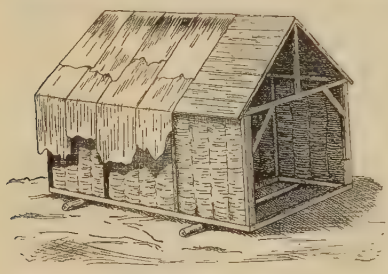


FIG. 39
VĪNEA

All these huts were pushed forward on rollers.

63. The Artillery. Caesar had with him engines of war the purpose of which corresponded to that of modern artillery. They were too heavy and clumsy to be of much service in battle; hence their chief use was in siege operations. The general name **tormenta** is derived from **torqueō,** to twist, and was applied to them because the propelling force was obtained by twisting a stick between two tightly stretched horsehair ropes.

a. The **ballista** (Fig. 40) threw heavy stones at a considerable angle from the horizontal. We do not know the range of Caesar's artillery. Other writers tell of **ballistae** which threw stones weighing nearly 60 pounds some 1200 feet, and of a **ballista** which could throw a stone weighing 360 pounds.

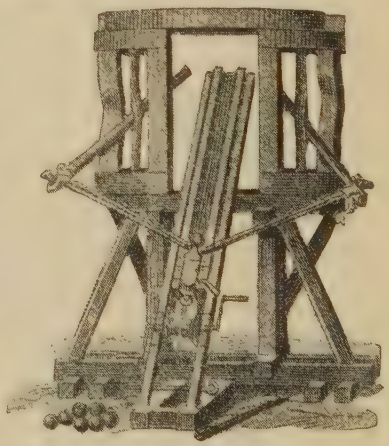


FIG. 40
BALLISTA

b. The catapult (**catapulta**) threw great arrows nearly horizontally. Fig. 41 makes most of its mechanism clear without explanation. (A) is an arrangement for raising or lowering the rear of the nearly horizontal track, thus regulating the range. The track is grooved to hold a long, sliding carriage, on

the rear portion of which is the trigger (B). The operation of firing was as follows: The carriage was pushed forward till the claws of the trigger were over the bowstring; a block (C) was shoved under the heavy rear end of the trigger, and the claws were thus held down on the string; the carriage was drawn back by means of the windlass, and held in place by the hook (D); the arrow was laid on the grooved upper surface of the carriage, with its end resting on the string between the claws of the trigger; the block (C) was withdrawn and the rear end of the trigger fell by its own weight, thus releasing the string.

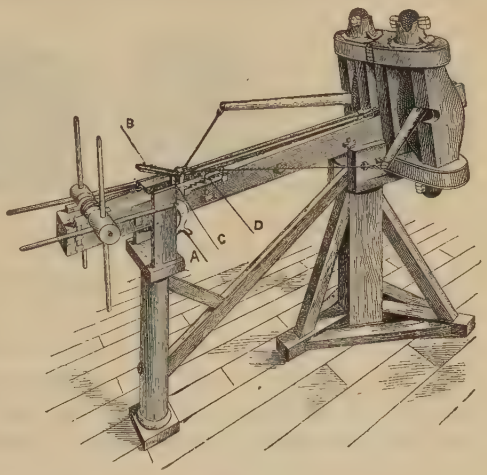


FIG. 41
CATAPULT

c. The **scorpiō** was a small catapult.

d. The **onager** (Plate I, 4) threw stones, like the ballista, but was of different construction.

THE FLEET

64. The fleet is to be considered as belonging to the army, rather than as a separate organization; for when Caesar had need of it he manned it with his legionaries, put tribunes and centurions in command of individual ships, and made one of his legates its admiral. Nautical operations were in charge of **gubernātōrēs,** navigators. The ships of war were about eight times as long as they were broad, and were therefore called

nāvēs longae, in distinction from the transports (**nāvēs onerāriae**), which were shorter and wider. They had a mast and single sail, but in battle depended on oars for their propulsion. Their prows (Figs. 42, and 133, p. 283) were armed with metal

FIG. 42

TWO COINS OF MARK ANTONY

Left: A war galley. Right: An eagle between two standards.

Left: Head of Mark Antony. Right: Prow of a ship.

beaks (**rōstra**), with which to ram the ships of the enemy. If the Romans failed in this they sought to make the battle as much as possible like a battle on land, their special object being to grapple one of the enemy's ships and board it.

VIII. CAESAR'S WAR AND THE WORLD WAR

METHODS AND IMPLEMENTS

65. Caesar's battles were the hand-to-hand fighting of one mass of men with another. Slingers and archers might do a little damage at a little distance. Caesar's men broke the formation of the enemy by a volley of javelins just before they met. But these were mere preliminaries to the real fighting. At first thought it may appear that explosives, gas, and airplanes have changed all this. Before the World War some military men argued that the bayonet was obsolete. But during the war a competent observer reported: "To come to close quarters, where men can use the bayonet, constitutes the final and decisive stage in nearly every battle and is, therefore, the ultimate aim of all preliminary strategy and tactics. The bayonet is still the decisive weapon in battle, just as it has been since man

first fashioned an edged weapon." Apparently, then, a battle is today essentially what it was in Caesar's day, hand-to-hand fighting, with the preliminaries made more awful and more effective.

66. Many interesting revivals of ancient methods and arms might be noted. Some have said that what distinguished this war from earlier ones was the amount of trench digging. But long before this war someone said that Caesar conquered Gaul with a spade. It is safe to say that Caesar's men, who entrenched every camp they made, did more digging than the soldiers of the late war. Helmets, long obsolete, became an essential part of every soldier's equipment, just as they were in Caesar's army. "Trench knives" were a revival of the Romans' short swords. During the siege of Alesia (VII, **68-90**) Caesar devised, as a part of his defenses, a series of pits with sharp stakes set up in the bottom: they are shown in the cut illustrating his fortifications at that point. During the recent war an illustrated paper showed a picture of precisely the same thing; under it were the words, "The Germans devised this method of protecting their trenches."

GEOGRAPHICAL CORRESPONDENCES

67. In Books I, **30-54**, II, and IV, **1-15** Caesar tells of marching and fighting on ground which was fought over again in the World War. Yet he never saw some places that are most interesting to us—Verdun, St. Mihiel, and the Argonne. The reason for both the correspondences and the differences may be seen by a study of the map on page 57.

68. Between France and Germany lies a great barrier of mountains and hills. A little north of the Jura Mountains, on the Swiss frontier, the Vosges (*Vosegus*) Mountains begin. They extend north and break down into a wide stretch of broken hills which reaches to the river Meuse (*Mosa*). The only two natural routes between the two countries are (1) south of the Vosges Mountains, through the gap guarded by the

great French fortress Belfort; and (2) through the comparatively level land of Belgium, especially by following the line of the principal railway between Berlin and Paris—Cologne, Liège, and up the Meuse and Sambre (*Sabis*). Both these routes were used by Caesar in approaching the Rhine. So far as they were used in the recent war we may expect correspondences in the geography of the two wars.

69. But there is now a third route, through the hills north of the Vosges. These hills are full of coal and iron, and they are therefore penetrated by railroads and good highways. The troops that attacked Verdun and occupied St. Mihiel and the Argonne came through Coblenz, up the Moselle (*Mosella*), and through Luxemburg. The Germans were defeated at Nancy in the early days of the war. They failed later to take Verdun, after a terrible waste of life. These failures were due in large part to the opportunities for defense afforded by the broken country. The American troops who fought at St. Mihiel and in the Argonne toward the end of the war know the difficulties of that country. Caesar did not use this route because of its difficulty and because there was nothing there that he wanted. Therefore there are no definite correspondences between the two wars along this route. Yet Caesar and Labienus may have approached it in their movements against the Treveri, briefly and vaguely told in Books V and VI.

70. The Southern Route. By the southern route Ariovistus entered Gaul and Caesar marched against Ariovistus (see Campaign Map for I, **30-54**). Between the Vosges mountains and the Rhine lies Alsace, the Sequanian land occupied by Ariovistus. Alsace was taken from the French by the Germans in 1871 and had been bitterly mourned ever since by the French. Therefore in the early days of the World War the French went past Belfort and began occupying Alsace. But they soon learned that the Germans were invading France by the northern routes and were forced to withdraw troops from Alsace. They therefore formed a defensive line running north

WORLD WAR BATTLE LINES

• • • Farthest advance of the Germans. ——— Battle line after the Battle of the Marne. — • — • — Boundaries before the war.

This map also shows the modern names of places mentioned in Bks. I, II, IV, and most of those in V-VII.

from Belfort along the Vosges Mountains. This was a "quiet sector," because the Germans never made any serious attack here. Therefore when American troops began coming over in 1917 they were given this part of the line to hold until they were sufficiently trained to be sent into the fighting farther north. So American troops for months looked down over the battlefield of Caesar and Ariovistus, doubtless longing for a chance to do what Caesar had done, drive the Germans out of Alsace.

71. **The Northern Route.** Caesar used this route four times: it is shown on the Campaign Maps for Books II and IV; and he used it in the operations described in Books V, 24-52, and VI. In 1914 the main invasion of France was by this route. On August 4 the Germans attacked Liège, and three days later they entered the city. They passed Mt. Falhize, the probable location of the town of the Atuatuci (II, 29-33). On August 22 they took Namur, thought by some to have been the town of the Atuatuci. The heroic and unexpected defense made by the Belgians had given the British and French time to throw a comparatively small army across the path of invasion. Its line crossed the Sambre at Charleroi, east of the place where Caesar defeated the Nervii (II, 17-28). At this point occurred the first battle between the French and British and the Germans. The British, on the left, occupied Mons, where Napoleon thought the Nervii put their non-combatants (II, 28). Although the allied army was forced to retreat rapidly and with great losses, it did so in good order. Meanwhile General Joffre, the French commander in chief, was transferring troops and placing them. On September 5 the retreating army and the other allied armies occupied a line some 180 miles long, bending to the south from Paris on the west to Verdun on the east. On that day General Joffre issued his famous order: "The hour has come to advance at all costs, and to die where you stand rather than give way." Then

followed the "Battle of the Marne," and the Germans were forced to retreat in their turn to a line which remained almost unchanged to the last year of the war.

72. This line passed a little east of Rheims, the capitol of the Remi (II, **3**), crossed the Aisne (*Axona*) at Berry-au-Bac, where Caesar built his camp against the Belgians (II, **8**), ran west along the Aisne valley and past Noviodunum (II, **12**), then turned north to the North Sea. In marching from Berry-au-Bac to Noviodunum Caesar must have paralleled this line very closely. In 1917 the Allies made a desperate attempt to break this line north of the Aisne and did drive the Germans back a trifle to a road called *Chemin des Dames*. In the spring of 1918 the Germans made a series of great drives, the first of which was aimed at Amiens (*Samarobrīva*), the capital of the Ambiani (II, **15**); the last began in the neighborhood of Soissons, was aimed at Paris, and culminated at Chateau Thierry, where the American marines made their famous stand.

73. Other Geographical Correspondences. Caesar destroyed the Usipetes and Tencteri (IV, **1-15**) at or near Goch, now an important railway point, at which the Germans used to search the trains coming from Holland into Germany.

Caesar's second bridge across the Rhine (VI, **9**) was at Coblenz or somewhere within ten miles of it. After the armistice and in accordance with its terms American troops occupied Coblenz for a considerable time.

When Caesar's fleet sailed out of the Loire in the war with the Veneti (III, **7-16**), they passed the site of St. Nazaire. This was a little fishing village at the outbreak of the World War, but was made a great port by the Americans, with huge warehouses, docks, and a hospital. From it an American railroad ran to the front.

When Caesar first sailed to Britain (IV, **20-38**) he used the harbor of Boulogne. This was the port most used by the British in landing troops and supplies in France.

IX. Caesar's Geography

74. Caesar penetrated an unknown country, without compass and without anything that we should recognize as a map. He found his way about by asking questions and following the roads. Since he has left us no complete description of Gaul, Spain, and Britain, we cannot be sure just what he thought about their relative positions. But it is certain that the map on p. 61 shows something like his idea of them, and that it is nearer the truth than anything he could have drawn. In that map, the mainland is drawn from the description of Strabo, the most eminent geographer of his time, who wrote more than fifty years after Caesar and should have known more about geography than Caesar did. But Britain and Ireland are drawn from the description given by Caesar in V, **13**; for Strabo thought that Ireland lay north of Britain.

75. No more accurate map than this was drawn for many centuries after Caesar's time; most maps were far worse. No accurate map could ever be drawn until it was possible to calculate the latitude and longitude of the places to be put on the map. The ancients knew how to calculate latitude roughly, but in Caesar's day they had not done it for these countries. It was absolutely impossible for them to calculate longitude; for that calculation depends on knowing the difference in time between two places, which must be ascertained by the use of accurate clocks or some sort of electrical communication. The ancients had neither.

76. The map explains the mistakes made in two of Caesar's chapters. In I, **1**, 14-23 he tells us that Belgium lies northeast of an unnamed point, evidently the point at which a Roman would enter Gaul; that Celtic Gaul lies to the north; and Aquitania to the northwest. But in fact Belgium lies to the north, Celtic Gaul to the northwest, and Aquitania to the west. As Caesar entered Gaul over the western Alps, this map makes the divisions lie as he says. Again, in V, **13**, 5 Caesar tells us

AN ANCIENT IDEA OF GEOGRAPHY

that the western side of Britain lies toward Spain. This map makes it do so approximately; but Caesar may have thought that Spain lay still farther north than this map shows. Nearly two centuries later an historian wrote that it took half a day to sail from Spain to Britain.

A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list of books will suggest those which are most helpful to pupils and teachers who read only English. Those who wish to make a more detailed study of special points will find that Holmes gives references to almost everything of importance in the enormous literature of Caesar, except on the linguistic side.

Editions

T. Rice Holmes. (Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1914.) In this edition the greatest authority on the geographical and military side of Caesar summarizes in useful form the more important discussions contained in his *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul* and *Ancient Britain.*

Kraner and Dittenberger, revised by H. Meusel. (Weidmann, Berlin, 1913.) Vol. 1 contains Books I-IV. This is virtually a new edition by Meusel. Although the notes are in German, this book is included because the text represents the final conclusions of the greatest authority on Caesar's language and text. The notes and critical appendix give briefly his reasons for the more important readings.

Caesar's Life and Campaigns

T. Rice Holmes. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul;* second edition. (Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1911.)

T. Rice Holmes. *Ancient Britain and the Invasions of Julius Caesar.* (Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1907.)

These two books give the best discussion to be found in any language of the geographical and military problems. Mr. Holmes summarizes the views of all his predecessors and gives the evidence in full. The discussions are sometimes too full for a busy teacher.

Napoleon III. *History of Julius Caesar.* (Out of print, but may be obtained at second hand. If possible get the Atlas with the two volumes. The French edition is more easily obtained.) Napoleon III used his imperial resources in employing scholars and military men to make this book, and in financing excavations to determine certain facts. Vol. 2 gives a full and interesting narrative of the Gallic campaigns. Until Mr. Holmes's books appeared, it was the most important contribution to the study of Caesar's story.

Col. T. A. Dodge. *Caesar.* (Houghton, Mifflin and Co., 1894.) This is based on Napoleon's work and may be useful if the latter cannot be ob-

tained. It is included because it is accessible and readable. But it has no independent value, and its statements about places and movements should not be regarded as authoritative.

W. Warde Fowler. *Julius Caesar and the Foundations of the Roman Empire.* (G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1892.) The best life of Caesar.

Plutarch's *Lives.* Every pupil should read the life of Caesar.

Military Affairs

H. P. Judson. *Caesar's Army.* (Ginn and Co., 1888.) This gives much fuller information about the organization and tactics of the Roman army than can be given in the introduction of an edition. It should be at hand for reference.

Eugene S. McCartney. *Warfare by Land and Sea.* In the series "Our Debt to Greece and Rome." (Marshall Jones & Co., Boston, 1923.) An illuminating discussion of ancient military tactics and strategy, and a comparison with modern warfare. It does not cover the ground of Judson's *Caesar's Army.*

R. Oehler. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico.* (Schmidt und Günther, Leipzig, 1907.) The best collection of illustrations of soldiers, arms, and implements taken from ancient sources. The notes and discussions are in German.

REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS

In the grammatical references, App. = Appendix (following the text); G.-L. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; H.-B. = Hale and Buck; H. = Harkness. In each case the latest revision has been followed.

References are made to books of the text in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic numerals, to lines in light-faced Arabic numerals. Thus, III, **2,** 11 = Book III, Chapter **2,** line 11.

In the page vocabularies, the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, following definitions, indicate the number of times the word is used in Books I-IV. An asterisk (*) indicates that the word is used five or more times in those books. Letters following geographical names, for example (Aa), correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

abbr. = abbreviation.
abl. = ablative.
acc. = accusative.
act. = active.
adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb, adverbial.
card. = cardinal.
cf. = *cōnfer*, compare.
chap. = chapter.
comp. = comparative.
conj. = conjunction.
dat. = dative.
def. = defective.
dem. = demonstrative.
dim. = diminutive.
distr. = distributive.
e.g. = *exemplī grātiā*, for example.
etc. = *et cētera*, and so forth.
f. = feminine.
freq. = frequentative.
fut. = future.
gen. = genitive.
i.e. = *id est*, that is.
impers. = impersonal.
impf. = imperfect.
incept. = inceptive.
ind. = indicative.
indecl. = indeclinable.
indef. = indefinite.
inf. = infinitive.
int. = introduction.
interrog. = interrogative.
intr. = intransitive.
l., ll. = line, lines.
lit. = literally.
m. = masculine.
neg. = negative.
n., neut. = neuter.
n. (in grammatical references) = note
nom. = nominative.
num. = numeral.
ord. = ordinal.
p., pp. = page, pages.
part. = participle.
pass. = passive.
pers. = personal.
pf. = perfect.
pl. = plural.
past pf. = past perfect.
poss. = possessive.
prep. = preposition.
pres. = present.
pron. = pronoun.
reflex. = reflexive.
rel. = relative.
sc. = *scīlicet*, supply.
sing. = singular.
subj. = subjunctive.
sup. = superlative.
tr. = transitive.

THE STORY OF BOOK I, CHAPTERS 1 TO 29

WAR WITH THE HELVETII

The Helvetii were a Gallic people living in northern Switzerland. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. During the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri a part of the Helvetii had left their country independently and defeated a Roman army in 107 B.C. Many of the Helvetii had joined the Cimbri and Teutoni in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 and 101 B.C. After the disastrous result of these attempts the Helvetii had remained comparatively quiet for a long time; but now, dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their country, they determined to seek wider fields.

The originator of this plan was Orgetorix, their most powerful nobleman. But the Helvetii soon learned that he was trying to further ambitious plans of his own and to use them as tools; that he intended to make himself their king, and then to unite with two neighboring states in the subjugation of all Gaul. The penalty for the crime of aiming at royal power was death, but Orgetorix anticipated the punishment by committing suicide. Yet the Helvetii persisted in the plans which they had adopted at his suggestion. They made all preparations, then burned their homes and gathered near the western end of Lake Geneva, ready to set out.

But Rome had been watching their preparations in some alarm. If the Helvetii marched through the Province, they could not fail to give trouble to the Romans. And what was a more serious matter, if the Helvetii left their country vacant it would be occupied by the Germans; and the Germans were dangerous neighbors. Caesar's term of office as governor of Gaul began in the year of their departure. Learning that the Helvetii intended to set out sooner than he had expected, he hurried to Geneva, so that when they gathered he was there to meet them. He destroyed the bridge across the Rhone, which they had failed to secure, and with his one legion hastily made and manned a line of defenses on the south bank of the river. He then forbade their crossing, and easily checked their attempts to disobey his orders.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. The great host, with its women and

children and thousands of wagons, marched slowly through this to the Saone, and its van crossed the river and began plundering the land of the Haedui. Meanwhile Caesar had hastened back to northern Italy and returned with five legions. The Haedui, who had been nominal allies of the Romans for many years, now appealed to Caesar. He was not sorry to appear as the champion of Gallic freedom, for he thus gained a footing in Gaul. Finding that one of the four divisions of the Helvetii had not yet crossed the Saone, he fell upon it and cut it to pieces. Immediately he crossed the river in pursuit of the main body. For fifteen days he followed it, but on account of the nature of the country he was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Believing that this action was due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. In a hard-fought battle he defeated them with immense loss; and the remnant of the once proud and mighty people sadly returned to its mountain home.

CAMPAIGN MAP FOR BOOK I, 1-29

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. The Latobrigi and the Tulingi, whom he conquered, lived across the Rhine and cannot be shown on this map. The Boi are shown in the territory given them by the Haedui after their defeat (**28,** 13-17). Although Caesar had to fight his way through the Ceutrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges (**10,** 12-14), their territory is not colored, because Caesar apparently did not care to force the complete submission of these insignificant mountain tribes.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. It is true that at the end of this campaign the states so colored only asked for Caesar's protection, and did not intend to come under his control; but Caesar soon turned the protectorate into full control. The following considerations determine the amount of Gaul to be colored: envoys came from "nearly all Gaul" (**30,** 1); but this means only Celtic Gaul; for we learn of the submission of the Belgae in Book II, of the Aquitani in Book III. The part of Sequania occupied by Ariovistus (**31,** 32) is left uncolored. In II, **34** we are given a list of northwestern states which did not submit till the end of Caesar's second summer in Gaul; these also are left uncolored. We may assume that the rest of Celtic Gaul sent envoys at the end of the present campaign; therefore it is colored.

The line of march shows Caesar's route in crossing the Alps the second time, with the five legions (**10,** 8-18). It also shows the route of the Helvetii from the point at which they left their territory. After crossing the Arar Caesar's route coincides with that of the Helvetii.

Battlefields are marked by x. The great battle was correctly located near Montmort by Stoffel (*Guerre Civile,* II, 439-453). His plan of the battle is shown on pp. 131 and 135 and is explained in the notes. Bircher afterwards adopted the same location but gave a different plan of the battle, which is approved by Mr. Holmes. But because Bircher's plan robs **circumvenīre** (**25,** 15) of all meaning, and for other reasons, it seems improbable.

GENERAL DIRECTIONS FOR USE OF THIS BOOK

1. A separate text edition is supplied free by the publishers with every copy of this book. Teachers should insist that every pupil get one and use it in class.

2. The page vocabularies give each word when it first occurs. After that, if not remembered, it must be looked up in the general Vocabulary at the end of the book. In the page vocabularies the definition is not always complete; but it usually gives the general meaning, from which others are derived, and a special meaning which fits the passage in the text. Definitions to fit all passages are given in the general Vocabulary. An asterisk after the definition means that the word occurs five or more times in Books I-IV: a figure, 1, 2, 3, or 4, is used when the word occurs less frequently. The pupil will save trouble by mastering at once the first meaning of the words that are to occur frequently.

3. The correct English pronunciation of all proper names is indicated by diacritical marks. For the meaning of these marks see the first page of the General Vocabulary. The English pronunciation of proper names, not the Roman, should always be used in translating.

4. It is impossible to understand and appreciate Caesar's story unless one follows it on the map. The letters in parentheses which follow geographical names, in the vocabulary, correspond to the letters on the margins of the map in the front of the book. By their aid places can be found easily. The campaign maps at the beginning of each book (each half of Book I) show every place mentioned in that book, the route followed, and (by the coloring) how much was accomplished in that book toward the conquering of Gaul.

5. The grammar references in the notes on **1-29** are carefully planned to help the pupil in mastering those principles of syntax which are used again and again all through Caesar and which are needed for reading any Latin. In the notes on **1-29** references are given three times for each of these principles, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference is given, attention is called to the fact: see, for example, the note at the end of Chapter **5.** If these references are used as planned, the pupil will make much better progress through the rest of the books. Remember that syntax only means the way in which words are put together to make sense; it must be learned sometime.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā

---

1. Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gallia (găl′ĭ-ă), *better*, Gaul, *including either* (1) *Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or* (2) *only Celtica. See map.* ∗

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (App. 66), *intr.*, be. ∗

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all; as a whole. ∗

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *tr.*, divide, separate; **dīvīsus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, divided. ∗

in, *prep. with acc. and abl. With acc., of motion from one place into or toward another place*, into, to. *With abl., of rest or motion within a place*, in. ∗

pars, partis, *f.*, part. ∗

trēs, tria, *gen.* **trium** (III), *card. num. adj.*, three. ∗

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what. ∗

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *gen.* **ūnīus** (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one. ∗

2. incolō, -colere, -coluī, —, *tr. and intr.* [**colō,** cultivate], inhabit, dwell in. ∗

Belgae, -ārum, *m.* (ABdefg), the Belgae (bĕl′jē), *or* Belgians. ∗

alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* **alterīus** (App. 32), another, other. ∗

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *m. pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (ăk′wĭ-tā′nī). ∗

tertius, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**ter,** thrice], third. ∗

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen.* **ipsīus** (App. 59), *intensive pron.*, self (*not to be confused with the reflexive* **suī,** self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves. ∗

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language. 3

Chap. **1.** *A brief description of the great divisions of Gaul, and of their inhabitants.*

1. omnis, *as a whole*, shows that *Gallia* here has meaning (1) of the vocabulary.

dīvīsa: the adjective.

partēs trēs: on the divisions of Gaul, see Int. 28.

quārum ūnam, *one of which* (*parts*). **ūnam:** case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

2. Belgae: pronounce all proper names as indicated in the Vocabulary. See page 68, 3.

aliam, tertiam: supply *partem incolunt.*

quī = *iī quī, those who:* a nominative pronoun antecedent is often omitted.

ipsōrum linguā, *in their own language.* **linguā:** case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmāni-

3. Celtae, -ārum, *m.*, the Celtae (sĕl′tē), *better*, the Celts. 1

noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.* [nōs, we], our, ours, our own. *

Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic; *m. pl. as noun*, the Gauls. *

appellō, 1, *tr.*, call by name, name, call. *

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.* (App. 54), this, this man, woman, *or* thing. *

īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.* [**īnstituō,** set up, establish], a fixed course *or* principle; habit, institution, custom. 3

4. lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law, statute. 4

inter, *prep. with acc.*, among, between; *with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action* (App. 166), with, to, *or* from each other *or* one another. *

suī, sibi, sē *or* **sēsē,** *reflex. pron. of third person* (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves. *

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, *tr. and intr.* [**ferō,** carry. App. 81], be different, differ. 1

ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before vowels and some consonants*), *prep. with abl.*, from; by. *

Garumna, -ae, *m.* (DEcd), the Garumna (gă-rŭm′nă), *or* Garonne. 3

5. flūmen, -inis, *n.* [**fluō,** flow], river, stream. *

Matrona, -ae, *m.* (Bef), the *river* Matrona (măt′rō-nă), *now* the Marne. 1

et, *conj.*, and; **et . . . et,** both . . . and. *

Sēquana, -ae, *m.* (BCdef), the *river* Sequana (sĕk′wă-nă), *better*, Seine. 1

6. fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong; brave. *

proptereā, *adv.* [**propter,** because of], on this account; **proptereā quod,** because. *

quod, *conj.*, because. *

cultus, -ūs, *m.* [**colō,** cultivate], cultivation; civilization. 2

atque, ac (**ac** *only before consonants*, **atque** *before vowels and consonants*), *conj.*, and also, and even, and. *

hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.* [**hūmānus,** human], humanity, refinement, culture. 2

FIG. 43
A COIN OF CAESAR

This was made after the conquest of Gaul.
Left: Head of Venus.
Right: A trophy of Gallic Arms.

3. Celtae, Gallī: case? App. 95, *a*: G.-L. 205; 206: A. 283; 284: B. 167; 168, 2, *b*: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 393, 8.

linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus, *in language, institutions, and laws.* Notice the absence of a conjunction. Latin usually says either "a, b, c," or "a and b and c," while English usually says "a, b, and c." For case see App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

4. Garumna flūmen: supply *dīvidit.* **flūmen:** case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2, *a*: H. 393.

inter sē differunt, lit. *differ among themselves = differ from one another.*

tāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns

7. prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province, *a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially* the Province, *the southern part of France, now Provence.* ∗

longē, *adv.* [**longus,** long], far, far away, distant. ∗

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 78], be away from. ∗

minimē, *adv.* [**minimus,** least], least, very little. 4

-que, *conj.* (*always translated before the word to which it is attached*), and. ∗

ad, *prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward,* to, toward; *denoting purpose with gerund and gerundive,* to, for. ∗

is, ea, id, *gen.* **eius** (App. 57), *weak dem. pron. referring to some person or thing named in the context,* this, that, these, those. ∗

mercātor, -ōris, *m.* [**mercor,** trade], merchant, trader. ∗

8. saepe, *adv.*, often, frequently. ∗

commeō, 1, *intr.* [**meō,** go], go back and forth; *with* **ad,** resort to, visit. 1

effēminō, 1, *tr.* [**ex** +**fēmina,** woman], make effeminate, enfeeble. 1

animus, -ī, *m.*, mind; character. ∗

9. pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, *intr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold *or* reach to, extend; tend. ∗

importō, 1, *tr.* [**in** +**portō,** carry], carry *or* bring in, import. 3

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* (App. 43), nearest, next. ∗

Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germani (jēr-mā′nī), *better,* Germans. ∗

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over. ∗

5. Matrona . . . dīvidit: the two rivers formed one boundary, and the verb is therefore singular: App. 180, *b*: G.-L. 285, 2: A. 317, *b*: B. 255, 3: H.-B. 331, 3: H. 392, 4.

Hōrum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 372: A. 346, *a*, 2: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 442.

6. quod absunt: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

7. prōvinciae: see Int. 2, 26.

minimē saepe, *least often.*

mercātōrēs: Roman traders had for some time penetrated the interior of Gaul, bringing, among other things, strong wines, of which the Gauls were very fond.

8. quae . . . pertinent: notice that in relative clauses the relative almost always stands first and the verb last: everything that stands between the relative and the first finite verb which follows usually belongs to the relative clause.

FIG. 44
A GALLIC SPEAR HEAD

ad effēminandōs animōs, *to weaken the courage.* The gerundive construction will be treated later.

9. proximī Germānīs, *next to the Germans:* case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, III: H. 434, 2.

The Germans were less civilized and probably more warlike than the Gauls.

10 Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus

---

10. Rhēnus, -ī, *m.* (ABCfgh), the *river* Rhine. *

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. *

continenter, *adv.* [**continēns,** continuous], without interruption, continually. 3

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. *

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *tr.*, bear, carry; (*of war*) carry on, conduct. *

11. dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, out of, *especially* down from; concerning; for. *

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason. *

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hĕl-vē'shyī), Helvetian; *m. pl. as noun*, the Helvetii. *

quoque, *conj., following the word emphasized*, also, too, likewise. *

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**relinquō,** leave], remaining, the rest of. *

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**vir,** man], manliness, valor, courage. *

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* [**cēdō,** go], go before; surpass, excel. 1

12. ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly. *

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cotīdiē,** daily], everyday, daily. *

proelium, -lī, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement. *

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [**tendō,** stretch], strive; contend, fight. *

13. cum, *conj.*, when; since; although. *

aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or. *

suus, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject* (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, *a*) [**suī,** himself, herself, etc.], his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs. *

fīnis, -is, *m.*, end, boundary; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. *

prohibeō, 2, *tr.* [**habeō,** have, hold], keep from, keep, keep out *or* away from. *

---

10. quibuscum: use and position of *cum*? App. 140; 60, *b*: G.-L. 392; 413, 1: A. 413, *b*; 150, *d*: B. 222; 142, 4: H.-B. 418, *a*; 419, 4: H. 473, 1; 182, 2.

11. Quā dē causā, (*and*) *for this reason.* The relative is often used to connect independent sentences in Latin, but is not so used in English. We must in such cases translate by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and we may render the connective force of the relative by using *and* or *but*, if we like: App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

Helvētiī: although the rest of the chapter is concerned with the larger divisions of Gaul, Caesar speaks of this tribe in particular, because it is to be prominent in the following chapters. Helvetia was the old name of Switzerland, and is still used on Swiss stamps.

virtūte: ablative of specification.

12. proeliīs, *in battles;* but it is an ablative of means.

13. suīs fīnibus: the reflexives *suī* and *suus* regularly refer to the subject: *suīs* therefore refers to the Helvetii. For case see App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 400; 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 464, 1; and notice that the preposition *ab* is often used in the same sense, as in *ab Aquītānīs*, l. 4.

eōrum refers to the Germans. For case see App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; perti-

FIG. 45
A COIN OF THE HELVETII

14. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold, possess. ∗

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *tr.*, say, tell. ∗

15. initium, -tī, *n.* [**ineō,** go into], beginning. ∗

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *tr.*, take. ∗

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.* (CDfg), the *river* Rhodanus (rŏd′ă-nŭs), *better*, Rhone. ∗

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold together; bound, shut in. ∗

16. Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean. ∗

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [**ad** + **tangō,** touch], touch *or* border on, reach, extend to. ∗

etiam, *conj.*, and also, also. ∗

17. Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*, **Sēquanī** (Cfg), the Sequani (sĕk′wă-nī). ∗

vergō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, look *or* lie toward, be situated. 3

septentriōnēs, -um, *m.* [**septem,** seven + **triōnēs,** plow oxen], *the seven plow oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence* the north. ∗

18. extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **exterus.** App. 44], outermost, farthest, extreme, most remote. ∗

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *intr.*, arise, begin; rise. ∗

14. Eōrum refers back to the Gauls as a whole, not to the Helvetii, who have just been mentioned.

quam . . . dictum est, *which it has been said the Gauls occupy*, or more freely *which, as has been said, the Gauls occupy*. *quam* is the object, *Gallōs* the subject, of *obtinēre:* App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. The infinitive clause, *quam . . . obtinēre*, is the subject of *dictum est:* App. 266: G.-L. 343, 2; 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 589: H. 642.

15. initium capit: Caesar was writing for the Romans. Gaul "begins" at the Rhone for a man who comes from Rome and crosses the Alps, as Caesar did.

ā flūmine, *at the river*. There are many phrases in which we feel *at* or *on* to be the appropriate preposition, but in which the Romans thought of a starting-point and consequently used *ab* or *ex*, which literally mean *from*.

16. ab Sēquanīs, *in the direction of* or *on the side of*. See the preceding note.

17. vergit ad septentriōnēs, *lies toward the north;* i.e., from Rome; or from the Rhone, where Caesar says it begins. This and the following statements, that Belgium lies to the northeast and Aquitania to the northwest, are all mistakes. But if one swings the map of Gaul around so that northwest seems north, all these statements seem right. For the true explanation of the mistake, see Int. 76.

18. extrēmīs fīnibus: i. e., those farthest from the Roman province.

nent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in sep-
20 tentriōnēs et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flū-
mine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est
ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septen-
triōnēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupi-

---

19. īnferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, **īnferior,** lower. ∗

spectō, 1, *tr.* [**-spiciō,** see], look at; look, face. 3

20. sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem,** toward the setting sun *or* west; **ad orientem sōlem,** toward the rising sun *or* east. ∗

Aquītānia, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (ăk′wĭ-tā′nĭ-ă). ∗

21. Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; **Pȳrēnaeī montēs** (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pĭr′ē-nē′ī), *better*, Pyrenees Mountains. 1

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain. ∗

22. Hispānia, -ae, *f.* (Eabcd), Hispania (hĭs-pā′nĭ-ă), *better*, Spain. 2

occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**occidō,** fall, set], falling down, setting; *with* **sōlis,** sunset; the west. 4

1. apud, *prep. with acc.*, at; among. ∗

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**nōscō,** know], well known, distinguished; noble. ∗

dīves, dīvitis, *adj.*, wealthy, rich. *Sup.*, **dītissimus.** 1

2. Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ôr-jĕt′ō-rĭks). ∗

M., *abbr. for* **Mārcus** (mär′kŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* ∗

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala (mär′kŭs vă-lē′rĭ-ŭs mĕ-sā′lă) *consul 61 B.C.* 2

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mär′kŭs pū′pĭ-ŭs pī′sō kăl-pēr′nĭ-ā′nŭs), *consul 61 B.C.* 2

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, *one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people.* ∗

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [**rēx,** king], kingly *or* royal authority, royal power. ∗

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* [**cupidus,** eager], eagerness, desire. 3

---

19. in septentriōnēs . . . sōlem: i. e., toward the northeast.

22. ad Hispāniam, *near Spain;* the reference is to the Bay of Biscay.

inter occāsum . . . septentriōnēs: i. e., toward the northwest.

Chap. **2-4.** *The ambition and downfall of Orgetorix.*

Chap. **2.** *Orgetorix persuades the Helvetii to invade Gaul.*

1. nōbilissimus: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

2. M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and*

FIG. 46

A COIN OF THE HAEDUI

The name **Orgetir** is supposed to be Orgetorix. It is possible that this is Caesar's Orgetorix, since his daughter married a powerful Haeduan.

Marcus Piso. Case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419, *a*; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1. These men were consuls in the year 61 B.C.,

ditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae 5

---

3. indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* draw on; induce, influence. 4

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**coniūrō,** swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league. 3

nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**nōbilis,** well known], nobility; the nobles. 3

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *tr.*, make. ∗

cīvitās, -tātis, *f.* [**cīvis,** citizen], state; the citizens. ∗

4. persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *tr. and intr.* [**suādeō,** advise], persuade, prevail upon. ∗

ut *and* **utī,** *adv. and conj. With ind.:* (1) as; (2) when. *With subj.:* (1) so that; (2) in order that, to; (3) *with verbs of fearing,* that not. ∗

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, plenty; *pl.*, forces, troops. ∗

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go out, depart. 2

5. perfacilis, -e, *adj.* [**facilis,** easy], very easy. 2

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *tr. and intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand *or* place before; excel, surpass. ∗

tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* **tōtīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, whole, the whole of; entire, all. ∗

---

three years before Caesar went to Gaul. In giving dates the Romans designated the year by naming the consuls of that year.

rēgnī: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

3. coniūrātiōnem: the real purpose of the conspiracy was to make Orgetorix king, although the Helvetii, like most Gallic peoples, had no king. See Int. 29. His real reasons for wishing the people to emigrate were (1) that by making himself leader of the emigration he could get power enough to make himself king; and (2) that as king he wished to conquer the other states of Gaul.

cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent, *persuaded the citizens that they should leave = persuaded the citizens to leave.*

cīvitātī: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346: A. 367: B. 187, II, *a*: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (*b*): H. 426, 2.

4. ut exīrent: mood? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, (*a*): H. 563, 1; 565.

cōpiīs here includes the women and children.

5. Perfacile esse . . . potīrī is indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in *persuāsit.* Indirect discourse (App. 265) is very common in Caesar, and for this reason its essential principles should be grasped as soon as possible. No reference to unusual details of the construction will be given in I, **1-29.** The most essential fact to learn is that when a statement is turned into indirect discourse the verb of the principal clause becomes an infinitive: App. 266: G.-L. 648; 650: A. 580, *a*: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 589: H. 642, 1. This infinitive, however, cannot properly be translated by an English infinitive. In the present instance, what Orgetorix said was, *perfacile est . . . potīrī, it is very easy to get control.* The *est* has become *esse,* but the English equivalent is (*saying*) *that it was very easy to get control.*

cum . . . praestārent, *since they excelled all in valor.* **virtūte:** case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480. **omnibus:** case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 1: H.-B. 376: H. 429. **praestārent:** mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius iīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs

---

6. imperium, -rī, *n.* [**imperō,** command], command, order; supreme power, sovereignty. *

potior, 4, *intr.* [**potis,** powerful], become master of, get control. *

facile, *adv.* [**facilis,** easy], easily, readily. *Comp.,* **facilius;** *sup.,* **facillimē** (App. 41). *

undique, *adv.* [**unde,** whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. *

7. locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** *n.*), place; locality, situation. *

nātūra, -ae, *f.* [**nāscor,** be born], nature. *

ē (*only before consonants*), **ex** (*before vowels and some consonants*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of,* out of, from; *denoting position, in some phrases,* on. *

8. lātus, -a, -um, *adj.,* broad, wide. 4

altus, -a, -um, *adj.,* high; deep. *

ager, agrī, *m.,* land; district, territory. *

9. alter, -era, -erum, gen. **alterīus** (App. 32), the other (*of two*); second. *

Iūra, -ae, *m.* (Cg), the Jura (jū′rȧ) *mountains.* 3

10. lacus, -ūs, *m.,* lake. 3

Lemannus, -ī, *m.* (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-măn′ŭs), *better,* the Lake of Geneva. 3

---

6. imperiō: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

Id . . . persuāsit, lit. *he persuaded this (id) to them more easily on this account (hōc) = he persuaded them to this course the more easily.* **hōc:** case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

iīs: see note on *cīvitātī,* l. 3.

quod continentur: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I. See the map for the details that follow.

7. locī: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

nātūrā: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

8. ā Germānīs: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 1, *a*: H. 461. We have learned in **1,** 12-14, that the Rhine did not prevent frequent battles with the Germans. Later in his work Caesar implies that the pressure of the Germans was one of the reasons for the emigration of the Helvetii. On the other hand, the certainty that Germans would occupy Helvetia was one of the reasons why Caesar would not let the Helvetii emigrate. See Int. 3.

9. alterā ex parte: *on a second side.* Notice how often a monosyllabic preposition stands between an adjective and its noun.

monte: here, as often, *mōns* means a range of mountains.

10. tertiā: supply *ex parte: on the third side.* The fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

11. Hīs . . . fīēbat, lit. *by these things it was brought about = the result was.*

rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē 15

---

12. rēs, reī, *f.*, thing; *a word of indefinite meaning whose proper translation depends on the context.* *

minus, *comp. adv.* [**parvus,** little], less. *

lātē, *adv.* [**lātus,** wide], widely, extensively. 4

vagor, 1, *intr.* [**vagus,** roaming], roam about, rove, wander. 4

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fīnis,** limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *m. pl. as noun,* neighbors. *

13. īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** carry], carry into; **bellum īnferre,** to make war upon. *

possum, posse, potuī, — (App. 80), *intr.* [**potis,** able +**sum,** be], be able, can. *

homō, -inis, *m.*, human being, man. *

bellō, 1, *intr.* [**bellum,** war], make *or* carry on war, fight. 3

14. cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cupiō,** desire], eager, desirous, fond. 2

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large. *Comp.*, **maior;** *sup.*, **maximus.** *

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [**doleō,** grieve], grief, pain, vexation, annoyance. 3

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ad** +**faciō,** do], treat, affect; **magnō dolōre afficere,** annoy greatly. 3

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; on account of, in consideration of. *

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**multus,** much], a great number, multitude. *

autem, *conj.*, but; moreover. *

15. glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, fame, reputation. 2

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**fortis,** brave], bravery, courage. 1

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**angō,** squeeze], compressed, narrow. *

---

12. ut vagārentur: mood? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

minus, *less* than they desired.

fīnitimīs: for case see note on *omnibus,* l. 5.

13. quā ex parte, *and on this ground:* use of relative? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hominēs . . . cupidī, *being men who were desirous of fighting.* **bellandī:** construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 502; 504: B. 338, 1, *b*: H.-B. 611; 612, I: H. 624; 626.

14. Prō . . . hominum, *considering the great size of the population.*

15. sē: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

angustōs fīnēs, (*too*) *narrow limits.* **fīnēs:** case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. Helvetia comprised rather more than half of modern Switzerland. According to Chap. **29** the population was 263,000, while Switzerland now has a population of nearly 4,000,000.

FIG. 47
A GALLIC COIN

fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere,

---

16. habeō, 2, *tr.*, have, possess. ✱

arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**arbiter**, umpire], decide; think, believe. ✱

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**longus**, long], length, extent. 1

mīlle, *indecl. num. adj.*, a thousand; *neut. pl. as noun*, **mīlia, -ium**, thousands. ✱

passus, -ūs, *m.* [**pandō**, extend], a pace, *the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10½ inches (five Roman feet)*; **mīlle passūs**, *pl.* **mīlia passuum**, a *Roman* mile, *4851 feet.* ✱

17. ducentī, -ae, -a (CC), *card. num. adj.* [**duo**, two + **centum**, hundred], two hundred. ✱

quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, forty. 2

lātitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**lātus**, wide], width, extent, breadth. ✱

centum (C), *indecl. card. num.*, a hundred. 4

octōgintā (LXXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [**octō**, eight], eighty. 3

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie open; stretch out, extend. 4

1. addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead *or* draw to; induce, influence. ✱

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.* [**auctor**, producer], influence, authority. ✱

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō**, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite; affect, influence. ✱

2. cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**statuō**, set up], set up; appoint; decide, determine. ✱

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *intr.* set out, start, depart. ✱

comparō, 1, *tr.* [**parō**, prepare], prepare, get ready. ✱

3. iūmentum, -ī, *n.* [**iungō**, join, yoke], yoke *or* draft animal. 2

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. ✱

quam, *adv.*, as; *with superlative, and with or without* **posse**, as . . . as possible. ✱

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **magnus**, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. ✱

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity. ✱

coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō**, buy], buy, buy up. 1

---

16. mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

Chap. **3.** *The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix conspires with other chiefs.*

2. quae . . . pertinērent, *which pertained to setting out = which were necessary for their departure.*

ad proficīscendum: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

comparāre, coëmere, facere, cōnfirmāre all depend on *cōnstituērunt; they decided to get ready . . . to buy . . . to sow . . . and to establish . . .*

3. iūmentōrum: especially oxen: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, *a*: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

quam maximum numerum, *as great a number as possible* or *as many . . . as possible.*

sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad

4. sēmentis, -is, *f.*, sowing. 1

iter, itineris, *n.* [eō, go], route, road; journey, march. *

frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, grain crops. *

5. suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, *intr.* [sub + petō, seek, obtain], be near *or* at hand. 2

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace. 2

amīcitia, -ae, *f.* [amīcus, friend], friendship. *

cōnfirmō, 1, *tr.* [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen. *

6. cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make *or* do thoroughly, complete, accomplish. *

biennium, -nī, *n.* [bis, twice + annus, year], two years. 1

satis, *adv. and indecl. adj. and noun*, enough, sufficiently; sufficient. *

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *tr.*, lead; consider, judge. *

7. annus, -ī, *m.*, year. *

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [proficīscor, set out], a setting out, departure. 3

8. dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], pick out, choose. *

lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [lēgō, delegate], embassy, legation. *

---

4. ut cōpia suppeteret, *in order that a supply might be at hand:* mood? App. 225, *a*, 3: G.-L. 544, I; 545, 1, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

5. cum . . . cōnfirmāre: although the Helvetii were warlike, they wished to march peaceably while encumbered with their women and children and baggage train.

cum proximīs cīvitātibus: the Sequani, Allobroges, Haedui, etc. For case see App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 418; 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. Ad . . . cōnficiendās, lit. *for these things to be completed = for completing these preparations.* Study carefully this very common gerundive construction: App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628. Compare with it the gerund in l. 2. Notice that *ad* governs *rēs* and that *cōnficiendās* is an adjective in agreement with *rēs*. App. 157: G.-L. 289: A. 286: B. 234: H.-B. 320: H. 394. But *cōnficiendās* must be translated as if it were a verbal noun (gerund) governing *rēs* as its object.

sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366, *a* (or 362, 1): H. 425, 4.

biennium . . . dūxērunt, *they judged that two years were sufficient. Dūcō* with this meaning is followed by indirect discourse: see note on **2, 5.** The Helvetii intended to spend the years 60 and 59 in preparation and to leave home in the spring of 58.

7. in tertium . . . cōnfirmant, lit. *they set their departure into the third year.* We should say, *set the third year for their departure.*

cōnfirmant: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar uses the historical present much more freely than English idiom permits it to be used in translating. It is best always to translate by a past.

8. sibi suscipit, *he took on himself.* For case see note on *omnibus*, **2, 5.**

FIG. 48

VIEW FROM LAKE GENEVA TO MOUNT JURA

See map on p. 87. This view is from the east shore of Lake Geneva, across the city, down the course of the river, to the gap called Pas de l'Écluse, Mill Race Gorge. The Helvetii occupied the country to the right of that line; the Allobroges, that to the left. The other side of the mountains belonged to the Sequani.

cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus

9. suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [su(b)s + capiō, take], take *or* lift up; undertake, take on oneself. ∗

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus (kăs′tĭ-kŭs). 1

Catamantaloedis, -is, *m.*, Catamantaloedis (kăt′ă-măn′tă-lē′dĭs). 1

10. fīlius, -lī, *m.*, son. 4

pater, -tris, *m.*, father. ∗

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, great; *pl.*, many. ∗

11. senātus, -ūs, *m.* [**senex,** old], *a body of old men;* senate, *originally composed of old men; esp. the administrative council of Rome.* ∗

populus, -ī, *m.*, the people; a people *or* nation. ∗

Rōmānus, -ā, -um, *adj.* [**Rōma,** Rome], Roman. ∗

amīcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**amō,** love], friendly, well disposed; *m. as noun,* a friend, an ally. ∗

9. Casticō: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, I, footnote 3, *b*: H. 426, 2.

10. fīliō, Sēquanō: case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 316, 317, 2, *a*: H. 393, 1.

11. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423, 2: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

obtinuerat, *had held.* Always be suspicious of a translation which sounds like the Latin word. It may be right, but it is very likely to be wrong. *Obtained* would be wrong here.

erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta

---

12. occupō, 1, *tr.* [**ob** +**capiō**, take], take possession of, seize, occupy. *

ante, *adv., and prep. w. acc.*, before. *

13. item, *adv.*, also, likewise. *

Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix (dŭm′nō-rĭks). *

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hĕd′ū-ī); Haeduan; *m. as noun*, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haedui, *one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes.* *

frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. *

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*, Diviciacus (dĭv′ĭ-shĭ-ā′kŭs), *a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans.* *

14. tempus, -oris, *n.*, time. *

prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.* [**prīnceps**, chief], chief place *or* position; leadership. 4

magis, *adv., comp.* [**magnus**, great], more; *sup.*, **maximē**, especially, in the highest degree. *

plēbs, plēbis, *or* **plēbēs, -eī**, *f.*, populace, common people. 3

15. acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **accipiō**, accept], acceptable, beloved *by* (*with dative*). 1

īdem, eadem, idem (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [**is**, this, that], the same. *

cōnor, 1, *intr.*, attempt, try. *

fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter. 4

16. mātrimōnium, -nī, *n.*, marriage; **in mātrimōnium dare**, give in marriage. 2

dō, dare, dedī, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give. 4

ille, illa, illud, *gen.* **illīus**, *dat.* **illī** (App. 56), *dem. pron.*, that, that man, woman, *or* thing; he, she, it. 4

probō, 1, *tr.* [**probus**, good], consider good, approve; prove, show. 3

cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [**cōnor**, try], attempt, undertaking. 1

ā senātū: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

amīcus: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests.

12. ut occupāret: (*he persuaded Casticus*) *to seize;* this clause is the object of *persuādet* in l. 9: mood? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, 1, 2: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 563, 1; 565. Such clauses are given various names in the grammars. In this book they are called *substantive clauses of desire.* For the reason, see App. 228.

13. Dumnorīgī depends on *persuādet*, l. 15.

Haeduō: the Haedui were the rivals of the Sequani for the leadership among the Gallic states. See map, and Int. 29.

quī: i. e., Dumnorix.

14. tempore: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423, 1: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

prīncipātum, *the leading position;* but he was not a magistrate.

plēbī: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *a*: H. 434, 2.

15. ut idem cōnārētur, *to attempt the same thing;* i. e., attempt to overthrow the constitutional government and make himself king.

eī: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

16. Perfacile . . . perficere, lit. *he shows to them to accomplish the attempts to be very easy to do* (*factū*, the supine) = *he showed them that it was very easy to carry out the undertaking.*

esse: see note on **2**, 5.

perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

---

17. perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make, do], make *or* do thoroughly; achieve, accomplish. ∗

18. nōn, *adv.*, not; no. ∗

dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, doubtful. 1

quīn, *conj.*, that not, but that; *after negatived words of doubt or hindrance,* but that, that. ∗

multum [*acc. of* **multus,** much. App. 128, *b*], much; *comp.*, **plūs,** more; *sup.*, **plūrimum,** most, very; **plūrimum posse,** be most powerful. ∗

19. exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [**exerceō,** train], *a trained or disciplined body of men,* an army. ∗

conciliō, 1, *tr.* [**concilium,** assembly], bring together; gain *or* win over, secure. 1

20. ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ōrō,** speak], a speaking, speech, address. ∗

fidēs, -eī, *f.* [**fīdō,** confide], faith, confidence; pledge, assurance. ∗

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.* [**iūs,** right + **iūrō,** swear], an oath. ∗

21. per, *prep. with acc.*, through; by means of, through the agency of. ∗

potēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **possum,** be able], powerful, influential. 4

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong. 3

22. spērō, 1, *tr.* [**spēs,** hope], hope. 2

---

17. propterea quod obtentūrus esset, lit. *because he was about to seize* = *because he intended to seize.* The clause is causal, like *propterea quod absunt* in **1,** 6; but the subjunctive is used because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The second important fact about indirect discourse is that all subordinate verbs which in the direct form were either indicatives or subjunctives must be subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H. B. 534, 2, I; 535, 2: H. 643.

18. nōn . . . quīn, *that there was no doubt that.*

19. sē illīs conciliātūrum (*esse*), *that he would win for them. Esse* is usually omitted from the future infinitive.

illīs: i. e., for Casticus and Dumnorix.

20. Hāc ōrātiōne, *by this argument.*

inter sē, *to one another.*

21. rēgnō occupātō potīrī posse spērant, *they hoped that after they had seized the royal power* (each in his own land) *they could get control of.* **rēgnō occupātō:** case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419: B. 227, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1. Latin is very fond of the ablative absolute; English very seldom uses its corresponding idiom, the nominative absolute. Never translate an ablative absolute literally. "The royal power having been seized" is wretched English.

per trēs populōs: i. e., the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Haedui.

22. Galliae: case? App. 111: G.-L. 407, n. 2, *d*: A. 410, *a*: B. 212, 2: H.-B. 353: H. 477, I, 3.

Chap. **4.** *Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy, but escapes. His sudden death.*

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē

1. indicium, -cī, *n.*, disclosure, information. 1

ēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], report, declare, disclose. *

mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom. *

2. vinculum, -ī, *n.* [**vinciō,** bind], bond, fetter, chain. 3

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [**co** + **agō,** lead], lead *or* bring together, collect; force, compel. *

3. damnō, 1, *tr.* [**damnum,** damage], declare guilty, condemn. 1

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty. 3

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow; *with* **poena,** be inflicted. *

oportet, -ēre, -uit, —, *intr., impers.*, it is necessary, proper; *when translated as personal verb*, must, ought. *

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. 4

cremō, 1, *tr.*, burn. 2

diēs, -ēī, *m., f.*, day. *

4. dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dīcō,** say], speaking, pleading. 1

iūdicium, -cī, *n.* [**iūdex,** judge], judicial proceedings, trial. 4

5. familia, -ae, *f.*, household (*including slaves*); retinue. 2

decem (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. *

6. cliēns, -entis, *m., f.*, client, dependent, retainer. 3

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aes,** money], in debt; *m. as noun*, debtor. 1

7. eōdem, *adv.* [*old dative of* **īdem**], to the same place. *

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* bring together, assemble. 4

nē (App. 188, *b*), *conj. with subj.*, that . . . not, in order that . . . not. *

1. Ea rēs, *this conspiracy.*

Helvētiīs: case? App. 114, *c*: G.-L. 345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

per indicium: i. e., by informers.

Mōribus: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

2. ex vinculīs, *in chains.* See note on **1,** 15.

3. damnātum . . . cremārētur, lit. *it was necessary for the punishment to follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire = if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned be inflicted upon him.*

damnātum: use of participle? App. 283: G.-L. 667: A. 496: B. 337, 2, *b*: H.-B. 604, 3: H. 638, 2. **ut cremārētur** is perhaps best taken as a substantive clause of desire in apposition with *poenam.*

Diē: gender? App. 30, *a*: G.-L. 64: A. 97, *a*: B. 53: H.-B. 101: H. 135: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230, 1: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

Diē . . . dictiōnis, *on the day set for the pleading of the case;* lit. *on the appointed day of the pleading of the case.* **causae:** case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

5. ad, *about.*

7. per eōs, *by their help.*

nē . . . dīceret, *to avoid pleading his case:* mood? App. 225, *b*: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta

---

8. ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], wrest *or* take away; rescue, save. ∗

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for. ∗

incitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, put in motion], set in motion; arouse; exasperate. ∗

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms. ∗

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right; rights. ∗

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. 1

9. magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [magister, master], public officer, magistrate. ∗

10. morior, morī, mortuus sum, *intr.* [mors, death], die. 2

neque (nec), *conj.* [ne- +-que, and], and not, not; nor. ∗

suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion. ∗

11. mors, -tis, *f.*, death. 4

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [scīscō, resolve], resolve upon; **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** commit suicide. 2

1. post, *adv., and prep. with acc.:* (1) *as adv.*, afterwards; (2) *as prep.*, after. ∗

nihilō [abl. of **nihil,** nothing], by no means; **nihilō minus,** nevertheless. 3

2. ubi, *adv. and conj.:* (1) *of place,* where; (2) *of time,* when. ∗

iam, *adv.*, now; **ubi iam,** as soon as. ∗

3. parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; **parātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared. ∗

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town. ∗

4. duodecim, *card. num. adj.* [duo, two +**decem,** ten], twelve. 2

vīcus, -ī, *m.*, hamlet, village. ∗

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. 2

prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, individual. 3

---

8. Cum cōnārētur . . . -que magistrātūs cōgerent, *when the state was attempting . . . and the magistrates were collecting:* mood? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, *b*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

11. ut with the indicative means either *as* or *when;* here *as.*

quīn . . . cōnscīverit, *that he committed suicide.*

Chap. **5-8.** *Caesar thwarts the efforts of the Helvetii to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.*

Chap. **5.** *The Helvetii burn their dwellings. They secure allies.*

1. nihilō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

2. cōnantur: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

ut exeant, (*namely*) *to go forth,* is a substantive clause of desire in apposition with *id.*

3. ad eam rem, *for the enterprise.*

parātōs is the adjective.

esse, *were:* indirect discourse.

oppida, vīcōs, aedificia: notice the absence of conjunctions, and see note on **1,** 3.

4. numerō: case? App. 149: G.-L.

aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent

5. aedificium, -cī, *n.* [aedificō, build], building, house. *

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *tr.*, set fire to, burn. *

praeterquam, *adv.*, besides, except. 1

6. portō, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, take. 3

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [**com** (**b**) +**ūrō**, burn], burn up. 1

domus, -ūs (App. 29, *d*), *f.*, house; home. *

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**redeō**, return], return. 1

spēs, -eī, *f.*, hope, expectation. *

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift; take away, remove. *

7. perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, peril. *

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], come *or* go under; undergo, endure. 4

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month. 3

8. molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, grind. 1

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cibus**, food], pertaining to food; *n. pl. as noun*, provisions; **molita cibāria,** meal, flour. 2

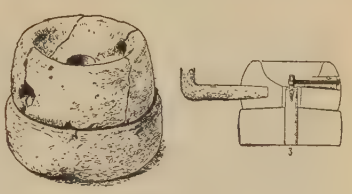


FIG. 49

A GALLIC MILL

The small cut is a drawing with restored handle and axis pin. The grain was poured into the hollow, and worked its way down through the narrow space around the central pin, until it got between the two stones.

quisque, quidque, *and* **quisque, quaeque, quodque,** *indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each. *

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [**ex** +**ferō**, carry. App. 81], bring *or* carry out, carry *or* take away. 2

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *tr.*, order, bid, command. *

397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

ad, *about.*

5. sēcum: position of *cum*? App. 52, *a*: G.-L. 413, R. 1: A. 144, note 1: B. 142, 4: H.-B. 418, *a*: H. 175, 7.

6. portātūrī erant, lit. *they were about to take = they intended to take.*

ut parātiōrēs essent, *in order that they might be more ready.*

domum reditiōnis, *of returning home.* **domum:** case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, *b*: H.-B. 450, *b*: H. 419, 1.

spē sublātā: translate the ablative absolute by a temporal clause: *when hope was taken away.*

7. ad . . . subeunda: construction? App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628.

trium mēnsium cibāria, *supplies for three months.* **mēnsium:** case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. Napoleon III estimated that 8500 wagons, drawn by 34,000 draft animals, were needed to transport the necessary provisions and baggage of the Helvetian host: even this is probably an underestimate.

8. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 352: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

domō: case? App. 134, *a*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, *b*: H.-B. 451, *a*: H. 462, 4.

Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur; Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi ascīscunt.

9. Rauracī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw′rā-sī). 2

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-lĭn′jī), *a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine.* 4

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Latobrigi (lăt′ō-brī′jī), *a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine.* 3

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, make use of, use; adopt, accept. *

10. cōnsilium, -lī, *n.*, plan, design; course of action. *

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn up. 1

ūnā, *adv.* [**ūnus,** one], together, along with. *

11. Boī, Boiōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Boi (bō′ī), *a Gallic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map.* *

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (*a country between the Danube and the Alps*), Norican. 2

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go across *or* over, cross; march through; pass through; move, migrate. *

Nōreia, -ae, *f.* (Ck), Noreia (nō-rē′-yà), *a town in Noricum, now* Neumarkt. 1

oppugnō, 1, *tr.* [**ob** +**pugnō,** fight], fight against, attack, besiege, assault, storm. *

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take *or* get back, recover; admit, receive. *

13. socius, -cī, *m.*, companion; confederate, ally. *

ascīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**ad** +**scīscō,** approve], approve; admit *or* receive (*as allies*). 2

9. utī . . . proficīscantur, lit. *that having used the same plan, their towns . . . having been burned, they set out along with them = to adopt . . . to burn . . . and to set out.*

10. cōnsiliō: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477.

11. Boiōs is the object of *ascīscunt:* App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

trāns Rhēnum: i. e., east of the Rhine, where they had been exposed to German attacks.

12. receptōs . . . ascīscunt, lit. *the Boi, received to themselves* [*ad sē*], *they admit to themselves* [*sibi*] *as allies = they received among their people and joined to themselves as associates the Boi, who had,* etc.

13. sibi: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, *a*: H. 429, 1.

As previously explained, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on I, **1-29.** At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction, he should do so immediately.

THIRD REFERENCES:

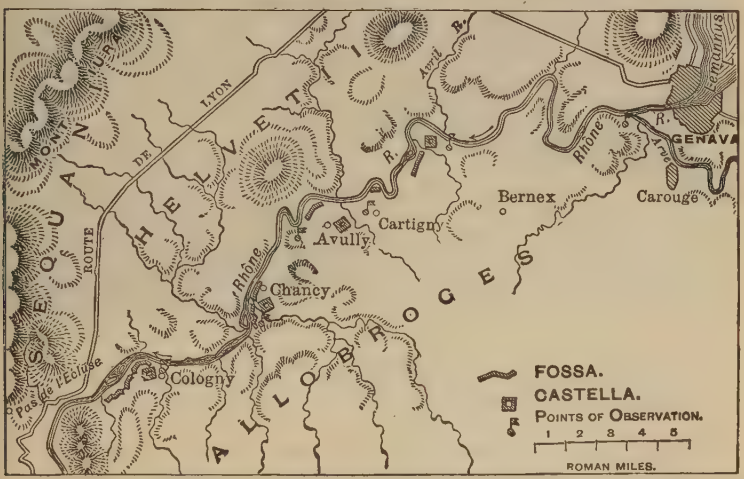
Direct object
Ablative of specification

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter

1. omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis**, all], altogether; in all, only. *

duo, duae, duo, *card. num. adj.*, two. *

2. difficilis, -e, *adj.* [**facilis**, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. 3



THE RHONE BETWEEN GENEVA AND MT. JURA

The Helvetii could either (1) follow the narrow road between the river and Mt. Jura, if the Sequani permitted; or (2) cross the Rhone, if Caesar permitted.

Caesar fortified the southern bank of the river for almost the entire distance, as described in Chap. 8. The points where fortifications are indicated on the map are those which needed the strongest works.

Chap. **6.** *The Helvetii decide to march through the Roman Province.*

1. Erant, *there were.*

quibus itineribus, *by which.* Caesar sometimes repeats the antecedent in the relative clause, where English usage requires its omission. Case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, *a*: H. 476.

quibus . . . possent, *by which they could leave home,* is a clause of characteristic: App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, *a*: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, *a*: H. 591, 1.

domō: case? App. 134, *a*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, *b*: H.-B. 451, *a*: H. 462, 4.

2. ūnum (*iter*) and **alterum** (*iter*) are appositives of *itinera duo:* App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282, *a*: B. 169, 1, 2, 5: H.-B. 317, 2; 319, I, *a*: H. 393, 4. Study the two routes on the map above.

FIG. 50

PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE—MILL RACE GORGE

The route lay along the right bank of the river. The road was bad, and could be made impassable by the Sequani if they chose.

montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram,

3. vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely. 4

quā, *adv.* [=**quā viā**], by which way *or* road; where. ∗

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each; one at a time, single. ∗

4. impendeō, -pendēre, —, —, *intr.* [**in** +**pendeō,** hang], overhang, impend. 2

5. perpaucī, -ae, -a, *adj.* [**paucī,** few], very few, but very few; *m. as noun*, a very few men. 4

3. vix would usually stand between *quā* and *dūcerentur:* see note on **1,** 8. Its unusual position attracts attention; therefore it is emphatic.

4. dūcerentur, *could be drawn.* This is another subjunctive of characteristic, but it differs from *possent* in that here the subjunctive mood has the potential meaning *could:* App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2. The place referred to is Pas de l'Écluse: see map, page 87.

ut possent: mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2, *a*: H. 570.

5. prohibēre: supply *eōs.*

multō facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparā-

6. multō, [*abl. of* **multus,** much], by far, much. 4

facilis, -e, *adj.* [**faciō,** do], easy. 4

expedītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **expediō,** set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed. *

7. Allobrogēs, -um, *m.* (Dfg), the Allobroges (ă-lŏb′rō-jēz). *

nūper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. 3

pācō, 1, *tr.* [**pāx,** peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify. *

8. fluō, fluere, flūxī, —, *intr.*, flow, run. 2

vadum, -ī, *n.*, shallow place; ford. *

9. Genava, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (jĕn′ă-vă), *now* Geneva. 3

10. pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge. *

11. nōndum, *adv.* [**nōn,** not + **dum**], not yet. *

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good; (*with* **animō**) friendly. *

12. videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr.*, see; *in pass.*, be seen; seem, appear. *

exīstimō, 1, *tr.* [**aestimō,** estimate], think. *

vel, *conj.*, or; **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or. *

vīs, vīs (App. 27), *f.*, force, strength. *

13. eō, īre, iī (īvī), **itum** (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. *

patior, patī, passus sum, *tr. and intr.*, endure; permit, allow. *

---

6. multō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

7. nūper pācātī erant: about three years before, after a desperate struggle to regain their independence.

8. nōn nūllīs locīs, *at several points.* Why is the preposition *in* not used? App. 151, *b*: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, *b*: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

vadō trānsītur, lit. *is crossed by a ford = is fordable.*

Extrēmum: i.e., it is on the northern frontier.

9. est might more naturally have stood before *Genava.*

10. Allobrogibus . . . persuāsūrōs exīstimābant, *they thought they should either persuade the Allobroges.* **persuāsūrōs** (*esse*) is the principal verb in indirect discourse: see note on *persuādēbimus, we shall persuade.*

11. quod vidērentur is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, I; 535, 2: H. 643.

bonō animō, *of a friendly disposition* or *well disposed.* Case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

12. vel coāctūrōs (*esse*), *or should compel them:* in the same construction as *persuāsūrōs.*

ut eōs īre paterentur, *to let them pass:* a substantive clause of desire, the object of both *persuāsūrōs* and *coāctūrōs.*

13. Omnibus rēbus comparātīs, *when they had made everything ready.*

tīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.
15 Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Fig. 51
THE RHONE

At such a point the Helvetii could have crossed easily. Compare Fig. 54, p. 96.

14. rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank (*of a stream*). ∗

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr. and intr.* [**veniō**, come], come together, assemble, meet. ∗

15. v., *abbr. for* **quīntus, -a, -um,** *ord. num. adj.* [**quīnque**, five], fifth. 3

Kal., *abbr. for* **Kalendae, -ārum,** *f.*, the Calends, *the first day of the Roman month.* 1

Apr., *abbr. for* **Aprīlis, -e,** *adj.*, of April, April. 2

L., *abbr. for* **Lūcius,** Lucius (lū′shyŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* ∗

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū′shyŭs kăl-pĕr′nĭ-ŭs pī′sō), *father-in-law of Caesar, and consul 58 B.C.* 2

A., *abbr. for* **Aulus** (aw′lŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* 1

Gabīnius, -nī, *m.*, Aulus Gabinius (aw′lŭs gă-bĭn′ĭ-ŭs), *consul 58 B.C.* 1

14. quā diē: see note on *quibus itineribus*, l. 1.

quā diē omnēs conveniant, *on which they should all assemble.* Mood? App. 225, *a*, 1: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 1: H. 590.

15. a. d. v. Kal. Apr. = *ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs* = the twenty-eighth of March. For explanation, see App. 297-300; but only one other such date is found in Caesar.

L. Pīsōne . . . cōnsulibus: see note on **2, 2.**

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi

1. Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Gaius Julius Caesar (gā′yŭs jū′lĭ-ŭs sē′zär), *conqueror of Gaul and author of the* Commentaries. *

nūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntius,** messenger], announce, report. *

2. mātūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], ripen; make haste, hasten. 2

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city; *especially*, the city, *Rome*. 2

3. ulterior, -ius, *adj., comp.* [**ultrā,** beyond. App. 43], farther, ulterior. *

4. perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come] come through; come to, arrive at, reach. *

5. mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier. *

imperō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [in + **parō,** procure], command, order; demand from, levy upon. *

6. legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**legō,** choose], a legion. *

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.* [**scindō,** cleave], cut away *or* down, break down, destroy. 2

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition
Purpose clauses

Chap. **7.** *Caesar hastens to Gaul and delays the Helvetii by a pretext.*

1. Caesarī: he had been consul in the year 59, and at the end of his year of office he had immediately become proconsul of Gaul. See Int. 11, 12. He was at this time near Rome, preparing to leave for his province. The news merely hastened his movements.

cum nūntiātum esset: mood? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, *B*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

id, *this fact*, is explained by its appositive, the clause *eōs . . . cōnārī, that they were planning*, etc. **eōs:** case? App. 123: G.-L. 203, R. 1; 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. **cōnārī:** construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 589; 591: H. 642.

2. ab urbe: to a Roman "the city" was Rome.

quam maximīs potest itineribus, lit. *by (as great) day's journeys as the greatest he can = by as long day's journeys as possible. quam maximīs itineribus* would have meant the same thing. These two idioms are very common in Caesar. We learn from Plutarch that Caesar traveled about ninety miles a day. **itineribus:** case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. Galliam ulteriōrem, *farther Gaul;* i.e., the Gaul that lay across the Alps; so called to distinguish it from the northern part of Italy, which the Romans called *nearer* or *Cisalpine Gaul*.

4. ad Genavam: use of preposition? App. 131, *a*: G.-L. 337, R. 4: A. 428, *a*: B. 182, 3: H.-B. 453, 1: H. 418, 4.

Prōvinciae imperat, *he levied upon the province.*

5. mīlitum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

in Galliā: case? App. 151: G.-L. 385: A. 426, 3: B. 228: H.-B. 433: H. 483.

6. legiō: this was the tenth, afterwards Caesar's favorite legion. On the organization of a legion see Int. 33.

dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs

7. adventus, -ūs, *m.* [**veniō**, come], coming, arrival, approach. ∗

certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, certain, sure; **certiōrem facere,** inform; **certior fierī,** be informed. ∗

lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [**lēgō**, delegate], *one with delegated powers;* ambassador, envoy; legate. ∗

8. mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, send. ∗

Nammeius, -ī, *m.*, Nammeius (nă-mē′yŭs). 1

9. Verucloetius, -tī, *m.*, Verucloetius (vĕr′ū-klē′shyŭs). 1

prīnceps, -ipis, *adj.* [**prīmus**, first + **capiō**, take], *taking the first place;* chief. ∗

10. sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. ∗

ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **ūllīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, any. ∗

maleficium, -cī, *n.* [**malum**, evil + **faciō**, do], evil-doing, harm, injury. 4

11. nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **nūllīus,** *adj.* [**ne-** + **ūllus**, any], not any, no. ∗

rogō, 1, *tr.*, ask, request. ∗

12. voluntās, -tātis, *f.* [**volō**, wish], wish; consent, approval. ∗

licet, licēre, licuit *and* **licitum est,** *intr., impers.*, it is lawful, permitted, *or* allowed. ∗

memoria, -ae, *f.* [**memor**, mindful], memory; **memoriā tenēre,** remember. ∗

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *tr.*, hold, keep. ∗

13. Cassius, -sī, *m.*, Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū′shyŭs kăsh′yŭs lŏn-jī′nŭs), *consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the Tigurini.* 3

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**ob** + **caedō**, cut, kill], cut down, kill. ∗

7. certiōrēs factī sunt, lit. *were made more certain = were informed.* **certiōrēs:** case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 317, 3; 320, III: H. 394.

8. nōbilissimōs: used as a noun.

9. quī dīcerent, *who were to say = to say:* a relative clause of purpose.

sibi esse in animō, lit. *that there was to them in mind = that they had in mind* or *intended.* **sibi:** case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

11. quod habērent is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. See note on **3, 17.**

rogāre (*sē*), *that they asked.* The speakers said to Caesar *rogāmus, we ask.*

ut sibi liceat, *that it be permitted them* or *that they be allowed.* For mood see App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 530, 2: H. 563, 1; 565.

eius voluntāte, *with his consent:* an ablative of accordance.

12. tenēbat: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

13. occīsum, pulsum, missum are perfect passive infinitives in indirect discourse, and depend on *memoriā tenēbat,* which is equivalent to a verb of knowing. The perfect infinitive represents the action as past at the time of *tenēbat; that Lucius Cassius had been slain,* etc.

pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad

14. pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *tr.*, beat, defeat, rout. *

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*: (1) *with acc., with verbs of motion,* under, beneath; (2) *with abl., of position,* under, beneath. *

iugum, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join], yoke. *

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, yield; allow, permit. *

putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. *

15. inimīcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + amīcus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile. 3

facultās, -tātis, *f.*, power; opportunity, chance. *

16. temperō, 1, *intr.*, restrain *or* control oneself, refrain. 2

iniūria, -ae, *f.* [in- + iūs, right], wrong, injustice; injury, violence. *

17. tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless. *

spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance; *length of time, hence,* time. *

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go *or* come between, intervene. 4

dum, *conj.*, while; till, until. *

18. respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *tr. and intr.*, reply, answer. *

ab Helvētiīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

14. sub iugum, *under the yoke.* This "yoke" was made of three spears, two planted in the ground and the third fastened across their tops. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass, in token of submission and degradation.

concēdendum (*esse*), *that permission ought to be granted.*

15. hominēs temperātūrōs (*esse*), *that men would refrain.* The future infinitive shows that a future indicative was used in the direct form. Caesar thought *nōn temperābunt, they will not refrain.*

animō: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.B. 443: H. 473, 2.

datā facultāte may be translated by a conditional clause: *if an opportunity should be given.*

16. itineris faciendī: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503; 504: B. 339, 1: H.-B. 612, I; 613: H. 623; 626.

FIG. 52

A GALLIC COIN

This is a rather good copy of a Greek coin; the charioteer and his horses are easily recognized. But when other Gauls copied such copies instead of the originals, which they could not easily get, the figures grew worse and worse. Compare with this coin Figs. 58, 61, and others in this book, and see p. 8.

17. dum mīlitēs convenīrent, *until the soldiers should arrive.*

18. diem, *time.*

sē sūmptūrum, *that he should take.*

ad dēlīberandum: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432, R.: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XIX mūrum in altitūdinem

---

19. dēlīberō, 1, *tr.* [**lībra,** balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. 2

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *tr.* [**sub** + **emō,** take], take away, take. *

sī, *conj.*, if. *

quis, quid, *and* **quī, quae, quod** (App. 61 and 62): (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? (2) *indef. pron., especially after* **sī, nisi, nē, num,** anyone, anything, any. *

volō, velle, voluī, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.*, wish, be willing, want. *

Īdūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides: *the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October, and the thirteenth of other months.* 1

20. revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *intr., used in the perfect tenses, and* **revertor, -vertī, -versus sum,** *intr., used in the tenses formed on the present stem* [**vertō,** turn], turn back, come back, return. *

1. intereā, *adv.* [**inter,** between], in the meantime, meanwhile. 4

3. īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [**fluō,** flow], flow into, empty into. *

4. ūndēvīgintī (**XIX**), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [**ūnus,** one + **dē,** from + **vīgintī,** twenty], nineteen. 2

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, a wall. *

altitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**altus,** high, deep], height; depth. *

---

19. sī quid vellent, *if they wanted anything.* Why *quid*? App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

reverterentur, *they should come again.* This is a principal clause in indirect discourse, but the subjunctive is used instead of the infinitive because an imperative was used in the direct form. Caesar said *sī quid vultis, revertiminī, if you want anything, come again.* The third (see notes on **2,** 5 and **3,** 17) important fact about indirect discourse is that all imperatives of the direct form become subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate nouns and adjectives
Agreement of adjectives
Partitive genitive
Subject of infinitive
Substantive clauses of desire
Causal clauses with quod, *etc.*
Infinitive in indirect discourse
Gerund
Gerundive

Chap. **8.** *Caesar prevents the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone.*

1. legiōne mīlitibusque: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401, R. 1: A. 409: B. 218, 10: H.-B. 423, *a*: H. 476.

2. ā lacū . . . ad montem: see map, page 87.

4. mīlia . . . perdūcit, *for nineteen miles he constructed a wall sixteen feet in height, and a trench.* Napoleon III believed that the banks of the river were so steep for most of the distance that no artificial fortifications were needed, and the map on page 87 shows the only places where he

pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre

5. pēs, pedis, *m.*, the foot; a foot, *11.65 inches in length.* ∗

sēdecim (XVI), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, sixteen. 2

fossa, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part. fem. of* **fodiō,** dig], trench, ditch. ∗

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead through *or* along, conduct; construct. 4

opus, operis, *n.*, work; military work *or* works. ∗

praesidium, -dī, *n.* [**praesideō,** guard], guard, garrison. ∗

6. dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], *place apart;* distribute, station. 2

castellum, -ī, *n.* [**castrum,** fort], fortress, redoubt. ∗

commūniō, 4, *tr.* [**mūniō,** fortify], fortify strongly. 1

quō, *conj.* [*abl. case form of* **quī,** who, which], in order that, so that, that. ∗

invītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, against one's wish *or* will, unwilling, reluctant. ∗

8. veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come, arrive. ∗

negō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say . . . not. 1

believed that Caesar constructed the wall and trench—a total of about three miles. There are good reasons for believing that Napoleon was wrong, and that the bank was fortified for nearly the whole distance.

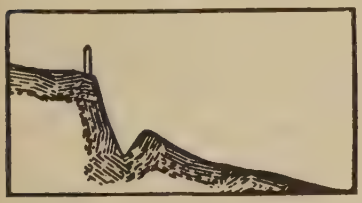


FIG. 53
SECTION OF CAESAR'S WALL

The "section of Caesar's wall," shown in Figure 53, makes clear the method of constructing this wall. The top of the bank was cut down so as to make a steep front sixteen feet high: this was the *mūrus*. The earth which was dug out was simply thrown down the hill. A line of palisades was set on top, to serve as a breastwork for the Roman soldiers.

mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387: H. 417.

5. pedum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

6. dispōnit, *stationed at several points.* Caesar had too few men to man the entire line. He therefore stationed detachments (*praesidia*) in *castella*, at suitable points, and of course had pickets all along the line. At an alarm the nearest detachments were to run to the threatened point.

quō facilius posset: when is *quō* used in purpose clauses? App. 225, *a*, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, 2, *a*: B. 282, *a*: H.-B. 502, 2, *b*: H. 568, 7.

sī cōnārentur, *if they should try.*

sē invītō: construction? App. 150: G.-L. 409: A. 419, *a*; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1.

8. negat sē posse dare, *he said that he could not give.*

mōre et exemplō: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

FIG. 54
THE RHONE JUST BELOW GENEVA
At this point crossing would have been difficult.

et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare;
10 et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn

9. exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, precedent. 2

10. ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [obs +tendō, stretch], stretch before; show; tell, declare. *

11. dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl *or* cast down; disappoint. *

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat. *

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *tr.*, join *or* unite together. 4

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft. 2

complūrēs, -a, *adj.* [plūs, more], several, many. *

12. parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little, small; *comp.*, **minor, minus,** lesser, smaller; *sup.*, **minimus, -a, -um,** least. *

10. sī . . . cōnentur, *if they should try to use force.*

prohibitūrum (*sē . . . esse*), *that he would stop them.*

11. eā spē dēiectī, lit. *cast down from this expectation = disappointed in this expectation.* **spē:** case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 402: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2, footnote: H. 464.

nāvibus iūnctīs, *by joining together boats,* and thus making a pontoon bridge. See Fig. 57, p. 107.

12. aliī: we should expect some corresponding word in the previous phrase, *nāvibus . . . factīs.* The meaning is that some of the Helvetii tried to cross by boats and rafts, and others by fords.

numquam interdiū, saepius noctū sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem

---

13. numquam, *adv.* [**ne-**+**umquam,** ever], not ever, never; **nōn numquam,** sometimes. 3

interdiū, *adv.* [**diēs,** day], during the day, by day. 1

noctū, *adv.* [**nox,** night], by night. 4

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [**rumpō,** break], break through, force a passage. 1

14. mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**mūniō,** fortify], fortifying; fortification. *

concursus, -ūs, *m.* [**concurrō,** run], a running together. 2

tēlum, -ī, *n., a weapon for fighting at a distance,* missile, dart, javelin. *

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** beat, drive], beat *or* drive back, repel, repulse. 4

15. cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnor,** try], attempt, undertaking. 1

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], abandon, cease, give up. 4

1. relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, *tr.*, leave; *pass.*, be left, remain. *

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route. *

2. propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of. *

angustiae, -ārum, *f.* [**angustus,** narrow], narrowness; a narrow place *or* pass. *

3. sponte, *abl.* (*obsolete nom.*, **spōns**), *f.*, of one's own accord; by one's own efforts. 2

---

13. sī possent cōnātī, *having tried (to see) whether they could.* For this use of *sī*, see App. 264, *b*: G.-L. 460, 1, *b*; 467: A. 576, *a*: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, *a*: H. 649, II, 3.

14. concursū: see note on *dispōnit*, l. 6.

repulsī, *were repulsed and.*

15. cōnātū is an ablative of separation.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of extent of space
Ablative of separation
Ablative of means
Ablative absolute

Chap. **9-15.** *The Helvetii march out through the territory of the Sequani. Caesar, with a reënforced army, cuts to pieces a fourth of them and follows the rest.*

Chap. **9.** *The Helvetii obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.*

1. ūna via, *only the way.* This was through Pas de l'Écluse, the way mentioned in **6,** 2.

quā, *and by this.* Case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

Sēquanīs invītīs, *if the Sequani should refuse:* ablative absolute.

2. cum possent: mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

suā sponte, *by their own efforts* or *by themselves.*

3. Dumnorīgem: this is the Dumnorix who is mentioned in **3,** 13 as having conspired with Orgetorix. Although that plot had failed he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.

Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum

---

4. dēprecātor, *m.* [**dēprecor,** plead for], mediator, intercessor. 1

impetrō, 1, *tr.*, obtain (*by request*), succeed in obtaining (*one's request*). ✱

5. grātia, -ae, *f.* [**grātus,** pleasing], favor, influence, popularity. ✱

largītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**largior,** bribe], bribery. 1

8. novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new; **rēs novae,** *pl.*, a change of government, revolution. ✱

studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, be eager *or* zealous; desire, strive after. ✱

beneficium, -cī, *n.* [**bene,** well + **faciō,** do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. ✱

9. obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.* [**stringō,** tie], bind, hold *under obligations.* 2

itaque, *conj.* [**ita,** so], and so, therefore, accordingly. ✱

10. obses, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage. ✱

1. renūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], bring back word, report, announce. ✱

---

4. ut impetrārent is a clause of purpose.

eō dēprecātōre, lit. *he being mediator = by his mediation.*

5. grātiā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

6. Helvētiīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *a*: H. 434, 2.

8. rēbus: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *b*: H. 426, 1.

suō . . . obstrictās, lit. *to hold bound by his kindness = to keep under obligations.*

10. obsidēs: all through Caesar's narrative we find that states were obliged to bind themselves to carry out their agreements by giving hostages. The hostages were usually the children of the most influential men of the state, and were liable to enslavement or death if the state failed to fulfill its agreement.

11. utī dent perficit, lit. *he brings it about that they give = he made them give.*

Sēquanī, Helvētiī: supply *obsidēs dent;* i.e., the Sequani bound themselves not to stop the Helvetii, etc. The clauses are substantive clauses of desire, objects of the implied phrase *bound themselves.*

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative with special verbs
Dative with adjectives

Chap. **10.** *Caesar brings more troops from Italy.*

1. Caesarī: case? App. 114, *c*: G.-L. 345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs 5 patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum

---

2. Santonī, -ōrum, *or* **Santonēs, -um,** *m.* (Dcd), the Santoni (săn′tō-nī), *or* Santones (săn′tō-nēz). 3

3. Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the Tolosates (tŏl′ō-sā′tēz), *the people of Tolosa* (Ed). 1

4. intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.*, understand; see, perceive. *

5. bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**bellum,** war], of *or* full of war, warlike. 3

6. patēns, -entis, *adj.* [**pateō,** be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. 1

frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frūmentum,** grain], of *or* pertaining to grain; *of places,* fruitful, productive of grain. *

7. T., *abbr. for* **Titus** (tī′tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* *

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus (tī′tŭs ā′shyŭs lā′bĭ-ē′nŭs), *Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War.* *

---

renūntiātur: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar had sent out spies and scouts to report the movements of the Helvetii.

Helvētiīs: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

esse is the subject of *renūntiātur.*

2. facere is the subject of *esse.*

3. nōn longē: the distance is really about 130 miles, but the Helvetii would be more dangerous in the territory of the Santones than in their own country, because they would no longer be hemmed in by natural barriers. Caesar had reason to fear that either the Helvetii or the Gauls whom they should drive from their homes would raid the Province; and since it was his duty to protect the Province he was justified in forcing the Helvetii to remain at home. Besides, as he tells us elsewhere, he did not want the Germans to settle in the vacated land of the Helvetii.

4. Id sī fieret, *if this should be carried out,* is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, depending on *futūrum:* mood? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, II: H. 643. Caesar's thought was, *if this shall be carried out* (future indicative), *it will,* etc.

magnō . . . futūrum ut habēret, *that it would be (attended) with great danger to the Province, that it should have.*

prōvinciae is a genitive.

5. ut habēret is the subject of *futūrum:* mood? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

inimīcōs is here used as a noun, and therefore a genitive depends on it. If used as an adjective it would govern the dative.

locīs is probably a dative depending on *fīnitimōs,* though it may be an ablative of place.

7. mūnītiōnī: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370, *a*, note 1: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, *a*: H. 429, 1.

lēgātum: *legate:* see Int. 38. The common translation "lieutenant" gives a totally false idea of the position. "Lieutenant general" comes nearer to it.

praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae

8. praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], make before; place over, put in command of. 4

Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, *sometimes including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula.* *

9. ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place. *

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō,** write], *write together in a list,* levy, enroll, enlist. *

circum, *prep. with acc.* [**circus,** a circle], around, about, near. 2

Aquileia, -ae, *f.* (Cj), Aquileia (ăk′wĭ-lē′yȧ). 1

hiemō, 1, *intr.* [**hiems,** winter], pass the winter, winter. *

10. hīberna, -ōrum, *n.* [*sc.* **castra,** camp], winter camp, winter quarters. *

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead out. *

11. Alpēs, -ium, *f.* (Cghi), the Alps. *

quīnque (**V**), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, five. 4

12. Ceutronēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Ceutrones (sū′trō-nēz). 1

Graiocelī, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graioceli (grā-yŏs′ē-lī). 1

Caturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Caturiges (kăt′ū-rī′jēz). 1

superior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **superus,** high. App. 44], upper. *

14. Ocelum, -ī, *n.* (Dg), Ocelum (ŏs′ē-lŭm). 1

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither. *

15. Vocontiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Vocontii (vō-kŏn′shyī). 1

8. Ītaliam: i.e., Cisalpine Gaul.

itineribus: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

9. cōnscrībit: he did this without authority from Rome. He had been given only four legions—the one in Transalpine Gaul and the three at Aquileia. But the situation was more serious than the Roman Senate realized. He therefore increased his army to six legions, perhaps 24,000 men. With these legions and some auxiliary troops he had to oppose 92,000 fighting men, according to the Gallic records given in Chap. **29.**

10. hībernīs: case? App. 134, *a*: G.-L. 390, 1: A. 426, 1: B. 229: H.-B. 408, 1: H. 461.

quā proximum iter erat, *where there was the shortest route.* He chose the pass of Mont Genèvre, and the route is shown on the map facing p. 67. He did not wish to return to Geneva, for by this time the Helvetii had left their country. It is estimated that Caesar spent two months in securing his reënforcements.

11. legiōnibus: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 420: H. 473, 1.

13. Complūribus . . . proeliīs: English order, *hīs pulsīs* (ablative absolute) *complūribus proeliīs* (ablative of means).

15. prōvinciae: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse 5

16. septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**septem,** seven], seventh. ∗

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence. ∗

17. Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Def), the Segusiavi (sĕg′ū-shĭ-ā′vī). 1

extrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of. 1

18. prīmus, -a, -um, *adj., sup.*, first. ∗

2. trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**trāns** + **dūcō,** lead], lead across, lead over. ∗

3. populor, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. 4

4. dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [**fendō,** strike], keep *or* ward off, repel; defend, protect. ∗

5. auxilium, -lī, *n.*, help, assistance, aid. ∗

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way *or* manner. ∗

mereō, *and* **mereor,** 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit. 3

FIG. 55

A COIN OF THE SEGUSIAVI

17. in Segusiāvōs: i.e., into that part of their territory which lies between the Rhone and the Arar. Caesar encamped on the heights above the city of Lyons. Labienus must have rejoined him there.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitive
Indirect object
Dative with compound verbs
Ablative of place from which
Ablative of accompaniment
Historical present
Subordinate clause in indirect discourse

Chap. **11.** *Three states ask Caesar to protect them against the Helvetii.*

1. iam, *by this time.*

angustiās: at Pas de l'Écluse.

2. pervēnerant: i.e., the head of their column had crossed the Arar, though its rear was some miles from that river. They had traveled only about a hundred miles during the two months of Caesar's absence. Much of this time, however, had been spent in negotiations with the Sequani. Their line of march must have been nearly eighty miles in length when moving along narrow roads, and their progress was necessarily slow, especially at the pass. For their route see the map facing page 67.

3. cum possent: causal.

suaque, *and their property.*

4. rogātum: form and use? App. 295; G.-L. 435, n. 3; A. 509; B. 340, 1, *a*; H.-B. 618, *a*; H. 632, 1; 633.

5. omnī tempore, *on every occasion.*

Ita meritōs esse, *that they had so deserved*, depends on the idea of "saying" which is implied in *rogātum*.

ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi

6. paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. ∗
cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnspiciō,** look at], sight, view. ∗
vāstō, 1, *tr.* [**vāstus,** waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. 3
līberī, -ōrum, *m.* [**līber,** free], *the free members of the household* (*as opposed to slaves*); children. ∗
7. servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**servus,** a slave], slavery, servitude. ∗
abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead away, carry off. 1
expugnō, 1, *tr.* [**pugnō,** fight], take *or* carry by storm, capture by assault. ∗
dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [**dē** + **habeō,** have], *have* or *keep from someone;* owe; *with inf.*, ought, must. ∗
8. Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Ambarri (ăm-băr'ī). 2
necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**necesse,** necessary], necessary; *m. as noun,* kinsman, friend. ∗
cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sanguis,** blood], of the same blood; *m. as noun,* kinsman, relative. 3
9. dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* [**populor,** lay waste], lay waste, ravage. 2
10. hostis, -is, *m.*, *f.*, enemy; *pl.*, the enemy. ∗
11. possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**possideō,** possess], possession, property. 4
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight. ∗
12. dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.* [**mōnstrō,** show], point out; declare, say. ∗
praeter, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, past; except, besides. ∗
solum, -ī, *n.*, ground, soil. 1
nihil, *n.*, *nom. and acc. sing.*, nothing. ∗
13. exspectō, 1, *tr.* [**spectō,** look at], look out for, await, expect. ∗

6. ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint, *that their lands ought not to have been devastated.* **dēbuerint:** mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

nostrī = *Rōmānī.* It agrees with *exercitūs.*

9. sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs, *that their lands had been laid waste and that they,* etc. In a number of deponent verbs the perfect participle is used with a passive meaning.

10. Allobrogēs quī . . . habēbant: most of the Allobroges were south of the Rhone and were not troubled; but the map shows that some were north, and on the route of the Helvetii.

12. sibi nihil esse reliquī, *that to them there was nothing of a remainder* = *that they had nothing left.* **sibi:** case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. **reliquī** is used as a noun and is a partitive genitive: App. 101, *a*: G.-L. 369, R. 2: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 2, *a*: H.-B. 346, *a*: H. 440, 5, note.

13. Quibus: use of relative? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 303, 2: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

nōn exspectandum (*esse*) **sibi,** *that it was not to be waited by him* = *that he must not wait.* **exspectandum:** construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, *b*: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-

statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs

14. statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, *tr.* [**status,** position], put in position, set up; determine, resolve. ∗
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, luck; property, estate. ∗
cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *tr.* [**sūmō,** take], *take together or all at once;* consume, destroy. 3
1. Arar, Araris (*acc.* **-im**), *m.* (DC-fg), the Arar (ā′rär), the *modern* Saone. 4
2. incrēdibilis, -e, *adj.* [**in-** + **crēdibilis,** credible], incredible; extraordinary. 4
lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**lēnis,** gentle], smoothness, gentleness. 1
3. oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. 3
uter, utra, utrum, *gen.* **utrīus** (App. 32), *interrog. adj.*, which *of two.* 1
iūdicō, 1, *tr.* [**iūdex,** a judge], pass judgment on; decide, determine. ∗
4. linter, -tris, *f.*, skiff, rowboat. 2
explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [**explōrō,** search out], explorer, scout, spy. ∗

B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237. **sibi:** case? App. 118: G.-L. 215, 2: A. 374, *a*: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

14. dum pervenīrent, *until they should arrive.*

THIRD REFERENCES:
Dative of possessor
Relative instead of demonstrative

Chap. **12.** *Caesar destroys the Tigurini, the rear guard of the Helvetii.*

1. Flūmen est Arar, *there is a river (named) the Arar.*

2. incrēdibilī lēnitāte, *of remarkably slow current:* descriptive ablative.

ut possit: mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

Why is the present tense used? Strictly because Caesar meant *can,* not *could.* Every subjunctive tense has a meaning and is used because that meaning is needed in the sentence; however, subjunctives are almost invariably used in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses. Learn once for all this very important rule, and the distinction between principal and historical tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, *B*; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, footnote 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

3. in . . . fluat, *in which direction it flows;* mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

4. ratibus, lintribus: ablatives of means.

trānsībant: at a point about twelve miles north of Caesar's camp. Excavations in this vicinity have brought to light numerous graves which give evidence of hasty interment, as if after a battle.

5. trēs . . . trādūxisse, *that the Helvetii had already conveyed three-fourths of their troops across this river.* The verb *trādūxisse* governs two objects—*partēs* depending on the meaning of the simple verb *dūcō, flūmen* depending on the meaning of the preposition *trāns*: App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 388, *b*: B. 175, 2, *a*, 1: H.-B. 391, 2: H. 406.

FIG. 56
THE SLUGGISH ARAR (SAONE)

id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus;

6. quārtus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**quattuor,** four], fourth. *

citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 3

7. vigilia, -ae, *f.* [**vigil,** awake], wakefulness; a watch, *one of the four equal divisions of the night.* *

castrum, -ī, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, **castra, -ōrum,** fortified camp, camp. *

9. impedītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **impediō,** hinder], hindered, impeded; at a disadvantage. *

inopīnāns, -antis, *adj.* [**in-** +**opīnāns,** expecting], not expecting, unaware, off one's guard. 2

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *tr.* [**ad** +**gradior,** step], advance to *or* against; attack. 4

10. concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō,** cut], cut down, slay, kill. 3

mandō, 1, *tr.* [**manus,** hand +**dō,** give], *give into one's hands;* intrust, commit; command. *

11. silva, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest. *

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** put], put away; hide, conceal. *

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton. *

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to the Tigurini; *m. pl. as noun,* **Tigurīnī** (Cg), the Tigurini (tĭg′ū-rī′nī). 2

6. citrā: i.e., on the east.

7. dē tertiā vigiliā, *just after (the beginning of) the third watch=just after midnight.*

10. mandārunt = *mandāvērunt:* form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

in silvās: from the English point of

nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

12. nam, *conj.*, for. ∗
quattuor (IV), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, four. ∗
14. interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. ∗
15. sīve *and* **seu,** *conj.* [sī, if +ve, or], or if; or; whether; **sīve . . . sīve,** either . . . or, whether . . . or. ∗
cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [cadō, fall], *what befalls;* accident, chance. ∗
deus, -ī (*nom. pl.*, **dī**; *dat. pl.*, **dīs**), *m.*, god, deity. 4
immortālis, -e, *adj.* [in- +mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. 3
16. īnsignis, -e, *adj.* [signō, mark], marked, remarkable. 4
calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, calamity. ∗
17. persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, *tr.* [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer (*punishment*). 1
18. sōlum, *adv.* [sōlus, alone], only, merely. ∗
pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the state *or* people, public. ∗
sed, *conj.*, but. ∗
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *tr.*, avenge; punish. 3
19. socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. 1
avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather. 2.
Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyŭs kăl-pĕr'nĭ-ŭs pī'sō), *killed in 107 B.C.* 1

view we might expect the ablative (place where), but the verb implies motion into—"ran into and hid."

13. cum exīsset (for *exiisset*, from *exīre*): mood? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, 1, *B*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

memoriā: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

14. Cassium, sub iugum: see **7,** 13-14.

16. quae pars . . . ea, *that part which.* Not infrequently the antecedent is thus expressed in the relative clause instead of the principal clause, and the relative clause then precedes.

populō: the compound *inferō* governs the indirect object.

17. prīnceps persolvit, *was the first to pay.*

19. Note the accumulation of appositives—**Pīsōnis** with *socerī*, **Pīsōnem** with *avum*, **lēgātum** with *Pīsōnem.*

socerī: in the year 59 Caesar had married Calpurnia, daughter of the Lucius Calpurnius Piso mentioned in **6,** 15 as one of the consuls for the year 58. See Fig. 9, page 27.

20. quō Cassium: the same verb *interfēcerant* belongs in the relative clause and in the principal clause.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Ablative of time
Result clause
Subjunctive cum *clause*

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem

2. cōnsequor, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow up; pursue. ∗

cūrō, 1, *tr.* [**cūra,** care], care for, provide for; *with gerundive,* have, order. 4

3. repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**repēns,** sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. 3

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move *or* excite thoroughly, rouse, alarm. ∗

4. vīgintī (XX), *card. num. adj., indecl.,* twenty. ∗

aegrē, *adv.* [**aeger,** ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. 3

6. Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.,* Divico (dĭv'ĭ-kō). 2

7. Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.,* of Cassius. 1

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.,* set in motion, drive; do, transact; discuss, speak. ∗

Chap. **13.** *The Helvetii haughtily ask for peace.*

1. ut would usually stand before *reliquās.*

2. pontem faciendum cūrat, *he had a bridge made;* construction? App. 285, II, *b*: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, *b.* 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622. This bridge was probably of boats, and was made by the chief of engineers: see Int. 40 and Fig. 57.

in Ararī, *over the Arar.*

4. cum intellegerent, *since they saw,* or better, *seeing.* The object of *intellegerent* is *illum fēcisse, that he had done . . . that which,* etc. **id** is the object of *fēcisse.* **ut trānsīrent,** (*namely*) *the crossing of the river,* is in apposition with *id*: mood? App. 229, *a*: G.-L. 553, 1: A. 568: B. 297, 1: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 4.

5. lēgātōs, *envoys.*

6. Dīvicō: he was an old man, for the battle was fought 49 years before.

7. Sī: The rest of this chapter and the whole of the next are in indirect discourse. If the teacher wishes the class, at this point, to make a more detailed study of the construction than is called for by the notes, he will find help in the direct form of these speeches as printed after Book VII.

Remember the important facts already learned—(1) that in every declarative sentence the principal verb will be an infinitive, (2) that in every subordinate clause the verb will be a subjunctive, and (3) that every original command will be a subjunctive. Usually the future infinitive shows that the speaker used a future indicative, a present infinitive shows that he used a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive shows that he used a past tense of the indicative. But note that not every infinitive stands for an indicative in the direct form; for all infinitives in the direct form are retained unchanged in the indirect. Note that every subjunctive follows the rule of sequence of tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511:

FIG. 57

SOLDIERS CROSSING A PONTOON BRIDGE

This is a bridge such as Caesar must have constructed across the Arar. The boats are disproportionately small, as such objects always are on Trajan's Column. See p. 8. The floor of the bridge is built across the boats and has a low railing at the side. The soldiers carry either standards (Int. 44) or packs of baggage (Int. 37).

itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, remi- 10
nīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae

10. sīn, *conj.* [sī, if], if however, but if. 1

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow through; pursue, follow up. 2

persevērō, 1, *intr.*, persist, persevere. 1

reminīscor, -ī, *intr.* [mēns, mind], call to mind, remember. 1

11. vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, former. ∗

incommodum, -ī, *n.* [incommodus, inconvenient], disaster, defeat. 1

prīstinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, former, previous, preceding. 4

A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, *B*; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, footnote 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

Sī . . . faceret, *if . . . should make.*

9. Helvētiōs is the subject of *itūrōs* and *futūrōs.*

eōs is the subject of *esse.*

ubi cōnstituisset, *where Caesar should have decided* = *where Caesar should decide.*

10. sīn persevērāret, *but if he should persist in following them up with war.*

reminīscerētur, *he should remember.* Since this is a principal clause the use of the subjunctive shows that the sentence is not declarative: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

11. et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

incommodī: i.e., the defeat of Cassius. Case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A. 350, *c*: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

12. imprōvīsō, *adv.* [**imprōvīsus**, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. 1

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *tr.* [**orior**, arise], rise against, attack. ∗

13. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (App. 81), *tr.*, bear, carry, bring. ∗

14. magnopere, *adv.* [**magnus**, great +**opus**, work], *with great labor;* greatly, exceedingly. ∗

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *tr.*, distribute; attribute, ascribe. 2

15. dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-**spiciō**, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. 2

maior, maius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **magnus**, great,] greater; *m. as noun*, **maiōrēs**, ancestors. ∗

16. discō, discere, didicī, —, *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught. 1

dolus, -ī, *m.*, trick, treachery. 2

īnsidiae, -ārum, *f.* [**sedeō**, sit], a sitting *or* lying in wait; ambush; artifice, crafty device. ∗

17. nītor, nītī, nīxus sum, *intr.*, rest *or* rely upon. 1

quārē, *adv.* [**quī** +**rēs**, thing]: (1) *interrog.*, why? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; therefore. ∗

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], allow, permit. ∗

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [**sistō**, stand], take a stand. ∗

18. interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [**necō**, destroy], extermination, utter destruction. 2

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name. ∗

19. prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō**, give], give forth; transmit, hand down. 2

FIG. 58

A COIN OF THE BELLOVACI

12. Quod adortus esset, *as to the fact that he had attacked.*

14. nē suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret, lit. *he should not greatly ascribe to his own prowess = he should not overrate his own prowess.* For mood see note on *reminīscerētur*, l. 10.

15. ipsōs, sē: i.e., the Helvetii.

16. ut magis contenderent quam nīterentur, *that they strove . . . rather than relied:* a result clause.

dolō: case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

17. Quārē, etc.: the meaning of the last sentence is, "Do not let the spot on which we stand become famous as the scene of your bloody defeat."

ubi cōnstitissent, *where they had taken their stand.*

THIRD REFERENCE:

Substantive clause of result or fact

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī

---

1. dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dubitō,** hesitate], hesitation. 1

2. commemorō, 1, *tr.* [**memorō,** call to mind], remind one of; mention. *

3. graviter, *adv.* [**gravis,** heavy], heavily; seriously; **graviter ferre,** take to heart, be annoyed *or* vexed (*at*). *

meritum, -ī, *n.* [**mereor,** deserve], desert, merit. 2

4. accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [**ad**+**cadō,** fall], fall to *or* upon; happen, occur. *

aliquis, -quid, *and* **aliquī, -qua, -quod,** *indef. pron.* [**quis,** who? App. 62, *a*], some; any. *

cōnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sciō,** know], conscious, aware. 1

5. caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *intr.*, be cautious, be on one's guard. 1

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], entrap; deceive. 1

6. timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid. *

7. contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult. 3

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *intr.*, forget. 1

Chap. **14.** *Caesar proposes terms, which the Helvetii refuse.*

1. Hīs: i.e., the envoys.

Eō is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause *quod . . . tenēret.*

minus dubitātiōnis, *less hesitation.* **dubitātiōnis:** partitive genitive.

2. eās rēs: i.e., the defeat of Cassius.

3. eō . . . quō: case? App. 148, *a*: G.-L. 403: A. 414, *a*: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

meritō: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

4. quī sī, *if they.* Caesar uses the singular in referring to the collective noun *populus*, but English prefers the plural. Notice that *populus* is invariably singular unless it means *nations.*

iniūriae, *of wrong-doing:* case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote 1: H. 451, n. 2.

sibi, lit. conscious *to themselves*, should not be expressed in translating.

5. nōn fuisse difficile, *it would not have been difficult.*

eō is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause *quod . . . putāret.*

dēceptum: supply *populum Rōmānum . . . esse.*

6. commissum (supply *quicquam . . . esse*), *that anything had been done.*

ā sē, *by them;* i.e., the Roman people.

quārē timēret, *because of which they should be afraid.* The subjunctive was used in the direct form: see App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.

7. timendum, lit. *that it must be feared* = *that they need fear:* construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, *b*: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.

Quod sī, *but if.*

contumēliae: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A. 350, *b*: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere

8. num, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* 1

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late. 3

9. temptō, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon. 4

10. vexō, 1, *tr.*, harass, plunder, overrun. 3

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], lay down *or* aside, put away. 3

11. victōria, -ae, *f.* [**victor,** victor], victory. ∗

tam, *adv.*, so, so very. ∗

īnsolenter, *adv.*, unusually; arrogantly, insolently. 1

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [**glōria,** glory], glory in, boast of. 1

12. diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long. ∗

impūne, *adv.* [**in-** + **poena,** punishment], without punishment. 1

admīror, 1, *tr.* [**mīror,** wonder at], wonder, be surprised. 1

13. cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [**suēscō,** become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, *a*), be accustomed, be wont. ∗

enim, *conj.*, for. ∗

14. commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**commūtō,** change], a changing, change. 2

doleō, 2, *intr.*, feel pain, be distressed *or* annoyed, grieve. 2

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. 1

---

8. vellet: the subject is still *populus Rōmānus.*

num posse, *they could not, could they*? or simply *could they*? This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mood see App. 268, II: G.-L. 651, R. 1: A. 586: B. 315, 2: H.-B. 591, *a*: H. 642, 2.

iniūriārum depends on *memoriam:* App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

quod, *the fact that.* These are substantive *quod* clauses, in apposition with *iniūriārum.* In direct discourse such clauses employ the indicative: App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, *a*: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

eō invītō, lit. *they being unwilling* = *against their will.*

11. Quod . . . admīrārentur are substantive *quod* clauses, subjects of *pertinēre.*

victōriā: i.e., the defeat of Cassius. For case see App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

12. sē intulisse, *that they* [the Helvetii] *had inflicted.*

eōdem pertinēre, *tended to the same result.*

13. Cōnsuēsse = *cōnsuēvisse.*

quō gravius doleant, *that men might suffer more keenly.*

14. doleant: so far the subjunctive tenses have all been imperfects and past perfects, because the indirect discourse depends on the past verb *respondit.* But it is quite common for the writer of indirect discourse to use the tenses that were used in the direct form instead of following the rule of sequence of tenses. Thus presents and perfects are used to the end of the chapter. This use of tenses is called *repraesentātiō:* see App. 270, *a.*

PLATE II—ROMAN OFFICERS AND SOLDIERS

German prisoners
Legionary in marching order

Officer reporting successful engagement

Commander in chief and officers
German standards (on ground)

Lictors
Musicians

eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturni- 15
ōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus 20
suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

---

15. secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sequor,** follow], following; successful, prosperous. ⁎

interdum, *adv.* [**dum,** while], at times, sometimes. 2

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diū,** long], long. 1

16. impūnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**in-** + **poena,** punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. 1

17. polliceor, 2, *tr. and intr.*, promise, pledge. ⁎

19. satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.* [**satis,** enough + **faciō,** make], make *or* do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy. 2

21. īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**statuō,** set up], set up; train, educate. ⁎

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**ad** + **capiō,** take], take *or* receive to oneself, accept. ⁎

22. testis, -is, *m., f.*, witness. 2

respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [**respondeō,** answer], reply, answer. 2

23. discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go away, depart. ⁎

---

15. hīs is the antecedent of *quōs*, l. 14.

secundiōrēs rēs, *a considerable degree of prosperity.*

diūturniōrem, *quite long.* The comparative may often be rendered by such words as *too, rather, quite*, all of which imply comparison with some unexpressed standard.

16. concēdere depends on *cōnsuēsse: were wont to grant to those whom they wished to punish.*

Cum sint, by itself, might be either causal or adversative. Notice that the *tamen* which follows shows which it is: App. 239: G.-L. 587: A. 549: B. 309, 3: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

17. ab iīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

factūrōs: supply *eōs . . . esse, that they would do what they promised.*

18. Haeduīs, like *Allobrogibus*, depends on *satisfaciant: if they should give satisfaction to the Haedui.*

ipsīs: i.e., the Haedui.

19. sēsē: i.e., Caesar.

Fig. 59

A COIN OF THE HAEDUI

Litav is probably the Litaviccus mentioned several times in Book VII.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Objective genitive
Ablative of agent
Ablative of cause
Ablative of degree of difference
Adversative cum *clause*

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō

1. posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**post,** after], following, next. ∗

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, set in motion, move. ∗

2. equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [**equitō,** ride; **equus,** horse], cavalry, horsemen. ∗

4. praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send before *or* in advance. ∗

5. cupidē, *adv.* [**cupidus,** desirous], desirously, eagerly. 2

agmen, -inis, *n.*, a marching column; army (*in marching order*); **prīmum agmen,** the van; **novissimum agmen,** the rear. ∗

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow up *or* after, follow close upon. ∗

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alius,** other], of *or* belonging to another; unfavorable. 4

FIG. 60

A ROMAN AUXILIARY CAVALRYMAN

This is the monument of an auxiliary cavalry standard bearer. His standard is not the *vexillum*, which was commonly used by the cavalry. Note the absence of stirrups, which the ancients seldom used.

Chap. **15.** *The Helvetii march on, followed by Caesar. His cavalry are defeated.*

1. castra movent, *march on.* The map facing p. 67 shows the route followed by the Helvetii. They could not march due west toward the Santones because the country is too mountainous. They therefore marched north, then northwest, intending to reach the Liger (Loire) and march down its valley.

2. equitātum: see Int. 48.

3. quem coāctum habēbat, *which he had collected*, almost = *quem coēgerat*: App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

4. quī videant: a purpose clause. **quī** is plural, agreeing with the collective noun *equitātum*.

quās . . . faciant, *in what direction the enemy were marching.* **faciant:** mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

5. cupidius, *too eagerly.*

locō: case? App. 151, *b*: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, *b*: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum

6. paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, few; *as noun*, few, a few, *persons or things.* ✱

7. cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 3

quīngentī, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [**quīnque,** five + **centum,** hundred], five hundred. 3

8. eques, -itis, *m.* [**equus,** horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. ✱

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so much, so great. ✱

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout. 2

audācter, *adv.* [**audāx,** bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. ✱

9. subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], halt, make a stand. 1

10. lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, harass, provoke, attack. ✱

coepī, coepisse (App. 86 and 86, *a*), *tr.*, began, commenced. ✱

11. praesentia, -ae, *f.* [**praesēns; praesum,** be present], the present moment; **in praesentiā,** for the present; then. 1

rapīna, -ae, *f.* [**rapiō,** seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. 1

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**pābulor,** forage], getting fodder, foraging. 1

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**populor,** ravage], ravaging, pillaging. 1

12. circiter, *adv.* [**circus,** circle], about, near. ✱

quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [**quīnque,** five + **decem,** ten], fifteen. ✱

6. paucī dē nostrīs, *a few of our men.* The rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnorix, as Caesar afterwards learned.

8. equitibus: ablative of means.

9. novissimō . . . lacessere, *to challenge our men to battle with their rear guard.* Both **agmine** and **proeliō** are ablatives of means.

10. satis habēbat . . . prohibēre, *considered it sufficient . . . to keep.* Caesar had never before commanded so large an army or met so strong an enemy. His army was outnumbered by an enemy whom the Romans had long dreaded. Defeat meant the total destruction of his army. Nothing was lost by postponing the battle. Therefore he wisely decided to wait until he could choose his own time and place.

12. Ita utī, *in such a way that*, introduces a result clause.

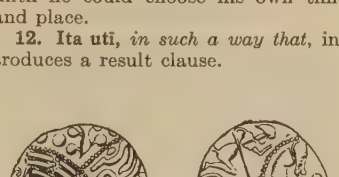


FIG. 61

A COIN OF THE AULERCI EBUROVICES

prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo

---

14. amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large; **amplius,** *comp. as noun,* more, a greater distance. ∗

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**quīnque,** five], five each, five. 1

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six. 1

15. intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 66], be *or* lie between, intervene. 3

1. interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. ∗

cotīdiē, *adv.* [**quot,** how many + **diēs,** day], daily, every day. ∗

2. pūblicē, *adv.* [**pūblicus,** public], publicly, on behalf of the state. 2

flāgitō, 1, *tr.*, demand. 1

frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, cold seasons. 1

3. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *tr.*, place, put; *pass.*, be situated. ∗

modo, *adv.* [**modus,** measure], only, merely; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** not only . . . but also. ∗

FIG. 62

GALLIC HELMETS

14. prīmum: supply *agmen.*

amplius is the subject of *interesset.*

quīnīs aut sēnīs, *five or six (each day).*

mīlibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of place

Chap. **16-20.** *Caesar learns that Dumnorix is treacherously thwarting his plans, but pardons him.*

Chap. **16.** *The Haedui fail to furnish supplies to Caesar.*

1. Interim: i.e., during the fifteen days of marching.

Haeduōs frūmentum: for the two objects see App. 125, *a*: G.-L. 339, *a*: A. 396: B. 178, 1, *a*: H.-B. 393, footnote: H. 411.

quod essent pollicitī, *which* [as he said] *they had promised.* This subordinate clause employs the subjunctive to imply that Caesar made the statement in demanding the grain. It is indirect discourse; but, because there is no verb of saying and the clause does not depend on an accusative and infinitive, it is called "implied indirect discourse": App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, n.: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, *a*: H. 649, 1.

2. flāgitāre = *flāgitābat.* Note that its subject is a nominative. Such an infinitive is called an historical infinitive. See App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 601.

3. sub septentriōnibus, lit. *under the northern stars = toward the north.*

frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in

---

4. mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe. 3

pābulum, -ī, *n.*, fodder, pasturage. 2

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate; **nē . . . quidem,** not even. ∗

6. subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], bring *or* carry up. 1

7. āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [**vertō,** turn], turn away from. ∗

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [ne- + **volō,** wish], not wish, be unwilling. ∗

8. cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bring. App. 81], bring *or* get together, collect, gather. ∗

comportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry together, collect. ∗

adsum, adesse, affuī, affutūrus, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be present, be at hand. 3

9. īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand upon *or* near, be at hand. 4

10. mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *tr.*, deal *or* measure out, distribute. 2

convocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō,** call], call together, summon, assemble. 4

---

4. frūmenta: the plural means grain standing in the fields.

mātūra nōn erant: it was now late in June.

pābulī: for the cavalry horses and pack animals. The cattle of the Helvetii had swept the country clean.

5. frūmentō ūtī: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477.

flūmine: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, *a*: H. 476.

6. nāvibus, *in boats*, is an ablative of means.

iter āverterant: see map facing p. 67.

8. Diem ex diē, *day after day: diem* is an accusative of duration of time.

dūcere, *put him off*, is an historical infinitive.

cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse (*frūmentum*) are the objects of the historical infinitive *dīcere: they said that it was being collected*, etc.

9. Ubi intellēxit: mood? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

sē diūtius dūcī, *that he was being put off too long.*

quō diē, *on which.* See note on **6**, 1.

10. frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, lit. *for him to measure out grain was right = he had to distribute grain.* This was done twice a month. **oportēret:** subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Its subject is *frūmentum mētīrī.*

convocātīs prīncipibus, *summoning*, etc. Remember that the ablative absolute must not be translated literally.

hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

FIG. 63
GALLIC BITS

12. Liscus, -ī, *m.*, Liscus (lĭs'kŭs). 4

summus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **superus,** high. App. 44], highest; chief, supreme. ∗

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be before *or* over, be in command of, be at the head of. ∗

13. vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, vergobret (vĕr'gō-brĕt). 1

creō, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose. 1

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**annus,** year], yearly. 1

vīta, -ae, *f.* [*cf.* **vīvō,** live], life. 4

14. nex, necis, *f.*, death. 1

potestās, -tātis, *f.* [**potēns,** powerful], ability, power, authority. ∗

accūsō, 1, *tr.* [**ad** +**causa,** cause, case], *bring a case or charge against;* blame, censure, accuse. 2

15. emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. 2

16. propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**prope,** near], near, close at hand. ∗

sublevō, 1, *tr.* [**levō,** lift], lift *or* raise up; assist, aid. 3

17. praesertim, *adv.*, particularly, especially. ∗

precēs, precum, *f.*, prayers, entreaties. 2

18. dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**statuō,** set up], set *or* place aside, forsake, desert. 1

19. queror, querī, questus sum, *tr. and intr.*, complain. ∗

---

12. Dīviciācō et Liscō: in apposition with *prīncipibus.*

summō . . . praeerat, *held the highest office.*

quem vergobretum: for the two objects see App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, *a*: H. 410, 1.

14. in suōs, *over his fellow-citizens.*

quod nōn sublevētur, *because* [as he said] *he was not aided.* This is implied indirect discourse: see note on l.1, and App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, *a*: H. 649, I.

15. possit: supply *frūmentum.*

16. tempore is an ablative of time; **hostibus** is an ablative absolute.

17. With **praesertim,** *cum* is almost always causal.

magnā ex parte, *in great part.*

eōrum precibus: see the complaint of the Haedui in **11,** 5-7.

18. quod sit dēstitūtus: see note on l. 14.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Ablative of the way (route)
Ablative with **ūtor,** *etc.*

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōn nūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: 5 Praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra

1. tum, *adv.*, then, at that time. ∗
dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last. 3
2. anteā, *adv.* [**ante,** before], formerly, before, previously. 2
taceō, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep silent, pass over in silence. 3
prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place *or* put forward; relate; expose. ∗
3. valeō, 2, *intr.*, be strong; **plūrimum valēre,** be very powerful. ∗
prīvātim, *adv.* [**prīvātus,** private], privately, as private citizens. 1
4. sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sēditiō,** sedition], seditious, mutinous. 1
improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **probus,** good], unprincipled, treasonable, reckless. 1
5. dēterreō, 2, *tr.* [**terreō,** frighten], frighten away *or* off, prevent, deter. 3
7. perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear], bear *or* carry through; submit to, endure. ∗
dubitō, 1, *intr.* [**dubius,** doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate. ∗
8. superō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**super,** over], go over; conquer, overcome. ∗
9. lībertās, -tātis, *f.* [**līber,** free], freedom, liberty, independence. ∗

Chap. **17.** *Liscus tells Caesar that a powerful faction among the Haedui is working against the Romans.*

1. Supply *id* as the antecedent of *quod* and the object of *prōpōnit*.

2. The direct form of the indirect discourse in this and the following chapters will be found at the end of the text.

Esse nōn nūllōs, *that there were some.*

3. valeat: for tense see note on **14,** 14.

quam magistrātūs: the ablative without *quam* might have been used instead of this nominative: App. 139, *a*: G.-L. 296, R. 1: A. 406; 407: B. 217, 1, 2: H.-B. 416: H. 471, 1.

5. dēterrēre nē cōnferant, *were preventing . . . from bringing.*

6. Praestāre . . . sint ēreptūrī, (*saying*) *that it was better*, etc. This is the indirect form of the malcontents' *sēditiōsa ōrātiō*. The subject of *praestāre* is *perferre*.

sī (*Haeduī*) **iam obtinēre nōn possint,** *if they could no longer hold.* The Haedui claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 29.

7. neque (*sē*) **dubitārē,** *nor did they doubt;* i.e., they said *we do not doubt.*

8. quīn Haeduīs sint ēreptūrī, *that they would wrest from the Haedui.* **Haeduīs:** dative with the compound verb of separation: App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, *d*: H.-B. 371: H. 429, 2. **sint ēreptūrī:** form? App. 75: G.-L. 129: A. 194, *a*: B. 115: H.-B. 162: H. 236. Mood? App. 229, *d*: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, *a*: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, *b*: H. 595, 1.

superāverint, *should conquer*, is a perfect subjunctive, for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

ūnā: the adverb.

cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī. Hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā,

11. coërceō, 2, *tr.*, restrain. 1

necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **necessārius**, necessary], necessarily, unavoidably. ∗

12. quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*: (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? (2) *rel.*, as much as. ∗

2. dēsignō, 1, *tr.* [**signō**, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. 1

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *tr.*, perceive; realize, know. 4

3. iactō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **iaciō**, throw], throw repeatedly; talk about, discuss. 2

celeriter, *adv.* [**celer**, swift], quickly. ∗

concilium, -lī, *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. ∗

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], send in different directions, send away *or* off, dismiss. ∗

4. retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō**, hold], hold back, detain, keep. ∗

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *tr. and intr.*, inquire, ask. ∗

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* **sōlīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only. ∗

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [**conveniō**, come together], a coming together, meeting. 1

5. līberē, *adv.* [**līber**, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. 1

sēcrētō, *adv.*, separately, privately, secretly. 2

6. reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, *tr.* [**pariō**, procure], find; find out, discover, ascertain. ∗

vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true. 4

audācia, -ae, *f.* [**audāx**, bold], boldness, daring. 1

---

10. Supply *ea* as the antecedent of *quae* and as one of the subjects of *ēnūntiārī*.

11. sē: i.e., Liscus, the chief magistrate.

12. coāctus, *under compulsion*.

quantō . . . fēcerit is an indirect question, the object of *intellegere*.

Chap. **18.** *Liscus tells Caesar of the power of Dumnorix, and that he favors the Helvetii.*

2. plūribus praesentibus, *when many were present*.

4. ex sōlō, *from him in private*.

Most verbs of asking may take two accusatives (see note on **16**, 1), but the person is more commonly expressed by the ablative with a preposition: App. 125, *a*: G.-L. 339, *a*, R. 1: A. 396, *a*: B. 178, 1, *a*: H.-B. 393, *c*: H. 411, 3.

6. reperit esse vēra, *he learned that this was the truth;* explained by the indirect discourse which follows.

Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, *that Dumnorix was the very man* or *that it was, in fact, Dumnorix*. By putting together what is said of Orgetorix in **4**, 5-6, and the following description of

magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud

7. līberālitās, -tātis, *f.* [**līber,** free], *freedom in giving,* etc.; generosity. 2

8. portōrium, -rī, *n.*, toll; *import and export* duty. 2

9. vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*, tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. 2

pretium, -tī, *n.*, price. 2

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō,** buy], buy up, purchase. 3

10. liceor, 2, *intr.*, bid (*at an auction*). 2

contrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.:* (1) *as adv.*, against him *or* them; (2) *as prep.*, against. ∗

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, dare, risk, venture. ∗

nēmō, *acc.* **nēminem,** *m., f.* [**ne-** + **homō,** man], no man, no one, nobody. ∗

11. familiāris, -e, *adj.* [**familia,** household], personal, private; **rēs familiāris,** personal property, private property. 4

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *tr.*, increase, augment, add to. 3

largior, 4, *tr.* [**largus,** large], give largely *or* freely; bribe. 1

12. sūmptus, -ūs, *m.* [**sūmō,** spend], expense. 1

semper, *adv.*, always. 3

13. alō, alere, aluī, altum, *tr.*, nourish, feed, support. 4

FIG. 64
A COIN OF THE HAEDUI

Dubnorex is supposed to be the Dumnorix of Caesar.

Dumnorix we are able to appreciate the extraordinary power of some of the Gallic nobles. They were forerunners of the feudal barons of later times.

summā audāciā, (*a man*) *of the utmost boldness.* For case see App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

8. rērum: case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 450.

portōria . . . redēmpta habēre, *he had bought up the import duties and taxes.* Instead of collecting the duties and taxes by its own agents, the state sold at auction the privilege of collecting them. The successful bidder collected all he could, paid to the state the amount of his bid, and pocketed the difference.

9. parvō pretiō: thus defrauding the state. For case see App. 147: G.-L. 404: A. 416: B. 225: H.-B. 427, 1: H. 478.

redēmpta habēre: differs how from *redēmisse*? App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

10. illō licente, *when he bid:* App. 150.

12. comparāsse: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

13. domī: case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō

---

14. largiter, *adv.* [**largus,** large], largely; **largiter posse,** have great influence. 1

potentia, -ae, *f.* [**potēns,** powerful], power, authority, influence. 2

15. māter, -tris, *f.*, mother. 3

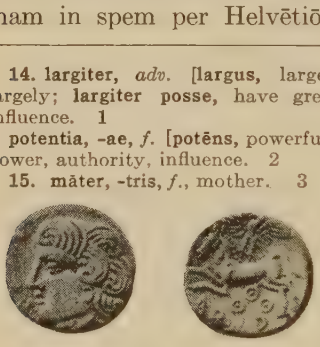


FIG. 65
A COIN OF THE BITURIGES

Biturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Biturīges (bĭt'ū-rī'jēz). 1

illīc, *adv.* [**ille,** that], in that place, there. 1

16. collocō, 1, *tr.* [**con** + **locō,** place], place; **nūptum collocāre,** give in marriage. *

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. 3

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. 2

17. nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*, veil oneself *for the marriage ceremony*, marry. 1

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *intr.*, favor. 1

18. cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, *tr. and intr.*, desire; wish well to, favor. *

affīnitās, -tātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. 2

ōdī, ōdisse (App. 86), *tr., pf. with meaning of pres.*, hate, detest. 2

20. dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum, *tr.* [**minuō,** lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. 1

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ante,** before], former, old, ancient. 2

21. honōs, -ōris, *m.*, honor. 3

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**statuō,** set up], set up again, restore. 4

---

14. causā: see Vocabulary.

16. collocāsse: supply *nūptum.*

ipsum: i.e., Dumnorix. His wife was the daughter of Orgetorix: see **3,** 15.

sorōrem ex mātre, *sister on his mother's side;* i.e., his half-sister.

17. nūptum: construction? App. 295: G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, *b*: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

in cīvitātēs: the accusative implies "sent them into and caused them to be married there."

18. Helvētiīs: indirect object with verbs meaning "to favor."

suō nōmine, *on his own account.*

20. dēminūta: supply *sit.*

21. Sī quid: why *quid?* App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

summam in spem venīre, *he entertained the highest hopes.*

22. imperiō, *under the sovereignty:* case? App. 142, *b*: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 474, 1.

populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam

---

24. dēspērō, 1, *intr.* [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless. *

25. equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques, horseman], of *or* belonging to a horseman, equestrian, cavalry. *

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* advertō, turn to], turned to *or* against; adverse, unfavorable. *

29. perterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify. *

1. cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *tr.* [co +(g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; *pf., I have learned,* I know (App. 193, I, *a*). *

2. accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [ad +cēdō, go], come to; be added. *

4. iniussū, *abl. m.* (no other case exists) [iubeō, order], without command *or* order. 1

---

25. quod . . . esset factum, *as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought,* etc. = *as to the . . . engagement which,* etc. See **15**, 5-7.

paucīs ante diēbus, lit. *before by a few days = a few days before.* **diēbus** is an ablative of degree of difference, with the adverb *ante.*

26. initium factum (*esse*), *that the beginning had been made:* object of *reperiēbat.*

27. auxiliō Caesarī, *as an aid to Caesar.* For the two datives see App. 119, *a*: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Contracted verb forms
Descriptive ablative

Chap. **19.** *Caesar consults Diviciacus about the punishment of his brother.*

1. cum certissimae rēs accēderent, *since the most clearly proved facts were added.* These facts are stated in the following *quod* clauses, which are in apposition with *rēs.* For tense see App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, *B*; 267: H.-B. 476: H. 198; 543.

2. quod trādūxisset: kind of clause? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, *a*: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3. Mood? App. 274: G.-L. 663: A. 593: B. 324, 2: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. quod . . . cūrāsset, lit. *that he had taken care of hostages to be given between them = that he had caused hostages to be exchanged.* **eōs** = *Helvētiōs et Sēquanōs.*

dandōs: construction? App. 285, II, *b*: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, *b*, 2: H.-B. 605, 2; 612, III: H. 622.

4. iniussū . . . cīvitātis, *without his own orders and those of the state.*

5 īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē 10 voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem

---

5. īnsciēns, -entis, *adj.* [in- + sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware. 1

7. animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [animus, mind + ad + vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; **animadvertere in,** *with acc.*, punish. *

8. repugnō, 1, *intr.* [pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. 2

9. studium, -dī, *n.* [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness; good-will, devotion. *

10. ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē + grex, herd], *out of the common herd;* excellent, remarkable. 2

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing. 2

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [temperō, control oneself], prudence, self-control, judgment. 1

11. supplicium, -cī, *n.*, punishment. 4

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [ob +fendō, strike], strike against, hurt; **animum offendere,** hurt the feelings, offend. 1

12. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. *

priusquam *or* **prius . . . quam,** *conj.*, sooner than, before. *

quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any person *or* thing. *

13. vocō, 1, *tr.* [vōx, voice], call, summon. 3

interpres, -etis, *m.*, interpreter. 1

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move back *or* away, remove. 4

14. Valerius, -rī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yŭs vá-lē'rĭ-ŭs trōō-sĭl'ŭs). *

---

5. ipsīs: i.e., Caesar and the Haedui.

6. causae: partitive genitive with *satis*, which is used as a noun and the subject of *esse*.

quārē animadverteret, *why he should punish.* For mood see App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.

8. ūnum, *one thing*, is explained by its appositive, the clause *quod cognōverat*.

9. Note the lack of conjunctions, and see the note on **1, 3.**

10. cognōverat, lit. *had learned* = *knew*.

11. nē offenderet, *that he should offend.* Meaning of *nē*, and mood? App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

eius: i.e., Dumnorix.

12. priusquam . . . cōnārētur, *before he ventured on anything.*

13. per . . . colloquitur: English order, *colloquitur cum eō per*, etc.

14. prīncipem: not necessarily a chief, but a prominent man.

suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset,

---

16. colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [con- + **loquor,** speak], speak (*with*), have a conference. ∗

simul, *adv.*, at the same time. ∗

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, remind forcibly. 1

17. sēparātim, *adv.* [**sēparō,** separate], separately, privately. 2

18. petō, -ere, -īvī *or* **-iī, -ītum,** *tr. and intr.*, seek, hunt for; ask, request. ∗

hortor, 1, *tr.*, urge. ∗

19. offēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**offendō,** hurt], offense. 1

1. lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. 2

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [**plectō,** fold], embrace, clasp. 1

2. obsecrō, 1, *tr.* [**sacer,** sacred], implore, entreat. 1

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy; severe, serious. ∗

sciō, 4, *tr.*, know, understand. ∗

5. adulēscentia, -ae, *f.* [**adulēscēns,** youth], youthfulness, youth. 1

---

15. cui . . . habēbat, *in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters.* **cui:** case? App. 115, *a*: G.-L. 346, n. 5: A. 367, *a*, n. 2: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *b*.

16. quae sint dicta, quae dīxerit: indirect questions.

ipsō: i.e., Diviciacus.

18. ut . . . statuat, *that without wounding his* [i.e., Diviciacus's] *feelings he might either himself* [i.e., Caesar] *investigate the case and pass sentence on him* [i.e., Dumnorix].

THIRD REFERENCE:

Sequence of tenses

Chap. **20.** *At the earnest request of Diviciacus Caesar spares Dumnorix, but he takes precautions for the future.*

1. complexus: probably kneeling and clasping Caesar's knees, for this was the ancient attitude of suppliant entreaty.

2. nē quid: why *quid*? App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

gravius, *too severe.*

Scīre: the indirect discourse depends on the idea of "saying," which is implied in *obsecrāre*. The direct form is given at the end of the text.

3. nec quemquam, *and that no one.*

eō: i.e., Dumnorix.

capere, *felt.*

4. ipse: i.e., Diviciacus. It is the subject of *posset*, to be supplied from the next clause.

domī: case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

5. minimum posset, *had very little influence.* Supply *cum* from the preceding clause.

per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet;

---

6. crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, grow *or* increase. 1

ops, opis, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources. 3

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew; *pl.*, strength, power. 1

7. minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, *tr. and intr.* [**minus,** less], lessen, impair, diminish. 3

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*, ruin, destruction. 2

8. amor, -ōris, *m.* [**amō,** love], love, affection. 1

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frāter,** brother], brotherly, fraternal. 2

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**exīstimō,** estimate], judgment, opinion. 1

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people, the public, the masses. 3

12. verbum, -ī, *n.*, word. 3

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears. 4

13. dextra, -ae, *f.* [**dexter,** right; *sc.* **manus**], the right hand. 1

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum, *tr.*, seize, grasp. 1

cōnsōlor, 1, *tr.*, cheer, comfort. 1

14. ōrō, 1, *tr.* [**ōs,** mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. 3

16. condōnō, 1, *tr.* [**dōnō,** give], give up; pardon, forgive. 2

adhibeō, 2, *tr.* [**habeō,** have], bring to, bring in, summon. 4

---

6. sē: i.e., Diviciacus. He said *per mē, by my help.*

opibus: ablative with *ūterētur.*

7. suam refers to Diviciacus.

8. Sēsē: i.e., Diviciacus.

9. Quod sī, lit. *as to which, if: quod* is strictly an adverbial accusative, but with *sī* it has become a mere connective, and is translated *and, but, now,* etc.

accidisset, *should happen.*

ipse: i.e., Diviciacus.

eum, *such.*

10. eum: i.e., Caesar.

11. suā refers to Diviciacus.

voluntāte: ablative of accordance.

futūrum (*esse*) **utī . . . āverterentur,** lit. *it would be that . . . would be turned from him.* This construction is the regular substitute for the future passive infinitive, which is rare.

13. rogat (*ut*) **faciat,** *he asked him to make.* In what kind of clauses and after what verbs may *ut* be omitted? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, *a*: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 565, 4.

14. tantī: case? App. 105: G.-L. 380, 1: A. 417: B. 203, 3: H.-B. 356, 1: H. 448, 1.

15. utī . . . condōnet, lit. *that he gave up the injury of the state to his wish = that he pardoned the wrong done to the state out of consideration for his wish.*

quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit. 20

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis

---

17. reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [**prehendō** (= **prēndō**), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. 1

18. moneō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, admonish. 3

19. vītō, 1, *tr.*, avoid, shun. 3

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by; **praeteritus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *neut. pl. as noun,* the past. 1

20. custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. 2

21. loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. *

2. cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sīdō**, sit down], sit down; take a position, encamp. *

octō (VIII), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, eight. *

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind, *or* nature? 2

---

17. quae reprehendat: mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

20. Dumnorīgī: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

Caesar had his hands full with the Helvetii and could not afford to stir up a revolt of the Haedui in addition — a result which might easily have followed an attempt to punish their most popular noble. A few years later Caesar put Dumnorix to death for obstinate disobedience. See V, **7.**

THIRD REFERENCES:

Use of the indefinite quis
Dative of reference
Construction with verbs of asking, etc.
Indirect question

Chap. **21-22.** *The failure of a plan to attack the Helvetii.*

Chap. **21.** *Caesar plans a double attack on the Helvetii.*

Chapters **16-20** interrupted the narrative of Caesar's pursuit of the Helvetii. The events of this chapter follow immediately after those narrated in Chapter **15.**

1. hostēs . . . cōnsēdisse, *that the enemy had camped* at the foot of a hill. The exact location is unknown; it was only a few miles from the battlefield south of Bibracte. See map facing p. 67.

2. mīlia: accusative of extent of space.

quālis esset: indirect question, object of *cognōscerent.*

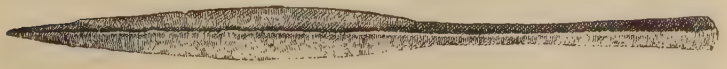


FIG. 66
GALLIC SPEAR HEAD

esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī

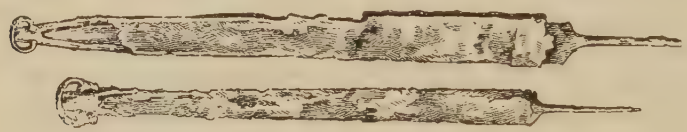


FIG. 67
GALLIC SWORDS IN THEIR SCABBARDS

3. circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [**circumeō**, go around], a going around. 4
ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ascendō**, climb up], ascent, approach. 2
5. praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor, *a Roman magistrate.* 1
6. dux, ducis, *m.* [**dūcō**, lead], leader, guide. *
7. ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr. and intr.* [**ad** + **scandō**, climb], climb, ascend. 2
9. P., *abbr. for* **Pūblius,** *a Roman praenomen.* 2
Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius (pŭb'lĭ-ŭs kŏn-sĭd'ĭ-ŭs), *an officer of unknown rank.* 3

FIG. 68
Gallic method of suspending sword from belt

3. quālis . . . ascēnsus, *what sort of ascent there was in going around behind it.*
quī cognōscerent mīsit, *he sent (men) to learn.*
4. facilem esse: supply *ascēnsum.*
Dē tertiā vigiliā: see note on **12, 7.**
5. lēgātum prō praetōre, *legate with praetorian rank.* He had either served as praetor in Rome or had been given equivalent rank. Apparently he had the highest rank among Caesar's legates. He was certainly the ablest of them.
cum iīs ducibus, *with those men as guides.*
7. quid . . . sit, lit. *what is of his plan = what his plan was;* namely, that Labienus should take a position on the top of the mountain, in the rear of the enemy, and that he and Caesar should attack them at the same moment. **cōnsilī** is a possessive genitive, used predicatively.
dē quārtā vigiliā: the fourth watch would begin at three A.M. when the nights were twelve hours long. As this was June, the nights were shorter, and the fourth watch began about two.
9. P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter's statements, as told in the next chapter.
reī mīlitāris, *in military matters:* case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote: H. 451, 1.

mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem

10. mīlitāris, -e, *adj.* [**mīles,** soldier], of a soldier, military; **rēs mīlitāris,** military matters, the science of warfare. *

perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tried, experienced, skilled. 2

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyŭs sŭl'á), *the dictator.* 1

11. posteā, *adv.* [**post,** after], after this, afterwards. *

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Licinius Crassus (măr'kŭs lĭ-sĭn'ĭ-ŭs krăs'-ŭs), *triumvir with Caesar and Pompey.* 2

1. lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light; daylight; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak. 3

3. captīvus, -ī, *m.* [**capiō,** take], captive, prisoner. 4

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, *tr.* [**pariō,** procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. *

4. equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. *

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], admit; let go, put to full speed (*of a horse*). 3

5. accurrō, -currere, -currī *or* **-cucurrī, -cursum,** *intr.* [**ad** + **currō,** run], run *or* hasten to. 2

6. Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Gallia,** Gaul], pertaining to Gaul *or* the Gauls, Gallic. *

7. collis, -is, *m.*, hill. *

10. Sullae: see Int. 6.

11. in M. Crassī, *in (that) of Marcus Crassus.* In such cases the word for "that" is never expressed in Latin.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Genitive with adjectives

Chap. **22.** *Caesar's plan is frustrated by a mistake of Considius.*

1. summus mōns, *the top of the mountain.* For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun followed by a genitive, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

2. ipse: i.e., Caesar.

passibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

3. ut, *as.*

4. Labiēnī, *that of Labienus.* See note on **21, 11.**

cognitus esset: the force of *cum* still continues.

equō admissō, *at full gallop.*

7. īnsignibus: the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc. See Fig. 13, p. 33.

FIG. 69
A GALLIC COIN

A charioteer is driving a human-headed horse over a prostrate body. Note what becomes of this design in Fig. 47, p. 77.

subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

---

8. subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], draw *or* lead up. 3

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, sharp point *or* edge *of a weapon;* a line, battle line. ∗

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build upon; form, draw up *in battle array.* ∗

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], instruct, order. 1

9. nisi, *conj.* [ne- + sī, if], if not, except, unless. ∗

prope, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, near, close to. ∗

11. impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, charge. ∗

12. abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *intr.* [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain. 1

dēnique, *adv.*, finally, at last. 3

14. timor, -ōris, *m.* [timeō, fear], fear, alarm, dread. ∗

15. intervāllum, -ī, *n.*, interval (*of space or time*); distance. ∗

---

8. aciem īnstruit: Caesar concluded from the report of Considius that Labienus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him.

ut . . . praeceptum, lit. *as it had been directed to him = as he had been directed.* Intransitive verbs cannot be used in the passive except impersonally. English idiom generally requires the personal construction in translation. **eī:** case? App. 116, *c*: G.-L. 217: A. 365: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

9. nē committeret: a substantive clause of desire, subject of *erat praeceptum.*

nisi vīsae essent: mood? App. 273: G.-L. 662; 663, 2, *b*: A. 592, 1: B. 323: H.-B. 536, *a*: H. 649, I. The past perfect stands for an original future perfect.

ipsīus = *Caesaris.*

10. ut fieret: a purpose clause.

11. proeliō: ablative of separation.

12. Multō diē, *late in the day.*

14. timōre perterritum, *panic-stricken.* This was probably due in part to the exaggerated notion of Gallic prowess that prevailed in the Roman army.

quod . . . renūntiāvisse, *had reported to him what he had not seen as if seen.* **vīsō** is a participle used as a noun.

15. quō . . . intervāllō = *eō intervāllō quō sequī cōnsuērat.* For case see App. 142, *b*: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3. According to **15,** 14, the distance was five or six miles.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of comparison

Chap. **23-29.** *Caesar defeats the Helvetii in a great battle and forces the survivors to return home.*

FIG. 70
SITE OF THE HELVETIAN CAMP
The rear guard of the Helvetii camped around this pond on the night before the battle.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum

1. postrīdiē, *adv.* [**posterus,** following +**diēs,** day], on the day following, the next day; **postrīdiē eius diēī,** on the next *or* following day. *

bīduum, -ī, *n.* [**bis,** twice +**diēs,** day], space *or* period of two days, two days. 2

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be over; be left, remain. *

2. Bibracte, -is, *n.* (Cef), Bibracte (bī-brăk′tē). 2

3. cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cōpia,** plenty], well supplied, wealthy. 1

4. duodēvīgintī (XVIII), *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two + **dē,** from + **vīgintī,** twenty], eighteen. 4

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *intr.* [**-spiciō,** look], look forward; see to, provide for. 1

Chap. **23.** *Caesar marches toward Bibracte to secure grain, and is followed by the Helvetii.*

2. cum . . . oportēret, (*before the time*) *when he would have to distribute grain to the army.* See note on **16,** 10. The peculiar *cum* clause is best explained by H.-B. 509.

Bibracte: built on Mont Beuvray, twelve miles west of Autun. This is a wooded mountain top about 1200 feet high, on which the ruins of the city have been found.

4. reī . . . prōspiciendum, *that he must look out for supplies.* Evidently his vigorous talk to Dumnorix and the rest of the chiefs, two days before, had as yet produced no results. **prōspiciendum:** construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, *b*: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.

exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

6. fugitīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fugiō**, flee], fleeing; *m. as noun*, deserter. 1

Aemilius, -lī, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mĭl'ĭ-ŭs). 1

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**decem**, ten], decurion, *a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten.* 1

9. prīdiē, *adv.* [**diēs**, day], on the day before. 3

10. interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō**, shut], shut *or* cut off. *

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [**fīdō**, trust. App. 74], trust completely, feel confident, hope. *

11. commūtō, 1, *tr.* [**mūtō**, change], change. 2

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [**vertō**, turn], turn completely; turn, change. *

5. itaque . . . contendit: he was south and a little east of Bibracte. The plan on p. 131 shows that the Helvetii were marching northwest, and that the more northerly route taken by Caesar was almost parallel, for some distance, with the route of the Helvetii. This explains the fact that the Helvetii were able to overtake Caesar's army.

Bibracte: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, *a*: H.-B. 450: H. 418.

8. exīstimārent, commīsissent, cōnfīderent: mood? App. 244; 273: G.-L. 662; 663, 2, *b*: A. 592, 3: B. 286, 1; 323: H.-B. 535, 2, *a*: H. 588, II; 649, I.

eō magis quod, *all the more because.* **eō** is an ablative of cause.

9. quod . . . commīsissent: the Helvetii did not understand the reason for the failure of Caesar and Labienus to attack them on the previous day.

10. sīve eō, *or for this reason.*

interclūdī posse, *that* (*the Romans*) *could be cut off;* i.e., by being prevented from reaching Bibracte.

11. commūtātō cōnsiliō: if the Helvetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged nature of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

ā novissimō agmine, *on the rear.* See note on **1, 15.**

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of place to which
Implied indirect discourse
Passive periphrastic conjugation

Chap. **24.** *Caesar prepares for battle, and the Helvetii advance.*

1. animadvertit: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

2. quī . . . sustinēret: i.e., to check the skirmishers of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his

24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem

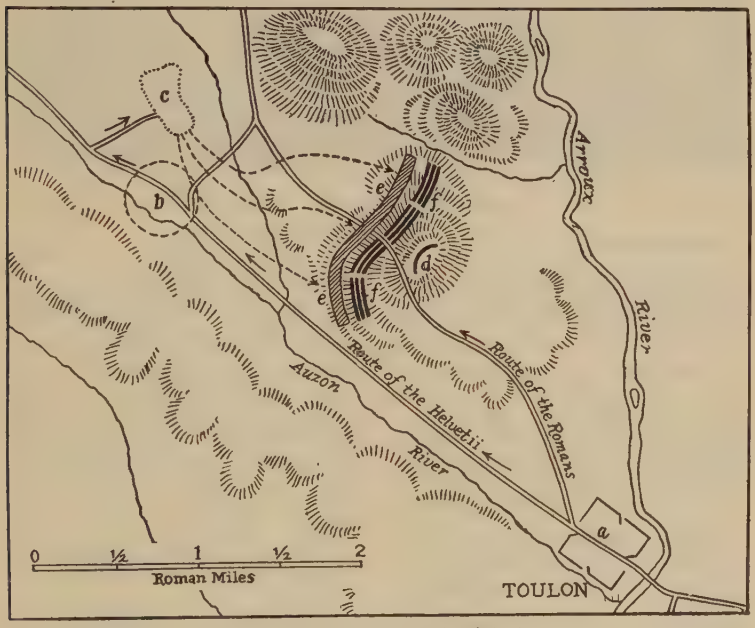
---

1. postquam, *conj.* [**post,** afterwards +**quam,** than], after, as soon as. 4

2. sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [su(b)s +teneō, hold], hold up, sustain; check. *

3. medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, the middle of. *

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [trēs, three +plicō, fold], threefold, triple; **triplex aciēs,** triple line of battle. 4



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII

First stage, Chap. **24-25**, 10.

a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (**24,** 9).
d, Roman fortification (**24,** 8).
e, The Helvetii.
f, The Romans.

lines. The cavalry was not expected to meet the main attack.

3. in colle mediō, *halfway up the hill.* For the meaning of the adjective see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

triplicem aciem: on the battle formation of the Romans see Int. 55, 56.

īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocāvit, ita ut suprā sē tōtum montem hominibus complēret; impedīmenta sarcināsque in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

4. veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vetus,** old], old, veteran. 1

5. proximē, *adv.* [**proximus,** last], last; lately. 4

6. suprā, *adv., and prep. with acc.,* above. *

7. compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [**pleō,** fill], fill up *or* completely; cover. *

impedīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**impediō,** hinder], hindrance, impediment; *pl.,* baggage (*of an army*), baggage-train. *

sarcina, -ae, *f.,* pack, luggage (*carried by each soldier*). 3

8. mūniō, 4, *tr.,* defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnītus,** *pf. part. as adj.,* fortified, defended, protected. *

10. cōnfertus, -a, -um, *adj.,* dense, thick, compact. 4

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], hurl *or* drive back, repel. 4

11. phalanx, -ngis, *f.,* a compact body of troops, phalanx. 4

12. succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**sub** +**cēdō,** go], go *or* come under; come up to, come up. *

4. legiōnum quattuor veterānārum: case? App. 102: G.-L. 368, R.: A. 344: B. 197: H.-B. 349. These legions were the one which Caesar found in Transalpine Gaul (see **7,** 5) and the three which he brought from their quarters near Aquileia (see **10,** 9).

5. quās . . . cōnscrīpserat: see **10,** 8. Caesar dared not put these untrained and untried troops in the fighting lines.

6. auxilia: Caesar never expected much of his Gallic infantry. See Int. 47.

7. sarcinās: see Int. 37, and especially Fig. 20, p. 38.

8. eum: supply *locum.*

iīs . . . cōnstiterant: i.e., the two new legions and the auxiliaries.

mūnīrī: the location of the battlefield was long uncertain, but in 1886 excavations were made in one of the proposed locations, and evidences of a semicircular wall and ditch were found on the top of a hill, as indicated in the plan, p. 131. Three years later nine trenches were found in which the dead had been buried.

10. in ūnum locum: marked *c* on the plan. Bits of Gallic pottery have been found there.

11. phalange: in the phalanx formation the soldiers overlapped their shields, shingle fashion, so as to make an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields in front of themselves, the other ranks, over their heads. If the phalanx remained unbroken, it could break the opposing line by sheer weight; but if it broke, the men were too closely packed to use their weapons effectively.

FIG. 71

VIEW ACROSS THE BATTLEFIELD

This is looking east from the hill on which the Helvetii parked their wagons.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā

---

1. prīmum, *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], first, at first, in the first place. ∗

deinde, *adv.* [**dē** +**inde,** thence], thereupon, then, next. ∗

2. aequō, 1, *tr.* [**aequus,** equal], make even *or* equal, equalize. 1

3. cohortor, 1, *tr.* [**co** +**hortor,** encourage], encourage, cheer, animate. ∗

4. pīlum, -ī, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. ∗

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [**frangō,** break], break through, break up. 1

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], scatter, break up, break. 2

Chap. **25.** *The Helvetii fight bravely, but are forced to retreat.*

1. suō: supply *equō remōtō; having sent away his own horse.*

omnium: i.e., of the higher officers, not of the cavalry. Caesar wished in part to encourage his men by showing that the officers shared their danger, and in part to prevent some timid tribune from setting an example of flight. See Int. 41.

2. aequātō perīculō, *by making the danger equal.*

3. cohortātus suōs: Caesar was a skillful orator (see Int. 22), and usually encouraged his men before battle by a short speech.

ē locō superiōre: see Int. 55.

4. pīlīs: see Int. 36, *a*.

gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus

5. gladius, -dī, *m.*, sword. ∗

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.* [**stringō,** bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (**gladium**). 1

6. pugna, -ae, *f.* [**pugnō,** fight], fight, battle, contest. ∗

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield. See Int. 35, *c*. ∗

7. ictus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow. 1

trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [**fīgō,** fix], pierce through, transfix. 1

colligō, 1, *tr.* [**con** + **ligō,** bind], bind *or* fasten together. 1

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron. 1

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.* [**flectō,** bend], bend down; *with reflex.*, become bent. 2

8. ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [**vellō,** pluck], pluck out, pull out. 1

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *f. sing. as noun* (*sc.* **manus**), the left hand. 4

commodē, *adv.* [**commodus,** convenient], conveniently; **satis commodē,** to much advantage, very easily. ∗

pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight. ∗

9. bracchium, -chī, *n.*, the arm, forearm. 1

praeoptō, 1, *tr.* [**optō,** wish], wish before; prefer. 1

10. manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand. ∗

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send out *or* forth, release; drop. 2

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked; exposed, unprotected. 1

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body. ∗

tandem, *adj.*, at last, at length. 3

vulnus, -eris, *n.*, a wound. ∗

---

5. gladiīs: see Int. 36, *b*.

Gallīs impedīmentō: for the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

6. quod . . . poterant is the subject of *erat*. For mood see App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, *a*: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

plūribus . . . colligātīs: remember that the shields overlapped. Fig. 74, p. 136, shows that the Gallic shields were very large.

7. cum īnflexisset: mood? App. 242, *b*: G.-L. 567, n.: A. 542; 518, *c*: B. 288, 3, *a*: H.-B. 540: H. 601, 4.

Fig. 72
A GALLIC SPEAR POINT

8. ēvellere: supply *pīla* as object.

sinistrā: the shield was held with the left hand.

9. multī is put before *ut* for emphasis.

iactātō bracchiō, *after throwing their arms about*, in the effort to shake out the javelins, and so tear the shields apart.

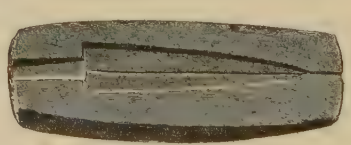


Fig. 73
ONE-HALF MOLD FOR SPEAR POINT

Two such blocks were fastened together, and the melted bronze poured in.

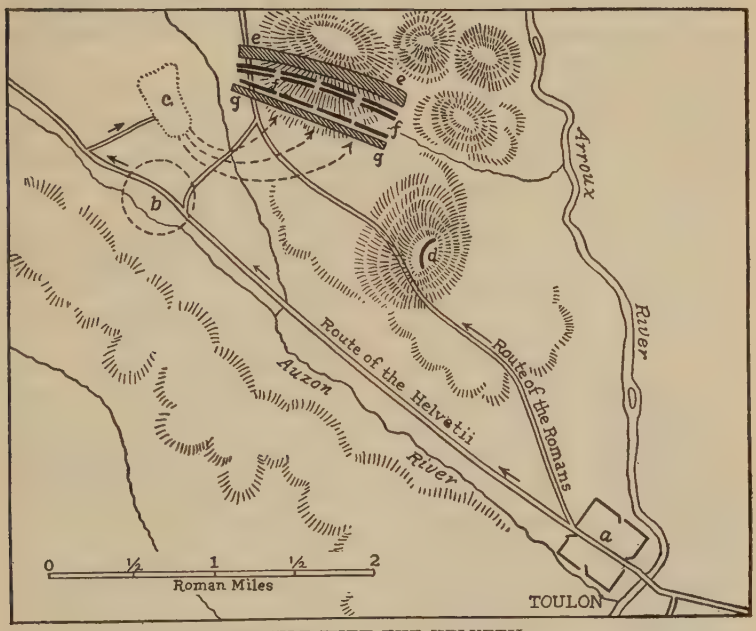
dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et

11. dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wearied, exhausted, faint. 3

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** carry. App. 81], carry *or* bring back; **pedem referre,** go back, retreat. *

subsum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be under; be near *or* close at hand. 2

12. eō, *adv.* [*old dative of* **is**], thither, to that place, there (*in sense of* thither). *



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII

Second stage, Chap. **25,** 10, through Chap. **26.**

a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (**24,** 9).
d, Roman fortification (**24,** 8).
e, The Helvetii.
f, The Romans.
g, The Boi and Tulingi.

10. corpore: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

11. mōns . . . spatiō, lit. *a mountain was near at hand (separated) by a distance of about a mile = there was a mountain about a mile away.* **passuum:** case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. **345,** *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. **440, 3. spatiō:** ablative of degree of difference.

12. Captō monte, *when they had reached the mountain.* But this *mōns* is a hill rather than a mountain.

succēdentibus nostrīs, Boī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

14. claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere,** close the line, bring up the rear. 4

15. latus, -eris, *n.*, side; wing *or* flank *of an army.* ∗

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **aperiō**], open, exposed; **ab latere apertō,** on the unprotected (*right*) flank. ∗

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [**veniō,** come], come *or* get around. ∗

16. cōnspicor, 1, *tr.*, observe, descry, perceive. 3

17. rūrsus, *adv.* [for **reversus,** *from* **revertō,** turn back], again, back, anew. ∗

redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [**integer,** whole], make whole again, renew. ∗

18. signum, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal; standard, ensign. ∗

bipertītō, *adv.* [**bis,** twice + **partior,** divide], in two parts, in two ways. 1

19. vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *tr.*, conquer, vanquish. ∗

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move away, dislodge. 2

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], resist, oppose. ∗

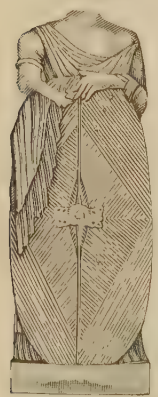


FIG. 74

GALLIC SHIELD

The size explains the overlapping of the shields when the men stood in phalanx formation.

13. quī . . . claudēbant: they had formed the front of the line of march, and became the rear when it was reversed. They had probably been separated from the Helvetii by a wagon train, which they had been obliged to pass on the road. This accounts for their coming up so much later in the battle.

15. ex itinere: i.e., they went straight from their march into the battle, without a halt.

ab latere apertō: i.e., the right flank; for their shields protected the soldiers' left sides. The plan shows that the left flank was the nearer to the Boi and Tulingi, but they came up in the rear, trying to work their way around (*circumvenīre*) to the more advantageous position. **circumvenīre** depends on *coepērunt*, l. 17. The whole means, *attacking immediately, they began to work around to the right of our men.*

18. conversa . . . intulērunt, lit. *carried forward in two directions their turned standards = faced about and advanced in two directions.* In reality only the third line faced about. **signa:** see Int. 44.

prīma et secunda aciēs; tertia (*aciēs*): in apposition with *Rōmānī.*

19. victīs ac submōtīs = *Helvētiīs.* **venientēs** = *Boiōs et Tulingōs.*

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive
Ablative of manner
Substantive quod *clause*

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia

---

1. anceps, ancipitis, *adj.* [**ambō,** both +**caput,** head], with two sides *or* fronts, double. 1

ācriter, *adv.* [**ācer,** sharp], sharply, fiercely, vigorously. *

5. hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour. *The twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varying according to the season.* *

vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening. 3

6. nox, noctis, *f.*, night; **ad multam noctem,** till late at night. *

7. vāllum, -ī, *n.* [**vāllus,** palisade], wall *or* rampart *of earth set with palisades.* *

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw in the way; place in front. 2

8. coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast. *

9. raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon *with four wheels.* 2

matara, -ae, *f.*, *Gallic* javelin. 1

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, a dart *used by the Gauls.* 1

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], throw from beneath. 3

10. vulnerō, 1, *tr.* [**vulnus,** a wound], wound. *

Chap. **26.** *The Helvetii are routed and flee northward. Caesar follows.*

1. ancipitī: i.e., against the Helvetii on one side and the Boi and Tulingi on the other.

pugnātum est, *they fought.* For translation see note on **22,** 8.

2. alterī . . . alterī, *the one body* [the Helvetii] . . . *the other* [the Boi and Tulingi].

3. ut coeperant: see **25,** 12.

4. Nam: this sentence gives the reason for Caesar's statement that the enemy withdrew, instead of fleeing in disorder.

cum pugnātum sit: an adversative clause. Note that this perfect subjunctive is an exception to the rule of sequence of tenses.

ab hōrā septimā, *from about noon.* The seventh hour began at noon, and in such expressions the Romans probably reckoned from the beginning of the hour.

7. prō vāllō, *as a rampart.*

ē locō superiōre: i.e., from the bodies of the wagons.

8. coniciēbant, *kept throwing.* The imperfect here denotes repeated action.

CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter ierunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

13. trīgintā (XXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [**trēs,** three], thirty. ∗

14. intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [**mittō,** send], send between; cease, discontinue. ∗

FIG. 75
A COIN OF THE LINGONES

Lingonēs, -um, *m.* (Bf), the Lingones (lĭng′gō-nēz). 4

15. sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial. 1

16. trīduum, -ī, *n.* [**trēs,** three + **diēs,** day], three days. ∗

moror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**mora,** a delay], delay. ∗

17. littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter *of the alphabet; pl.*, letter, epistle. ∗

nūntius, -tī, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report. ∗

18. nēve (neu) (App. 188, *b*), *conj.* [**nē** + **-ve,** or], and not, nor. 3

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, aid, assist, help. 3

12. captus est agrees with the nearer subject.

mīlia CXXX superfuērunt: according to Chap. **29** the original number was 368,000. If both statements are correct the slaughter in this battle was terrible, though we must remember that the original number had been reduced by the destruction of the Tigurini, and of course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged.

13. nocte: case? App. 152, *a*: G.-L. 393, R. 2: A. 424, *b*: B. 231, 1: H.-B. 440: H. 417, 2.

nūllam . . . pervēnērunt: the map facing p. 67 shows the direction of this flight. Of course no individual traveled every day and every night. There was only a panic-stricken mob, under no leadership, every member of which rested or moved on at his own pleasure, so that as a whole it was in ceaseless motion. Tonnerre is about a hundred miles from the battlefield, and only the strongest could have traveled so far.

14. partem: accusative of duration of time.

diē quārtō: by the Roman method of reckoning the day of the battle counted as the first day. We should say "in three days."

15. cum: causal.

17. nē iuvārent: (*ordering them*) *not to assist.* The subjunctive stands for an imperative of the direct discourse, though it may also be called a substantive clause of desire: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

18. quī . . . habitūrum, lit. *if they should help them, he should hold them in the same place in which he held the Helvetii;* i.e., he should treat them as enemies.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī

---

1. inopia, -ae, *f.* [**inops,** needy], need, want, lack. ∗

2. dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēdō,** surrender], surrender, capitulation. ∗

3. prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw forward; throw, cast. 4

suppliciter, *adv.* [**supplex,** suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. 1

5. pāreō, 2, *intr.*, be obedient to, obey. 1

6. servus, -ī, *m.*, slave. 1

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee for refuge; desert. 1

7. poscō, poscere, poposcī, —, *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. 3

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō,** search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. 2

8. sex (VI), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, six. ∗

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.* (Cgh), Verbigenus (vĕr-bĭj′ē-nŭs). 1

9. trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**trāns** + **dō,** give], give over, give up, surrender. ∗

10. salūs, salūtis, *f.*, safety. ∗

11. dēditicius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dēdō,** surrender], surrendered; *m. as noun,* one who has surrendered, prisoner. 4

occultō, 1, *tr.* [**occultus,** secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. 1

ignōrō, 1, *tr.* [**ignārus,** not knowing], not know; fail to observe, overlook. 1

THIRD REFERENCE:

Commands in indirect discourse

Chap. **27.** *Surrender of the Helvetii. Six thousand escape.*

2. Quī cum, *when they.*

4. essent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quō nunc estis, where you now are.*

5. iussisset: supply *Caesar.*

postquam pervēnit: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

6. servōs: fugitive slaves from the Roman army.

perfūgissent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quī ad vōs perfūgērunt, who have fled to you.*

7. Dum ea conquīruntur, *while these were being sought out.* For mood and tense, see App. 234, *a*: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 533, 4.

9. timōre nē suppliciō afficerentur, *by the fear that they would be punished;* lit. *be treated with punishment.* For the meaning of *nē,* see App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

perterritī agrees with *mīlia,* but is masculine because the idea of men is prominent.

posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incen-

12. ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go out, come forth, depart. ∗

1. rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.*, find out, learn. 1

2. redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* bring back. ∗

pūrgo, 1, *tr.* [**pūrus,** clean +**agō,** do, make], clear, excuse, exonerate; **pūrgātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. 2

4. perfuga, -ae, *m.* [**perfugiō,** flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. 3

5. unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. ∗

6. frūx, -gis, *f.* [**fruor,** enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops. 1

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send away; lose. ∗

7. famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. 1

tolerō, 1, *tr.*, bear, endure; appease. 1

FIG. 76
HELVETIAN YOKE
Found at Neuchâtel, Switzerland

12. prīmā: for translation, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Adjectives with partitive meaning
Clauses introduced by postquam, *etc.*

Chap. **28.** *The six thousand are retaken. The others are sent back to their homes.*

1. resciit = *rescīvit.*

hīs is the antecedent of *quōrum* and the indirect object of *imperāvit.*

2. sī vellent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *sī vultis, if you wish.*

sibi: dative of reference. It refers to Caesar.

3. in . . . habuit: i.e., he had them put to death, or perhaps sold into slavery. They had broken a military agreement.

6. domī: case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

7. quō tolerārent: mood? App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2.

ut iīs facerent, *to provide them with.*

8. ipsōs restituere is the object of *iussit.* The object of *iubeō* is regularly an accusative and infinitive, while

FIG. 77
ANCIENT CART AND WAGON

derant restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

9. ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account; plan; method, way; cause, reason. ∗

10. vacō, 1, *intr.*, be empty *or* unoccupied; lie waste. 4

11. bonitās, -tātis, *f.* [**bonus,** good], goodness; fertility. 1

16. pār, paris, *adj.*, equal, like; **pār atque,** the same as. ∗

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, state. ∗

the object of *imperō* is regularly a substantive clause of desire, as in l. 2. **ipsōs:** i.e., the Helvetii and their allies.

9. eā maximē ratiōne, *chiefly for this reason*, is explained by the *quod* clause.

13. prōvinciae Allobrogibusque, *the Province and (especially) the Allobroges;* for the Allobroges were a part of the Province.

Boiōs is the object of *collocārent*. It is put first for the sake of the emphatic contrast with *Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs*, in l. 5.

Haeduīs: indirect object of *concessit*.

14. ēgregiā virtūte, (*men*) *of very great courage:* a descriptive ablative.

ut collocārent is the object of *concessit*. The Boi had had no fixed home, as is shown by **5, 11, 12**. The map facing p. 67 shows where they were settled by the Haedui. The Haedui wished to strengthen their frontier against invasions by neighboring states, just as Rome wished the Helvetii to guard her frontier.

15. quibus, quōs: the antecedent is *Boiōs*.

16. parem . . . atque ipsī erant, lit. *equal . . . as they themselves were (in) = the same . . . as they themselves enjoyed.*

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōmināt̄im ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

---

1. tabula, -ae, *f.*, board; tablet; list. 2

2. Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to the Greeks, Greek. 1

3. nōmināt̄im, *adv.* [**nōminō**, name], by name; in detail. 3

4. quot, *adj., indecl.*: (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as. 2

puer, -erī, *m.*, boy; *pl.*, children (*of both sexes*). ✱

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; *m. as noun*, old man. 1

5. mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman. ✱

summa, -ae, *f.* [**summus**, highest], the main thing *or* point; sum total. ✱

caput, capitis, *n.*, the head; person, individual. ✱

6. quattuordecim (**XIV**), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, fourteen. 2

8. nōnāgintā, *card. num. adj., indecl.*, ninety. 1

9. redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], go back, return. ✱

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, enumeration. 1

THIRD REFERENCE:

The locative

Chap. **29.** *Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.*

1. tabulae, *lists*, written on wax tablets.

litterīs Graecīs: Gallic words were written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with the Greek colony Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests.

2. quibus in tabulīs, *in which.*

3. ratiō, *an account.*

quī exīsset: indirect question.

4. quī possent: mood? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 569.

puerī, senēs, mulierēsque are subjects of *exīssent*, to be supplied from *exīsset*.

5. Summa . . . CCLXIII, lit. *the total was* [i.e., consisted] *of 263,000 of heads of the Helvetii = the total was 263,000 Helvetii.*

6. CCLXIII = *ducentōrum sexāgintā trium.*

XXXVI = *trīgintā sex.*

7. XXIII = *vīgintī trium.*

XXXII = *trīgintā duōrum.*

quī possent: see note on l. 4. Supply *fuērunt; there were . . . who could*, etc.

8. ad, *about*, is an adverb in both instances.

fuērunt agrees in number with the predicate noun *mīlia.*

9. CCCLXVIII = *trecenta sexāgintā octō.*

THE STORY OF BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30 TO 54

WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

This part of Book I contains more indirect discourse than any other part of Caesar, almost as much as all the rest of the first four books put together. Unless the teacher wishes the class to make a more thorough study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on ***1-29****, this part of the book may be omitted, as recommended in the Preface, or may be postponed until later books have been read. This will not interfere with the use of the page vocabularies, since all words given in the vocabularies of* ***30-54*** *are repeated in the vocabularies of Books II-IV if they occur there.*

The complete success of Caesar's campaign against the Helvetii at once established his prestige in Gaul. Representatives from most of the states came to beg his aid against their common enemy, Ariovistus, a German king who had established himself in Gaul. It was still early in July, and there was time for another campaign that summer. Caesar willingly accepted the task, for if ever he was to become master of Gaul he must first put out of his way this rival conqueror; and in any case it was most important that the Germans should be kept to the east of the Rhine. Yet the Germans were no mean antagonists, and Caesar was ready to make some concessions rather than fight them. He first proposed to Ariovistus that they settle their differences in friendly conference, but he met a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the king to terms before he should be joined by other German tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed.

During a few days' halt at Vesontio the soldiers heard such fearful tales of the Germans that they were on the point of mutiny. By a masterly speech Caesar quieted their fears and aroused their enthusiasm to the highest pitch; and at once he led them on toward the enemy. Never again during the Gallic campaigns did his soldiers give him trouble.

Impressed by Caesar's activity, Ariovistus in his turn now proposed a conference; but when they met he replied boastfully to Caesar's demands, and the interview was broken off by an attack of the German guard.

Caesar refused to meet Ariovistus a second time, but sent two representatives in his place. These Ariovistus threw into chains. The negotiations were thus finally broken off.

At once Ariovistus marched past Caesar's camp, keeping up on the slopes of a mountain where he was safe from attack, and boldly established his camp in such a way as to command the road by which Caesar had come, and by which his provisions were to follow. Caesar immediately offered battle, but the Germans were not ready to fight. Five days later Caesar marched back past the German camp and fortified and garrisoned a small camp to protect the way for his provisions. The Germans were unsuccessful in an assault on this small camp.

At last Caesar determined to force a battle, and he marched straight at the German camp. As this was not fortified, Ariovistus was obliged to lead out his army and draw it up against the Romans. Caesar in person led his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. The reserves, hurrying to this spot, decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the Rhine, or to a river which Caesar mistook for the Rhine, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In the two campaigns of this one year important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the Roman possessions; the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of the Gauls and the Germans was dispelled.

CAMPAIGN MAP FOR BOOK I, 30-54

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. In this map the only change in the red area from the map facing p. 67 is the addition of the territory controlled by Ariovistus.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. In this map there is no change in the blue area from the map facing p. 67. But of course Caesar's victory over Ariovistus increased his hold on the states which had asked for his protection.

The battlefield is marked by x. It is a few miles northwest of Colmar and just east of Zellenberg, and was selected by Stoffel (*Guerre de César et d'Arioviste*). Napoleon and several others locate it farther south, near Cernay or Thann, just east of the southern end of the Vosges Mountains. But the latter location is too near Vesontio; and there is no hill twelve miles north of it on which Caesar and Ariovistus could have held their interview.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30-54

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās

---

2. grātulor, 1, *intr.* [**grātus,** pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. 1

3. tametsī, *conj.*, although, though. 1

4. repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, *tr.* [**petō,** seek], seek *or* ask again, demand back; *with* **poenās,** exact, inflict. 2

5. ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ūtor,** use], use; service, advantage; **ex ūsū esse,** be of advantage *or* service. *

6. flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [**flōreō,** flower], flourishing, prosperous. 2

Chap. **30-36.** *At the request of the Gallic states Caesar warns Ariovistus to cease encroaching on Gallic territory, but he receives a defiant reply.*

Chap. **30.** *Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask permission to hold a council.*

1. tōtīus ferē Galliae: Gallia Celtica is meant. The blue color on the map facing p. 67 shows the part of Gaul from which envoys may have come.

2. grātulātum: construction? App. 295: G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, *b*: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

Since there is a large amount of indirect discourse in **30-54,** it is necessary to make a more detailed study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on **1-29.** It is assumed that the following points are clearly understood by the student: the accusative and infinitive in principal declarative clauses; the subjunctive in principal imperative clauses; the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. The direct form of all long passages of indirect discourse is given at the end of the text.

3. sēsē: the envoys said *we.* The reflexive pronoun *suī* or the corresponding possessive *suus* is regularly used in indirect discourse wherever a pronoun of the first person is changed to one of the third: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

Helvētiōrum . . . Rōmānī, *for the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetii upon the Roman people,* refers to the defeat of Cassius, **12,** 13. Since the phrase implies "the Helvetii wronged the Roman people," *Helvētiōrum* is a subjective genitive, *populī Rōmānī* an objective genitive: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 199; 200: H.-B. 344; 354: H. 400, 1, 2.

6. flōrentissimīs rēbus, *although they were in a very prosperous condi-*

Fig. 78

THE GENERAL ADDRESSES HIS TROOPS AND CONFERS WITH ENVOYS

At the left is a Roman camp, the walls not very distinct. Through its gate we see the general (really the Emperor Trajan) standing on the speakers' platform (tribūnal) and addressing his men, who are represented by seven legionaries, two of them standard-bearers. Outside the camp, envoys from the enemy ride up, preceded and followed by a guard of Roman auxiliaries.

At the right the Roman general has come out of his camp, attended by officers, and is conferring with the envoys, who have now dismounted.

The figures at the extreme right belong to a different scene.

Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam

8. domicilium, -lī, *n.* [**domus,** house], home, domicile. 3

9. opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, advantageous, favorable. 3

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frūctus,** fruit], fruitful, productive. 1

10. stīpendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**stīpendium,** tribute], paying tribute, tributary. 2

tion. The ablative absolute is here equivalent to an adversative clause.

suās: this is a direct reflexive, since it refers to *Helvētiī*, the subject of the clause in which it stands: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, 1: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

7. utī īnferrent, potīrentur, dēligerent, habērent: substantive clauses of desire, in apposition with *eō cōnsiliō*.

8. domiciliō: dative of purpose.

10. iūdicāssent, *they should decide,* lit. *they should have decided.*

11. Petiērunt utī sibi licēret, *they requested permission,* lit. *that it be permitted to them.*

concilium: the envoys mentioned in l. 1 did not constitute this council. They issued a call for representatives from each state. The blue color on the map facing p. 145 indicates the part of Gaul from which envoys probably came to the council.

indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs

12. indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.* [**dīcō,** say], say publicly, appoint. 1

13. quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *or* **quoddam,** *indef. pron.* (App. 62 *and b*), certain, some. ∗

commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general. ∗

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnsentiō,** agree], agreement, consent. 3

14. permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], give up *or* over; permit, allow. ∗

16. sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum, *tr.*, make sacred, sanction; bind. 2

5. labōrō, 1, *intr.* [**labor,** toil], toil, work hard; be anxious. 3

7. cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cruciō,** torture; **crux,** cross], torture. ∗

12. Caesaris voluntāte, *with Caesar's consent.* They did not wish Caesar to suspect that the council was for the purpose of making war on him.

15. nē ēnūntiāret inter sē sānxērunt, *they bound one another not to disclose the matter.*

nisi (*iīs*) **quibus mandātum esset,** *except to those to whom they should be directed* (*to disclose it*). **mandātum esset** is impersonal. The past perfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect indicative by implied indirect discourse (App. 273), for the agreement was in effect "we will tell no one except those whom we shall have agreed upon."

Chap. **31.** *They implore him to aid them against the German king, Ariovistus.*

1. īdem prīncipēs: when they had come to Caesar before (**30,** 2) they had had no authority to act for their states. Now the council had authorized them to ask for Caesar's help.

3. dē . . . salūte, *for their own safety and* (*that*) *of all.*

agere, *to confer.*

4. Caesarī ad pedēs, *at Caesar's feet.* But *Caesarī* does not depend on *pedēs*, nor is it a dative of possessor: App. 120: G.-L. 350, 1: A. 377: B. 188, 1, n.: H.-B. 368: H. 425, 4, n.

5. Nōn minus, etc., (*saying*) *that they were no less urgent and anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that,* etc.

sē: see note on *sēsē*, **30,** 3.

quae dīxissent, *which they should say.*

7. sī ēnūntiātum esset, *if reports should get out.* The verb is used impersonally. All the conditional clauses in this chapter employed the indicative in the direct form. *ēnūntiātum*

vidērent. Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterīus prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterīus Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel

Fig. 79

A COIN OF THE ARVERNI

This is a coin of Vercingetorix, the hero of Book VII and the only Gaul who ever united the Gauls against Caesar. The head is probably that of the Greek god Apollo.

9. factiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**faciō,** make], party, faction. 1

10. Arvernus, -ī, *m.* (CDe), an Arvernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (är-vĕr′nī). 3

tantopere, *adv.* [**tantus,** so great + **opus,** work], so greatly, so earnestly. 1

potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [**potēns,** powerful], chief power, supremacy. 1

12. mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. 1

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, summon, send for, invite. *

prīmō, *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], at first. *

13. posteāquam, *conj.* [**posteā,** afterwards + **quam,** than], after. 4

14. ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. *

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*), uncivilized, barbarous. *

adamō, 1, *tr.* [**amō,** love], love strongly, covet. 1

15. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3

16. semel, *adv.*, once, a single time. 2

esset stands for a future perfect and is a vivid future condition: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, *a*, *c*: B. 302, 1; H.-B. 579, *a*: H. 574, 1.

9. factiōnēs: see Int. 29.

10. cum contenderent, *when they had fought.* We might expect the past perfect, but the imperfect is used on the principle laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, *b*: G.-L. 234: A. 471, *b*: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

11. factum esse utī, *it had come to pass that.* The perfect infinitive, *factum esse*, stands for *factum est* of the direct form, as *contendere* (l. 5) stands for a present indicative, and as *ventūrōs* (l. 7) stands for a future indicative. For the uses of the infinitive tenses in indirect discourse, see App. 205: G.-L. 530; 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*: H.-B. 472, *a*: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

12. mercēde: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. This was fourteen years before Caesar came to Gaul.

14. adamāssent = *adamāvissent.* It stands for the perfect indicative of the direct form.

15. esse, etc., *they were in Gaul to the number of*, etc.

atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmanō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium

17. iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time; **semel atque iterum,** again and again. ⁎

19. frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break; crush, discourage. 2

20. hospitium, -tī, *n.* [**hospes,** host *or* guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 2

24. implōrō, 1, *tr.* [**in** + **plōrō,** call out], beseech, entreat, implore. 3

recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse. ⁎

quōminus, *conj.* [**quō,** by which + **minus,** not], that not; from; to. 2

25. perpetuō, *adv.* [**perpetuus,** continuous], continuously; forever. 1

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, rule. 3

27. iūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**iūs,** right], take oath; swear. 1

28. profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee, run away, escape. 4

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. 1

Fig. 80

A COIN OF THE AULERCI

A charioteer is driving a human-headed horse over a prostrate figure. Compare Fig. 69.

17. pulsōs accēpisse, *as they were beaten, they had suffered.*

18. omnem . . . āmīsisse: this was an exaggeration, for the nobles and the cavalry of the Haedui were prominent in some of the campaigns of the Gallic War. However, many boys had grown to military age in the meantime.

20. quī et suā virtūte . . . plūrimum . . . potuissent, *although both by their own valor . . . they had been the most powerful.*

24. recūsātūrōs quōminus essent: *would refuse to be:* App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 549: A. 558, *b*: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 568, 8.

25. Ūnum sē esse, *that he was the only one.* *sē* is Diviciacus. See note on *sēsē*, **30,** 3.

26. quī potuerit: mood? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535, *b*: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, *a*, *b*: H. 591, 5. So far in this chapter all the subjunctives have been imperfects and past perfects in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses; for the indirect discourse depends on an historical tense, *locūtus est*, l. 8. But in *potuerit* we

postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum

29. postulō, 1, *tr.*, ask, demand. *

30. malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious; *comp.*, **peior, peius**; *neut. as noun*, a worse thing. 1

victor, -ōris, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. *

31. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus (ā′rĭ-ō-vĭs′tŭs), *a king of the Germans.* *

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. *

34. dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, withdraw. 3

35. Harūdēs, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (hă-rōō′dēz), *a German tribe.* 3

36. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō, sit], seat; residence, abode. 4

39. cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], custom; mode. *

vīctus, -ūs, *m.* [vīvō, live], living, (*mode of*) life. 1

have an instance of *repraesentātiō;* i.e., the tense of the direct form is retained in the indirect: App. 270, *a*: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, *b*, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

29. postulātum: the supine. His request for assistance was made three years before this time, and was unsuccessful. Cicero met him in Rome and speaks of him with admiration.

30. peius accidisse, *a worse fate had befallen.*

32. tertiam partem: this was probably an exaggeration. The part taken by Ariovistus corresponds pretty well with upper Alsace, on the Rhine, and is colored red on the map facing p. 145. Germany took this same land from France in 1871; France has it again as a result of the World War. Soon after we entered the war American troops occupied the line in Alsace and held it till the end of the war. See Int. 70.

33. alterā, *a second.*

34. paucīs mēnsibus ante, lit. *before by a few months = a few months before. mēnsibus* is an ablative of degree of difference.

36. Futūrum esse utī omnēs pellerentur, lit. *it would be that all would be expelled = all would be expelled.* The direct form was *omnēs pellentur.* As the future indicative must be rendered by the future infinitive, one might expect *pulsum īrī;* but this form of the future passive infinitive is very rare and *futūrum esse ut* with the subjunctive is the usual method of expressing the future passive infinitive: App. 205, *b*: G.-L. 531: A. 569, 3, *a*: B. 270, 3, *a*: H.-B. 472, *c*: H. 619, 2.

37. omnēs [ex]: i.e., all the Gauls.

38. Gallicum: supply *agrum.*

39. hanc = *Gallicam.*

vīctūs: note the quantity of *ī*, and compare *victus*, the perfect participle of *vincō.*

illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel

---

40. comparō, 1, *tr.* [**pār**, equal], compare. 1

41. Magetobriga, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (măj'ē-tŏb'rĭ-gă), *a town*. 1

42. superbē, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. 1

crūdēliter, *adv.* [**crūdēlis**, cruel], cruelly. 1

44. ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō**, give], give out; inflict. 1

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [**nuō**, nod], nod; sign, command; **ad nūtum**, at one's nod *or* command. 2

45. īrācundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**īra**, anger], irritable, passionate, bad-tempered. 1

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**temerē**, rashly], rash, reckless. 1

48. ēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [**migrō**, migrate], depart, migrate. 1

50. quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.*, whoever; whatever. *

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, *tr.*, try, test, experience. *

---

40. semel, *once*, or *once for all*. In l. 16 we are told that Ariovistus fought with the Haedui several times. This sentence seems to mean that the Sequani at last joined with the Haedui, and that the combined forces were defeated in one decisive battle.

41. vīcerit: from this point on to the end of the chapter *repraesentātiō* is employed. See note on *potuerit*, l. 26.

proelium: this final battle was fought two years before Caesar came to Gaul.

42. nōbilissimī cuiusque, *of all the greatest nobles*. The singular forms of *quisque*, *each*, with superlatives have the force of *every* or *all*.

43. exempla, *punishments*.

44. sī facta sit: this condition stands for an original *sī facta est*. See note on l. 7, and App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, *b*: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

46. quid auxilī, *some help*.

47. Gallīs: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

48. ut domō ēmigrent, etc., (*namely*) *leave home*, etc., explains *idem*.

51. nōn (*sē*) **dubitāre quīn sūmat**, *he did not doubt that Ariovistus would inflict*. **sūmat**: mood? App. 229, *d*: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, *a*: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, *b*: H. 595, 1.

auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam

2. flētus, -ūs, *m.* [fleō, weep], weeping, lamentation. 1

4. cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of; *as noun*, the rest. 4

trīstis, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. 1

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send *or* let down; sink; bow. 1

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, ground. 3

intueor, 2, *tr.* [**tueor,** look], look at. 1

5. mīror, 1, *tr. and intr.*, wonder. 1

6. trīstitia, -ae, *f.* [trīstis, sad], sadness. 1

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay through *or* to the end; continue. 3

7. vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, tone; word. ∗

8. exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit. 1

9. miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable. 2

53. auctōritāte . . . exercitūs, *by his own prestige and (that) of his army.*

54. dēterrēre posse nē . . . trādūcātur, *could prevent a greater number from being brought across.*

Chap. **32.** *The desperate condition of the Sequani.*

2. magnō flētū: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls.

auxilium petere: the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

5. quae causa esset: an indirect question depending on *mīrātus*.

Fig. 81

A COIN OF THE CORIOSOLITES

The design on the right was suggested by some such coin as is shown in Fig. 69; but the charioteer has become a mere scroll, and the prostrate figure is meaningless.

6. respondēre, permanēre: historical infinitives: App. 281.

8. Hōc: ablative of cause.

reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: Magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in

---

10. occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hidden, secret. 2

11. absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **absum,** be absent], absent. 2

crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.* [**crūdēlis,** cruel], cruelty, harshness. 1

velut, *adv.*, as, just as. 1

12. cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person. 1

horreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. 1

13. vērō, *adv.* [**vērus,** true], in truth; but. *

intrā, *prep. with acc.* [**inter,** between], within, inside; into. 4

2. cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention. 2

5. secundum, *prep. with acc.* [**sequor,** follow], following, in accordance with. 3

6. cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**co** +**agitō,** consider], consider thoroughly *or* carefully. 3

Fig. 82

A COIN OF THE SEQUANI

11. absentis: *even when absent.*

velut sī adesset: mood and tense? App. 261: G.-L. 602: A. 524: B. 307, 1, 2: H.-B. 504, 3, *a*: H. 584, 2.

12. tamen, *at any rate;* i.e., though they could not resist Ariovistus.

13. Sēquanīs: dative of agent.

Chap. **33.** *Caesar decides to undertake their defense. His reasons for doing so.*

2. sibi . . . futūram, *that the matter should receive his attention.* For the two datives, see App. 119, *a*: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *a*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

3. beneficiō suō: in Caesar's consulship, only the year before, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the titles *rēx* and *amīcus*. This had been done to keep Ariovistus from interfering with Roman interests in Gaul until Caesar should be ready to take charge of his province.

5. Secundum ea: i.e., in accordance with the request of the Gauls and his promise to attend to the matter.

6. quārē putāret: *to think,* lit. *why he should think.*

sibi: dative of the agent, with the passive periphrastic.

prīmīs, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam

11. turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly; disgraceful, dishonorable. 2

paulātim, *adv.* [**paulus,** little], little by little, gradually. *

13. perīculōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**perīculum,** danger], dangerous, perilous. 1

16. Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sĭm′brī). 4

Teutonī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Teutoni (tū′tō-nī). 4

7. Haeduōs tenērī is the object of *vidēbat*.

frātrēs appellātōs, *who had been called brothers*.

10. quod, *and this;* i.e., the condition of the Haedui, as set forth in the preceding infinitive clauses.

11. sibi refers to Caesar, the subject of *arbitrābātur*, not to the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the indirect reflexive: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

Paulātim, etc., *he saw that for the Germans to get gradually in the habit of crossing and . . . to come . . . (was) dangerous,* etc.

13. perīculōsum: see Int. 3.

14. sibi: indirect object of *temperātūrōs*. It refers to *hominēs*, the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

sibi temperātūrōs quīn exīrent, *would refrain from coming out:* App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 595, 2.

16. ut, *as;* for *fēcissent* stands for *fēcērunt* of the direct form.

Cimbrī Teutonīque: see Int. 27.

17. praesertim cum: see App. 245.

18. Rhodanus dīvideret, *only the Rhone separated.* Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and lover of his country. Gaul certainly had to yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No halfway ground was possible.

quibus rēbus occurrendum, *that he must face this danger.* Since *occurrō* is an intransitive verb it cannot be used in the passive except impersonally: App. 115, *d*: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquiō dēligeret: Velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs

19. mātūrē, *adv.* [**mātūrus**, ripe], early, speedily, soon. *Comp.*, **mātūrius**; *sup.*, **mātūrrimē**. 3

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**ob** +**currō**, run], run in the way of, meet; oppose, counteract. *

20. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [**spīrō**, breathe], breath, air; *pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2

. arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [**arrogāns**, arrogant], arrogance, insolence. 2

1. placeō, 2, *intr.*, please; *often impers.*, it seems good *to one, hence*, he decides. 2

3. uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.* [**uter**, which *of two*], each *of two*. *

colloquium, -quī, *n.* [**colloquor**, talk together], a talking together; conference. *

5. opus, *indecl. noun*, *n.* [*cf.* **opus**, work, deed], need, necessity; **opus est**, there is need. *

7. praetereā, *adv.* [**praeter**, beyond], beyond this, besides. *

Chap. **34.** *Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.*

1. ad Ariovistum: he was somewhere in the country he had taken from the Sequani. See note on **31**, 32.

3. colloquiō: dative of purpose.

Velle sēsē agere, *(saying) that he wished to confer.* Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up (see note on **33**, 3).

4. summīs . . . rēbus, *matters of the greatest importance to both.*

5. Sī quid ipsī opus esset, *if he needed anything*, lit. *if anything were a necessity to himself:* App. 146, *a*.

Sī esset, sēsē ventūrum fuisse: the direct form was *sī esset, vēnissem, if I wanted anything, I should have gone*, a contrary to fact condition: App. 254: G.-L. 597, R. 1: A. 517, *a*: B. 304, 1, 2: H.-B. 581: H. 579, 1. When such a condition is turned into indirect discourse, the conclusion always takes the infinitive form *-ūrus fuisse*: App. 272, II: G.-L. 597, R. 4: A. 589, *b*, 1, 2: B. 321, *A.*, 2: H.-B. 581, *b*, 1: H. 647.

ipsī: dative of reference. The indirect reflexive, *sibi*, would be more usual, but *ipsī* is more emphatic.

6. sī . . . velit, *if Caesar wanted anything of him*, lit. *if Caesar wanted him (for) anything. Volō* sometimes, as here, governs two accusatives, like verbs of asking or demanding: App. 125, *b*: G.-L. 341, n. 2: A. 390, *d*: H.-B. 397, 1: H. 412. **sī velit** stands for an original *sī vis*: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum

8. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], occupy, possess. 3

9. commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip; supplies, provisions. *

mōlīmentum, -ī, *n.* [mōlior, exert oneself], effort. 1

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw *or* bring together, assemble, collect. 1

10. mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mīror, wonder at], strange, astonishing. 2

12. negōtium, -tī, *n.* [neg- +ōtium, leisure], business. *

2. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], command; message. *

quoniam, *conj.* [quom =cum, since +iam, now], since now, since. 4

3. cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsul, consul], consulship. 1

5. invītō, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon. 2

6. gravor, 1, *intr.* [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. 1

8. quās . . . possidēret: i.e., the land of the Haedui and the Lingones, which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

10. mīrum: predicate adjective with *vidērī; it seemed strange = he wondered.*

quid Caesarī negōtī esset, lit. *what of business there was to Caesar = what business Caesar had;* an indirect question, subject of *vidērī.* **Caesarī** is a dative of possession.

11. omnīnō, *in general.*

Chap. **35.** *Caesar demands that Ariovistus cease his oppression of the Gauls.*

3. beneficiō affectus, *after receiving such a favor from himself,* lit. *having been treated with his own favor.* See note on **33,** 3.

4. Quoniam (l. 2) **hanc grātiam referret, ut,** *since he made this requital, that.*

Fig. 83
A GALLIC COIN
This design, like that of Fig. 81, was suggested by some such coin as that shown in Fig. 69.

6. neque dīcendum . . . putāret, *and did not think it necessary to discuss and learn.* **sibi:** case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs ipsī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

---

8. amplē, *adv.* [**amplus,** large], largely; *comp.*, **amplius,** more. ∗

9. reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give back, return, restore. ∗

13. perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, lasting, permanent, unbroken. 3

15. cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, *tr.*, think, decide; vote. 1

16. commodum, -ī, *n.* [**commodus,** convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. 2

18. neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**neg-** + **legō,** choose], disregard, neglect. ∗

---

7. haec esse quae, *these were (the things) which.*

nē trādūceret: in the direct form this was a prohibition, *nōlī trādūcere, do not bring:* App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, *c*: H.-B. 501, 3, *a*, 2: H. 561, 1.

9. redderet, permitteret: in the direct form these were commands in the imperative, *redde, permitte, give back, permit:* App. 267.

10. Sēquanīsque . . . licēret, *and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his* [Ariovistus's] *approval those* [hostages] *whom they* [the Sequani *had* [from the Haedui], lit. *permit that it be allowed.* **illīs** = *Sēquanīs.*

12. fēcisset stands for a future perfect indicative: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, *a*, *c*: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, *a*: H. 574, 1.

sibi: i.e., Caesar; a dative of possession.

14. sī nōn impetrāret, *if he* [Caesar] *should not obtain (such assurances).*

sēsē: the direct form would be *ego*, if expressed at all. It is the subject of *neglēctūrum*, l. 18; but, because the sentence is so long, the subject is repeated in *sē*, l. 17.

M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus: in 61 B. C. See note on **2,** 2.

15. senātus cēnsuisset: this decree of the Senate was the only result of the entreaties of Diviciacus (**31,** 28), and no governor had paid any attention to it, as Ariovistus very well knew.

16. quod . . . posset, *so far as he could do it in accordance with the interests of the state:* a common formula in decrees of the Senate.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent iīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterīus praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse,

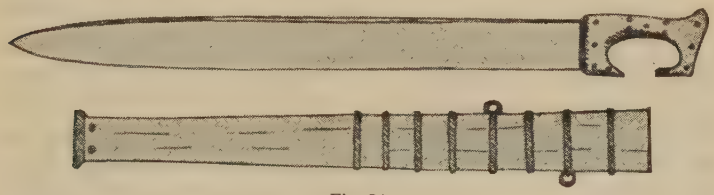


Fig. 84
RECONSTRUCTION OF A GERMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

3. praescrīptum, -ī, *n.* [**praescrībō,** order], order, dictation, command. 1

4. arbitrium, -rī, *n.* [**arbiter,** umpire], judgment, discretion, pleasure. 1

5. praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō,** write], order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3

8. congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], meet, encounter. ∗

10. dēterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), worse, less. 1

18. neglēctūrum: tense? App. 205: G.-L. 530; 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*: H.-B. 472, *a*: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

Chap. **36.** *Ariovistus responds defiantly.*

1. ut . . . imperārent, *that those who had conquered should rule,* etc.

2. iīs: indirect object of *imperārent.*

3. ad alterīus praescrīptum, *in accordance with the dictates of anyone else.* For *alterīus* instead of *alīus,* see App. 32.

5. quem . . . ūterētur, *how they should exercise their rights.*

6. nōn oportēre sē impedīrī, *he* [Ariovistus] *ought not to be hampered.*

7. sibi: dative with the adjective *stīpendiāriōs.*

9. quī faceret may be translated by a causal clause, *since he,* etc., but the indicative was probably used in the direct form. Apparently the presence of Caesar had given hope to the Haedui and had made them less careful in paying their tribute to Ariovistus.

neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur: intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs ėt ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī

---

12. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.*, remain, abide, stay. 2

stīpendium, -dī, *n.*, tax, tribute. *

quotannīs, *adv.* [**quot,** as many as + **annus,** year], every year, yearly. 2

13. pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, *tr.*, weigh; *weigh out money,* pay. 2

14. dēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], announce, threaten. 1

17. quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with* **posse,** how? App. 128, *b*. *

invictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- +**victus,** conquered], unconquerable, invincible. 1

exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**exerceō,** train], well trained, skilled. 2

2. Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* **Trēverī** (Bfgh), the Treveri (trĕv′ē-rī). *

---

11. neque . . . neque, *but . . . not . . . or.*

iniūriā, *unjustly:* an ablative of accordance: App. 142, *a*.

illātūrum, sī manērent: a vivid future condition.

12. in . . . convēnisset, lit. *should remain in that which had been agreed upon = adhered to the terms which had been agreed upon.*

13. fēcissent stands for a future perfect indicative.

longē . . . āfutūrum, *the name of brothers of the Roman people would be of little value to them.*

14. Quod, *as to the fact that:* App. 248, *a*: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, *a*: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

15. sēcum, suā: *sēcum* is the indirect reflexive, referring to Ariovistus, *suā* is the direct reflexive, referring to *nēminem*: App. 164, 165.

16. Cum vellet, congrederētur, *let him come on when he liked.* **congrederētur** was imperative in the direct form.

17. quid possent, *how strong the Germans were.* **quid** is an adverbial accusative: App. 128, *b*.

18. inter, *during.*

Chap. **37-41.** *Caesar marches into the country of Ariovistus, checking a panic on the way.*

Chap. **37.** *Because of this reply and further complaints of the Gauls, Caesar marches toward Ariovistus.*

1. eōdem tempore: the reply of Ariovistus and the complaints of the Gauls reached Caesar at the same time. It was now about the beginning of August.

2. questum: the supine.

questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

3. trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry across, bring over, transport, convey. ∗

6. Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun*, **Suēbī** (Bhi), the Suebi (swē′bī), *a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes.* ∗

7. Nasua, -ae, *m.*, Nasua (năsh′-ū-ă). 1

Cimberius, -rī, *m.*, Cimberius (sĭm-bē′rĭ-ŭs). 1

8. vehementer, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently; very much. 4

10. coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join with *or* together, unite. ∗

3. Harūdēs: see **31**, 35.

4. eōrum: the indirect reflexive, *suōs*, would have been more usual, since the Haedui said *our*.

obsidibus datīs, *by giving hostages.*

Fig. 85

A COIN OF THE TREVERI

5. Trēverī: supply *veniēbant questum*, followed by indirect discourse.

7. trānsīre: somewhere north of where Ariovistus was, probably near modern Mainz. The Treveri were a strong people, and it is probable that Ariovistus was marching north to help the Suebi cross when he was interrupted by the news of Caesar's approach.

9. sī coniūnxisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

10. minus . . . posset, lit. *it could be less easily resisted (to them).*

12. magnīs itineribus: see Int. 54. Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnerre pending the result of his negotiations with Ariovistus. See the map facing page 145.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita

---

1. prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go forward, proceed, advance. ∗

2. Vesontiō, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Vesontio (vē-sŏn′shyō), *the chief town of the Sequani, modern* Besançon. 2

5. praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.* [**caveō,** guard against], guard against beforehand, take precautions. 1

namque, *conj.* [**nam,** for], for. 3

7. sīc, *adv.*, so, thus. ∗

9. Dūbis, -is, *m.* (Cfg), the *river* Dubis (dū′bĭs), *now* the Doubs. 1

circinus, -ī, *m.* [**circus,** circle], a pair of compasses. 1

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* draw around. 2

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *tr.*, encircle, surround. 1

10. sescentī, -ae, -a (DC) [**sex,** six +**centum,** hundred], six hundred. ∗

Chap. **38.** *Caesar occupies Vesontio.*

1. trīduī: descriptive genitive. The descriptive genitive must ordinarily be modified by an adjective; but *trīduī = trium diērum.*

viam: case? App. 128: G.-L. 333, 2: A. 390: B. 176, 4: H.-B. 396, 1: H. 409.

The three days' march was east from Tonnerre (see the map facing p. 145), and brought Caesar to the point where his route turns to the southeast.

nūntiātum est: this report that Ariovistus was marching toward Vesontio proved false. Probably it grew out of the fact that Ariovistus had got his army together for the purpose of marching north to help the Suebi. See note on **37,** 7.

3. quod agrees in gender with *oppidum,* although its antecedent is masculine: App. 173, *b.*

4. Id: i.e., the capture of Vesontio.

6. summa facultās, *a very great supply.*

9. ut, *as if.*

paene cingit: i.e., the river makes a loop, the two sides of which are at one point about 1600 feet apart. At that point there is a high hill with steep sides running down to the river. The top, about 600 feet across, was defended by a wall. The town was within the loop. See the plan on p. 163.

10. spatium: object of *continet.*

nōn . . . sescentōrum, *of not more than six hundred feet.* **pedum** is a descriptive genitive: why is not the ablative used after the comparative? App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

11. quā flūmen intermittit, *where the river does not flow.*

ut rādīcēs eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum

12. rādīx, -īcis, *f.*, root; *pl. with* **montis** *or* **collis,** foot, base. 1

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [**tangō,** touch], touch, reach; extend to. 2

13. circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [**dō,** put], put around, surround. 3

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress. 1

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ex** + **faciō,** make], make *or* do completely; make, cause. *

14. hūc, *adv.* [**hic,** this], to this place, hither, here. *

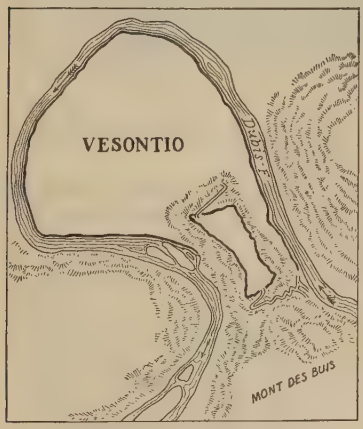
nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nox,** night], at night, night. 1

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diēs,** day], of the day, by day, day. 1

2. percontātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiry, questioning. 1

magnā altitūdine: descriptive ablative.

12. rādīcēs is the object of *contingant*, **rīpae** its subject.



VESONTIO (BESANÇON)

The wall described by Caesar ran across the top of the hill. The sides of the hill are so steep that no attack could be made along them. Fig. 86 shows one side of the hill. On the top of the hill there is now a fort.

ex utrāque parte, *on each side.*

13. Hunc (*montem*) is the object of *efficit*, **arcem** is a predicate accusative: App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, *a*: H. 410, 1.

14. Hūc contendit: he turned from his eastward march to the southeast.

nocturnīs: Caesar very rarely marched at night, but if the report about Ariovistus had been true, Ariovistus would have been much nearer Vesontio than Caesar was, and only the most extraordinary effort could have enabled Caesar to arrive first.

Chap. **39.** *Fear of the Germans causes a panic in the Roman army.*

1. Dum morātur: mood and tense? App. 234, *a*: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4.

reī . . . causā: Caesar was always careful about his supplies. In this case he had no doubt arranged for supplies along his intended line of march, but he had suddenly changed the direction of his march, and therefore failed to meet his convoys. Consequently he now had to make new arrangements.

2. ex, *in consequence of.*

vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut non mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hic prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs, reliquīsque quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum

---

3. ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast. 2

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**magnus,** great], greatness, size; stature (**corporum**). ∗

4. exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**exerceō,** train], exercise, training, practice. ∗

5. praedicō, 1, *tr.* [**dicō,** proclaim], proclaim before others; declare, report. 3

6. vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, looks. 2

7. subitō, *adv.* [**subitus,** sudden], suddenly. ∗

8. mediocriter, *adv.* [**mediocris,** moderate], moderately; **nōn mediocriter,** in no small degree. 1

mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; **mentēs animōsque,** minds and hearts. 4

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], disturb greatly; alarm, terrify. ∗

9. tribūnus, -ī, *m.*, tribune; **tribūnus mīlitum,** a military tribune. Int. 41. ∗

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [**praficiō,** place over], prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). 4

13. pudor, -ōris, *m.* [**pudet,** it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. 2

14. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [**maneō,** remain], stay behind, remain. ∗

---

3. vōcibus, *replies.*

magnitūdine, virtūte, exercitātiōne: descriptive ablatives.

5. saepe numerō, etc., lit. *that they having frequently met . . . had not been able* =*that they had . . . met . . . and had not been able.*

10. amīcitiae causā, *from motives of friendship.* This is Caesar's polite way of mentioning the sons and friends of politicians for whom he had made places on his staff. They had gone with him for money and experience and adventure, and were now getting too much of the latter.

11. quōrum . . . illātā, *one of them alleging one reason, another, another.*

12. dīceret, *they said,* agrees in number with *alius.* Mood? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1, *a*: H. 591, 1.

14. vultum fingere, *control their features,* so as to look unconcerned.

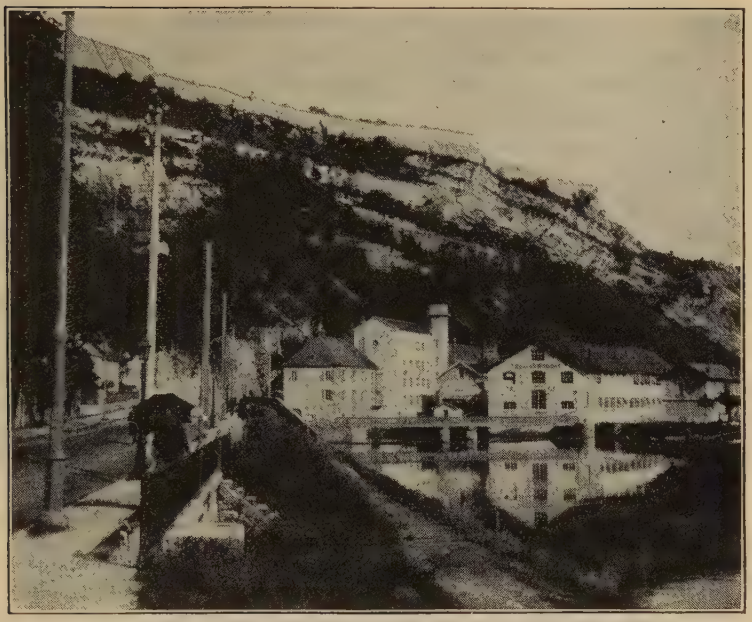


Fig. 86
THE HILL AT VESONTIO
This is the west side of the hill which guarded Vesontio. See the plan on p. 163.

fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim

fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, *tr.*, form, fashion. 2

tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, tent. 1

fātum, -ī, *n.* [**fārī,** to speak], fate, lot. 1

miseror, 1, *tr.* [**miser,** wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. 1

vulgō, *adv.* [**vulgus,** the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2

testāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**testor,** be a witness], will. 1

obsignō, 1, *tr.* [**signō,** mark], seal, sign and seal. 1

tōtīs castrīs: why is there no preposition? App. 151, *b*: G.-L. 388: A. 429, 2: B. 228, 1, *b*: H.-B. 436, *a*: H. 485, 2.

etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum intercēderent, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Prīmum, quod aut quam in partem

---

19. centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**centum,** a hundred], centurion, *the commander of a century, 100 men.* Int. 42. ∗

21. timidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**timeō,** fear], fearful, timid, afraid. 1

24. supportō, 1, *tr.* [**sub** + **portō,** carry], carry *or* bring up; supply. 4

26. dictum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* **dīcō,** say], word; command; **dictō audiēns,** obedient. 3

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, listen to. ∗

2. ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row; order; rank. ∗

3. incūsō, 1, *tr.* [**causa,** cause *or* case], bring a case against; censure. 2

---

19. centuriōnēs: who were appointed especially for their bravery.

20. Quī ex hīs, (*those*) *of them who.*

21. sē verērī: depends on *dīcēbant,* l. 24.

22. angustiās itineris: the valley of the Dubis is narrow and very rough, and if Ariovistus had really been marching toward the Romans it would have given opportunity for ambuscades. See Fig. 87.

23. rem frūmentāriam, ut posset, timēre, lit. *feared the supplies, that they could not* =*feared that the supplies could not.* **ut:** translation? App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

25. cum iussisset: indirect discourse for *cum iusseris, when you shall have ordered* =*when you order.* The clause depends on what follows, not on *nūntiābant.*

26. fore =*futūrōs esse.*

neque signa lātūrōs, *and would not advance.* See Int. 44.

Chap. **40.** *Caesar encourages his officers.*

1. omnium ōrdinum centuriōnibus: to the ordinary council of war only the centurions of the first rank were admitted (Int. 42). This, however, was a special gathering of all the officers to listen to Caesar's speech.

3. incūsāvit: this implies a verb of saying, and what follows is in indirect discourse. The tactful and self-reliant combination of rebuke and encouragement makes the speech very effective. Military discipline demands severe punishment for mutiny, but this speech prevented open mutiny and served Caesar's purpose better than punishment. There was never again any sign of mutiny in the Gallic War.

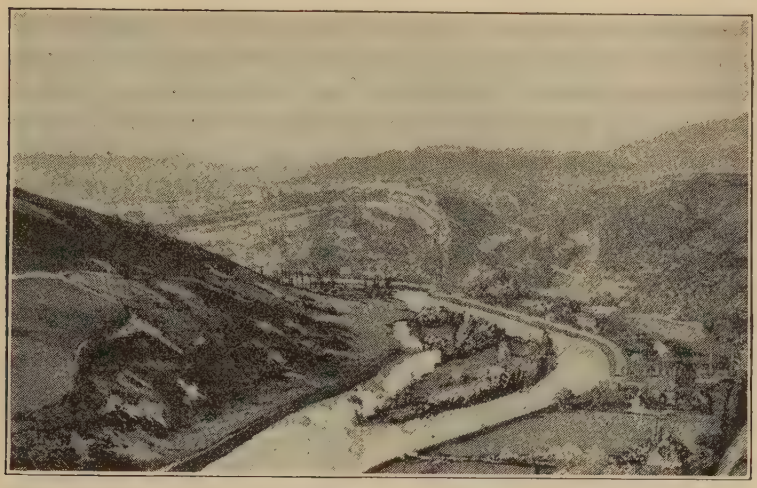


Fig. 87

THE COUNTRY ABOUT VESONTIO

This is looking upstream from a point just below Vesontio. Where the river turns to the left is the hill of Vesontio. Beyond that hill are the other hills which made the soldiers fear the roads (**39**, 22), and which Caesar avoided by a circuit (**41**, 11).

aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō

6. appetō, -petere, -petīvī (**-petiī**), **-petītum**, *tr. and intr.* (**ad** + **petō**, seek), seek for, aim at. 3

cūr, *interrog. and rel. adj.*, why, for what reason. 4

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, without good reason. 2

officium, -cī, *n.*, service, duty; allegiance. *

4. dūcerentur: subjunctive in an indirect question.

sibi . . . cōgitandum, *that they ought to inquire or consider*. The grammatical subject is the clause *aut . . . dūcerentur*.

5. sē cōnsule, *in his consulship;* i.e., in the preceding year. *sē* and the other reflexives through l. 9 are indirect reflexives, referring to Caesar: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

6. cūr iūdicāret: the direct form was *cūr iūdicet, why should anyone suppose*? App. 210, *a*: 268, III: G.-L. 265; 651, R. 2: A. 444; 587: B. 277; 315, 3: H.-B. 513, 1: H. 559, 4; 642, 3. Contrast with this subjunctive question the infinitive in **14**, 11.

discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidē-
bātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēpissent

8. postulātum, -ī, *n.* [**postulō,** demand], demand, request. 4

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [**aequus,** equal], equality; fairness, equity. 1

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**-spiciō,** look], look *or* see through, examine; perceive, realize. *

9. repudiō, 1, *tr.*, reject. 1

10. furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, madness. 2

āmentia, -ae, *f.* [**mēns,** mind], lack of mind, folly, insanity. 1

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**in** + **pellō,** drive], drive *or* urge on, incite, impel. 3

11. dīligentia, -ae, *f.* [**dīligēns,** careful], carefulness, care. 4

13. C., *abbr. for praenomen* **Gāius** (gā′yŭs). *

Marius, -rī, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā′yŭs mā′rĭ-ŭs). 1

14. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise; renown, glory. 3

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [**imperō,** command], commander in chief, general. *

15. servīlis, -e, *adj.* [**servus,** a slave], of *or* like a slave, servile. 1

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [**tumeō,** swell], confusion, tumult; insurrection. 2

16. disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [**discō,** learn], learning; discipline; instruction. 2

ego, meī (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, **I**; *pl.* **nōs,** we, us, etc. *

7. Sibi . . . persuādērī, *in fact he was convinced:* App. 115, *d:* G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

9. Quod sī intulisset, *but if he should make:* App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, *a*: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, *a*: H. 574.

11. verērentur, dēspērārent: see note on l. 6.

suā: the direct reflexive, referring to the officers: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

ipsīus: i.e., Caesar's; *suā* could have been used here as the indirect reflexive, but it would be confusing because it has just been used as the direct reflexive. The use is something like that of *ipse* in **36,** 4.

12. perīculum, *a test.*

13. Cimbrīs et Teutonīs: see Int. 27.

Mariō: see Int. 5.

14. vidēbātur: no satisfactory explanation can be given for this indicative in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse. Very likely Caesar did not write it.

15. factum: supply *esse perīculum.*

servīlī tumultū: the insurrection of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73-71 B.C. Many of the gladiators and slaves who joined the uprising were Germans.

quōs: the antecedent is implied in the adjective *servīlī,* which is equivalent to *servōrum.*

16. aliquid sublevārent, *aided somewhat.*

sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē

18. cōnstantia, -ae, *f.* [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. 1

aliquamdiū, *adv.* [aliquis, some + diū, long], for some time. 1

inermis, -e, *adj.* [in- + arma, arms], without arms *or* weapons, unarmed. 3

19. armō, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; **armātus,** *pf. part., as adj.*, armed. *

22. plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally. *

25. diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diūturnus, long], long duration. 2

dēfatīgō, 1, *tr.* [fatīgō, weary], completely weary, tire out, exhaust. 1

26. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp, morass. *

27. dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, *tr.* [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3

29. imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + perītus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4

17. quantum bonī, *how great an advantage.*

18. quōs: the antecedent is *hōs*, which may be translated first.

inermēs: a part of Spartacus's band was at first armed only with stakes: yet they won victories and thus secured arms.

20. quibuscum Helvētiī congressī superārint, lit. *with whom the Helvetii having met had conquered = whom the Helvetii had met and conquered.* **superārint:** tense? App. 270, *a*: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, *b*, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

22. quī: the antecedent is *Helvētiī*. The argument is that since the Helvetii have beaten the Germans and the Romans have beaten the Helvetii, the Romans can beat the Germans.

23. quōs, *any:* App. 174.

proelium: the battle at Magetobriga: see **31,** 41.

24. commovēret: the direct form was *commovet:* App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

26. suī potestātem, *a chance at him.*

27. dēspērantēs dispersōs adortum: *adortum* agrees with *Ariovistum; attacking them* [the Gauls] *when they had lost hope . . . and had scattered.*

28. ratiōnī: translate with *hāc* in next line, and omit here.

29. hāc . . . posse, *not even* (*Ariovistus*) *himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagem.*

ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō

31. simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense. 2

32. arroganter, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. 1

Fig. 88
A COIN OF THE LEUCI

34. Leucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Leuci (lū′sī). 1

subministrō, 1, *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply. 3

35. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief. ∗

38. male, *adv.* [malus, bad], badly. 1

39. dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. ∗

facinus, -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed. 2

avāritia, -ae, *f.* [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. 1

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], prove. 1

40. innocentia, -ae, *f.* [innocēns, innocent], integrity. 1

fēlīcitās, -tātis, *f.* [fēlīx, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. 1

30. Quī cōnferrent, *those who ascribed.*

31. reī . . . simulātiōnem, *a pretense about the supplies.* **reī** is an objective genitive.

32. dē . . . dēspērāre, *to lack confidence in the general's attention to his duties.*

35. mātūra: it was now August.

36. Quod . . . dīcantur, *as to the statement that they would not obey his orders or advance.* **Quod:** translation? App. 248, *a*: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, *a*: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

37. quibuscumque . . . convictam, lit. *that to whomsoever an army had not been obedient (to them) either fortune had failed or avarice had been proved.* This must be turned into English.

40. innocentiam, *fair dealing,* not "innocence"; opposed to *avāritiam.* What the soldiers would object to would be the general's keeping too large a share of the booty for himself.

perpetuā vītā, *throughout his life.*

41. quod . . . repraesentātūrum,

esse perspectam. Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitet, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī illāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum

---

41. longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant. *

42. repraesentō, 1, *tr.* [**praesēns,** present], make present; do at once. 1

43. utrum, *conj.* [**uter,** which *of two*], whether. 3

44. an, *conj.*, *used in the second half of double questions*, or, or rather. *

45. decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**decem,** ten], tenth. *

46. praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**praetor,** commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. 2

cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. Int. 33. *

47. indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, —, *intr.*, be indulgent to, favor. 1

praecipuē, *adv.* [**praecipuus,** especial], especially, particularly. 1

1. modus, -ī, *m.*, measure; manner. *

2. alacritās, -tātis, *f.* [**alacer,** lively], liveliness, ardor. 3

8. umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; **neque . . . umquam,** and never, never. 2

---

he would do at once what he had intended to put off, etc.

42. dē quārtā vigiliā, *at the beginning of the fourth watch;* between two and three in the morning.

43. utrum . . . valēret: an indirect double question: App. 214; 264, *c*: G.-L. 458; 460, 2: A. 334; 335: B. 162, 4; 300, 4: H.-B. 234: H. 380; 650.

46. praetōriam cohortem, *his bodyguard*, which would naturally be composed of the bravest troops.

Chap. **41.** *The panic is checked and the army advances.*

1. mīrum in modum, *wonderfully.*

4. grātiās ēgit, *expressed its thanks.*

6. cum tribūnīs ēgērunt utī, *arranged with the tribunes that* or *begged the tribunes to.*

8. neque dē . . . exīstimāvisse, *and that they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs, but (knew that it was) the commander's.*

Fig. 89

THE BOUNDARY OF ALSACE

About here Caesar entered the land from which Ariovistus had driven the Sequani. The mountain is a part of the Vosges.

iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse. Eōrum satis-
10 factiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut, mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū, locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā

9. satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfaciō, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. 1

10. exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek *or* search out, inquire, investigate. 2

11. quīnquāgintā (L), *adj.*, fifty. 3

10. itinere . . . Dīviciācum ut . . . dūceret, *having sought a route, with the help of Diviciacus . . . in order that he might march his army through open country, (though) by a circuit of more than fifty miles.*

ex Gallīs, *of (all) the Gauls.*

11. eī: case? App. 115, *a*: G.-L. 346, n. 5: A. 367, *a*, n. 2: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *b*.

mīlium quīnquāgintā is a descriptive genitive. Why not an ablative after the comparative? App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

12. circuitū: he passed around to the north of the broken country in the valley of the Dubis near Vesontio (see map facing p. 145), and then marched straight on. The distance marched around the bend was fifty miles. Soon after completing the bend he passed the site of Belfort and entered

vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: Quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim cum lēgātī saepe ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret:

3. propius, *adv., and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, *b*) [*comp. of* **prope,** near], nearer. ∗

4. respuō, -spuere, -spuī, —, *tr.*, reject, spurn. 1

5. sānitās, -tātis, *f.* [**sānus,** sound], soundness of mind, sanity. 1

6. dēnegō, 1, *tr.* [**negō,** deny], refuse. 1

ultrō, *adv.*, to *or* on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord. ∗

8. pertināciа, -ae, *f.* [**pertineō,** hold through *or* fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. 1

10. citrō, *adv.*, hither; **ultrō citrōque,** back and forth. 1

11. pedes, peditis, *m.* [**pēs,** foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. 3

what is now Alsace. See Int. 68 and 70.

13. ut dīxerat: see **40,** 42.

Septimō diē: the seven days' march brought him to the battlefield indicated on the map facing p. 145. Ariovistus, who had probably been marching northward (see note on **37,** 7), had learned that Caesar was marching toward him, and had turned back to meet Caesar. At this time he was not far from Strassburg, north of the land which he had taken from the Sequani.

cum . . . intermitteret: i.e., he did not allow the day of rest which was usually given about every fifth day. See Int. 54.

Chap. **42-47.** *Negotiations with Ariovistus are fruitless.*

Chap. **42.** *Ariovistus asks for a conference, under conditions which Caesar grants.*

2. postulāsset: supply *Caesar.*

id . . . licēre, *that . . . might be done as far as he was concerned.* **id** is the antecedent of *quod.*

3. accessisset: Ariovistus's reason for refusing a conference (see **34,** 7) no longer existed. Caesar's prompt advance had impressed him, and he was more inclined to confer.

6. petentī, *when he* [Caesar] *asked it.*

magnam . . . veniēbat, *and he was beginning to have great hopes.*

8. fore utī dēsisteret, lit. *that it would be that he would give up* =*that he would give up.*

11. nē quem, *that . . . no.*

Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētractīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui maximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

---

14. interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō**, place], place between, interpose. 4

15. commodus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**modus**, measure], convenient, satisfactory. 3

17. dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō**, draw], draw off *or* away, take away. 4

legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**legiō**, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4

18. impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**in** + **pōnō**, place], place upon, put on; mount. 4

20. irrīdiculē, *adv.* [**in-** + **rīdiculus**, witty], without wit, unwittily. 1

23. rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō**, write], write again; enroll; transfer. 1

---

13. venīret: the subjunctive of command in indirect discourse.

aliā ratiōne, *on any other terms.*

14. interpositā causā tollī, *to be canceled on a pretext,* lit. *an excuse having been put in the way.*

15. salūtem . . . audēbat: Caesar could not be sure of the trustworthiness of the Gallic cavalry, and he knew that in any case they were no match for German cavalry. Six years later Caesar himself employed German cavalry.

16. Gallīs equitibus: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, *d*: H.-B. 371: H. 427.

17. eō, the adverb = *in eōs.*

19. sī . . . esset, lit. *if there should at all be need of something done* = *if there should be any need of their services.* **quid:** case? App. 128, *b*: G.-L. 334: A. 390, *c*: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2. **factō:** construction? App. 146, *b*: G.-L. 406: A. 411, *a*: B. 218, 2, *c*: H.-B. 430, 2: H. 477, III. **esset:** implied indirect discourse, for in making his plans Caesar thought *sī erit, if there shall be.*

nōn irrīdiculē, *wittily.*

21. pollicitum . . . rescrībere: the soldier said, in substance, "After promising only to make us his bodyguard, Caesar is actually making us cavaliers." The pun is based on the double meaning of *ad equum rescrībere,* namely, (1) *to transfer to the cavalry,* a part of the army looked down upon by the legionary soldiers, and (2) *to knight,* i.e., raise to a high rank in Roman society. "Cavalier" means either "cavalryman" or "knight."

PLATE III—THE MEETING OF CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS

This is the meeting described in Chap. 43. The German cavalry are shown in the distance. The German arms and dress are taken from ancient sources.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs utrīusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs

1. plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.* [**plānus,** level], level ground, plain. 4
tumulus, -ī, *m.* [**tumeō,** swell], swelling; mound, hill. 1
terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**terra,** earth], of earth. 1
2. grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large. 1
aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, equal. 3
4. dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry away; bring. 1
6. dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**decem,** ten], ten each. 1
9. mūnus, -eris, *n.*, present. 1
11. doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. *
12. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [**adeō,** go to], approach, right of approach. *
iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**iūs,** right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, just. 4
13. praemium, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. *
14. necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**necesse,** *cf.* **necessārius,** friend], friendship, alliance. 1

Chap. **43.** *At the conference Caesar repeats his previous demands.*

1. erat, *there was.* The hill was about twelve miles north of the battle-field, and has been identified.
terrēnus, therefore suitable for horsemen.
2. spatium: accusative of extent of space.
3. ut erat dictum, *as had been agreed.*
4. equīs, *on horseback.*
passibus, intervāllō: ablatives of degree of difference with *ab, away from.*
5. cōnstitērunt: distinguish carefully between *cōnsistō* and *cōnstituō.*
6. ex equīs, *on horseback.* Compare l. 4: in that line the horses are the means by which the soldiers are brought to the hill; in this they are the places from which the conversation goes on.
9. quod amīcus: supply *appellātus esset.* See note on **33,** 3.
10. missa: supply *essent.* The three *quod* clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with *beneficia,* and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.
12. aditum: i.e., to the Senate.
14. ipsīs . . . intercēderent, *existed between them* [the Romans] *and the Haeduī.* **intercēderent:** subjunctive in an indirect question.

cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: Nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum

15. cōnsultum, -ī, *n.* [**cōnsulō**, take counsel], *result of deliberation;* decree, enactment. 1

quotiēns, *adv.* [**quot**, how many], how many times? how often? 1

16. honōrificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**honōs**, honor +**faciō**, make], conferring honor, honorable. 1

20. dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [**perdō**, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2

dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [**dignus**, worthy], worthiness, dignity, position. 3

auctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **augeō**, increase], increased, advanced. 1

21. afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* [**ad** +**ferō**, carry. App. 81], bring, take, *or* carry to. 3

16. in eōs, *in their behalf*, referring to the Haedui.

ut, *how*, introducing an indirect question.

17. Galliae: i.e., Celtic Gaul; but we have learned in **31**, 8-10 that even there their supremacy had always been disputed.

prius . . . quam = *priusquam*. The subjunctive which it introduces is due to the indirect discourse.

19. ut vellet, *to wish:* a substantive clause of result, in apposition with *hanc cōnsuētūdinem*.

suī, *of their own:* the neuter of *suus*, used as a noun.

20. sed auctiōrēs esse, *but rather to be advanced.*

grātiā, etc.: ablatives of specification.

21. iīs: for case, see App. 116, I.

22. quis posset: the direct form was *quis possit, who would be able?* and the subjunctive is retained in the indirect discourse.

23. dederat: as stated in Chap. **35.**

24. īnferret, etc.: subjunctives of command in indirect discourse. What was the direct form of *nē īnferret?* App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, *c*: H.-B. 501, 3, *a*, 2: H. 561, 1.

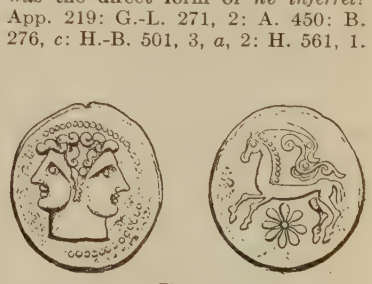


Fig. 90

A COIN OF THE MEDIOMATRICI

Left: Head of Janus, the Roman god of beginnings, whose name appears in "January."

Right: The figure above the horse was doubtless a charioteer in the design from which this was taken.

domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditicīī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē

---

25. remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send *or* dispatch back, return; give up. ∗

at, *conj.*, but, at least. ∗

11. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [**certō,** contend], fight to the end, fight it out. ∗

12. inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **aequus,** even, just], uneven, unjust, unfair. ∗

14. ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**ōrnō,** adorn], ornament; mark of honor. 1

dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**dē** + **terō,** rub, wear out], harm, loss, injury. 1

16. subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw *or* carry off; take away, withdraw. 1

libenter, *adv.* [**libēns,** willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2

Chap. **44.** *Ariovistus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.*

3. rogātum et arcessītum: the participles may be translated by a causal clause.

ā Gallīs: see **31,** 11.

5. ab ipsīs: supply *Gallīs.*

6. iūre: ablative of accordance.

7. cōnsuērint: the tenses in the early part of this chapter are due to *repraesentātiō.*

9. oppugnandum: gerund or gerundive? App. 289: G.-L. 427: A. 506, n. 2: B. 339, 2: H.-B. 613, 1: H. 628, footnote 2.

castra habuisse, *had encamped.*

10. ūnō proeliō: the battle at Magetobriga: see **31,** 41.

13. Amīcitiam sibi ōrnāmentō esse oportēre, lit. *that it was right for the friendship to be to him for an honor.* Make English of this.

15. petīsse: supply *eam,* referring to *amīcitiam,* as the object. The king admits that he had asked for the honor.

Sī remittātur, *if his taxes should be stopped;* a vivid future condition.

recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse

19. impugnō, 1, *tr.* [in + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack. 2

20. testimōnium, -nī, *n.* [testor, be a witness], testimony, proof. 1

25. sīcut *or* **sicutī**, *adv.* [sīc, so + ut(ī), as], so as; just as, as. 1

27. interpellō, 1, *tr.*, interrupt, hinder. 1

17. quam, *than.*

Quod, *as to the fact that.*

20. quod . . . vēnerit, *that he had not come except on invitation:* a substantive clause.

21. prius quam populum Rōmānum: *prius quam* = *priusquam*, a conjunction, and the more accurate expression would be *priusquam populus Rōmānus vēnerit.* The truth of the statement is denied by Caesar in the next chapter.

24. Quid sibi vellet, lit. *what did he wish for himself?* an idiomatic expression for *what did he mean?* For mood, see App. 268, I: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

suās refers to Ariovistus.

25. hanc Galliam, *this (part of) Gaul.* He claims that his right of possession in the land near the Rhine is as clear as that of the Romans in the Roman Province.

Ut . . . oportēret, *just as there ought to be no yielding to him.* The direct form of the conditional sentence was probably *oporteat, sī faciam*, lit. *it would be right if I should make.* This is a less vivid future condition: App. 257: G.-L. 596: A. 516, 2, *b*: B. 303: H.-B. 580: H. 576. Such a condition has the same form in indirect discourse as a vivid future condition, and can be distinguished only by the sense of the passage.

27. Quod dīceret, *as to the fact that he said*, or *as to his statement.*

29. imperītum rērum, *ignorant of political matters.*

30. bellō Allobrogum: see note on **6**, 7.

Haeduōs . . . ūsōs esse: Ariovistus here lays his finger on the weak point in Caesar's argument; for in fact the alliance of the Haedui and the Romans had been mere words until now, when it suited Caesar's purpose to consider it binding.

neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō eius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

31. contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**contendō,** strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. 1

33. suspicor, 1, *tr.*, suspect, distrust; surmise. *

simulō, 1, *tr.* [**similis,** like], make like; pretend. 2

34. opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**ob** + **premō,** press], press down, oppress; overpower, destroy. 4

35. dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead down *or* away, withdraw. *

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**regō,** keep straight], line, direction; region, place. *

37. grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. 1

40. līber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free; unrestrained, undisputed. 1

41. remūneror, 1, *tr.*, repay, reward. 1

42. labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, effort; labor, hardship. *

31. ipsōs = *Haeduōs.*

32. Dēbēre sē suspicārī, *he had a right to suspect.*

33. simulātā amīcitiā, *although he made a pretense of friendship* toward Ariovistus.

quem . . . habēre, lit. *had what army he had in Gaul for the purpose of crushing him.*

35. sēsē . . . amīcō habitūrum, *he would regard him* [Caesar] *not as a friend.*

37. multīs . . . factūrum: as the head of the democratic party, Caesar had made many bitter enemies in the aristocratic party, especially during his consulship. It is entirely possible that some of them had indicated to Ariovistus their desire to have him put out of the way.

38. id compertum habēre differs very slightly from *id comperisse, had found this out.* This means *he possessed this as a thing fully ascertained:* App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

Fig. 91
A COIN OF THE REDONES

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum

---

1. sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentiō, think], way of thinking, opinion; purpose, purport. *

3. bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, melius; *sup.*, optimē. 2

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake. 3

4. potius, *adv.*, rather. 2

5. Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni (rōō-tē'nī). *

Q., *abbr. for* Quīntus, Quintus (kwĭn'tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* *

Fabius, -bī, *m.*, Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwĭn'tŭs fā'bĭ-ŭs măk'sĭ-mŭs), *victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C.* 1

6. ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum, *intr.*, forgive, pardon. 3

7. redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. *

10. observō, 1, *tr.* [servō, give heed], observe; regard, obey. 1

Chap. **45.** *Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.*

1. in eam sententiam, quārē, lit. *to this purpose, why = to show why.* **quārē posset** is an indirect question.

3. patī utī dēsereret, *allowed him to abandon. patior* is usually followed by an infinitive instead of an *ut* clause.

4. Ariovistī, populī Rōmānī: predicative genitives of possession.

5. superātōs esse: in the year 121, at the time when the Allobroges were conquered. As this was fifty years before Ariovistus had entered Gaul, it disposed of the claim (**44**, 21) that Ariovistus had come into the country before the Roman people.

6. neque . . . redēgisset: the intransitive *ignōvisset* governs the dative, *quibus;* but *redēgisset* is transitive and we must supply *quōs; quibus* is needed again with *imposuisset.* The Arverni and Ruteni lived on the other side of the Cevennes Mountains, which formed a natural frontier for the Roman Province; this was the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans.

8. antīquissimum quodque tempus, lit. *each most ancient time = priority of time.*

11. lēgibus: ablative with *ūtī.*

voluisset: supply *senātus.*

Chap. **46.** *An attack by the German cavalry breaks up the conference.*

1. geruntur: mood and tense? App. 234, *a*: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4.

est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs colloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercituī iniectum est.

3. adequitō, 1, *intr.* [**equitō**, ride; **equus**, horse], ride to, toward, *or* against; ride up. 1

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. ∗

5. etsī, *conj.* [**et** + **sī**, if], even if, although. ∗

10. interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *intr.* [**dīcō**, say], exclude, forbid, interdict. 1

11. dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō**, take], take apart; interrupt, break off. 1

13. iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō**, hurl. App. 7], throw into; inspire, infuse. 3

2. tumulum: case? App. 122, *b*: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, *a*: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, *b*: H. 420, 5.

5. quod: the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.

6. legiōnis dēlēctae, *to his picked legion;* the genitive cannot always be translated by "of."

7. committendum ut dīcī posset, lit. *that it ought to be permitted that it could be said = that he ought to permit it to be said.*

pulsīs hostibus, *after the defeat of the enemy.*

8. per fidem, *because of their confidence* [in Caesar's honor]. This is equivalent to saying *treacherously.*

9. quā arrogantiā ūsus, *using what arrogance = with what arrogance.* It is often well to translate *ūsus* in this way.

10. omnī . . . interdīxisset, *had forbidden the Romans all Gaul.* **Galliā** is an ablative of separation. **Rōmānīs** is the indirect object.

11. ut, *how*, introduces both *fēcissent* and *dirēmisset.* It would more naturally precede *impetum.*

Fig. 92
ANCIENT GALLIC BIT
The disk is an ornate cheek-piece

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: Velle sē dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem

---

9. Procillus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Procillus (gā′yŭs vá-lē′rĭ-ŭs prō-sĭl′ŭs), *a Gaul.* 2

Cabūrus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā′yŭs vá-lē′rĭ-ŭs ká-bū′rŭs). 1

10. adulēscēns, -entis, *m.* [*pres. part. of* **adolēscō**, grow up], youth, young man. 4

11. Flaccus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Flaccus (gā′yŭs vá-lē′rĭ-us flăk′ŭs), *governor of Gaul, 83 B.C.* 1

dōnō, 1, *tr.* [**dōnum,** gift], give, present. 1

Chap. **47.** *Ariovistus requests a second conference, but seizes the envoys sent by Caesar.*

1. Bīduō post, *on the following day.* The literal meaning is *afterwards by two days,* but the Latin writer counts the day of the interview as one, the next day as the second. In this case the meaning is proved by l. 5.

2. quae agī coeptae essent, *which had begun to be discussed,* or better, *which they had begun to discuss.* The passive forms of *coepī* are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice: App. 86, *a.*

3. utī cōnstitueret: a substantive clause, the object of an implied verb of asking.

4. lēgātīs, *legates,* not *envoys.* Ariovistus wished to confer with an officer of the highest rank, if Caesar should refuse a second personal interview.

5. Colloquendī . . . est, *Caesar saw no occasion for a conference.* **prīdiē eius diēī** is only a fuller expression for *prīdiē,* and has the same meaning.

6. retinērī quīn conicerent, *be kept from casting.* For construction see App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 595, 2.

8. Commodissimum vīsum est, *it seemed best.* The subject is *mittere,* l. 15, of which *Procillum* is the object.

11. cīvitāte dōnātus erat, *had been granted citizenship.* For case, see App. 114, *a.*

et . . . et (l. 12) **. . . et** (l. 13), *both . . . and . . . and.*

Fig. 93
A GALLIC COIN

et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē eius diēī praeter

12. scientia, -ae, *f.* [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4

13. longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [longus, long], far off; long, long continued. 2

peccō, 1, *intr.*, sin, do wrong. 1

14. Mētius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Metius (mär′kŭs mē′shyŭs). 2

17. cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look at, observe, perceive, see. *

conclāmō, 1, *intr.* [clāmō, cry out], shout *or* cry out, call aloud. 2

18. speculor, 1, *intr.*, spy. 1

19. catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain, fetter. 3

1. prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move forward. 2

12. quā multā ūtēbātur, *which Ariovistus spoke fluently.*

13. in eō, *in his case.*

14. Germānīs: dative of possession.

esset: implied indirect discourse, for Caesar is quoting the reason which influenced him at the time of his action: *because (as he thought) the Germans had.*

ūnā, *with him.*

15. hospitiō, *guest-friendship.* This is an awkward rendering, but as we no longer recognize such a relationship we have no name for it. In its simplest form it bound two men, residing in different states, to give hospitality or render other services to each other whenever occasion arose. Such an arrangement was more needed then, because there were no good hotels.

17. conclāmāvit, etc.: Ariovistus was angry at his failure to secure an interview with either Caesar or one of Caesar's legates.

18. an is not to be translated. Since *an* belongs in the second part of a double question, the full thought is something like "is it for anything else, or, etc."

Cōnantēs, *while they were attempting.*

Chap. **48-54.** *After some maneuvering Caesar forces Ariovistus to give battle, and destroys the German host.*

Chap. **48.** *Ariovistus marches past Caesar's camp. The German cavalry tactics.*

1. mīlibus: ablative of degree of difference. Ariovistus had been twenty-four miles north of Caesar's camp.

2. sub monte: at the foot of the Vosges Mountains.

Postrīdiē eius diēī = *postrīdiē:* see note on **47,** 5.

praeter castra: see the plan, p. 187. Ariovistus marched on high ground along the foothills of the mountains, so that Caesar could not safely attack him as he passed the Roman camp.

castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī

4. ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond. 2

6. continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**contineō,** hold together], uninterrupted; consecutive. 2

7. prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead out *or* forth. ∗

10. genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin; kind, nature. ∗

11. exerceō, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise. 1

12. totidem, *indecl. adj.* [**tot,** so many], just as many. 3

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, speedy. 1

14. versō, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent*, turn oneself; engage in. ∗

5. supportārētur: mood? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

interclūderet: Ariovistus did not encamp on the road which the convoys of provisions would have to take, for he preferred a safer position on the hills; but he was near enough to the road to cut off the supplies if they tried to pass.

6. prō castrīs: this was the favorite position for a battle, since the camp formed a place of refuge if the Romans should be defeated (Int. 49). Although Caesar could not tempt the Germans to fight him in this position, he at least encouraged his men by making it clear that the Germans were not anxious to fight them.

7. aciem . . . habuit, *kept his line drawn up.*

ut deesset: a purpose clause, although *nē* is regularly used in negative purpose clauses instead of *ut nōn*. Here *nōn* belongs closely with the verb, *nōn deesset*, lit. *might not be lacking = might be offered him.*

8. vellet: implied indirect discourse: for the thought in Caesar's mind was *sī vult, if he wishes.*

9. castrīs, *in camp.* Why not *in castrīs*? App. 151, *c*: G.-L. 389: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476. Ariovistus had a superstitious reason for refusing to fight, as appears later.

10. proeliō: see references on *castrīs*, l. 9.

Genus . . . exercuerant, *the kind . . . was as follows.*

12. numerō: ablative of specification, with *totidem*. It need not be translated.

13. singulī singulōs dēlēgerant, lit.

quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō 15
equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prō-
deundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exer-
citātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum
adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius
commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī
cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iīs, castrīs idōneum
locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit.

---

15. dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous. 1

concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run *or* rush together; run to the rescue. 2

16. dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall from *or* off. 1

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, —, *tr.* [**sistō,** stand], stand *or* rally around, surround. *

quō, *adv.:* (1) *interrog.*, whither? (2) *rel.*, to which; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. *

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**prō** + **eō,** go. App. 84], go *or* come forth, go forward, advance. 2

18. celeritās, -tātis, *f.* [**celer,** swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane. 1

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [**currō,** run] running, speed. *

19. adaequō, 1, *tr.* [**aequō,** make equal], make equal to, equal; keep up with. 3

3. idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. *

---

individuals had chosen individuals = had chosen, each for himself.

14. hī . . . concurrēbant, *if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish), the infantry ran to their aid.*

15. quī: the substantive indefinite pronoun, instead of the more usual *quis.*

16. quō: this adverb, like the pronoun *quis,* is used as an indefinite after *sī, nisi, nē,* and *num.*

Chap. **49.** *Caesar constructs a smaller camp, beyond the camp of Ariovistus.*

1. eum = *Ariovistum.*

nē . . . prohibērētur: the plan shows that the second camp commanded the road and protected it from the Germans.

4. aciē triplicī: see Int. 56. Usually the army marched in column; but on this occasion it had to expect an attack at any moment, and therefore it marched in battle formation.

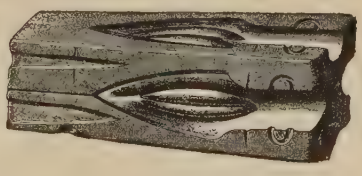


Fig. 94
AN ANCIENT MOLD FOR SPEAR HEADS
Compare with this Fig. 73, and also Figs. 44, 66, and 72

Fig. 95

THE GENERAL DIRECTS WORK ON FORTIFICATIONS

Soldiers are at work in the foreground, cutting down trees and apparently laying out the ground for a fortification. They are unarmed and wear only tunics. At the right, soldiers stand on guard. The camp is seen in the upper right hand corner. In the background the general, followed by an escort of auxiliary cavalry, gallops off to direct another part of the work.

Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs perterrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et

8. sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; **nihilō sētius,** none the less, nevertheless. 2

9. prōpulsō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **prōpellō,** drive forward], drive back, repel. 1

5. in armīs: to repel the expected attack.

6. hominum . . . expedīta, lit. *sixteen light-armed thousands of men* = *sixteen thousand light-armed infantry.*

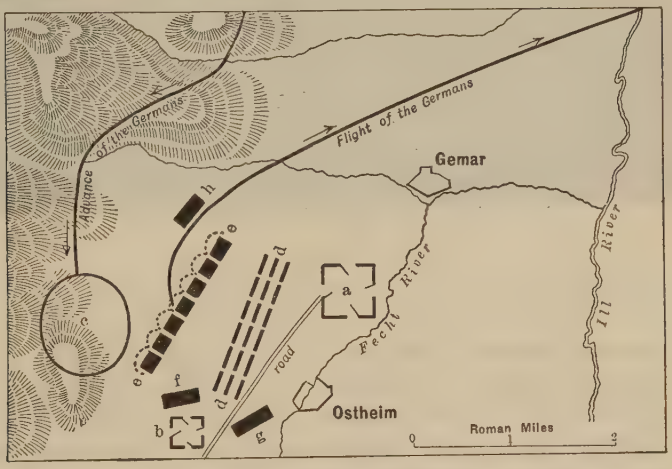
partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi

---

2. paulum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **paulus,** little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go forward, advance. *



BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

a, Large Roman camp
b, Small Roman camp
c, Camp of the Germans
d, The Roman legions
e, The German infantry
f, The Roman auxiliaries
g, The Roman cavalry
h, The German cavalry

11. reliquās: supply *legiōnēs.*

redūxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

Chap. **50.** *Ariovistus unsuccessfully attacks the smaller camp. Caesar learns that he wishes to postpone the decisive battle.*

1. īnstitūtō: ablative of accordance.

2. paulum . . . prōgressus: Caesar had failed to secure a battle in the position most favorable to himself (see **48,** 6, and note); therefore he now offered battle in a position equally favorable to both armies.

Fig. 96
THE SITE OF CAESAR'S SMALL CAMP

This is looking southeast from the site of Ariovistus's camp, which is marked *c* on the plan, p. 187.

nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsit. Ācriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam,

4. merīdiēs, -ēī, *m.* [**diēs,** day], the middle of the day, midday, noon. 1

7. utrimque, *adv.* [**uterque,** each *of two*], on each side, on both sides. 2

usque, *adv.*: (1) *of place,* all the way to; (2) *of time,* up to, till; *with* **ad,** until. 3

7. utrimque pugnātum est, *both sides fought.*

9. quam ob rem, *why,* is here interrogative and introduces an indirect question.

10. proeliō: see note on *castrīs,* **48,** 9.

dēcertāret: i.e., fight a general and decisive battle. So far Ariovistus had risked only small battles.

quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit; ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī

---

12. sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance; casting *or* drawing of lots. 3

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, divination, prophecy. 1

dēclārō, 1, *tr.* [**clārus,** clear], make plain, declare. 1

13. necne, *conj.*, or not. 1

-ne, *interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, not translated; in indirect questions*, whether; **utrum . . . -ne,** whether . . . or. 2

fās, *n., indecl.*, right, will of Heaven. 1

14. lūna, -ae, *f.*, the moon. 2

2. ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āla,** wing], on the wing; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliaries. 2

5. speciēs, -ēī, *f.* [**-spiciō,** see], look, appearance, show. 4

---

11. quod ea cōnsuētūdō esset, *that there was this custom*, is a substantive *quod* clause in apposition with *hanc causam*. The subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

ut dēclārārent: a substantive clause of result explaining *ea cōnsuētūdō*.

mātrēs familiae: Tacitus tells us that the Germans ascribed prophetic powers to their women. He describes the lots (*sortibus*, l. 12) as twigs, cut into small pieces, marked, and scattered on a white cloth. Three of them were picked up at random, and an examination of the marks (runes) disclosed the will of the gods.

12. utrum . . . necne: construction? App. 214; 264, *c*: G.-L. 458; 459: A. 334; 335, n.: B. 162, 4; 300, 4, *a*: H.-B. 234, *a*: H. 380; 650, 1.

14. sī contendissent, *if they should fight. contendissent* stands for a future perfect of the direct form.

novam lūnam: this fell on Sept. 18.

Chap. **51.** *Caesar compels Ariovistus to prepare for battle.*

2. quod . . . vīsum est, (*a garrison*) *which seemed to be sufficient.*

ālāriōs: the word got the meaning *auxiliaries* from the fact that in earlier times the Romans posted the auxiliaries on the wings of the battle-line. For Caesar's use of such troops see Int. 47.

3. multitūdine: ablative of specification.

4. prō, *in comparison with.*

6. necessāriō: the Germans did not entrench their camps. As Caesar was evidently about to attack them, and as there was no room for a battle line in their camp, they had to come out. Caesar probably had to make the attack uphill, but there was a great advantage in forcing the enemy to fight at a time when they believed they could not conquer.

Fig. 97
THE SITE OF CAESAR'S LARGE CAMP

This is looking east from the site of Ariovistus's camp. It looks down the slope up which the Romans charged.

suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs

---

7. generātim, *adv.* [**genus,** tribe], by tribes. 1

8. Marcomannī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bi), the Marcomanni (mär′kō-măn′ī). 1

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trĭb′ō-sī). 2

Vangionēs, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vangiones (văn-jī′ō-nēz). 1

9. Nemetēs, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nĕm′ē-tēz). 1

Sedusiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusii (sē-dū′shyī). 1

---

7. generātim, etc.: about 150 years later, Tacitus speaks thus of the Germans: "And what most stimulates their courage is that their squadrons or battalions, instead of being formed by chance or by a fortuitous gathering, are composed of families and clans. Close by them, too, are those dearest to them, so that they hear the shrieks of women, the cries of infants. *They* are to every man the most sacred witnesses of his bravery—*they* are his most generous applauders. The soldier brings his wounds to mother and wife, who shrink not from counting or even demanding them, and who administer both food and encouragement to the combatants." (Church and Brodribb's translation of the *Germania*).

8. intervāllīs: ablative of attendant circumstance.

et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs mīlitēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Reiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent.

---

12. pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, *tr.*, spread *or* stretch out, extend. 2

1. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [**quaerō,** seek], a quaestor (kwĕs'tôr), *a treasury officer in charge of the finances of the army.* 3

3. dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. 4

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing; **ā dextrō cornū,** on the right wing. *

5. repente, *adv.* [**repēns,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2

6. prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run *or* rush forward, charge. 1

7. comminus, *adv.* [**manus,** hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 1

9. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [**capiō,** take], take up, receive; meet, withstand. *

10. īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum, *tr.* [**saliō,** leap], leap upon. 1

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [**vellō,** pluck], pull *or* tear up. 1

dēsuper, *adv.* [**super,** above], from above. 1

---

10. circumdedērunt: i.e., on the rear and both flanks.

11. Eō, *on them*, is the adverb.

Chap. **52.** *A fierce battle is fought.*

1. singulīs . . . praefēcit: i.e., each of the six legions was put under the command of either the quaestor or one of the five legates. See Int. 38, 39.

3. eam partem: i.e., the enemy's left wing.

5. signō datō: by trumpeters.

itaque =*et ita.*

6. pīla . . . coniciendī: on this and other details of the battle see Int. 55.

7. Reiectīs, *throwing aside.* The *pīla* were intended only for casting, and were useless in a hand-to-hand encounter.

8. phalange: on this formation see note on **24,** 11.

9. in phalangem īnsilīrent: i.e., the soldiers leaped on the roof of shields. If the Romans had been able to begin the battle with the customary volley of javelins, this solid array of shields would have been broken up as it was in the battle with the Helvetii, **25,** 3-10. **īnsilīrent:** subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam
15 iī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus

13. premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *tr.*, press, press hard. ∗

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Publius Licinius Crassus (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs lĭ-sĭn′ĭ-ŭs krăs′ŭs), *a son of the triumvir.* ∗

16. subsidium, -dī, *n.* [**subsideō,** sit near *or* in reserve], reserve force; help, aid. ∗

1. tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back; **terga vertere,** to flee. ∗

2. vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *tr.*, turn, turn around. ∗

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *tr. and intr.* [**fuga,** flight], flee, run away. 4

4. trānō, 1, *intr.* [**trāns** +**nō,** swim], swim across. 1

11. Cum, *though.*

ā sinistrō cornū, *on the left wing,* which was the weakest part of the German line.

14. expedītior, *freer to act.* Crassus and the cavalry were posted behind the Roman left wing (see plan on p. 187), out of the way of the German cavalry, for whom they were no match. They were taking no part in the battle, but were waiting to pursue the enemy when the legions should win the victory.

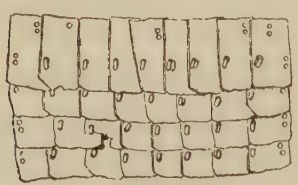


FIG. 98

A BIT OF PLATE MAIL

Overlapping plates were riveted on leather. The cuirass in Fig. 17, p. 37, is made in the same way.

15. iī . . . versābantur: i.e., Caesar and the legates, who alone had the authority to give such a command. Crassus was too young to be a legate, but he was an able man and the son of Caesar's political partner: see Int. 11.

tertiam aciem: as usual, this was being held in reserve for just such an emergency.

labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō, *to the assistance of our hard-pressed men.*

Chap. **53.** *The Germans are routed. Caesar's envoys are rescued.*

1. terga vertērunt: the line of wagons (**51,** 9) might hinder their flight, but could not entirely prevent it. It is possible, too, that during the battle the Germans had advanced so far that there was space enough for flight between the wagons and the German line.

2. flūmen Rhēnum: as the Rhine is much more than five miles from the battlefield, it is probable that the Ill River is meant, and that Caesar mistook it for the Rhine.

inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt duae fīliae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vīnctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat.

5. inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come upon, find. 2

6. nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* nāvis, ship], small boat, skiff. 1

dēligō, 1, *tr.* [ligō, bind], bind *or* tie down, fasten, moor. 2

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get possession of; meet with, find. ∗

8. nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. ∗

9. Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, Voccio (vŏk'-shyō), *a king of Noricum.* 1

10. pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be killed, perish. 2

12. trīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. 1

vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *tr.*, bind. 1

13. trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. 1

14. incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall into *or* upon; fall in with, meet. 2

15. voluptās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure, delight, enjoyment. 2

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, honor], honorable, distinguished. 1

16. hospes, -itis, *m.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend. 1

18. grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 1

4. vīribus: case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

5. Ariovistus: four years later we hear that the Germans desired to avenge his death. Possibly he died of wounds received in this battle.

6. eā, *in this*, is an ablative of means.

reliquōs omnēs: it is stated by Plutarch that 80,000 were killed in the battle and retreat.

7. Duae uxōrēs: among the Germans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles.

8. nātiōne: ablative of specification.

10. dūxerat: *had married;* while *dūxerat* in l. 9 means *had brought.*

12. Procillus: see **47,** 9.

13. īnsequentem, *who was following.*

17. neque . . . dēminuerat, *nor had fortune, by injury to Procillus, lessened in any degree Caesar's great satisfaction and rejoicing;* lit. *lessened anything from; quicquam* being the direct object.

Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

---

19. ter, *num. adv.* [*cf.* **trēs,** three], three times. 1

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr. and intr.*, take counsel, consult, consider. 1

20. statim, *adv.*, forthwith, immediately, at once. *

necō, 1, *tr.* [**nex,** death], put to death, kill, murder. 2

reservō, 1, *tr.* [**servō,** save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2

21. incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured. 4

2. Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ūˈbī-ī), *a German tribe.* *

4. aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. *

5. paulō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **paulus,** little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

7. praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place before *or* over, put in command of. 1

---

19. sē praesente, *in his presence.*

sortibus cōnsultum, lit. *that it had been consulted by lots* = *that the lots had been consulted.*

20. necārētur: this is an indirect question, but the subjunctive is not due to that fact: App. 210; 263: G.-L. 265; 467: A. 444; 575, *b*: B. 277; 300, 2: H.-B. 503: H. 559, 4.

Chap. **54.** *The fate of the Suebi. Arrangements for the winter.*

1. quī . . . vēnerant: see **37,** 5.

3. Rhēnum: case? App. 122, *b*: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, *a*: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, *b*: H. 435, 2.

5. mātūrius paulō: in the latter half of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.

6. in Sēquanōs: probably in Vesontio. The quartering of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul, and thus brought about the Belgic uprising of the following year.

7. ad conventūs agendōs, *to hold the provincial courts.* This was a part of his duty as governor of the Province. Moreover he wished to be as near Rome as possible in order to keep in touch with affairs there. So long as he was governor he could not go to Rome.

THE STORY OF BOOK II

WAR WITH THE BELGAE

Caesar's first year of fighting had brought central Gaul under Roman control (see map facing p. 145), and this fact was made clear to the Gauls when Caesar kept his army through the winter in Vesontio; for no Roman army had ever before been stationed north of the Province. The Belgae, fearing that they would be attacked next, formed during the winter a league of defense, and prepared to raise a force of nearly three hundred thousand men. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgium as the Haedui had in central Gaul, came to terms with him and furnished him valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. Word soon came that the Belgian army had concentrated and was marching toward him. At first he did not venture to attack with his much smaller army an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae. Therefore he chose a strong position on the Axona (Aisne) River, and sent a force of the Haedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci, hoping by this means to break up the army of the enemy. The Belgae made an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, a town of the Remi, and then encamped before Caesar's position on the Axona. A little skirmishing discouraged the badly organized and poorly fed Belgian army. The men of each state went off to defend their own territory, all promising to come to the rescue of whichever state Caesar should first attack. Caesar was thus left free to deal with the states one at a time.

Sweeping through western Belgium so rapidly that the states could not send the promised help to one another, he received the submission of the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani. No doubt the neighboring states, too, sent envoys of peace, though they are not mentioned. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, the Viromandui, and the Atrebates assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (Sambre) River, and planned to surprise and destroy the legions while separated on the march. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to fortify a camp, the enemy suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it; Caesar was taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so great the danger that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline pre-

vailed. The enemy lost heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand, and were slain almost to a man.

The Battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Atuatuci dared to offer a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery. The conquest of Belgium was complete, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, who were not attacked and who sent no envoys. With his customary moderation Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were raised to supreme power in Belgium, and were thus firmly attached to the Roman interest.

Later in the year the states of northwestern Gaul submitted to Publius Crassus, Caesar's legate, apparently without fighting.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy, and courage are seen at their best. Yet the surprise at the Sabis was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed chiefly to the excellence of his soldiers.

CAMPAIGN MAP FOR BOOK II

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. It might be argued that all of Belgium should be colored red, because all the states were represented in the great army that melted away before Caesar at the Axona. But the only real fighting was against the Nervii, the Atrebates, the Viromandui, and the Atuatuci; therefore the territory of these states is the only addition to the red on the map facing p. 145.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. We may assume that all the Belgian states except the Morini and the Menapii sent embassies of submission during this campaign; for in III, **28** we are told that, by the end of the next summer, these two states were the only ones which had never sent envoys. The northwestern states, too, are now colored blue. Crassus evidently secured their submission without fighting (**34**). His one legion would have been helpless if they had fought; for Caesar and most of his army had difficulty in conquering them when they rebelled in the next year.

Battlefields are marked by x. The one on the Axona was certainly at Berry-au-Bac, although Mr. Holmes expresses doubt. The one on the Sabis is certain. The site of the town of the Atuatuci is not certain; but Mt. Falhize, the one indicated on the map, is open to fewer objections than any other.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant,

---

2. crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close; numerous, frequent. 4

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, report, rumor. 2

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* [**ad** + **ferō**, carry. App. 81], bring, take, *or* carry to. 3

4. coniūrō, 1, *intr.* [**iūrō**, swear], swear together, league together, conspire. *

7. sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, stir up; incite, instigate. 2

8. partim, *adv.* [**pars**, part], partly, in part. 4

versō, 1, *tr.*, turn; *pass. as deponent*, turn oneself; be, remain. *

Chap. **1.** *The Belgae form a league against Caesar.*

1. citeriōre Galliā: Caesar's province south of the Alps; now northern Italy.

dēmōnstrāvimus: in I, **54.** Caesar uses the rhetorical *we*. Caesar the writer speaks in the first person, Caesar the general is spoken of in the third.

3. Labiēnī: as commander of the winter quarters, he of course sent regular reports to Caesar on all matters of importance.

certior fīēbat, *was informed from time to time:* the imperfect of repeated action.

Belgās: see Int. 28.

quam . . . dīxerāmus, *who, as I said, are a third part of Gaul.* **quam** refers to *Belgās*, but agrees in gender and number with the predicate noun *partem*. The perfect would seem more natural than the past perfect, *dīxerāmus*. The meaning is "as I had said before I reached this part of my story."

4. coniūrāre, *were forming a league*, not "conspiring." The Belgae were not rebelling, for they had never been subject to Rome. Caesar had no scruples about conquering them, but he did not treat them as rebels.

6. quod verērentur, *that they feared:* a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causās*. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

omnī . . . Galliā, *now that all Gaul had been brought under control.* **Galliā** here refers only to Celtic Gaul. See Int. 28.

7. sollicitārentur: the indirect discourse still continues, but stops at this point. Apparently Labienus reported the two reasons for the action of the Belgae, but Caesar himself supplies the three reasons why Celtic Gauls instigated a rising of the Belgae.

8. partim quī, lit. *partly (by those)*

ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

9. inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, -veterātum, *intr.*, grow old; become established. 1

10. molestē, *adv.*, with annoyance; **molestē ferre,** be annoyed. 1

mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**mōbilis,** movable], movableness; changeableness, fickleness. 2

levitās, -tātis, *f.* [**levis,** light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. 1

13. vulgō, *adv.* [**vulgus,** the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2

who = some of whom; i.e., the opponents of all foreigners, those whose motto might have been "Gaul for the Gauls."

10. partim quī, *others of whom.*

mōbilitāte et levitāte: Caesar often speaks of these qualities as characteristic of the Gauls.

11. ab nōn nūllīs (*sollicitārentur*): a third class, such men as Orgetorix (I, **2**), Casticus (I, **3**), and Dumnorix (I, **18**). See Int. 29.

quod . . . occupābantur, *because royal power was commonly seized by,* etc.

12. ad . . . hominēs, *for employing mercenaries.*

14. imperiō nostrō: case? App. 142, *b*: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

†**1. esset:** mood? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 579, II, *a*; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, *b*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

2. litterīs: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. Labiēnī: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1.

certior: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Belgās: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

4. coniūrāre: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

obsidēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

6. verērentur: mood? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

Galliā: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 2: B. 227, 2, *d*: H.-B. 421, 4: H. 489, 1.

7. addūcerētur: mood? App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

Gallīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

9. populī: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

10. mōbilitāte: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

11. imperiīs: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, *a*: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (*b*): H. 426, 1.

13. occupābantur: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 539: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

†The grammar references given at the end of each chapter of this book are as far as possible duplicates of those given in the notes of I, **1-29.** They are given for the convenience of teachers who begin the study of Caesar with Book II. Their plan and purpose is stated on p. 68, paragraph 5.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum

---

2. ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin. ∗

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. ∗

3. dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead down *or* away; bring, conduct, lead. ∗

Q., *abbr. for* **Quīntus,** Quintus (kwĭn′tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* ∗

Pedius, -dī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwĭn′tŭs pē′dĭ-ŭs). 2

4. incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], undertake; begin. 1

5. negōtium, -tī, *n.* [neg- + ōtium, leisure], business, undertaking; **negōtium dare,** employ, direct. ∗

Senonēs, -um, *m.* (Bef), the Senones (sĕn′ō-nēz). 1

7. cōnstanter, *adv.* [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently. 2

8. vērō, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth; but, however. ∗

Chap. **2-4.** *Caesar marches to Belgium and gets information from the Remi.*

Chap. **2.** *Caesar makes preparations and moves against the Belgae.*

1. duās legiōnēs: Caesar now had eight legions, numbered consecutively from VII to XIV, approximately 32,000 legionary soldiers. In addition he had auxiliary cavalry and infantry, on whom, however, he placed little reliance. See Int. 32-33.

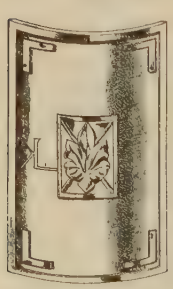


Fig. 99
A ROMAN SHIELD

2. initā aestāte, *after the beginning of warm weather. Aestās* included more than our summer, and the time here meant is spring.

in ulteriōrem Galliam: i.e., to join the other legions in Vesontio. See map facing p. 197.

3. quī (*eās*) **dēdūceret,** *to take them.*

cum prīmum: in June. Food could be carried for the men, but not for the pack animals. *Cum prīmum* usually takes the indicative.

4. Dat negōtium utī cognōscant, lit. *he gave the duty to the Senones that they find out* = *he employed the Senones to find out.*

6. gerantur: Caesar said *ea quae geruntur cognōscite, find out what is being done. gerantur* is the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse: App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, note: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, *a*: H. 649, 1.

7. manūs cōgī, *that armed bands were gathering.*

8. dubitandum (*sibi esse*) **quīn proficīscerētur,** lit. *that it ought to be hesitated by him that he should set out* = *that he should hesitate to set out.*

nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē improvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne

---

10. prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *tr.* [**videō,** see], see beforehand; care for, provide. ∗

1. improvīsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **prōvīsus,** foreseen], unforeseen; **dē improvīsō,** unexpectedly. 1

opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* [**opīnor,** think], way of thinking, opinion; expectation. ∗

When *dubitō* means *hesitate* it is usually followed by the infinitive. See App. 229, *d*: G.-L. 555, 2, R. 3: A. 558, *a*, n. 2: B. 298, *b*: H.-B. 521, 3, *b*; 586: H. 595, 1; 607, 1.

10. ad fīnēs: it was about 145 miles to the boundary of the Remi; but Caesar probably passed the boundary and nearly reached Durocortorum, their capital, in the fifteen days. See the map facing p. 197, and Int. 54.

Dūrocortorum Rēmōrum is the modern Rheims, a name derived from *Rēmōrum*. Many names of French cities are similarly derived from tribe names; e.g., Paris from *Lutecia Parīsiōrum*.

During most of the World War the German line ran a few miles east of Rheims, and from that line the Germans bombarded the city and its magnificent cathedral. See Int. 72.

Chap. **3.** *The Remi submit to Caesar.*

1. Eō: the adverb.

omnium opīniōne, lit. *than the opinion of all* =*than anyone had expected.*

---

1. legiōnēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

2. aestāte: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

3. dēdūceret: mood? App. 225, *a*, 1: G.-L. 630: A. 531, 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 590.

lēgātum: case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

4. pābulī: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

inciperet: mood? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 579, II, *a*; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

5. Senonibus: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, *a*: H. 424.

Belgīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (*a*): H. 434, 2.

6. cognōscant: mood? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 563, 1; 565.

7. certiōrem: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

manūs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

8. cōgī: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

10. diēbus: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

11. Belgārum: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere. Neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī

Fig. 100
A COIN OF THE REMI

2. Rēmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the Remi; *m. pl. as noun*, **Rēmī,** (Bef), the Remi (rē′mī). ∗

3. Iccius, -cī, *m.*, Iccius (ĭk′shyŭs). 3

Andebrogius, -gī, *m.*, Andebrogius (ăn′dē-brō′jyŭs). 1

5. permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], give up *or* over, surrender. ∗

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *intr.* [**sentiō,** feel] *think together;* agree, combine. 2

7. imperātum, -ī, *n.* [**imperō,** command], command, order. 2

8. cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of, the other. 4

9. cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 2

10. coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō,** join], join with, unite, bind. ∗

furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, madness. 2

11. Suessiōnēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Suessiones (swĕs′ĭ-ō′nēz). ∗

---

2. Rēmī: a Belgian state, of apparently only moderate strength, which saw an opportunity to increase its power by treacherously deserting its fellow states. In reward for its services Caesar made it the leader of a confederation, and it remained constantly faithful to him.

proximī . . . Belgīs, *the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul*, i.e., at the point where Caesar entered the Belgian frontier.

ex Belgīs: the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used instead of the partitive genitive.

3. quī dīcerent: purpose. The rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given at the end of the text.

4. sē is the object of *permittere*. Another *sē* must be supplied as its subject: *that they intrusted themselves and all their possessions to the good faith* (or *protection*), etc.

5. Neque . . . neque . . . -que, *not . . . and not . . . and.*

7. esse: infinitive in indirect discourse. *dare, facere, recipere,* and *iuvāre* depend on *parātōs.*

9. cis: the Gallic side.

10. sēsē: do not translate.

11. ut . . . dēterrēre potuerint quīn, *that they had not been able to prevent even the Suessiones . . . from*, etc.

eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

4. Cum ab iīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī 5

---

2. quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with* **posse,** how? App. 128, *b*. *

sīc, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; as follows. *

plērīque, -aeque, -aque, *adj.*, very many, the most of. 2

3. antīquitus, *adv.* [**antīquus,** ancient], long ago, anciently. 2

4. fertilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**fertilis,** fertile], fertility. 1

5. expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive out, expel. 4

Chap. **4.** *The Remi inform Caesar of the numbers in the Belgian army.*

1. iīs: i.e., the envoys of the Remi.

2. quid: case? App. 128, *b*: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, *c*: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

sīc, *as follows.*

Plērōsque Belgās: the remainder of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given at the end of the text.

The tradition that most of the Belgae were descended from Germans was not strictly true, but the Belgae prided themselves on the supposed fact because of the Germans' renown in war.

3. Rhēnum: object of the passive participle *trāductōs:* App. 127, *a*.

4. Gallōs: the object.

---

1. opīniōne: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406, *a*: B. 217, 1, 4: H.-B. 416, *e*: H. 471, 8.

2. vēnisset: mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

proximī: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Galliae: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (*a*): H. 434, 2.

3. lēgātōs: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

5. Belgīs: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. coniūrāsse: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

7. oppidīs: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423; 446, 1: H. 476, 3.

9. incolant: mood? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2: H. 643.

11. frātrēs: case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

12. iūre: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

13. potuerint: mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

14. cōnsentīrent: mood? App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 555, 1: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 563, 1; 566.

Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcebant, proptereā quod propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam

---

6. Teutonī, -ōrum, *or* **Teutonēs, -um,** *m.*, the Teutoni (tū'tō-nī) *or* Teutones (tū'tō-nēz). 4

Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sím'brī). 4

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within; into. 4

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** go], go into, enter. 1

8. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [**spīrō,** breathe], breath, air; *pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2

9. explōrō, 1, *tr.*, search *or* find out, investigate, spy out. 2

10. propinquitās, -tātis, *f.* [**propinquus,** neighboring, near], nearness; relationship. 3

11. commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general. ∗

13. Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bde), the Bellovaci (bĕ-lŏv'ă-sī). ∗

14. armō, 1, *tr.* [**arma,** arms], arm, equip; **armātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, armed; **armātī,** *pl. as noun*, armed men. ∗

15. ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**legō,** choose], pick out; **ēlēctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (*men, etc.*). 1

sexāgintā (**LX**), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [**sex,** six], sixty. 1

postulō, 1, *tr.*, ask, demand. ∗

16. ferāx, -ācis, *adj.* [**ferō,** bear], productive, fertile. 1

17. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō,** sit], possess. 3

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. ∗

---

6. Teutonōs Cimbrōsque: on this invasion see Int. 27.

ingredī prohibuerint, *prevented from entering.* Caesar always uses the infinitive after *prohibeō*, instead of the subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus*.

7. prohibuerint was subjunctive in the direct form. See App. 230, *b*: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, *b*: B. 283, 2: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 1.

9. Dē numerō: i.e., the numerical strength of the Belgian army.

omnia . . . explōrāta, *that they had ascertained everything.*

11. quisque: i.e., each delegate.

12. pollicitus sit: an indirect question, and therefore subjunctive in the direct form.

Plūrimum: see note on *quid*, l. 2.

14. armāta mīlia centum, lit. *one hundred armed thousands = one hundred thousand armed men.*

pollicitōs: supply *esse*. The subject is *Bellovacōs*.

16. suōs: i.e., of the Remi; see map.

17. possidēre: supply *eōs* as the subject.

memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII; pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia,

FIG. 101
A BRITISH COIN

Com(mi) F(ilius) =son of Commius.
This is the Commius of Fig. 114, p. 238.

Britannia, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brĭ-tăn′ĭ-ă), *better* Britain; *never Brittany.* *

20. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present. 3

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba (găl′bă). 2

21. prūdentia, -ae, *f.* [**prūdēns,** foreseeing], foresight, prudence. 1

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** carry. App. 81], bring from *or* down; bestow, confer. *

22. quīnquāgintā (L), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, fifty. 3

23. totidem, *indecl. adj.* [**tot,** so many], just as many, the same number. 3

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun,* the Nervii (nĕr′vĭ-ī). *

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, fierce, savage. *

24. Atrebās, -bātis, *m.* (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (ăt′rē-bā′tēz). *

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABde), the Ambiani (ăm′bĭ-ā′nī). 2

25. Morinī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mŏr′ĭ-nī). *

Menapiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā′pĭ-ī). *

septem (VII), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, seven. 2

Caletī, -ōrum (*or* **-ēs, -um**), *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kăl′ē-tī). 1

---

18. Dīviciācum: of course not the Haeduan mentioned in Book I.

cum . . . tum, *not only . . . but also.*

19. partis and **Britanniae:** both depend on *imperium.*

Britanniae: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite the Belgian coast. This is the first mention of Britain in Latin literature.

21. summam: the noun, not the superlative adjective.

23. Nerviōs: with this and the following proper nouns supply *pollicērī.*

maximē ferī: the superlative.

longissimē absint: i.e., from the southern frontier. But the map shows that they were no more distant than the Morini and the Menapii.

Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuatucōs XIX mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī sē posse armāre XL mīlia.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs

---

26. Veliocassēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Veliocasses (vē′lĭ-ō-kăs′ēz). 1

Viromanduī, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Viromandui (vĭr′ō-măn′dū-ī). 3

Atuatucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Atuatuci (ăt′ū-ăt′ū-sī). 4

27. Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Condrusi (kŏn-drōō′sī). 2

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ĕb′ū-rō′nēz). 2

Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō′sī). 1

Caemānī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā′nī). 1

1. līberāliter, *adv.* [**līber,** free], graciously, generously, kindly. 3

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow, accompany; *with* **ōrātiōne,** address. 3

---

28. Germānī: these tribes were very likely really Germans who had settled in Gaul just as Ariovistus tried to do.

appellantur: the indicative shows that this is an explanation by Caesar, not a quotation from the Remi.

The total of these promises is 296,000; but we cannot be sure that all promises were fully kept.

Chap. **5–8.** *The armies approach each other.*

Chap. **5.** *Caesar sends the Haedui to ravage one state, and himself marches to meet the whole Belgian army.*

---

2. essent: mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

3. Germānīs: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, *a*, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, *b*: H. 469, 1.

Rhēnum: case? App. 127, *a*: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1, 2: B. 179, 1, 3: H.-B. 386, *a*: H. 413.

5. patrum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1, n. 1.

7. quā: use? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

rērum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

memoriā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

8. sibi: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365, *a*: H. 424.

sūmerent: mood? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

9. explōrāta: use? App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

13. virtūte: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397, 2: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

18. memoriā: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

19. regiōnum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

21. voluntāte: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

FIG. 102

ROMAN SOLDIERS AT WORK

In the lower left corner two soldiers are taking off a captive. Aside from this group, three groups are at work. In the middle, one group is building a bridge, though the structure is so small as to be merely a symbol. One pile has been driven and is being fitted with braces; another is being driven; a timber is being fastened across two piles by a man who has one foot in the water; another pile is being set in place. At the lower right, a group seems to be constructing a pit, some think a reservoir.

At the extreme lower right, two of the workers' shields rest against their *pīla*, on top of which hang their helmets. At the upper right is a nearly completed fortress, from one corner of which the general surveys operations.

obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tem-

3. dīligenter, *adv.* [**dīligēns,** careful], carefully; with exactness *or* care. 4

5. doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *tr.*, teach, instruct; inform. *

quantopere, *interrog. adv.* [**quantus,** how much +**opus,** work], how greatly? how much? 1

6. distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold *or* keep apart. 3

5. quantopere intersit, *how much it concerned:* an indirect question.

commūnis salūtis: i.e., of both Haedui and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests. For case see App. 110.

intersit . . . distinērī, lit. *the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned* = *it concerned . . . that the bands of the enemy be kept apart.*

6. nē cōnflīgendum sit, lit. *that it might not have to be fought* = *that they might not have to fight.* The verb is used impersonally, but English idiom will not allow an impersonal translation.

pore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat, et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō

7. cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *intr.* [**flīgō**, strike], strike against; contend, fight. 1

8. intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**intrō**, within + **dūcō**, lead], lead *or* bring into. 3

9. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [**mandō**, command], order, command. ⁎

12. Axona, -ae, *m.* (Bf), the Axona (ăk'sō-nà), *a river, now* the Aisne. 2

15. tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**tueor**, protect], protected, safe, secure. ⁎

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō**, give], give back; make *or* cause to be, render. ⁎

16. commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [**commeō**, go back and forth], trip; supplies, provisions. ⁎

7. Id: i.e., keeping the bands of the enemy apart. The sentence *id . . . coeperint* is in indirect discourse, depending on *docet*, l. 5.

8. in fīnēs Bellovacōrum: the Bellovaci were no doubt angry because they had not obtained leadership of the league (see **4**, 15 and 20), and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them home.

intrōdūxerint, coeperint: perfect subjunctives in indirect discourse, for future perfect indicatives of the direct form.

10. in ūnum locum: somewhere to the north of the Axona River.

coāctās venīre, lit. *having been gathered were coming = had gathered and were coming.*

venīre, abesse: indirect discourse, depending on *cognōvit.*

11. ab iīs explōrātōribus cognōvit, *learned from the scouts.*

14. castra: the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is a hill situated on the north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little marshy tributary, the Miette, which formed an excellent defense in front. See plan, p. 214. The hill is eighty feet high.

Caesar crossed the Aisne at what is now Berry-au-Bac. During most of the World War the German line crossed the river at the same point. See Int. 72. The Argonne, where American troops did their hardest fighting, is about fifty miles east of this point.

Quae rēs et, *this position both.*

latus ūnum: the left side, for the camp faced west.

15. post . . . reddēbat, *rendered safe from the enemy all that was behind him;* i.e., that part of the Remi from whom he had just marched, and the road by which supplies were coming.

16. commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat, lit. *made that provisions could be brought up = made it possible for.* **ut . . . possent** is a substantive clause of result, the object of *efficiēbat.*

ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem

17. efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex + faciō, make], make, cause, render. *

18. Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwĭn′tŭs tĭ-tū′rĭ-ŭs sə-bī′nŭs). *

19. cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. *

1. Bibrax, -ctis, *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī′brăks). 1

3. sustentō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of* **sustineō,** hold up], hold up, sustain; hold out, endure. 2

17. In, *over.*

18. praesidium: a small fortified camp, to defend the northern end of the bridge.

in alterā parte, *on the other side;* i.e., at the southern end of the bridge. This guard was posted to protect the bridge in case some of the enemy should cross the river by a ford.

19. sex cohortibus: how many men? See Int. 33.

Castra: the main camp on the hill. For a plan of this camp and for details of camp fortification, see Int. 49-52, and especially Fig. 30, p. 46.

20. duodēvīgintī pedum: i.e., in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension of a trench he always means the width. The depth was about ten feet.

Chap. **6.** *The Belgae assault a town of the Remi.*

1. nōmine: ablative of specification.

Bibrax: see map facing p. 197.

2. ex itinere: i.e., without stopping to make camp.

3. sustentātum est, lit. *it was held out;* but translate personally.

eadem atque Belgārum, (*which is*) *the same as* (*that*) *of the Belgae.* See *atque* in the Vocabulary. In such expressions Latin never uses a word for "that."

3. Quae: use? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

5. docet: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

reī pūblicae: case? App. 110: G.-L. 381: A. 355: B. 210; 211, 1: H.-B. 345: H. 449, 1.

6. multitūdine: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413, *b*: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 4: H. 473, 1.

7. cōnflīgendum sit: mood? App. 225, *b*: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

12. cognōvit: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

flūmen, exercitum: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179. 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

20. pedum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, R. 2: A. 345, *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succendunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.

---

4. oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**oppugnō**, storm], a storming, assault; plan *or* method of storming. 2

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō**, throw. App. 7], throw, set, *or* place around. 1

5. moenia, -ium, *n.*, defensive walls, city walls. 2

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. ∗

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl. ∗

6. dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [**dēfendō**, defend], defender, protector. ∗

nūdō, 1, *tr.* [**nūdus**, bare], strip, uncover, make bare. 3

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; a testudo, *a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads.* 1

7. porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. ∗

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *tr.*, set on fire below, kindle, burn. 1

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [**ruō**, fall], cause to fall *from beneath;* dig under, undermine. 1

12. subsidium, -dī, *n.* [**subsideō**, sit near *or* in reserve], reserve force; help, assistance. ∗

13. submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. ∗

---

4. haec, *as follows.*

circumiectā: this ablative absolute is best translated by a clause: *when a great number has been thrown around . . . and stones have begun,* etc.

6. coeptī sunt: why not *coepērunt?* App. 86, *a*: G.-L. 175, 5, *a*: A. 205, *a*: B. 133, 1: H.-B. 199, 2: H. 299, 1.

testūdine: see Plate I, 3, facing p. 47.

8. conicerent agrees with the meaning, not the grammatical form, of the collective noun *multitūdō.*

10. summā, (*a man*) *of the highest.*

11. ūnus ex iīs: App. 101, *b*: G.-L. 372, R. 2: A. 346, *c*: B. 201, 1, *a*: H.-B. 346, *e*: H. 444. *ūnus* is here used as a noun in apposition with *Iccius.*

13. submittātur: the subjunctive here stands for a future indicative of the direct form. *nūntiōs mittit* implies "saying."

---

2. mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

impetū: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. diē: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

5. moenibus: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

6. coeptī sunt: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque 5

---

2. Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidae (nū′mĭ-dē), *better*, the Numidians, *a people of North Africa, in modern Algeria.* *

Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krē′-tēz), *better*, the Cretans, *natives of the island of Crete.* 1

sagittārius, -rī, *m.* [**sagitta,** an arrow], bowman, archer. 3

3. funditor, -ōris, *m.* [**funda,** sling], slinger. 4

Baliāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (băl′ē-ā′-rĭk), *coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca.* 1

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**oppidum,** town], of *or* pertaining to a town; *m. pl. as noun,* townspeople, inhabitants of a town. 2

4. dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēfendō,** defend], a defending, defense. 1

prōpugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight for, defend. 1

Chap. **7.** *Failing to take the town, the Belgae march against Caesar.*

1. Eō: to Bibrax.

īsdem ducibus ūsus, *employing the same persons as guides.*

3. mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

quōrum adventū, *at their arrival:* an ablative of time, but with a suggestion of cause as well.

4. et . . . et, *not only . . . but also.*

cum spē dēfēnsiōnis, *along with the hope of (making a successful) defense.*

5. hostibus discessit, lit. *went away for the enemy = left the enemy.*

potiundī: the older form of the gerundive, for *potiendī.* How can *potior,* an intransitive verb, have a gerundive? App. 289, I, *a*: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, *b*, n.: H. 623, 1.

---

dēfēnsōribus: case? App. 134, *b*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 1, *b*: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

8. conicerent: mood? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 579, II, *a*; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, *b*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

9. nūllī: case? App. 117 · G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

10. nōbilitāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

12. mittit: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

13. sēsē: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

posse: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580, *a*: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642, 1.

As previously explained, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on Book II. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so at once.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Subject of infinitive
Ablative of time
Subjunctive cum *clause*
Infinitive in indirect discourse

paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

6. paulisper, *adv.* [**paulus,** little], for a short time, for a little while. 3

7. adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go to, approach. *

9. fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke. 1

10. significō, 1, *tr.* [**signum,** sign + **faciō,** make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. 4

6. morātī, dēpopulātī: as *moror* and *dēpopulor* are deponent verbs, their perfect participles have active meanings; therefore they agree with the subject of *contendērunt*. But as *incēnsus* is passive in meaning, the idea "having burned their villages" must be expressed by the ablative absolute.

7. quō: the adverb.

8. ā . . . duōbus, *less than two miles away*, i. e., from Caesar's camp. *ab* is here used adverbially; *mīlibus* is the ablative of degree of difference, the comparative *minus* not affecting the construction. See App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

The camp of the Belgae extended along the hills north of the Aisne, where the German line ran during most of the World War.

9. ut, *as*.

10. mīlibus: ablative after the com-

1. mediā: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

īsdem: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

2. sagittāriōs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

3. subsidiō, oppidānīs: case? App. 119, *a*: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

4. dēfēnsiōnis: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

prōpugnandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, *a*: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

5. potiundī: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503, *a*; 504: B. 339, 1: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, 1: H. 623; 626.

7. vīcīs: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

8. Caesaris: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

cōpiīs: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

mīlibus duōbus: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

10. mīlibus octō: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitive
Direct object
Ablative absolute

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīnōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita

1. prīmō, *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], at first, in the first place. ∗
2. eximius, -a, -um, *adj.*, choice, eminent. 1
supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō,** sit], refrain from. 1
4. perīclitor, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**perīculum,** trial, danger], try, test. 1
6. opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, suitable. 3
idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. ∗

parative *amplius*. The references on l. 8 say only that *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are not necessarily followed by the ablative.

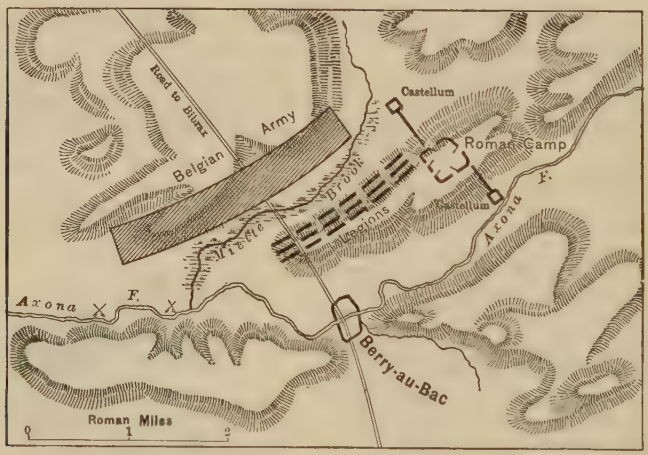
Chap. **8.** *Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle.*

1. multitūdinem: if the states sent the quotas promised in Chap. **4**, the total was 296,000 men.
2. opīniōnem virtūtis, *reputation for valor.*
proeliō: ablative of separation.
4. nostrī: especially the Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celtic Gauls.
5. Caesar's description of his camp cannot be understood without constant reference to the plan. The camp and trenches were discovered in the course of excavations made at the order of Emperor Napoleon III. The ridge on which the camp lay is about two miles in length, extending nearly east and west. The camp was near the east end, facing west, and had two gates on that side (see Int. 52). The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing north. Therefore the front of the camp was the west side, looking toward the battle line; but the front of the hill was the north side, looking toward the enemy.

FIG. 103
A SLINGER

Caesar calls the north and the south slopes of the hill its *latera*.
locō opportūnō, *since the place was suitable.* The ablative absolute here has a causal meaning.
prō castrīs: i.e., to the west of the camp.
6. collis is the subject of *patēbat*, *habēbat*, and *redībat*.

erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere



BATTLE ON THE AXONA (AISNE)

7. paululum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **paululus,** very little], a very little. 1

plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.* [**plānus,** level], level ground, plain. 4

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **ēdō,** give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. 2

9. uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.* [**uter,** which *of two*], each *of two*. *

dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēiciō,** cast down], slope, descent. *

frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead; front. 3

lēniter, *adv.* [**lēnis,** gentle], smoothly, gently, gradually. 2

10. fastīgātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sloping. 1

paulātim, *adv.* [**paulus,** little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

7. tantum . . . poterat, lit. *extended so much opposite (to the enemy) as of space a line drawn up could fill = was as wide on the side facing the enemy as a battle line could extend.*

in lātitūdinem: i.e., from the camp to the west end of the hill. Perhaps we should call this the length of the hill.

8. locī: we should expect this partitive genitive to limit *tantum* rather than *quantum*.

9. ex . . . lateris, lit. *at each end of the side = at each end;* i.e., the east and west ends of the hill. *utrāque parte* alone might mean either the ends or the sides. As *latus* means one of the long sides of the hill, *utrāque parte lateris* must mean the ends.

in fronte: i.e., the northern slope.

eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium

---

11. trānsversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**trānsvertō,** turn across], turned across, cross. 1

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], extend, dig. 1

12. tormentum, -ī, *n.* [**torqueō,** twist], an engine *for hurling missiles,* artillery. 3

16. quō, *adv.*: (1) *interrog.,* to what place? (2) *rel.,* to which; (3) *indef.,* to any place, anywhere. ∗

opus, *indecl. noun, neut.* [*cf.* **opus,** work, deed], need, necessity; **opus est,** it is necessary, there is need. ∗

1. palūs, -ūdis, *f.,* marsh, swamp. ∗

---

10. ab utrōque latere, *on each side;* i.e., on the northern and southern slopes.

11. trānsversam, *at right angles* to the ridge. The plan shows that one trench ran from the camp to the Miette, the other from the camp to the Axona.

12. ad extrēmās fossās, *near the outer ends of the trenches.* See App. 160.

tormenta: see Int. 63.

13. īnstrūxisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect, for Caesar's thought was "that I may not be surrounded when I shall have drawn up my line."

14. ab lateribus, *on the flanks.* The trenches protected not only the flanks but the rear; for if the enemy once got between the hill and the Axona they could attack where they pleased.

15. quās . . . cōnscrīpserat: see **2,** 1. These legions were not sufficiently disciplined to be brought into the battle unless it were necessary.

16. quō: the adverb; supply *dūcī; if there should be need of their being led anywhere.*

subsidiō: dative of purpose.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of means

Chap. **9-11.** *The Belgae return home without risking a decisive battle.*

Chap. **9.** *Not venturing to attack Caesar, the Belgae attempt to pass him by fords.*

1. Palūs erat, *there was a marsh;* i.e., the marshy ground along the Miette.

---

3. proeliīs: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

posset: mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

6. nātūrā: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

8. patēbat: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

5. neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* **-trīus.** App. 32), *adj.* [**ne-** + **uter,** which *of two*], neither; *pl.*, neither side. 1

7. prōtinus, *adv.*, forthwith, immediately. 1

11. interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.* [**scindō,** cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. 1

13. ego, meī (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, I; *pl.* **nōs,** we. ∗

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ūtor,** use], use, service, advantage; **ūsuī esse** *or* **ex ūsū esse,** be of advantage *or* service. ∗

FIG. 104
A SLING

2. sī trānsīrent: construction? App. 264, *b*: G.-L. 460, *b*: A. 576, *a*: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, *a*: H. 649, II, 3.

3. sī . . . fieret, *if they should begin to cross.* The clause depends on *ut aggrederentur*, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse; for Caesar's thought was, "I will have my men ready to attack if they shall begin."

ut . . . erant, *were ready under arms to attack them at a disadvantage.*

6. faciunt: historical present, for the more usual perfect after *ubi*.

secundiōre proeliō: ablative absolute.

8. contendērunt: Caesar did not see this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. vadīs: the probable location of these fords is shown in the plan by crossed sabers.

10. eō cōnsiliō, ut, etc., *with this design, to storm, if they could,* etc.

possent: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative; for they thought "we will storm if we shall be able." But *praeerat* is indicative, because it is an explanation added by Caesar, not a part of their thought.

12. minus, *not*, as is usual after *sī*. **potuissent** stands for a future perfect indicative of the direct form.

populārentur, prohibērent: in the same construction as *expugnārent*.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīqui-

2. levis, -e, *adj.*, light (*in weight*). 2

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō, arm], armor, equipment; **levis armātūrae,** light-armed. 2

9. fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. 2

inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- +aequus, even, just], uneven; unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. ∗

Chap. **10.** *The Belgae are repulsed at the fords. They decide to return home, and gather again to defend whatever state Caesar attacks.*

1. equitātum: the cavalry and light-armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the fords more quickly.

3. in eō locō: i.e., at the fords.

4. nostrī is the subject of *occīdērunt, reppulērunt,* and *interfēcērunt.*

8. ubi introduces *intellēxērunt, vīdērunt,* and *coepit.*

ubi . . . intellēxērunt, lit. *when they saw that their hope about the town to be taken . . . had disappointed them =when they saw that they were disappointed in their hope of taking the town.*

9. neque =*et nōn.*

nostrōs . . . prōgredī: i.e., the legions would not descend the hill to the Miette.

3. trānseundī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, *a*: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

4. aggrederentur: mood? App. 225, *a*, 3: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

6. nostrīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *a*: H. 434, 2.

10. cōnsiliō: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475.

cui: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

11. lēgātus: case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

13. nōbīs ūsuī: case? App. 119: G.-L. 356: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

gerendum: construction? App. 288; 289; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503, *a*; 506, n. 2: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628, footnote 2.

commeātū: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition
Dative with adjectives
Ablative of cause
Purpose clauses

ōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīre, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

10. prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go forward, advance, go. ∗

11. dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**faciō,** make], fail, be deficient. ∗

14. potius, *adv.*, rather. 2

15. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [**certō,** contend], fight to the end, fight. ∗

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**domus,** house], belonging to the home, domestic; in *or* of one's own land. 1

16. sententia, -ae, *f.* [**sentiō,** think], way of thinking, opinion; decision. ∗

18. appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [**ad** + **propinquus,** near], come near *or* close, approach. ∗

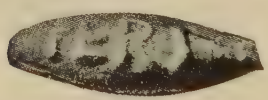


FIG. 105
A LEADEN SLUG

Ancient slingers used such slugs when they could get them.
Ferī = hit.

10. ipsōs: the enemy. It requires thorough organization to supply so large an army. Caesar's superiority to the Gallic leaders is always evident in this matter no less than on the battlefield. He sometimes marched into the heart of a hostile country, where it is hard to see how he secured supplies; but we hear only once of a failure to keep his army well fed.

11. cōnstituērunt optimum esse . . . revertī et . . . convenīre, *decided that it was best to return . . . and to assemble.*

13. intrōdūxissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "let us assemble to protect those into whose territory the Romans shall have led."

16. cum, *in addition to.*

17. Dīviciācum . . . appropinquāre: in accordance with Caesar's directions. See **5,** 4-9.

fīnibus: indirect object of the compound verb *appropinquāre.*

18. Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat, lit. *it could not be persuaded to these.* Turn into English.

19. neque = *et nōn.*

1. certior: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

ab Titūriō: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

equitātum, pontem: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179, 1. H.-B. 386: H. 413.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum per-

1. strepitus, -ūs, *m.* [**strepō,** make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. 2
2. tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [**tumeō,** swell], uproar, confusion, disorder. 2
ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row; arrangement, order. *
4. properō, 1, *intr.*, hasten, hurry. 2
cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [**similis,** like], very like, similar. 1
5. statim, *adv.* [**stō,** stand], *as one stands, hence,* immediately, at once. *
speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [**speculor,** spy], spy, scout. 1
6. perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**-spiciō,** look], look *or* see through; learn, find out, ascertain. *

Chap. **11.** *The Belgae are pursued with great slaughter.*

1. secundā vigiliā: i.e., during the second quarter of the night. As the nights were short, this would be between ten and twelve.
2. castrīs: ablative of separation.
4. fēcērunt ut profectiō vidērētur, *they made their departure seem.*
fugae: dative.
6. quod perspexerat: a causal clause.

2. armātūrae: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.
5. eōrum (numerum): case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.
8. expugnandō: construction? App. 288; 289; 294: G.-L. 427; 433: A. 503, *a*; 507: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, IV; 613, 1: H. 623; 629.
9. intellēxērunt: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.
10. pugnandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428, R. 2: A. 501; 502; 504, *b*: B. 338, 1, *c*: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 626.
12. domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, *b*: H.-B. 450, *b*: H. 419, 1.
13. intrōdūxissent: mood? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.
18. cognōverant: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 523, n. 1; 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.
Hīs: case? App. 115, *d*: G.-L. 346, R. 1, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, *a*, *b*: H.-B. 362; 364, 2: H. 426, 2, 3.
19. morārentur: mood? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 563, 1; 565.
suīs: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, *a*: H. 424.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate adjective
Partitive genitive
Gerund
Two objects with compound verbs
Substantive clauses of desire
Clauses with ubi, postquam, *etc.*
Dependent clauses in ind. discourse
Indirect object
Ablative of agent
Gerundive

FIG. 106
THE BEGINNING OF A BATTLE

In the central background stands the general, talking with an officer. On the right the cavalry are charging and auxiliary infantry are fighting. Two auxiliaries are bringing in trophy heads, a form of barbarity of which we do not hear in Caesar. On the left the Roman legionaries, the real fighting strength of the army, are forming and waiting.

spexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem cōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine

10. Aurunculeius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū′shyŭs awrŭng′kū-lē′yŭs cŏt′ă). 3

11. subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow closely, follow. *

13. fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *tr. and intr.* [**fuga,** flight], flee, run away. 4

7. castrīs, *in camp:* but the absence of *in* shows that the construction is means, not place.

8. quī morārētur, *to delay:* a purpose clause.

13. fugientium, *in their flight.*

ad quōs ventum erat cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō cōntinērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

---

14. fortiter, *adv.* [**fortis,** brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. *

15. prior, prius, *adj., comp.* (App. 43), former; *m. pl. as noun,* those in front. 2

16. necessitās, -tātis, *f.* [**necesse,** necessary], necessity, need. 2

17. exaudiō, 4, *tr.* [**audiō,** hear], hear (*from a distance*). 1

clāmor, -ōris, *m.* [**clāmō,** cry out], outcry, noise, clamor. *

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], disturb greatly; alarm, terrify. *

---

cum . . . cōnsisterent, *since* (*those*) *in the rear, whom* (*our men*) *had overtaken, would stop. sustinērent* and *pōnerent* also depend on *cum.*

14. ventum erat is impersonal, but, as usual, the translation must be personal.

15. priōrēs, (*but*) *those* [of the enemy] *in advance.*

quod vidērentur neque continērentur: a causal clause; mood? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

16. neque . . . neque, *and . . . not . . . nor.*

19. quantum . . . spatium, lit. *as was the length of the day = as the length of the day permitted.*

---

1. strepitū, tumultū, ōrdine, imperiō: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. peteret: mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 527, 2: B. 182, 1, *b*: H.-B. 450, *b*: H. 419, 1.

5. vidērētur: mood? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

6. discēderent: mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

11. legiōnibus: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

12. mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

15. mīlitum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1.

perīculō: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1: A. 400; 401: B. 214, 3: H.-B. 408, 2, *a*: H. 461.

17. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Subjective genitive
Ablative of separation
Ablative of accompaniment
Ablative of manner
Indirect question

FIG. 107
GALLIC WALL

This is a partial restoration of a wall actually found. The timbers had rotted away, but the holes were left; and, where the timbers had crossed, iron spikes were found. In this wall the timbers were farther apart than in those described by Caesar. See Int. 58.

12. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod

---

2. terror, -ōris, *m.* [terreō, frighten], fright, alarm, panic, terror. 2

4. Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.* (Be) Noviodunum (nō′vĭ-ō-dū′nŭm). 1

Chap. **12-15.** *The Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani surrender to Caesar.*

Chap. **12.** *Caesar takes the chief town of the Suessiones.*

1. priusquam reciperent: mood? App. 236, *b*: G.-L. 577: A. 551, *b*: B. 292, 1, *b*: H.-B. 507, 4, *b*: H. 605, 2. Now that Caesar had broken up the combination of states, it only remained for him to subdue them one by one.

3. magnō itinere: about 28 miles. See map facing p. 197.

4. Noviodūnum: this town was long supposed to be the modern Soissons, but its ruins have been found on the hill of Pommiers a little northwest of that city.

In marching to this town Caesar must have paralleled closely the German line of the World War. From this part of the line the Germans made their last great drive at Paris. See Int. 72. American troops took part in repulsing this drive and in recovering Soissons and Pommiers.

ex itinere: i.e., before making camp

vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs,

---

5. vacuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vacō**, be empty], empty, unoccupied. 2 **audiō**, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of. *

7. vīnea, -ae, *f.*, vinea, *a shed for the defense of a besieging party.* Int. 62, *d.* 4

10. agger, aggeris, *m.*, material for earthworks, earth; causeway, agger. Int. 61. *

turris, -is, *f.*, tower. *

11. magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**magnus**, great], greatness, great size, size. *

12. celeritās, -tātis, *f.* [**celer**, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

14. cōnservō, 1, *tr.* [**servō**, save], save, spare, protect. *

---

and without letting the soldiers rest, although they were tired after their unusually long march (Int. 54). Caesar wanted to take the town before its garrison could be reënforced. On this method of taking towns see Int. 60.

6. paucīs dēfendentibus, *although there were but few defenders:* ablative absolute with adversative meaning.

7. vīneās agere, *to move up the vineae.*

quaeque, *and (those things) which.*

8. ūsuī: dative of purpose.

10. aggere turribusque: see Int. 61.

13. petentibus Rēmīs: on the relations between the Remi and the Suessiones see **3**, 11.

14. impetrant, *they* [the Suessiones] *obtained their request.* The verb is used absolutely.

Chap. **13.** *Caesar marches against the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.*

1. obsidibus, *as hostages:* in apposition with *prīmīs*, which is used as a noun, and with *fīliīs.*

2. Galbae: who had been head of the league; see **4**, 20.

---

14. cōnservārentur: tense? App. 202; 203; 204, *b*: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, *a*; 510: A. 482; 483; 485, *e*: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B. 476; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

impetrant: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Historical present

in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae

4. Bratuspantium, -tī, *n.* (Be), Bratuspantium (brăt′ŭs-păn′shyŭm). 1

6. nātus, -ūs, *m.* [**nāscor,** be born], birth; **maiōrēs nātū,** *greater by birth,* elders. 3

7. tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum, *tr.,* stretch, stretch out. 1

vōx, vōcis, *f.,* voice. *

11. pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, *tr.,* spread *or* stretch out, extend. 2

1. discessus, -ūs, *m.* [**discēdō,** depart], departure, withdrawal. 3

FIG. 108
A COIN OF THE SUESSIONES
Left: A Janus head.
Right: A lion.

3. Bellovacōs: the strongest Belgian state. For the direction of his march see map facing p. 197.

6. ex oppidō: is *ex* needed with this verb? See **11,** 2.

7. vōce significāre, *to indicate by words.* The Romans did not understand the language, but did understand their meaning. *sēsē . . . contendere* depends on this expression.

10. puerī, *children,* both boys and girls.

ex mūrō, *on the wall.* The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall."

Chap. **14.** *Diviciacus pleads for the Bellovaci.*

1. discessum: i.e., the breaking up of the great army at the Axona.

3. omnī tempore fuisse, *had always been.* Diviciacus claims the Bellovaci as members of the league which was headed by the Haedui. See Int. 29.

4. Quī: use? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

6. nātū: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226, 1: H.-B. 441: H. 480, 1.

11. mōre: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Ablative of specification
Relative instead of demonstrative

fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

4. impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [in +pellō, drive], drive *or* urge on, incite, impel. 3

5. redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; reduce. *

indignitās, -tātis, *f.* [indignus, unworthy], outrage, indignity. 1

9. profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee, escape. 4

10. clēmentia, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, clemency. 2

mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, tame], gentleness, mercy, compassion. 2

12. amplificō, 1, *tr.* [amplus, large +faciō, make], enlarge, increase. 1

13. incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall upon; happen, occur. 2

4. impulsōs . . . et dēfēcisse et intulisse, *that they* [the Bellovaci] *instigated . . . had both revolted and made.*

5. redāctōs perferre, *had been reduced . . . and were enduring.*

6. et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

7. Quī, *those who.* The unexpressed antecedent is the subject of *profūgisse.*

8. quantam intulissent: indirect question.

9. Britanniam: the relations between the Belgae and the Britons appear to have been rather close. See **4,** 19.

10. suā, *his usual.*

11. Quod sī fēcerit, *if he should do this.* The direct form meant "if you shall have done this."

12. amplificātūrum (*sē esse*), *he would increase.*

quōrum: the antecedent is *Belgās.*

13. qua: the usual form of the neuter plural, nominative and accusative, when *quis* is used as an indefinite.

6. populō: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, *a*: H. 429, 1.

10. clēmentiā: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

11. ūtātur: tense? App. 202; 203; 270, *a*: G.-L. 509, 1; 510; 654, n.: A. 482; 483; 585, *b*: B. 267; 318: H. 543; 544; 644, 1.

13. qua: use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

cōnsuērint: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative with compound verbs
Ablative with ūtor, *etc.*

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit, et, quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent. Esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque

4. sescentī, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num. adj.* [**sex,** six + **centum,** hundred], six hundred. ⁎

6. mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. 3

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give up, yield, surrender; **sē dēdere,** submit, surrender. ⁎

9. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. ⁎

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine. 2

10. lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. 1

11. relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, —, *intr.*, become weak *or* enfeebled. 1

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send back, return; relax. ⁎

12. increpitō, 1, *tr.*, chide, blame, taunt. 2

incūsō, 1, *tr.* [**causa,** cause *or* case], bring a case against; censure, blame. 2

13. patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**pater,** father], fatherly; ancestral. 1

Fig. 109

A COIN OF THE AMBIANI

Chap. **15.** *Caesar accepts the surrender of the Bellovaci and the Ambiani. The character of the Nervii.*

1. honōris causā, lit. *for the sake of the honor of* = *in deference to.*

2. eōs, i.e., the Bellovaci, is the object of *receptūrum et cōnservātūrum* (*esse*).

3. auctōritāte: descriptive ablative.

multitūdine: ablative of specification.

6. Ambiānōrum: see map facing p. 197.

7. quōrum, *their.*

8. Nūllum . . . mercātōribus, *that traders had no access to them.*

9. patī, *that* (*they*) *allowed.*

vīnī, rērum: partitive genitives with *nihil.*

10. quod exīstimārent: causal clause in indirect discourse.

13. dēdidissent, prōiēcissent may have been subjunctive in the direct

virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque

---

1. inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [**veniō,** come], come upon, find, find out. 2

2. Sabis, -is, *m.* (Af), the *river* Sabis (sā'bĭs), *now* the Sambre. 2

amplē, *adv.* [**amplus,** large], largely; *comp.*, **amplius,** more, farther. ⁎

6. experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, *tr.*, try, test, experience. ⁎

---

form. See App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, *e*: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

14. cōnfirmāre sēsē neque missūrōs, *they declared that they would neither send.*

Chap. **16-28.** *Caesar narrowly escapes defeat by the Nervii, but secures their submission after almost entirely destroying their army.*

Chap. **16.** *The Nervii encamp at the Sabis, prepared for battle.*

2. Sabim: note the accusative in *-im*. For the course of the river see the map facing p. 197.

mīlia: accusative of extent of space. Why not the ablative after the comparative? App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

Fig. 110

A COIN OF THE NERVII

3. trāns flūmen: i.e., on the southern bank. For the exact location see the plan on p. 231.

5. fīnitimīs: in apposition with *Atrebātibus* and *Viromanduīs*. See the map facing p. 197.

6. ab iīs: i.e., by the Nervii.

7. quīque, *and (the men) who.*

---

2. erat: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

3. auctōritāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

9. mercātōribus: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

12. virtūtis: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

13. reliquōs: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive
Causal clauses with quod, *etc.*

per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs,

8. aetās, aetātis, *f.*, period of life, age. 2

inūtilis, -e, *adj.* [**in-** + **ūtilis,** useful], useless, worthless. 2

1. centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**centum,** a hundred], centurion, *the commander of a century.* Int. 42. *

4. quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *or* **quoddam,** *indef. pron.* (App. 62 *and b*), a certain, some. *

5. cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**cōnsuēscō,** become accustomed], habit, custom. *

10. dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**rapiō,** seize], tear asunder; plunder, pillage. 1

8. eum locum quō, *a place to which.*

9. coniēcisse: as subject supply *eōs,* referring to the Nervii.

esset: mood? App. 230, *a*: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 2.

Chap. **17.** *The Nervii plan to surprise Caesar.*

2. ex . . . Gallīs: equivalent to a partitive genitive.

3. Caesarem . . . facerent, *had joined Caesar and were marching along with him.*

5. eōrum . . . exercitūs, *our army's usual order of march during those days.* Both *diērum* and *exercitūs* depend on *itineris.* On the order of march see Int. 53.

6. inter singulās legiōnēs, *between every two legions.*

7. impedīmentōrum: see Int. 46.

numerum, *amount.* Caesar is thinking of the number of pack animals.

8. neque . . . negōtī, *and that it would be* [lit. *was*] *no trouble.*

castra, *camping-ground.*

9. vēnisset, abessent: indirect discourse for the future perfect and the future, respectively. The direct form meant "when . . . shall have come and . . . shall be distant."

1. trīduum: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

5. hīs: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, *a*: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *b*: H. 426, 2.

9. exercituī: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Indirect object with intransitive verbs
Dative of possession

futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque

11. adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *tr.* [iuvō, aid], aid, help. 1

14. quisquis, quicquid, *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.* (App. 60, *a*), whoever, whatever. 1

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [pēs, foot], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpiae,** infantry. *

15. praedor, 1, *tr.* [**praeda,** booty], make booty, plunder. *

16. tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender, young. 1

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. 2

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut into. 1

spatium: accusative of extent of space.

10. sarcinīs: see Int. 37.

11. futūrum (*esse*) **ut,** *the result would be that.* This clause is connected with the preceding by a relative, so that it appears to be a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Why is the infinitive used instead of the subjunctive? App. 269, *a*: G.-L. 635: A. 583, *b*: B. 314, 4: H.-B. 535, 1, *b*: H. 643, 1.

Adiuvābat: the subject is the clause *quod . . . effēcerant, the fact that the Nervii had made . . . assisted.*

13. nihil: case? App. 128, *b*: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, *c*: B. 176, 2, *b*: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

14. eī reī: i.e., cavalry.

quicquid . . . cōpiīs, *whatever strength they have consists in infantry.*

15. quō impedīrent: a purpose clause. Why is not *ut* used? App. 225, *a*, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, *a*: B. 282, *a*: H.-B. 502, 2, *b*: H. 568, 7.

16. vēnissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "that we may check the cavalry if they shall have come."

tenerīs . . . interiectīs: a row of young trees was planted around a field; their trunks were partly cut through (*incīsīs*) and their tops bent over (*inflexīs*). The tops would then continue growing slowly, and many branches would spring out from the sides of the trunk below the cut (*crēbrīs . . . ēnātīs*). Wherever there was room, brambles were allowed to grow (*rubīs . . . interiectīs*).

FIG. 111
REFUGEES

The old men and the women and children, with their cattle, are leaving their homes to find a place of refuge from the Romans.

īnflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta praebērent quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen

---

17. rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, limb, bough. 1

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.* [**nāscor,** be born], be born from; grow out. 1

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. 1

sentis, -is, *m.*, brier. 1

18. intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], throw between; put between. 4

īnstar, *n., indecl.*, likeness; *with gen.*, like. 1

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. 2

mūnīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**mūniō,** fortify], defense, fortification. 1

19. praebeō, 2, *tr.* [**prae** + **habeō,** hold], hold out; furnish, present. 3

intrō, 1, *tr.*, go *or* walk into, enter, penetrate. 1

21. omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**ob** + **mittō,** send], neglect, disregard. 1

2. aequāliter, *adv.* [**aequālis,** equal; **aequus,** equal], equally, evenly. 1

dēclīvis, -e, *adj.* [**clīvis,** a slope], sloping downward. 2

---

18. effēcerant ut praebērent, *they had made these hedges furnish.*

19. quō . . . posset: a clause of characteristic. Translate personally, *into which one not only could not penetrate but could not even see.*

Chap. **18.** *Description of the battlefield.*

To reach this point Caesar had marched along the route taken by the main advance of the Germans at the beginning of the World War. The first battle in which French and British troops met the Germans was fought just east of this battlefield of Caesar's. See Int. 71.

1. haec, *as follows.*

locum: omit in translation.

nostrī: i.e., the scouts and centurions who had been sent on ahead; **17,** 1.

2. Collis: north of the river. See the plan on p. 231.

---

2. dēligant: tense? App. 202; 203; 204, *b*: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, *a*; 510: A. 482; 483; 485, *e*: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B. 476; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

6. dēmōnstrārunt: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

11. audērent: mood? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

12. quod effēcerant: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

21. omittendum (*esse*): construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374, *a*: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Contracted verb forms
Sequence of tenses
Substantive clauses of result or fact

Sabim, quod suprā nōminā̆vimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs ab īnfimō apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secun-

3. nōminō, 1, *tr.* [**nōmen**, name], call by name, name, mention. 1

4. acclīvitās, -tātis, *f.* [**acclīvis**, ascending], ascent, slope. 1

nāscor, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born; rise. 3

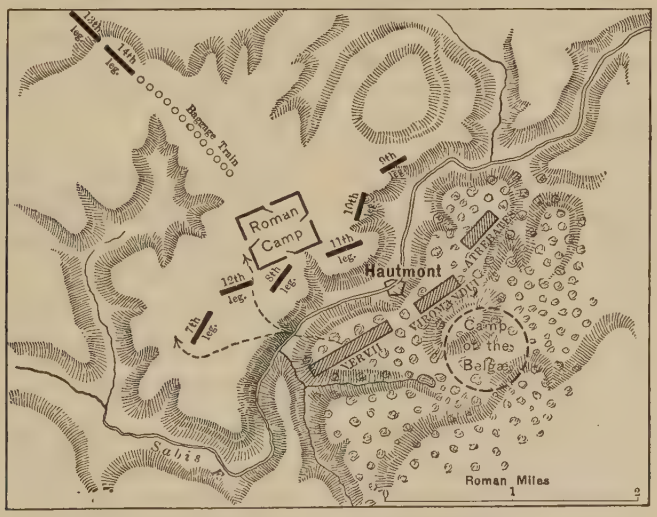
contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**contrā**, against], lying over against, opposite, facing. 3

6. silvestris, -e, *adj.* [**silva**, forest], of a wood, wooded. 1

intrōrsus, *adv.* [**intrō**, within +**versus**, *pf. part. of* **vertō**, turn], within, on the inside. 1

7. occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hidden; *neut. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. 2

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [**sequor**, follow], along. 3



BATTLE ON THE SABIS (SAMBRE)

summō, *the top:* the ablative singular of *summus*, used as a noun.

4. collis: south of the river.

5. passūs . . . apertus, *at the bottom bare of trees for two hundred paces.*

8. vidēbantur, *were seen*, not *seemed*.

9. pedum trium: descriptive genitive, in the predicate.

dum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta perti-

---

8. statiō, -ōnis, *f.* [stō, stand], a military post *or* station; pickets, outposts. 4

2. aliter, *adv.* [alius, other], otherwise; **aliter . . . ac,** otherwise . . . than. 2

8. trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *tr.* [gradior, step], step over, cross. 1

9. identidem, *adv.* [īdem, the same], repeatedly. 1

11. porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [regō, keep straight], extend. 1

Chap. **19.** *The Romans are attacked while fortifying their camp.*

1. omnibus cōpiīs: why is *cum* not used? App. 140, *a*: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, *a*: B. 222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Caesar is now picking up the thread of the story which he dropped in **17,** 11.

2. aliter . . . ac, lit. *had itself otherwise than = was different from what.*

habēbat is singular because *ratiō ōrdōque* is thought of as a single idea, almost *method of arrangement.*

4. expedītās, *without baggage,* whereas the Nervii had been told that each legion would be separated from the next by a long train of baggage.

5. legiōnēs . . . cōnscrīptae erant: as the enemy was known to be in front, Caesar did not expect these legions to be attacked. The same legions were left in camp at the Axona; **8,** 15.

10. reciperent, facerent, *kept retiring, kept making.*

11. longius . . . fīnem, *than the limit to which.* Our idiom would lead us to expect *ad fīnem, ad quem,* but

---

2. ad flūmen: construction? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 426, 2: B. 182, 2: H.-B. 385: H. 418.

4. acclīvitāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

6. posset: mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Place to which

Descriptive ablative

nēbant cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

12. cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, go; give way, yield, retreat. 2

13. dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, *tr.* [**mētior,** measure], measure out *or* off. 2

15. lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, escape notice, lie concealed *or* hidden, be hidden. 2

17. subitō, *adv.* [**subitus,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. *

prōvolō, 1, *intr.* [**volō,** fly], rush forth, dash out. 1

19. prōturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. 1

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run down. 4

the antecedent is attracted into the relative clause.

porrēcta pertinēbant, lit. *extended stretched out = extended.* The whole clause *quem . . . pertinēbant* means "to the edge of the woods."

12. cēdentēs: supply *eōs;* i.e., the enemy.

13. dīmēnsō: this is one of a few deponent verbs whose perfect participles have a passive meaning.

14. prīma impedīmenta, *the head of the baggage train.*

15. quod tempus, *the time which.*

16. convēnerat, *had been agreed upon.*

ut . . . ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant, *as . . . they had pledged one another (to do).*

17. omnibus cōpiīs: see note on l. 1.

20. ut vidērentur: a result clause.

21. adversō colle, lit. *by way of the hill facing them =up the hill.* For the case of *colle,* see App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, *a*: H. 476.

22. opere: i.e., of fortifying the camp.

The attack was a complete surprise. The Roman scouts had not done their work properly, and Caesar himself appears to have been careless in not keeping a part of his men under arms while the enemy were so near.

4. cōnsuētūdine: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

6. praesidiō, impedīmentīs: construction? App. 119, *a*: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Double dative
Ablative of accordance

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō: scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod, superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere

FIG. 112
VEXILLUM

1. vexillum, -ī, *n.*, banner, flag. 1

2. concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run] run *or* rush together; hurry, run. 2

3. tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. 1

revocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call back, recall. 2

4. paulō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **paulus,** little. App. 148], a little, somewhat, slightly. ✱

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forth *or* forward, proceed. ✱

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, summon, send for. ✱

6. brevitās, -tātis, *f.* [**brevis,** short], shortness, brevity. 2

incursus, -ūs, *m.* [**incurrō,** rush into *or* upon], attack. 1

7. difficultās, -tātis, *f.* [**difficilis,** difficult], difficulty, trouble. ✱

scientia, -ae, *f.* [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4

8. exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**exerceō,** train], well trained. 2

9. praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō,** write], write beforehand; order, direct. 3

Chap. **20.** *The critical position of the Romans, and the value of their discipline.*

1. Caesarī omnia erant agenda, lit. *all things had to be done by Caesar = Caesar had to do everything.*

vexillum: a red banner which was displayed in front of the general's headquarters.

2. prōpōnendum: supply *erat*. Similarly supply *erat* or *erant* with each of the future passive participles which follow.

3. signum: to form ranks.

quī, (*those soldiers*) *who.*

4. paulō longius, *a little too far.*

aggeris: here the materials for building the rampart, especially timber; for the sod and earth were taken from the trench on the spot. See Fig. 113, p. 236.

arcessendī: by messengers.

5. signum: here the signal for the attack.

7. duae rēs: explained by two appositives: first, *scientia atque ūsus, the theoretical and practical knowledge of the soldiers;* second, *quod . . . vetuerat* (l. 10), *the fact that Caesar had forbidden,* etc.

8. quod poterant: a causal clause.

9. quid fierī oportēret, *what ought*

quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs quam partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset,

12. vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, forbid. 1

14. administrō, 1, *tr.*, manage, take charge of, administer. *

2. fors, fortis, *f.*, chance. 3

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *tr.* [**ob** +**ferō**, bear], bring before, present. 3

3. decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**decem**, ten], tenth. *

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō**, come], come down, go, come. 2

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long. *

6. adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**agō**, move], drive; hurl. *

to be done: an indirect question, object of *praescrībere*.

10. ab singulīs . . . discēdere, *each legate to leave a particular legion.* It is not quite correct to translate *leave his legion*, because the legates did not have permanent commands. See Int. 38.

11. nisi mūnītīs castrīs, lit. *unless the camp having been fortified* = *until the camp had been fortified.*

13. nihil: an emphatic *nōn*.

quae vidēbantur, *whatever seemed best.*

Chap. **21.** *Caesar encourages his men.*

1. ad . . . mīlitēs: with *dēcucurrit*.

2. quam . . . dēcucurrit, *hurried down (to that part) which chance presented,* or *put in his way.*

legiōnem decimam: Caesar's favorite legion; see **I, 40,** 44-48. Note its position on the plan, p. 231.

3. nōn longiōre ōrātiōne quam utī, *with a speech no longer than (this:) that they should,* etc.

4. neu: the regular expression for *and not* in substantive clauses of desire.

6. quod aberant: a causal clause, explaining *signum dedit*.

quam . . . posset, lit. *than to which a javelin could be thrown.* Omit *quō* in translating. For the mood of *posset* see App. 230: G.-L. 631, 3: A. 535, *c*: B. 283, 1, 2, *a*: H.-B. 521, 2, *c*: H. 570, 1.

1. Caesarī: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374, *a*: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

erant agenda: construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 162: 600, 3: H. 237.

4. paulō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

10. quod vetuerat: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Substantive quod *clause*

FIG. 113

SOLDIERS AT WORK

Caesar's men were engaged in such work as this when the Gauls began their charge.

proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sed etiam

8. occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [ob +currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon, find. *

9. exiguitās, -tātis, *f.* [**exiguus,** scant], scantiness, shortness. *

dīmicō, 1, *intr.* [**micō,** brandish], fight. 3

10. accommodō, 1, *tr.*, adjust, fit *or* put on. 1

11. galea, -ae, *f.*, a *leather* helmet. 1

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on. 1

tegimentum, -ī, *n.* [tegō, cover], a covering, cover. 1

7. in alteram partem: *to the other end;* i. e., the right wing. See plan.

8. pugnantibus occurrit, *he found (them already) fighting.*

10. ad . . . accommodanda, *for fitting on their decorations;* especially on the helmets. These *īnsignia* probably distinguished the legions. The shields also carried devices.

11. galeās: these would be laid aside

ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda, tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō**, draw], draw off *or* away, take off, remove. 4

12. dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.* [**sum**, be. App. 66], be wanting, be lacking. *

13. cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**-spiciō**, look], look at, perceive, see. *

3. dīversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse; separate. 3

4. dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set, thick, dense. 3

5. prōspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**prōspiciō**, look forth], view, prospect; sight. 1

while the soldiers were working on the fortifications. See Fig. 102, p. 207.

scūtīs: dative of separation.

tegimenta: leather coverings for the protection of the metal work of the shields.

12. dēfuerit: note the exception to sequence: App. 204, *a*: G.-L. 513: A. 485, *c* (incorrectly stated. The imperfect is much more common): B. 268, 6: H.-B. 478: H. 550.

Quam in partem, *to whatever place.*

13. quaeque . . . cōnspexit, *and whatever standards he saw first.* On the importance of the standards see Int. 44.

14. suīs: i.e., *signīs.*

Chap. **22.** *Caesar cannot plan the battle as a whole.*

1. ut, *as.*

2. reī . . . ōrdō, lit. *the theory and arrangement of military matters = the theory of military tactics.* When he could, Caesar drew up his army in three unbroken lines, the third of which acted as a reserve force to meet emergencies.

3. cum . . . resisterent . . . impedīrētur gives the reason for the main clause, *neque . . . poterant.*

dīversae, lit. *separated = separately.*

aliae . . . parte, *some in one place, others in another.*

4. ante: see **17**, 11-20.

5. interiectīs, *which intervened.*

neque: the principal clause begins here.

certa, *definitely posted.*

6. quid . . . esset: an indirect question, subject of *prōvidērī* (*poterat*).

quid: construction? App. 146. *a*: G.-L. 406: A. 411, *b*: B. 218, 2, *a*: H.-B. 430, 2, *a*: H. 477, III, n.

4. virtūtis: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

12. dēfuerit: mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Objective genitive *Clause of characteristic*

Result clause

ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciēī cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō

8. inīquitās, -tātis, *f.* [**inīquus,** unequal], inequality. 2

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [**ēveniō,** turn out], outcome, issue, result. 3

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, various. 1

1. nōnus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. 2

2. cursus, -ūs, *m.* [**currō,** run], running. *

lassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**lassus,** weary], weariness, exhaustion. 2

exanimō, 1, *tr.* [**anima,** breath], render breathless, exhaust. 2

3. obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come to, happen upon, meet. 1

4. compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive together; force, compel. 1

7. in . . . inīquitāte, *in such a diversity of circumstances.*

8. fortūnae: genitive limiting *ēventūs.*

FIG. 114
A COIN OF THE ATREBATES
The name **Commios** shows that this is a coin of the man whom Caesar made king of the Atrebates after this battle, and whom he sent to Britain two years later. See IV, **21**, 13.

Chap. **23.** *The left wing repulses the Atrebates, the center repulses the Viromandui, and the Nervii attack the right wing.*

1. nōnae et decimae: these legions were commanded by Labienus.

2. pīlīs: see Int. 36, *a.*

cursū: the Atrebates had run a mile, much of it uphill.

cursū . . . cōnfectōs: translate after *Atrebātēs.*

3. ea pars: the left wing of the Romans.

5. cōnantēs, *as they* [the Atrebates] *were trying.*

gladiīs: see Int. 36, *b.*

impedītam, *while thus at a disadvantage;* i.e., in crossing the river.

6. Ipsī: the Romans of the left wing.

7. locum inīquum: up the hill south of the river. This gave the enemy the advantage of position.

resistentēs hostēs: object of *coniēcērunt.*

8. aliā in parte: the center.

4. resisterent: mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

THIRD REFERENCE:
Cum *causal*

proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae

9. ūndecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**ūndecim,** eleven], eleventh. 1

octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**octō,** eight], eighth. 1

prōflīgō, 1, *tr.* [**flīgō,** strike], strike down; put to flight. 1

10. congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], meet, encounter, meet in battle. *

11. proelior, 1, *intr.* [**proelium,** battle], engage in battle, fight. 3

at, *conj.*, but. *

12. dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. 4

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing. *

duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**duodecim,** twelve], twelfth. 2

14. Boduognātus, -ī, *m.*, Boduognatus (bŏd′ū-ŏg-nā′tŭs), *a chief of the Nervii.* 1.

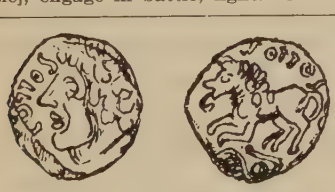


FIG. 115

A COIN OF THE VIROMANDUI

dīversae: i.e., separated from the other legions.

10. ex locō superiōre, (*having come down*) *from their higher position.*

12. nūdātīs: by the advance of the four legions already mentioned. See the plan.

nōn magnō intervāllō, *at no very great distance.* Case? App. 142, *b*: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

13. omnēs Nerviī: 60,000 in number.

14. duce Boduognātō, *under the leadership of Boduognatus:* ablative absolute.

summam: the noun.

15. ab apertō latere: the right flank, because the shields were carried on the left arm. The part which pushed on for the camp passed the Roman left flank. Others, of course, attacked in front.

16. summum . . . locum, lit. *the highest place belonging to the camp = the height on which the camp stood.*

Chap. **24.** *The panic of the auxiliaries and the camp servants.*

1. We expect Caesar to tell us at once of the fortunes of the seventh and twelfth legions, but he pauses to give a vivid picture of the panic elsewhere, a panic which seemed to foretell the complete destruction of the Romans.

levis armātūrae: a descriptive genitive. The reference is to the slingers and archers of **19,** 7-8.

FIG. 116

A ROMAN AND A GALLIC CAVALRYMAN

From models in the Museum of Saint-Germain

peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā

2. pedes, peditis, *m.* [**pēs,** foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry. 3

5. cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter *or* follower. 3

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**decimus,** tenth], belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta,** the rear gate (*of the camp*). 1

6. victor, -ōris, *m.* [**vincō,** conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious.

2. iīs: the cavalry.

fuerant: before their repulse.

quōs pulsōs dīxeram, lit. *whom I had said to have been routed* = *who, as I said, had been routed. quōs* refers to both *equitēs* and *peditēs*.

3. adversīs, *face to face.* Evidently they had made a circuit to the east, to avoid being caught between the two armies, and were entering the camp by the east gate just as the Belgae were entering by the west.

4. occurrēbant: note how the imperfects in the first part of the chapter *describe* a number of events, all going on at about the same time.

5. ab decumānā portā: the camp was on the slope, so that the rear was higher than the front and gave a better view of the battle. But perhaps the fierce charge of the Belgae had something to do with their choice of position.

6. victōrēs, *as victors.*

ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum

---

7. respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look back. 1

8. praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [caput, head], headforemost, headlong. 2

9. fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. 2

11. Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* **Trēverī** (Bfgh), the Treveri (trĕv′ē-rī). *

12. singulāris, -e, *adj.* [singulī, one each], single; singular, extraordinary. 2

14. premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *tr.* press, press hard. *

15. dissipō, 1, *tr.*, scatter, disperse. 1

1. cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cohortor, encourage], encouragement, cheering. 1

---

8. eōrum: the muleteers, not the rear guard of two legions.

9. aliī . . . partem: for translation see note on **22,** 3.

11. virtūtis opīniō, *reputation for courage:* an objective genitive.

13. cum: with *vidissent.*

16. dēspērātīs, *despairing of.*

17. castrīs: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

Chap. **25.** *Caesar finds the seventh and twelfth legions in desperate straits, and reanimates them by his valor.*

1. Caesar: subject of *prōcessit* (l. 15) and *iussit* (l. 16). This is an excellent Latin "period," with the subject first, the subordinate clauses in the middle, and the principal verbs toward the end. The sentence is not hard to understand in its Latin order, and is very effective; for the mass of subordinate clauses represents the impression made on Caesar when he saw all at once the many details of the fearful struggle. But it is hard to translate effectively, because such a sentence is intolerable in English. After the pupil thoroughly understands the sentence he should translate it very freely, breaking it up into a number of short sentences. Each of the following groups of words may be turned into a sentence, or two or more may be combined: *Caesar . . . profectus; ubī . . . urgērī; signīs . . . vīdit; quārtae . . . āmissō; reliquārum . . . occīsīs; in hīs . . . posset; reliquōs . . . vītāre; hostēs . . . īnstāre; et . . . posset; scūtō . . . prōcessit; centuriōnibus . . . possent.*

cohortātiōne: see **21,** 2-3.

cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs

---

2. urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, *tr.*, press, press hard. 2

5. signifer, -erī, *m.* [**signum,** standard +**ferō,** bear], standard-bearer. 1

7. prīmipīlus, -ī, *m.* [**prīmus,** first +**pīlus,** a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1

Sextius, -tī, *m.*, Publius Sextius Baculus (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs sĕks′tĭ-ŭs băk′ū-lŭs). 2

vir, virī, *m.*, man. *

9. tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. 1

FIG. 117

A CENTURION

This figure is from a monument. See Int. 42 and Fig. 20, p. 40.

Notice that this man is wearing greaves to protect his legs.

2. ubi, *when;* with *vīdit,* l. 4, which is repeated in l. 12.

urgērī: this and most of the other infinitives before the end of l. 12 depend on *vīdit.* Other dependent ideas are expressed by the ablative absolute.

signīs collātīs: the position of the standards regulated the position of the cohorts. As the standards were now huddled together, the soldiers naturally crowded together.

3. sibi . . . impedīmentō, lit. *were themselves for a hindrance to themselves for fighting = hindered one another in fighting.*

4. quārtae cohortis: this cohort had suffered especially, because it was stationed at the left end of the front line.

5. signō āmissō: regarded as a great disgrace.

7. prīmipīlō: see Int. 42. The first cohort stood at the right of the first line, the *prīmipīlus* at the right of the front rank. This was the post of honor and danger, since the shields were carried on the left arm. For the arrangement of the battle line and the position of the cohorts, see Fig. 31, p. 48.

Baculō: the most conspicuous hero among Caesar's centurions. See III, **5,** 5; and especially VI, **38,** where he saves a camp.

8. multīs gravibusque, *many severe.* When *multī* and another adjective modify the same noun, the two adjectives are usually connected by *et* or *-que.*

sē sustinēre, *stand on his feet.*

9. ab novissimīs, *in the rear.*

10. dēsertō locō, *deserting their posts.*

dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōmināti appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut

---

10. dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [**serō,** entwine, join], abandon, desert, forsake. 3

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go out *or* away, withdraw, retire. ∗

16. manipulus, -ī, *m.*, a company (*of two centuries, the third of a cohort*), maniple. 1

laxō, 1, *tr.*, extend, open out. 1

18. imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [**imperō,** command], commander in chief, general. ∗

19. opera, -ae, *f.* [**opus,** work], work, exertion; service. 1

nāvō, 1, *tr.*, do zealously *or* well. 1

20. paulum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **paulus,** little], a little, somewhat, slightly. ∗

tardō, 1, *tr.* [**tardus,** slow], make slow; hinder, check. 1

1. iūxtā, *adv.*, next, near, near by. 1

2. tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [**tribus,** tribe], tribune; **tribūnus mīlitum** *or* **mīlitāris,** a military tribune. ∗

---

tēla vītāre, *were getting out of the range of missiles.*

neque . . . et, *not . . . and.*

hostēs neque subeuntēs intermittere, lit. *that the enemy coming up were not ceasing = were continually coming up.*

12. rem . . . angustō, *and affairs were in a critical condition.*

vīdit simply repeats the *vīdit* of l. 4.

13. quod . . . posset: a clause of characteristic.

scūtō dētractō, *snatching a shield.* Here begins Caesar's action.

ab novissimīs, *in the rear;* just as *ā fronte* means *in front.*

mīlitī: dative of separation.

14. eō: the adverb.

16. signa . . . laxāre, *to advance and to open out the ranks.*

quō possent: a purpose clause.

18. prō sē, lit. *in proportion to himself =to the best of his ability.*

19. etiam . . . rēbus, *even in his own extreme danger.*

Chap. **26.** *The seventh and twelfth legions fight more successfully, and three other legions come to their rescue.*

1. iūxtā: i.e., near the twelfth legion, in whose ranks Caesar was fighting.

cōnstiterat, *had taken its position.* Distinguish carefully between *cōnsistō* and *cōnstituō.*

2. tribūnōs: see Int. 41.

paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōn-

---

2. prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, —, *intr.* [**-cumbō,** lie down], fall down, lie down. 2

3. innītor, -nītī, -nīxus sum, *intr.* [**nītor,** rest on], lean upon, support oneself by. 1

---

3. sēsē coniungerent: i.e., to close up the gap between them.

conversa signa īnferrent, *to face about and attack.* Of course only a part of the Romans were to face about. Probably the rear line faced about, and the cohorts at the ends of the line wheeled half around. Thus an oblong would be formed, facing the enemy on every side.

4. cum . . . ferrent, *since they protected one another.*

5. timērent: agreeing with *mīlitēs,* which is implied in *aliīs aliī.*

āversī, *in the rear.*

7. quae . . . fuerant: see **19,** 5.

8. proeliō . . . incitātō, *quickening their step on hearing of the battle.*

colle: at the rear of the Roman camp.

9. Labiēnus: see note on **23,** 1.

11. Quī cum, *when they;* i.e., the soldiers of the tenth legion.

12. quō in locō, *in what condition.*

14. nihil . . . fēcērunt, lit. *made nothing of a remainder as regards speed = made all possible speed.* This legion fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

Chap. **27.** *The Nervii are slain, fighting desperately.*

2. quī, *those who.* The clause is determinative, not characteristic: App. 231: H.-B. 550. The subjunctive is due to attraction: App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

scūtīs: case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

---

5. circumvenīrentur: construction? App. 228, *b*: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

14. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

FIG. 118
A HAND-TO-HAND FIGHT

spicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandī studiō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla inter-

4. inermis, -e, *adj.* [in- + arma, arms], without arms *or* weapons, unarmed. 3

turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. 1

5. dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *tr.*, wipe out, destroy. 1

6. legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō, legion], of a legion, legionary. 4

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before; **praeferre sē alicui,** surpass. 1

8. iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. 1

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *tr. and intr.* [sistō, stand], stand upon. 4

9. coacervō, 1, *tr.* [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap *or* mass together, pile one upon another. 1

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [cadō, fall], a fallen *or* dead body, corpse. 1

10. tumulus, -ī, *m.*, mound, hill. 4

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], intercept. 1

4. inermēs . . . occurrerent, (*though*) *unarmed, attacked the armed* (*enemy*).

5. fugae, see **24,** 4.

6. etiam . . . salūtis, *even at the end of their hope of safety;* i.e., even in their extreme danger.

8. proximī . . . īnsisterent, *the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate.*

9. hīs: i.e., *proximī.*

quī superessent: see note on *quī,* l. 2.

10. ut ex tumulō, *as if from a mound.*

conicerent: result. The force of *ut* (l. 7) still continues.

cepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē

11. nēquīquam, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose. 1

1. gēns, gentis, *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. 3

3. aestuārium, -rī, *n.* [**aestus,** tide], low marshland, estuary, marsh. 2

5. cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnsentiō,** agree], agreement, consent. 3

8. senātor, -ōris, *m.* [**senex,** old], senator. 1

10. miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 2

supplex, -icis, *m., f.*, suppliant. 1

misericordia, -ae, *f.* [**misereō,** pity +**cor,** the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. 1

11. ut . . . dēbēret, *so that it must be believed that not without prospects of success had men*, etc.; i.e., they were so brave that they had a right to expect success.

13. altissimās: at the point where the Nervii crossed, the bank of the river is higher and steeper than elsewhere.

quae, *deeds which.*

14. ex difficillimīs, *instead of most difficult.*

Chap. **28.** *The survivors submit to Caesar.*

2. quōs coniectōs dīxerāmus, *who, as I have said, had been*, etc.

4. victōribus . . . tūtum, *that nothing was difficult for the victors and nothing safe for the conquered.*

5. quī supererant: compare *quī superessent*, **27,** 9. This clause has precisely the same meaning, but does not depend on a subjunctive.

8. vix ad quīngentōs: this has been considered an exaggeration, because the Nervii revolted again three years later, and put 5000 men in the field two years after that. But in so large a state there must have been thousands of boys too young to fight in the present battle, but old enough to fight a few years later.

quī possent: a clause of characteristic, and therefore subjunctive in the direct discourse.

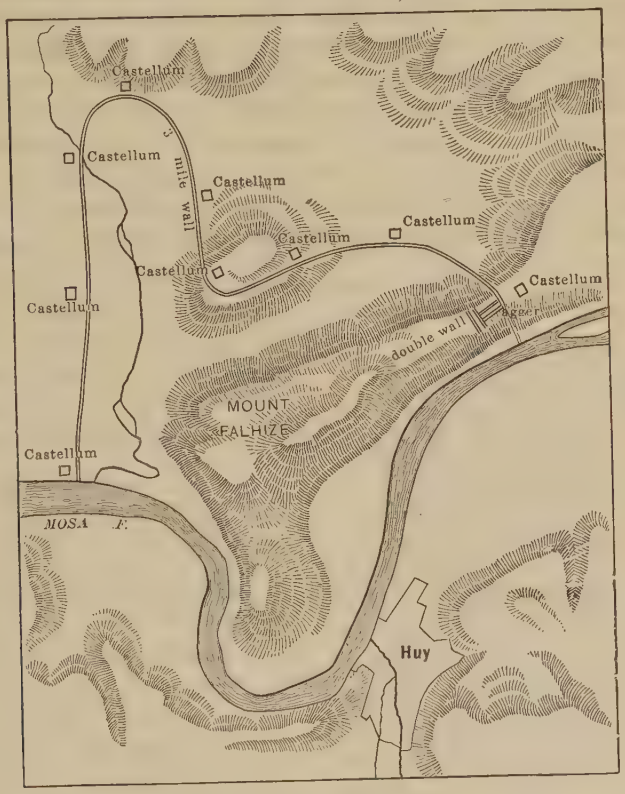
9. ut . . . vidērētur, *that he might be seen to have shown mercy.*

11. iussit, imperāvit: the sentence illustrates well the contrasting constructions with these verbs. *iubeō* regularly governs an accusative and infinitive; *imperō*, the dative with *ut* and the subjunctive.

cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

29. Atuatucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus

1. scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *tr.*, write. 1



THE TOWN OF THE ATUATUCI

Chap. **29-33.** *Caesar subdues the Atuatuci.*

Chap. **29.** *The Atuatuci take refuge in a stronghold. Their origin.*

1. suprā: in **16**, 7.

cum venīrent, *while they were coming.*

omnibus cōpiīs: see App. 140, *a*.

cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, iīs impedīmentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiae ac praesidiō sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent,

3. cūnctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **coniūnctus,** joined together], all together, all. 1

4. ēgregiē, *adv.* [**ēgregius,** excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 1

5. rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. 1

6. acclīvis, -e, *adj.* [**ad** + **clīvus,** a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. 2

8. duplex, -plicis, *adj.* [**duo,** two + **plicō,** fold], twofold, double. 2

9. pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight. 1

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, large stone. 2

praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**acūtus,** sharpened], sharp in front *or* at the end, sharpened. 3

trabs, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber. 3

10. prōgnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nāscor,** be born], born, descended. 1

13. custōdia, -ae, *f.* [**custōs,** guard], custody, guard. 2

14. obitus, -ūs, *m.* [**obeō,** go to death], destruction. 1

15. exagitō, 1, *tr.* [**agitō,** *freq. of* **agō,** drive], drive out; harass. 2

4. oppidum: This was probably Mt. Falhize, about halfway between Namur and Liège, although some think it was Namur. The main advance of the Germans passed Mt. Falhize and took Namur within a few days of the opening of the World War. See Int. 71.

5. Quod cum, *although this town.* **ex . . . partibus,** *at all (other) points in its circumference,* or simply *on all (other) sides.*

7. ducentōrum pedum: descriptive genitive, modifying *aditus.* The comparative *minus* has no effect on the construction: App. 139, *b.*

8. duplicī mūrō: see plan on p. 247.

tum: at the time of Caesar's approach.

10. Cimbrīs Teutonīsque: see Int. 27.

12. agere ac portāre, *to drive and to carry;* for *impedīmentīs* here means *possessions* rather than *baggage,* and includes cattle.

citrā: the west side.

13. custōdiae . . . relīquerant, lit. *had left along (with their possessions), as a guard, six thousand men.*

14. eōrum: the main bodies of the Cimbri and Teutoni.

15. cum . . . dēfenderent: some

cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, 5

aliās, *adv.* [**alius,** another], at another place; at another time; **aliās . . . aliās,** at one time . . . at another. 4

16. domicilium, **-lī,** *n.* [**domus,** house], home, domicile. 3

2. excursiō, **-ōnis,** *f.* [**excurrō,** run forth], a running out, sortie. 1

parvulus, **-a,** **-um,** *adj.* [*dim. of* **parvus,** little], small. 1

4. circummūniō, 4, *tr.* [**mūniō,** fortify], wall around, inclose. 1

5. exstruō, **-struere,** **-strūxī,** **-strūctum,** *tr.* [**struō,** build], build *or* pile up, rear, construct, build. 2

procul, *adv.*, afar off, at a distance. 2

cum clauses are best translated by participles; so here, *sometimes making war, sometimes defending themselves against war made on them.*

16. cōnsēnsū . . . factā, *peace was made by common consent, and.* **eōrum** refers to both the Atuatuci and their neighbors.

hunc locum: the whole tract of country occupied by the Atuatuci at this time.

Chap. **30.** *The Atuatuci scorn the Roman preparations for attack.*

2. faciēbant, *kept making:* imperfect of repeated action.

3. pedum XII: in height.

XV mīlium: supply *pedum* as a partitive genitive; *of 15,000 feet in circumference;* i.e., three miles. The plan shows that the wall did not cross the river, which itself forms a sufficient obstacle.

4. oppidō: ablative of means, but to be translated as if an ablative of place.

5. vīneīs, aggere, turrim: see Int. 61; 62, *d.* The vineae afforded shelter to the soldiers who made the agger. In this case, as is shown by **32,** 9, the agger was made about as high as the wall.

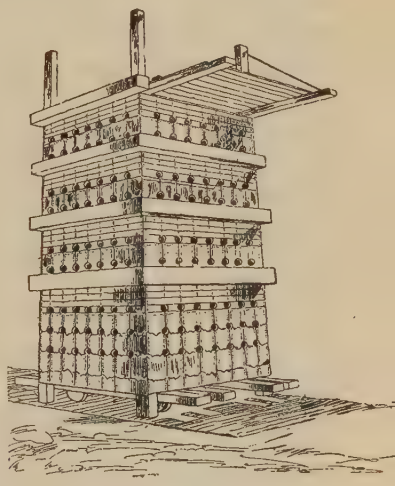


FIG. 119
A TOWER

10. ex Cimbrīs: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, *a*, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, *b*: H. 469, 1.

14. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus, praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est), tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse collocāre cōnfīderent?

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis

---

6. irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *intr.* [**in** +**rīdeō**, laugh], laugh, jeer. 1

7. māchinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, machine, engine. 3

quisnam, quidnam, *and* **quīnam, quaenam, quodnam,** *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 *and a*), who? which? what? 1

8. tantulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of* **tantus**, so great], so small *or* little. 2

statūra, -ae, *f.* [**status**; **stō**, stand], size of body, stature. 1

9. plērumque, *adv.* [**plērusque**, the greater part], for the most part, generally. *

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before; in comparison with. 1

10. contemptus, -ūs, *m.* [**contemnō**, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. 1

onus, -eris, *n.*, load; weight. 4

2. inūsitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **ūsitātus**, usual], unusual, uncommon. 3

speciēs, -ēī, *f.* [**-spiciō**, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance. 4

3. modus, -ī, *m.*, measure; manner, method. *

4. dīvīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dīvus**, divine], of the gods, divine. 1

---

6. irrīdēre: on this use of the infinitive see App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

7. ā tantō spatiō, *so far away;* lit. *away by so great a distance*, **ā** being used as an adverb. See note on **7**, 8.

īnstituerētur: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2; 592, 3: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, *a*: H. 588, II.

Quibusnam manibus . . . cōnfīderent, (*asking*) *by what hands, pray, did they hope?*: indirect discourse for *cōnfīdītis, do you hope?* For mood see App. 268, I: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

8. hominēs: in apposition with the subject of *cōnfīderent; especially* (*as they were*) *men*, etc.

10. contemptuī est, *is an object of contempt.*

in mūrō collocāre: the Gauls ignorantly supposed that the Romans would try to set the tower on the wall, for the only towers they knew of were built on walls.

Chap. **31.** *The Atuatuci propose a conditional surrender.*

1. movērī, *that it* [the tower] *was being moved.*

3. locūtī: the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. *nōn sē . . . possent* depends on *locūtī;* everything else, on *dīxērunt* (l. 6), *speaking as follows . . . said.* But it makes smoother English to translate *locūtī* as

---

7. spatiō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of degree of difference

FIG. 120

THE ENEMY MAKES SUBMISSION

In the background is part of a long wall of circumvallation, such as Caesar describes in **30,** 3. At its right is part of an agger, built up of timber, on top of which we see the ends of *vineae.*

The general sits on the tribunal. At his left are officers; behind them standard bearers; still farther back the army is drawn up. Most of the suppliants kneel before the general.

māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs

5. prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move forward, push forward. 2

7. dēprecor, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**precor,** pray], implore, plead for. 2

9. dēspoliō, 1, *tr.* [**spoliō,** strip], deprive. 1

10. invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *intr.* [**videō,** see], look askance at, envy. 1

locūtī sunt and omit *dīxērunt, spoke as follows.*

4. quī possent, *since they could,* may have been subjunctive in the direct form: App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, *e*: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

6. Ūnum, *one favor;* i.e., *nē . . . dēspoliāret.*

7. sī statuisset, *if he should decide.* The direct form used the future perfect indicative; lit. *if you shall have decided.*

prō, *in accordance with.*

quam audīrent, *of which they kept hearing.*

9. nē dēspoliāret: the original form was probably *nōlī dēspoliāre:* App. 219; 267: G.-L. 271, 2; 652: A. 450; 588: B. 276, *c*; 316: H.-B. 501, 3, *a*, 2; 534, 2: H. 561, 1; 642.

Sibi: with the adjective *inimīcōs.*

10. virtūtī: what verbs, transitive in English, govern the dative?

trāditīs armīs, *if they should,* etc.

armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī priusquam mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut

12. quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs *or* **quodvīs,** *indef. pron.* (App. 62), [**quī,** who + **vīs,** you wish], whom *or* what you wish; any whatever, any. 3

13. cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cruciō,** torture; **crux,** cross], torture, torment. *

dominor, 1, *intr.* [**dominus,** master], be master, rule. 1

3. ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram. Int. 62, *c.* 2

11. Sibi praestāre, lit. *it was better for them = they preferred.*

cāsum, *extremity.*

Fig. 121

A COIN OF THE ATUATUCI

Chap. **32.** *The Atuatuci surrender unconditionally, but treacherously retain a part of their arms.*

1. cōnsuētūdine: ablative of accordance.

3. ariēs: apparently in this case the battering-ram was hung in the lowest story of the tower.

attigisset, dēdidissent represent future perfect indicatives of the direct form.

4. nisi armīs trāditīs, *unless their arms should be surrendered.*

in, *in the case of.*

5. factūrum . . . -que imperātūrum, *he would do . . . and would command* means *he would do . . . ; namely, he would command.*

6. Rē, *answer.*

7. facere: we might expect a future infinitive; but the envoys return and say that the people are already executing his commands.

8. ante: i.e., on the side where the Romans were.

9. aggeris: the Roman agger, which had reached the trench.

8. esse cōnservandōs: construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

9. Sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Passive periphrastic conjugation
Dative of reference

prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum iīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar im-

9. acervus, -ī, *m.*, a heap, mass, pile. 1

10. adaequō, 1, *tr.* [**aequō,** make equal], make equal to, equal. 3

11. cēlō, 1, *tr.*, keep covered *or* hidden, secrete, conceal. 2

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**pateō,** be open + **faciō,** make], make *or* throw open, open. 2

5. indīligenter, *adv.* [**indīligēns,** careless], carelessly. 1

servō, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; guard, watch. 2

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, suppose. 2

6. cortex, -icis, *m.*, bark. 1

7. vīmen, -inis, *n.*, a pliant twig, osier. 1

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [**texō,** weave], weave in *or* together. 1

8. pellis, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin. 4

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, steep. 1

9. repente, *adv.* [**repēns,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2

10. ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ērumpō,** break forth], a breaking out, sortie. *

11. portīs patefactīs, *they opened the gates and.*

12. pāce sunt ūsī, *kept the peace.*

Chap. **33.** *The Atuatuci make a night attack and are repulsed. They are sold as slaves.*

2. nē quam: see references on **32,** 5. This care for the safety of the townspeople shows Caesar's intention of acting humanely.

4. praesidia, *the outposts,* in the *castella* (**30,** 4).

5. cum: with both *iīs armīs* and *scūtīs.*

6. ex . . . intextīs, *made of bark or of osiers woven together.*

8. quā: the adverb.

minimē arduus: evidently the Roman wall was on rising ground. The desire to keep the wall on high ground accounts for its irregular course as shown on the plan.

10. imperāverat: therefore Caesar had foreseen the possibility of treachery.

5. quam: use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, *a*: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

perāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē eius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

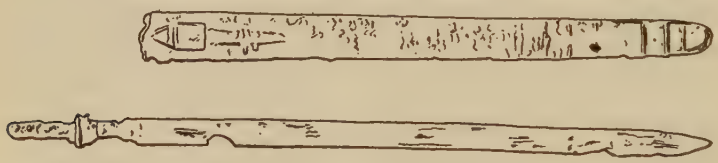


FIG. 122
A GALLIC SCABBARD AND SWORD

11. significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**significō,** make signs], making of signs, signal. 1

17. refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [**frangō,** break], break in *or* open. 1

18. intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**intrō,** within + **mittō,** send], send *or* let in. 1

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, booty. 1

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ūnus,** one + **versus,** *from* **vertō,** turn], *turned into one;* all together, whole. *

19. vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**vēnum,** sale + **dō,** give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. 3

12. concursum est, pugnātum est: translate personally.

ut pugnārī dēbuit, lit. *as it ought to have been fought* = *as brave men ought to have fought.*

13. eōs quī iacerent, *men who threw:* a clause of characteristic.

15. in ūnā virtūte cōnsisteret, *depended on valor alone.*

ad, *about,* used adverbially.

18. sectiōnem: including the inhabitants as well as their possessions. The action was perfectly justifiable, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for their treachery. Such methods were probably the only means by which Caesar could have secured the respect of the Gauls. He used them seldom.

19. iīs quī ēmerant: slave dealers who were with Caesar constantly and who supplied the slave market at Rome.

numerus . . . trium, lit. *the number was reported (to be) of 53,000* = *was reported as 53,000.*

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitēs, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab iīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātiōnēs ad Caesarem mitterentur quae sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam Īllyricumque properābat, initā

---

1. Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Publius Licinius Crassus (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs lĭ-sĭn′ĭ-ŭs krăs′-ŭs). *

2. Venetī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cb), the Veneti (vĕn′ē-tī). *

Venellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bc), the Venelli (vē-nĕl′ī). *

Osismī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sĭs′mī). 2

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.* (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō′rĭ-ō-sŏl′ĭ-tēz). 3

Esuviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bcd), the Esuvii (ē-sū′vĭ-ī). 2

3. Aulercī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bcd), the Aulerci (aw-lĕr′sī). 3

Redonēs, -um, *m.* (BCc), the Redones (rĕd′ō-nēz). 1

maritimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mare,** sea], of the sea, maritime, on the sea. *

4. diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, rule. 3

2. barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*); *m. pl. as noun*, barbarians. *

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāscor,** be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

5. Īllyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyricum (ĭ-lĭr′ĭ-kŭm), Illyria, *lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province.* 2

Chap. **34.** *The northwestern states submit to Crassus, whom Caesar had sent against them.*

1. legiōne ūnā: this was the seventh, one of the two which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii. Caesar must have sent Crassus immediately after that battle.

3. quae: agrees in gender with the predicate noun, *cīvitātēs.*

5. esse redāctās: they gave hostages without fighting. One legion could not have conquered these states, for we learn in the next book that it took Caesar himself and most of his army to do it.

Chap. **35.** *German envoys offer submission. Arrangements for the winter. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.*

1. omnī Galliā: the map facing p. 197 shows that Caesar now controlled everything but Aquitania and two Belgic states.

2. opīniō, *impression.*

quae incolerent: for mood see note on *quī*, **27,** 2.

3. quae pollicērentur: a purpose clause.

5. initā proximā aestāte, *at the beginning of the next summer.* At that time they had so far changed their minds that only the Ubii sent hostages.

proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob easque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

6. Carnutēs, -um, *m.* (BCde), the Carnutes (kär′nū-tēz). 1

Andēs, -ium, *m.* (Cc), the Andes (ăn′dēz). 2

7. Turonī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Turoni (tū′rō-nī). 1

10. supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**supplex,** suppliant], public prayer *to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence* thanksgiving. 2

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [**cernō,** separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. 3

6. in Carnutēs: with *dēductīs.*

7. quaeque cīvitātēs =*et eās cīvitātēs quae.*

8. in Ītaliam: i.e., Cisalpine Gaul. He could not legally go outside of his province, which included Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

9. ex, *in consequence of.*

10. supplicātiō: a public thanksgiving, voted by the senate in honor of a victory. The number of days was supposed to be in proportion to the importance of the victory. Before this time no more than twelve days had ever been voted.

quod, (*an honor*) *which.* The relative is neuter; the antecedent is the preceding clause.

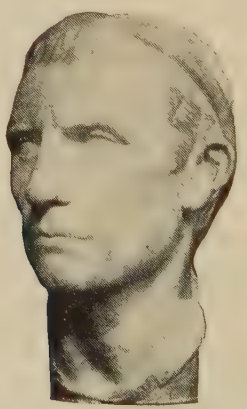


Fig. 123
CAESAR
Bust in the Louvre, Paris.

THE STORY OF BOOK III

OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS, IN THE NORTHWEST, AND IN AQUITANIA

Since Rome was to possess Gaul, she needed to control the shortest route across the Alps—that which leads over the Great St. Bernard Pass. Caesar accordingly sent Galba with one legion, in the autumn of 57, to subdue the mountain tribes which controlled that route. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position. The tribes were not thoroughly conquered, but as we hear of no further operations against them it is evident that they stopped molesting travelers.

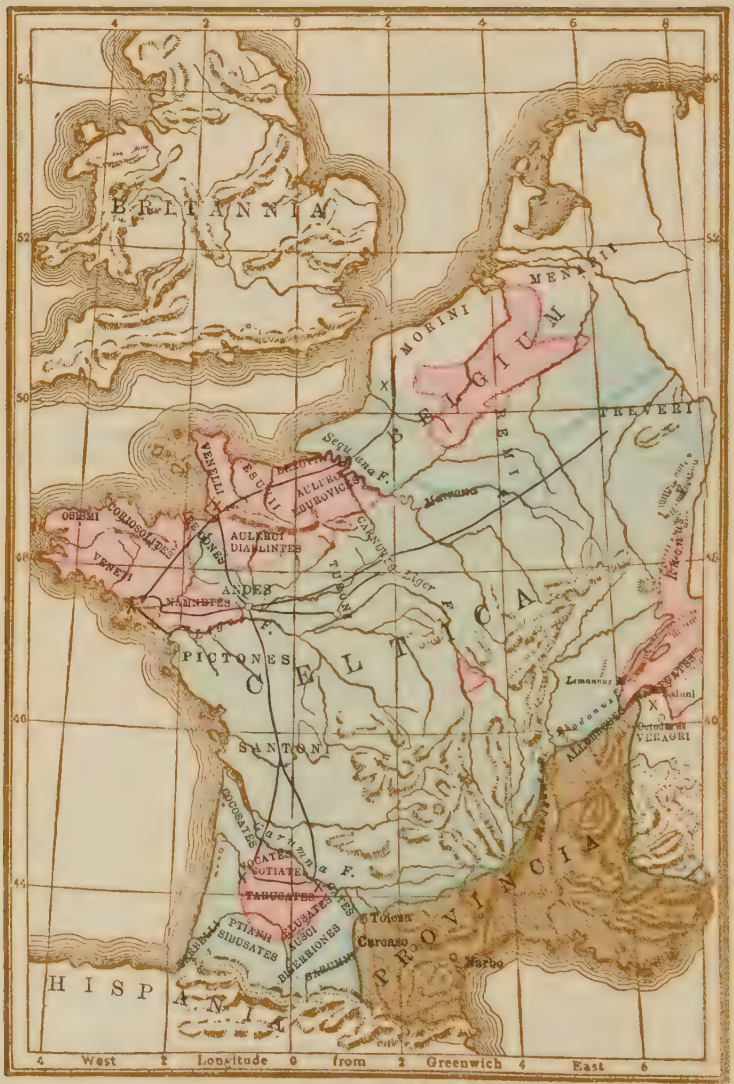
In 57 the northwestern states had submitted to Crassus and had sent him hostages; but when he established winter quarters among them and began sending out officers to levy tribute of supplies, they grew weary of the yoke. Ignorant of the Roman resources and power, three states took the fatal step of arresting the officers sent to them. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of the coast tribes between the Loire and the Seine. The Britons, the Morini, and the Menapii sent men and ships to their aid.

As early as possible in 56 Caesar hastened to Gaul and gave orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective coöperation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent toward the Rhine to check a possible uprising among the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing. Quintus Titurius Sabinus went to the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and the western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus marched into Aquitania to prevent the Aquitani from sending help to the insurgents. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus, undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful seaboard state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skillfully utilized the advantages of their position. Their country was wild and barren and their strongholds were built on the

ends of promontories which the tides cut off from the mainland. Hence supplies for the Roman army were obtained with difficulty, and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or if necessary could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The Roman fleet would have prevented this, but it was kept away by stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the much superior fleet of the Veneti confidently sailed out to meet it; but Roman valor and ingenuity won the day. The destruction of their fleet forced the Veneti to submit. Their prominence in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment, as a warning to other Gallic states. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The legates of Caesar were as successful as himself. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the confederacy. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. In all Gaul only the Morini and the Menapii had made no submission. Therefore Caesar marched against them; but after he had made strenuous efforts to reach the foe, in almost impenetrable forests and swamps, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartering his legions upon the conquered tribes, as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR BOOK III

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. There are three additions to the red area of the map facing p. 197. First, a narrow strip is shown leading into the Alps. Although Galba defeated the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni, we may suppose that the Romans were satisfied to control the pass across the Alps, and did not attempt to control the whole mountainous district occupied by these tribes. Second, the territory of the revolting northwestern states is colored red. Third, the territory of the three Aquitanian states in which fighting occurred is colored red. Perhaps the rest of Aquitania should be red, since all the states were represented in the army which Crassus defeated. But probably their fighting strength was not destroyed, and they submitted rather from discouragement than because they were actually subjugated.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. The only addition to the blue area of the map facing p. 197 is the part of Aquitania not colored red. As Caesar says in **28, 2**, the only states which had not made submission by the end of this third summer were the Morini and the Menapii.

Battles are marked by x. The town of the Sotiates which Crassus took is certain. The location of all the other battles of this book is more or less uncertain.

Most of Caesar's army had probably been quartered along the Liger (Loire). Therefore the routes on this map begin at the point of the probable winter quarters farthest east, where Orleans now stands. Marching westward, he picked up another part of his army, and then probably collected the whole of it at the point on the map from which four lines diverge, which is now the site of Angers. From that point he sent out Labienus, Crassus, and Sabinus, and himself marched against the Veneti. From the Veneti Caesar marched against the Morini and the Menapii, and was probably joined on the route by Sabinus and Crassus.

COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS

1. Cum in Ītaliam proficīscerētur, Caesar Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum

1. Servius, -vī, *m.*, Servius (sĕr′vĭ-ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* 1

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Servius Sulpicius Galba (sĕr′vĭ-ŭs sŭl-pĭsh′yŭs găl′-bă). *

2. Nantuātēs, -um, *m.* (CDg), the Nantuates (năn′tū-ā′tēz). 4

Veragrī, -ōrum, *m.* (CDg), the Veragri (vĕr′ă-grī). 3

3. Sedūnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū′nī). 3

Chap. **1-6.** *Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. Although he defeats the mountaineers in battle, he dares not winter in the mountains.*

Chap. **1.** *Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. He occupies Octodurus.*

The notes on the following chapters give especial attention to tense usage. If the pupil will read carefully App. 197 and 198 and will observe the tenses in these chapters, he will see that Caesar was very accurate in choosing between the perfect and imperfect. Notice that in Chap. **1** the verb in every principal clause is perfect, and that with one exception every perfect tells the next thing that happened in the story. That is what the perfect usually does; while the imperfect tells how things were at the time when the new event occurred.

1. Cum . . . proficīscerētur: as stated in II, **35.** Therefore the narrative given in the first six chapters of Book III belongs chronologically with Book II.

2. legiōne duodecimā: this was one of the two legions which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii: see II, **25.**

Nantuātēs, etc.: see the map facing p. 259.

3. mīsit: the first step in the story; i.e., the first thing done by the actors.

4. pertinent: several of the subordinate verbs in this chapter are in the present tense, because they state facts which are still true at the time when Caesar is writing.

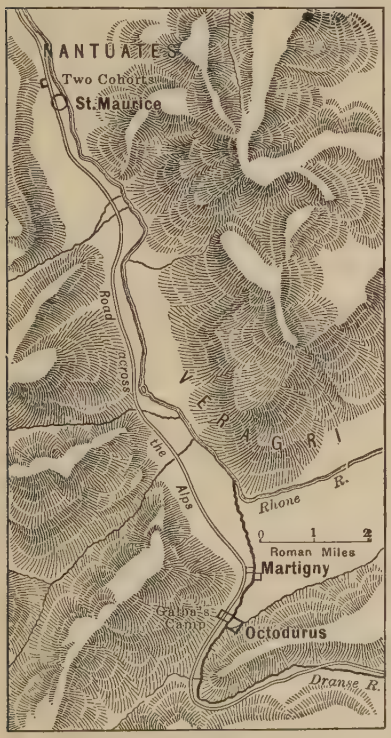
5. fuit: this is not a new step in the story; but it is perfect because it repeats the idea of *mīsit: he sent him, because*, etc.

quod volēbat, *that he wished:* a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causa.* The imperfect does not narrate an event in the story, but describes something (here, Caesar's feelings) as going on at the time of a main act (Caesar's decision to send Galba). This is the most common use of the imperfect, and is called the *descriptive imperfect.*

iter per Alpēs: the route leading over the famous Great St. Bernard Pass.

quō: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, *a*: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

perīculō magnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.



GALBA'S CAMP

9. aliquot, *indecl. num. adj.* [**quot,** how many] some, a few, several. 3

13. Octodūrus, -ī, *m.* (Cg), Octodurus (ŏk′tō-dū′rŭs). 1

14. vallēs, -is, *f.*, valley. 2

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw to; add. 1

18. attribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, *tr.* [**ad** + **tribuō,** assign], assign, allot. 2

6. perīculō: from the natives.

portōriīs, *tolls,* levied by the natives on all merchandise carried through their country.

cōnsuērant: meaning of tense? App. 194, *a*: G.-L. 241, R.: A. 476: B. 262, A.: H.-B. 487: H. 538, 4.

7. permīsit: another step in the story.

arbitrārētur: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *arbitrāberis.*

11. cohortēs duās: for the location of these cohorts, see map.

14. nōn . . . plānitiē, *with a little level ground adjacent.*

17. vacuam relictam, *left vacant.*

19. Eum locum: the western half of the village.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occu-

6. renovō, 1, *tr.* [**novus**, new], renew. 2

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**ob** +**premō**, press], press down; overwhelm, destroy. 4

8. plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**pleō**, fill], full, complete. 3

9. singillātim, *adv.* [**singulī**, one each], singly, individually. 1

10. paucitās, -tātis, *f.* [**paucus**, few], fewness, small number. *

13. abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō**, draw], drag away, carry away by force. 1

15. perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, permanent. 3

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. 1

Chap. **2.** *The mountaineers revolt and occupy the neighboring heights.*

2. eō: i.e., into the winter quarters.

3. quam . . . concesserat: this is not a part of the quotation, but is an explanation added by the writer; therefore it is not subjunctive.

5. aliquot dē causīs: these reasons are (1) *quod dēspiciēbant*, l. 7; (2) *quod exīstimābant*, l. 10; (3) *Accēdēbat quod dolēbant*, l. 13; (4) (*accēdēbat quod*) *habēbant*. Note that the imperfect is used in these clauses because they all describe the condition of things existing at the time the Gauls revolted.

6. ut caperent: a substantive clause of fact (result), in apposition with *id*.

7. neque eam plēnissimam, *and that not at its full strength;* explained by the ablatives absolute which follow.

8. complūribus singillātim, *many men individually.*

11. cum dēcurrerent et conicerent, *when they should*, etc., is a part of the indirect discourse. They thought "when we shall run down . . . they cannot withstand," etc.

13. Accēdēbat quod, lit. *there was added that = a further reason was that*, or *besides*.

līberōs abstractōs (*esse*), *that their children*, etc.

14. obsidum nōmine, lit. *under the name of hostages = as hostages.*

15. perpetuae possessiōnis: supply *causā*.

pāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō, interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

---

16. adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō**, join], join to, attach, unite; add. 1

2. plēnē, *adv.* [**plēnus**, full], fully. 1

5. exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō**, search], seek *or* search out, inquire, investigate. 2

9. supportō, 1, *tr.* [**sub** + **portō**, carry], carry *or* bring up, bring. 4

13. placeō, 2, *intr.*, please; *often impers.*, it seems good *to one, hence,* he decides. 2

reservō, 1, *tr.* [**servō**, save, keep], keep back, reserve. 2

---

16. fīnitimae: the province bounded them on the west. See map facing p. 259.

sibi persuāsum habēbant: the clause *Rōmānōs . . . adiungere* is the object of *habēbant*, and *persuāsum* is a predicate adjective in the neuter, agreeing with the clause; lit. *they had . . . persuaded to themselves* = *they were persuaded that.*

Chap. **3.** *The Romans resolve to defend their camp.*

1. opus hībernōrum: especially the making of huts. Although they were occupying part of a village, it cannot have been large enough to house all the soldiers.

2. essent perfectae agrees with the nearer subject, *mūnītiōnēs.*

3. esset prōvīsum: translate personally.

4. nihil timendum (*esse*), *that he need have no fear.*

5. cōnsiliō: a council of war, composed of the tribunes and the centurions of the first rank. See Int. 42.

8. neque . . . venīrī (*posset*), lit. *and it could not be come to their assistance.*

10. eius modī, *to this effect.*

dīcēbantur: this narrates a new event in the story, so that the perfect might have been used; but the imperfect is used to express repeated action: App. 191, *a*: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2: H.-B. 484: H. 534, 3.

12. pervēnissent: implied indirect discourse.

Maiōrī partī placuit, *the majority determined.*

13. ad extrēmum cāsum, *for the last resort.*

FIG. 124
PROBABLE SITE OF GALBA'S CAMP

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī

1. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief. ∗
3. gaesum, -ī, *n.*, *a heavy iron* javelin (*of the Gauls*). 1
4. integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, unimpaired; fresh. 3
5. frūstrā, *adv.*, without effect, in vain. 3
6. quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever. ∗

Chap. **4.** *The mountaineers attack the camp in great numbers.*

1. vix: placed before *ut* for emphasis.

rēbus . . . administrandīs: the dative of the gerundive is not common: App. 292.

quās cōnstituissent: a determining clause: App. 231: H.-B. 550. Reason for the subjunctive? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. decurrere: an historical infinitive. In what case is its subject, *hostēs?* App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

4. integrīs vīribus: ablative absolute; *while their strength was fresh.*

5. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur, ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent, languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem

8. diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**diūturnus,** long], long duration, length (*of time*). 2

11. saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded. 1

3. languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, faint, sluggish. 1

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy. 1

5. pīlus, -ī, *m.*, century *of soldiers;* **prīmus pīlus,** first century *of a legion;* **prīmī pīlī centuriō,** *or* **prīmipīlus,** the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1

7. hōc superārī, quod, *they were overmatched in this, that.*

8. excēdēbant, succēdēbant, *kept withdrawing,* etc.: imperfects of repeated action.

9. integrīs vīribus: descriptive ablative. Contrast the construction of the same words in l. 4.

quārum . . . poterat, *while none of these things,* etc.

10. poterat and **dabātur** are descriptive imperfects, describing a condition of things that went on all through the battle.

nōn modo dēfessō facultās dabātur, *not only was an opportunity not given to an exhausted man.* H. 656, 3: "**Nōn modo** (or **sōlum**) **nōn, sed nē . . . quidem** means *not only not, but not even,* and **nōn modo** (**sōlum**), **sed nē . . . quidem,** has the same meaning when the verb standing in the second clause belongs also to the first."

11. excēdendī: gerund or gerundive?

locī relinquendī: gerund or gerundive?

12. suī recipiendī: construction? App. 291, *a*: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, *c*: B. 339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

Chap. **5.** *As a last resort Galba decides on a sortie.*

1. Cum pugnārētur, *when the battle had lasted.* The imperfect subjunctive is to be translated on the same principle as is laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, *b*: G.-L. 234: A. 471, *b*: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

hōrīs: ablative after the comparative, *amplius;* see note on *mīlibus,* II, 7, 10.

3. languidiōribus nostrīs, *as our men grew weaker:* ablative absolute.

5. cāsum, *extremity.*

quem . . . dīximus: see II, 25, 7.

Nerviciō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs

6. Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Nervius**], of *or* with the Nervii. 1

7. C., *abbr. for praenomen* **Gāius** (gā′yŭs). ∗

Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (gā′yŭs vŏl′ū-sē′nŭs kwŏ-drā′tŭs). 4

11. tantummodo, *adv.*, only. 1

12. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [**capiō**, take], take up, catch, receive. ∗

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, labor. ∗

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō**, make], remake, repair; *with* **sē**, refresh oneself, rest. 3

13. ērumpō, -rumpere, -rupī, -ruptum, *intr.* [**rumpō**, break], break forth, make a sortie. 1

2. colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**con** + **legō**, gather], gather together, collect; **sē colligere,** rally. 3

8. accurrunt: the principal verbs in this chapter are all historical presents: App. 190, *a*. The historical present narrates a new event in a story just as the perfect does. It may be followed by either the primary or the secondary tenses of the subjunctive. In this chapter the dependent subjunctives are all secondary.

ūnam . . . sī experīrentur, lit. *told him that there was one hope of safety, if they should try* =*that their only hope of safety was to try.*

9. extrēmum auxilium, *their last resource.*

experīrentur: indirect discourse for the future indicative.

10. mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, *he directed the soldiers.* This phrase is followed by indirect discourse, as usual; but all the verbs are in the subjunctive mood, because they represent imperatives of the direct form.

12. exciperent, lit. *catch* on their shields =*shield themselves from.*

post: the adverb.

Chap. **6.** *The Gauls are routed with great loss. Galba retires from the mountains.*

1. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, *they did as they had been commanded. iussī sunt* is used instead of a past perfect, just as *faciunt* is used instead of a perfect. Notice how regularly the indicative tenses are used in this chapter: all the principal verbs are in the perfect or historical present; all the subordinate verbs except *iussī sunt* are in the imperfect or past perfect.

2. suī colligendī: see note on **4**, 12.

3. commūtātā fortūnā: the dangerous plan succeeded, partly because all men fight with more spirit on the offensive than on the defensive, partly because the enemy were taken by

quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum mīlibus amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vidēbat, maximē frūmentī inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

6. cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, —, *intr.* [**stō**, stand], stand firm; *impersonal*, it is agreed *or* known. *

9. fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. 1

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, strip, deprive. 1

12. meminī, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember. 1

15. dēmoror, 1, *tr.* [**moror**, delay], hinder, delay. 1

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, unharmed, safe. 4

surprise, and partly because the Gauls always lacked persistence and ability to rally from a reverse.

4. potiundōrum castrōrum: how can the intransitive verb *potior* be used in the gerundive construction? App. 289, I, *a*: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, *b*, n.: H. 623, 1.

circumventōs: translate by a coördinate clause.

5. ex mīlibus XXX depends on *tertiā parte*. Galba probably exaggerated the number in his report to Caesar, for those tribes cannot have had 30,000 soldiers.

9. armīs: ablative of separation. The Gauls threw away their arms in their flight.

10. quod . . . nōlēbat: Galba felt that it would be foolish to court another attack by remaining in so dangerous a position. The complete victory which he had gained made it possible for him to retire with honor. Since Caesar never fought these tribes again, we may suppose that they were taught by this battle not to molest Roman travelers.

11. aliō cōnsiliō, *with one purpose;* namely, to spend the winter there quietly.

12. aliīs . . . rēbus, *that he had met a different state of affairs;* namely, a dangerous battle.

15. in Nantuātēs: there, of course, he picked up the other two cohorts of his legion.

FIG. 125
A COIN OF THE AULERCI DIABLINTES

FIG. 126
A BIT OF THE COAST OF BRITTANY

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Eius bellī

3. hiems, -mis, *f.*, winter. ✱
5. subitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unexpected, sudden. 2
coorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *intr.* [co-+orior, rise], arise, break out. 2

Chap. **7-11.** *The Aremorican states revolt, under the leadership of the Veneti. Caesar prepares a fleet for their subjugation, and takes measures to prevent a widespread uprising of Gaul.*

The events of the preceding six chapters occurred in the fall of 57. At this point the events of 56 begin.

Chap. **7.** *The Aremorican states revolt because Crassus demands supplies from them.*

1. omnibus dē causīs, *for every reason;* explained by the ablatives absolute *superātīs . . . Sedūnīs.*

pācātam (*esse*) **Galliam:** this belief was premature, for it took Caesar seven more years to subdue Gaul thoroughly.

2. superātīs Belgīs: see II, **1-33.**
expulsīs Germānīs: see I, **30-54.**
victīs Sedūnīs: see **1-6.** The Seduni were the most important of the tribes there mentioned.

4. quod . . . volēbat: under Augustus, Caesar's successor, the Romans were obliged to conquer the tribes between the Adriatic and the Danube. His visit to Illyricum probably shows that Caesar foresaw this necessity

haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitēs, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

8. Huius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque

6. adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*, youth, young man. 4

7. mare, -is, *n.*, sea; **mare Ōceanum,** the ocean. *

8. praefectus, -ī, *m.* [**praficiō,** place over], prefect, commander (*usually of cavalry*). 4

10. Terrasidius, -dī, *m.*, Titus Terrasidius (tĭ′tŭs tĕr′ă-sĭd′ĭ-ŭs). 2

Trebius, -bī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mär′kŭs trē′bĭ-ŭs găl′ŭs). 2

11. Velānius, -nī, *m.*, Quintus Velanius (kwĭn′tŭs vē-lā′nĭ-ŭs). 2

Sīlius, -lī, *m.*, Titus Silius (tĭ′tŭs sĭl′ĭ-ŭs). 2

2. ōra, -ae, *f.*, border, margin; coast, shore. 4

3. nāvigō, 1, *intr.* [**nāvis,** ship], set sail, sail. *

4. nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nauta,** sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. 1

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go before, excel, surpass. 3

5. vāstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. 3

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port. *

7. vectīgālis, -e, *adj.* [**vehō,** carry], paying revenue *or* tribute; tributary. 2

and hoped to do the work himself, but Gaul kept his hands full.

7. proximus . . . Ōceanum, *very near the ocean.* For case see App. 122, *b*: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, *a*: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, *b*: H. 435, 2.

9. in fīnitimās cīvitātēs: especially the seaboard states of the northwest, called Aremorican states. These had all submitted to Crassus in the fall; see II, **34.**

Chap. **8.** *Led by the Veneti, the Aremorican states arrest Roman envoys and form a league.*

1. Huius cīvitātis: the Veneti, who were last mentioned.

2. ōrae: partitive genitive, depending on *amplissima.*

regiōnum: depending on *ōrae.*

quod: belongs with *habent,* l. 2; *antecēdunt,* l. 4; and *habent,* l. 7.

4. in magnō . . . interiectīs, *there being only a few harbors in that dangerous stretch* [lit. *great violence*] *of vast and open sea.*

7. habent vectīgālēs, *they treat as tributaries;* i.e., the ship owners paid a tax for the privilege of using the harbors.

Ab . . . retinendī, lit. *a beginning was made by these of arresting = they began by arresting.*

Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā lībertāte quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: Sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī,

---

9. recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. 1

13. exitus, -ūs, *m.* [**exeō,** go out], a going out; issue, result. 2

15. permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [**maneō,** remain], stay, remain; continue. 3

16. mālō, mālle, māluī, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [**magis,** more + **volō,** wish], wish more *or* rather, prefer. 1

2. aedificō, 1, *tr.* [**aedēs,** house + **faciō,** make], build, construct. 1

3. Liger, -eris, *m.* (Cce), the *river* Liger (lī'jēr), *better* the Loire. 1

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [**rēmus,** oar], oarsman, rower. 1

---

9. fīnitimī: the Esuvii and the Coriosolites.

10. ut, *as*, almost *since*.

12. commūnī cōnsiliō, *by common agreement*.

13. āctūrōs (*esse*), *that they would do*.

14. ut permanēre quam perferre mālint, *to prefer to remain* (*rather*) *than to endure*.

15. accēperint: implied indirect discourse.

18. Sī velit, remittat: the direct form was *sī vīs, remitte*.

Chap. **9.** *Caesar equips a fleet. The Veneti make preparations to resist him.*

2. aberat longius, *was too far off*, to take command in person.

nāvēs longās: see Int. 64.

in flūmine Ligerī: on the map facing p. 259, notice that there are three towns along the Liger, connected by a line of march. These were the winter quarters of the army, and no doubt ships were built at all of them.

3. ex prōvinciā: the Gauls were not competent oarsmen, for their ships were managed by sails, not oars; otherwise oarsmen might have been secured

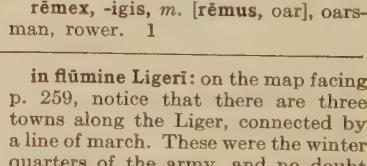


FIG. 127
A COIN OF THE PICTONES

nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen apud omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter inopiam frūmentī diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac iam ut

---

4. nauta, -ae, *m.* [*for* **nāvita;** **nāvis,** ship], sailor. 1

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*, navigator, captain. 1

7. facinus, -noris, *n.* [**faciō,** do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2

9. sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum, *tr.*, make sacred; **sānctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred. 2

inviolātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in** + **violātus,** injured], uninjured, inviolate. 1

13. nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāvigō,** sail], sailing, navigation. 3

14. īnscientia, -ae, *f.* [**īnsciēns,** ignorant], ignorance. 3

---

from the friendly maritime states, the Andes and the Pictones.

īnstituī, *to be procured.*

4. gubernātōrēs: though often translated *helmsmen*, these were officers in charge of all nautical operations, but of course under the orders of the military officers whom Caesar put in command.

5. cum prīmum . . . potuit: probably in May. For tense see App. 237: G.-L. 561: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 557, *a*.

ad exercitum contendit: probably he went first to the most eastern town indicated on the Liger (see map facing p. 259), and then marched west, thus concentrating his army at Angers, where Crassus had spent the winter.

7. quantum . . . admīsissent, *how great a crime they had committed:* an indirect question.

8. lēgātōs retentōs (*esse*), (*namely*), *that envoys had been arrested*, explains *facinus;* syntactically it is indirect discourse after *intellegēbant.*

quod nōmen, *a name which;* i.e., *lēgātōs.*

10. prō, *in proportion to.*

12. hōc: ablative of cause, explained by *quod . . . cōnfīdēbant.*

nātūrā: case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

13. Pedestria itinera, *land routes.*

14. impedītam (*esse*), *was difficult.*

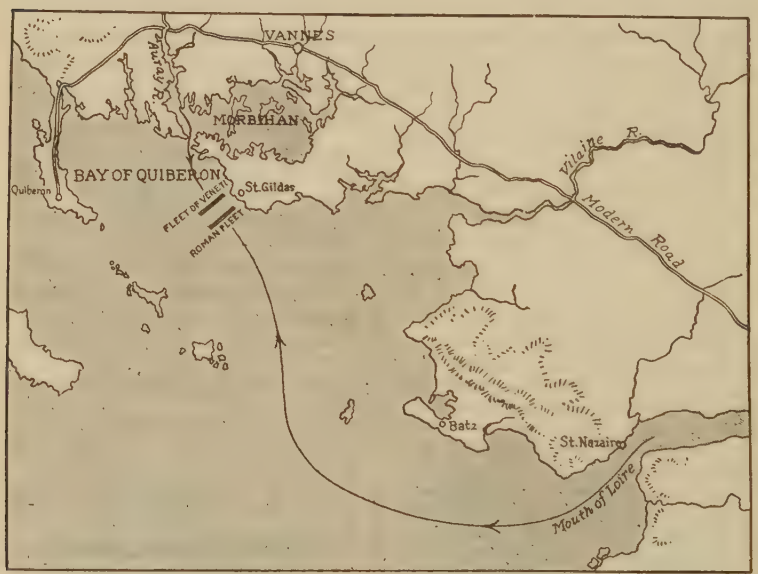
15. neque posse cōnfīdēbant, *and they trusted that . . . would not be able.*

16. iam, *even.*

ut: translation? App. 247: G.-L. 608: A. 527, *a*: H.-B. 532, 2, *b*: H. 586, II.

omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum

19. īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island. *
20. nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, *tr.*, learn; **nōvī,** *pf.*, have learned, *hence*, know. 4
conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō**, close], shut up. 1
23. Venetia, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē'-shyá), *the country of the Veneti*. 1



OPERATIONS AGAINST THE VENETI

17. sē posse, supply *sciēbant*.
18. facultātem, *supply*.
19. locōrum depends on *vada*, etc.
20. aliam esse atque, *was different from (what it was)*.
in conclūsō marī: i.e., the Mediterranean, where the tides are very small.
23. in Venetiam: probably in the Bay of Quiberon. See map above.
prīmum: the adverb.

bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs ascīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et

---

25. Lexoviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Lexovii (lĕk-sō′vĭ-ī). 4

Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Cc), the Namnetes (năm′nē-tēz). 1

FIG. 128
A COIN OF THE NAMNETES

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiliati (ăm′bĭ-lĭ′ā-tī). 1

26. Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Bc), the Diablintes (dī′ā-blĭn′tēz). 1

3. rebelliō, -ōnis, *f.* [**bellum,** war], rebellion, revolt. 3

4. dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēficiō,** fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. 1

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. 1

5. neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [neg- + **legō,** choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. ∗

7. mōbiliter, *adv.* [**mōbilis,** movable], readily, easily. 1

8. excitō, 1, *tr.* [**citō,** rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse. 3

---

25. Ambiliatōs: their location is entirely unknown. The rest of the states should be looked up on the map.

27. quae . . . posita est: Caesar, like most geographers of his time, thought that the coast of Gaul, from Germany to Spain, was nearly straight and parallel with the southern coast of Britain. See map on p. 61.

Chap. **10.** *Caesar plans to prevent a spread of the uprising.*

1. suprā: in Chap. **9.**

2. multa, *many considerations.*

3. iniūria . . . equitum, lit. *the outrage of knights arrested = the outrage of arresting knights.*

5. nē, *the fear that.* This clause, like the nouns *iniūria*, etc., is in apposition with *multa*.

hāc parte neglēctā: translate by a conditional clause.

sibi idem licēre, *that the same course was open to them.*

6. cum: causal.

7. rēbus: what verbs, though transitive in English, govern the dative in Latin?

8. autem, *moreover.*

condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitēs, Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D.

---

9. cōnspīrō, 1, *intr.* [**spīrō**, breathe], combine, conspire. 1

10. partior, 4, *tr.* [**pars**, part], part, divide. 1

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, *tr.* [**tribuō**, assign], divide, distribute. 3

3. officium, -cī, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty. ✱

10. D., *abbr. for praenomen* **Decimus**, Decimus (dĕs'ĭ-mŭs). 1

---

9. cōnspīrārent: translate this clause after the principal clause. The subjunctive was probably used in the direct form: App. 236, *b*: G.-L. 577: A. 551, *b*: B. 292, 1, *b*: H.-B. 507, 4, *b*: H. 605, 1.

10. partiendum (*esse*) **sibi**, lit. *must be divided by him* = *he must divide.* Remember that the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning.

lātius distribuendum: so as to overawe several parts of Gaul at the same time.

Chap. **11.** *Accordingly he sends divisions of his army into various parts of Gaul, and himself marches against the Veneti.*

2. flūminī: what other case may *proximus* govern? See note on **7, 7.**

mittit: probably the various expeditions mentioned in this chapter all started from Angers. See map facing p. 259.

mandat adeat: note the primary sequence after the historical present: see note on *accurrunt*, **5,** 8. Note also the lack of a conjunction: App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, *a*: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 565, 4.

Rēmōs: this state had earned the hatred of the other Belgae in the preceding year, and it may have needed support.

4. arcessītī: supply *esse.*

5. cōnentur is a part of Caesar's instructions to Labienus, and is therefore implied indirect discourse. But *dīcēbantur* is not a part of the instructions, and is therefore indicative.

6. cohortibus legiōnāriīs: Roman soldiers, in contrast to the cavalry, which was Gallic.

7. in Galliam: i.e., Celtic Gaul.

10. quī . . . cūret, *to see that that force be kept away.* For the construc-

Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat praeficit, et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum 5

---

11. Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius Brutus (dĕs'ĭ-mŭs jū'nĭ-ŭs brōō'tŭs). 2

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet. ⁎

Pictonēs, -um, *m.* (Ced), the Pictones (pĭk'tō-nēz). 1

1. situs, -ūs, *m.*, situation, site, position. 1

2. lingula, -ae, *f.* [**lingua,** tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. 1

prōmunturium, -rī, *n.* [**prōmineō,** project], promontory, headland. 1

3. aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling; tide. ⁎

5. afflīctō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **afflīgō,** strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure. 2

FIG. 129
A COIN OF BRUTUS

Left: Head of Mars.
Right: **Albinus Bruti F(ilius),** with two Gallic war trumpets and two shields. Decimus Brutus received the name Albinus by adoption.

---

tion of *distinendam*, see App. 285, II, *b*: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, *b*, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

11. classī, nāvibus: indirect objects of the compound verb *praeficit*. The fleet had probably assembled in the Liger, near its mouth.

14. eō: i.e., *in Venetōs*. He probably went to the eastern coast of the Morbihan and worked to the west along its southern coast. After the distribution of troops described in this chapter, three legions and eight cohorts were left to Caesar. One legion was probably assigned to the fleet, leaving Caesar two legions and eight cohorts with which to attack the Veneti.

cōpiīs: why may *cum* be omitted? App. 140, *a*: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, *a*: B. 222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Chap. **12-16.** *Caesar crushes the Veneti.*

Chap. **12.** *Situation of the towns of the Veneti.*

1. sitūs oppidōrum: see the plan on p. 276.

extrēmīs, *the end of.*

2. pedibus, *on foot;* i.e., by land. At high tide the low ground between the towns and the mainland was overflowed.

3. sē incitāvisset, *had rushed in.*

4. nāvibus: supply *aditum habērent.*

5. in vadīs afflīctārentur, *were stranded on the shallows.* The subjunctive is due to attraction.

oppugnātiō impediēbātur. Ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius reī summam facultātem habē-
10 bant, sua omnia dēportābant sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portī-
15 bus, difficultās nāvigandī.

---

6. quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. 1

7. extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *tr.* [trūdō, thrust], thrust *or* shut out. 1

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. 1

9. appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [ad +pellō, drive], bring to land. 1

10. dēportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry off *or* away. 1

11. opportūnitās, -tātis, *f.* [opportūnus, fit], fitness; advantage. 4

13. tempestās, -tātis, *f.* [tempus, time], time; weather, *usually* bad weather, storm, tempest. ∗

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold off *or* back; hinder, detain. 1

14. rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart; few. 1

A TOWN OF THE VENETI
Compare Fig. 130.

6. sī quandō . . . coeperant . . . dēportābant, *whenever they began . . they would carry off*, etc. *dēportābant* is an imperfect of repeated action, for they kept moving from town to town.

operis, *of the works*, explained by the following ablatives absolute.

7. extrūsō . . . adaequātīs, *the sea having been shut out by earth and dikes* [i.e., by dikes made of earth] *and these* (*dikes*) *having been built as high as the wall of the town.* Apparently the Romans ran two parallel dikes from the mainland to the town, completing them at low tide, when the ground was dry. Thus the sea was shut out (*extrūsō*) from the space between the dikes, and the soldiers could work there continuously.

8. fortūnīs, lit. *for their fortunes:* indirect object. The ablative with *dē* is more common.

9. cuius reī: i.e., ships.

13. summa agrees with *difficultās*.

vāstō . . . portibus: ablatives absolute with causal meaning.

FIG. 130

THE TOWN OF BATZ

The coast of Brittany has sunk since Caesar's day, so that none of the towns which he took can be identified. This shows how they were located. The town, marked by the tower, is separated from the mainland by flat ground, much of which is used as salt marshes. Caesar's dikes were built across such flats.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs, ad magnitūdinem

---

1. namque, *conj.* [**nam,** for], for. 3

2. carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel. 1

aliquantō, [*abl. of* **aliquantus,** some. App. 148, *a*], somewhat, a little. 1

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, flat, plain. 2

3. dēcessus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēcēdō,** depart], departure; ebb, fall (*of the tide*). 1

4. prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow. 1

admodum, *adv.*, very much, very 1

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**regō,** direct], lift *or* raise; **ērēctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high. 1

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern *of a ship.* 2

Chap. **13.** *Description of the ships of the Veneti.*

2. carīnae . . . nāvium, *the bottoms* (*were*) *flatter than* (*those*) *of*, etc. In such cases Latin never inserts a word for "those."

3. quō: when is *quō* used in purpose clauses?

excipere, *meet* or *encounter.* They were less likely to strike bottom, and if stranded they would not heel over.

fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revīnctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et

---

5. flūctus, -ūs, *m.* [fluō, flow], flood, billow, wave. 3

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* accommodō, adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. 2

6. rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak. 1

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, crossbeam, thwart. 1

7. pedālis, -e, *adj.* [pēs, foot], of a foot *in thickness or diameter*. 1

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [fīgō, fix], fasten. 1

clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. 1

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. 2

8. digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger. 1

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb. 1

crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [crassus, thick], thickness. 1

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor. *

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. 3

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain. 3

9. revinciō, -vincīre, -vīnxī, -vīnctum, *tr.* [vinciō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. 2

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. 3

alūta, -ae, *f.*, soft leather. 1

tenuiter, *adv.* [tenuis, thin], thinly. 1

10. līnum, -ī, *n.*, flax; linen, canvas. 1

11. similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. 1

12. ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind. *

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *tr.*, keep straight; guide, control. 1

14. congressus, -ūs, *m.*, [congredior, meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. 1

---

5. tōtae, *entirely*.

6. ex rōbore: construction? App. 136: G.-L. 396: A. 403, 2: H.-B. 406, 4: H. 470.

quamvīs: accusative of *quīvīs*.

trānstra, *the cross-timbers* (*were made*). These heavy timbers, set in across the inside of the ship, strengthened the sides and supported the deck. In Roman ships they were rowers' benches, but the Veneti had no rowers.

7. in altitūdinem, *in thickness*.

8. crassitūdine: this descriptive ablative is modified by a genitive instead of the usual adjective.

prō, *instead of*.

9. pellēs . . . cōnfectae, *skins and thinly dressed leather* (*were used*) *instead of* (*canvas*) *sails*.

11. quod: explaining *eō*.

12. tanta onera nāvium, *such heavy ships*.

13. nōn satis commodē, *not very well*.

14. nostrae classī, *of our fleet:* dative of reference: App. 120.

ūnā celeritāte, *only in speed*.

15. pulsū rēmōrum, *in rowing;* i.e., *in having oars*. In the battle which followed, the fact that the Roman

pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim iīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iīs erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum sē ventō dedissent, tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere

15. pulsus, -ūs, *m.* [**pellō,** strike], stroke. 1
rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar. 4
16. aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. 1
17. rōstrum, -ī, *n.*, beak *of a bird;* beak *or* ram *of a ship.* 2
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, *intr.*, injure, hurt. 4
firmitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**firmus,** strong], strength, firmness, solidity. 2
19. cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. 1
21. tūtō, *adv.* [**tūtus,** safe], safely, securely. 2
22. cautēs, -is, *f.*, reef. 1
23. extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, —, *tr.* [**timeō,** fear], dread. 1
3. reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**premō,** press], press *or* keep back, check, restrain. 1
5. genus, -eris, *n.*, race, family; kind, nature. *

ships had oars was an immense advantage.
reliqua, *all other things.*
prō, *in view of.*
16. illīs: the ships of the enemy.
17. nostrae: supply *nāvēs.*
18. adigēbātur, *could be thrown (into them).*
19. cōpulīs: see Int. 64.
Accēdēbat ut ferrent et cōnsisterent et timērent, *there was the additional advantage that they weathered,* etc., or simply, *besides, they weathered,* etc.
20. sē ventō dedissent, *ran before the wind.*
21. cōnsisterent, *came to anchor.*
relictae, *when left.*
22. quārum rērum cāsus, *the danger of these things.*
nāvibus: dative of the agent.

Chap. **14.** *The naval battle. The Romans cut the rigging of the hostile ships.*

When the Roman fleet sailed out of the Loire it passed the point where the Americans built a great seaport in the World War. See Int. 73.

1. expugnātīs: by the method described in Chap. **12.**
3. neque . . . posse, *and that they could not be injured.* What is the literal translation? App. 115, *d*: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

armōrum ōrnātissimae ex portū profectae nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsis-
10 terent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxae-
15 que longuriīs nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum

6. ōrnō, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; **ōrnātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. 1

14. praeparō, 1, *tr.* [**parō**, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. 1

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle; hook. 2

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.*, insert, thrust in. 1

affīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**ad** +**fīgō**, fix], fasten to. 1

15. longurius, -rī, *m.* [**longus**, long], a long pole. 2

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [**similis**, like], unlike. 1

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape. 1

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [**mūrus**, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural. 1

FIG. 131
FALX

6. armōrum, *equipment*, including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

nostrīs: supply *nāvibus*.

cōnstitērunt, *took their position:* from *cōnsistō*. See the map on p. 272.

7. Brūtō, tribūnīs, centuriōnibus: indirect objects of *cōnstābat, it was clear.*

9. quid . . . īnsisterent, *what to do or what plan of fighting to adopt.* These are indirect questions, but the subjunctive would be used in corresponding direct questions: App. 210: G.-L. 265: A. 444: B. 277: H.-B. 503: H. 559, 4.

10. Rōstrō: ablative of means.

nocērī: supply *nāvibus hostium:* see references on *neque . . . posse*, l. 3.

turribus excitātīs, *even when the towers were erected.* These towers were erected on the fore and after decks. See Figs. 132 and 133. The same pictures show the *rōstrum* as well, at about the water line.

11. ex, *on.*

12. neque . . . et = *et* (*both*) *nōn . . . et.* In translating, omit the first *et.*

13. missa, *those thrown.*

erat magnō ūsuī, *was very useful.* In fact this device saved the day.

14. praeacūtae: sharpened on the inner edge.

15. longuriīs: dative with *īnsertae* and *affīxae.*

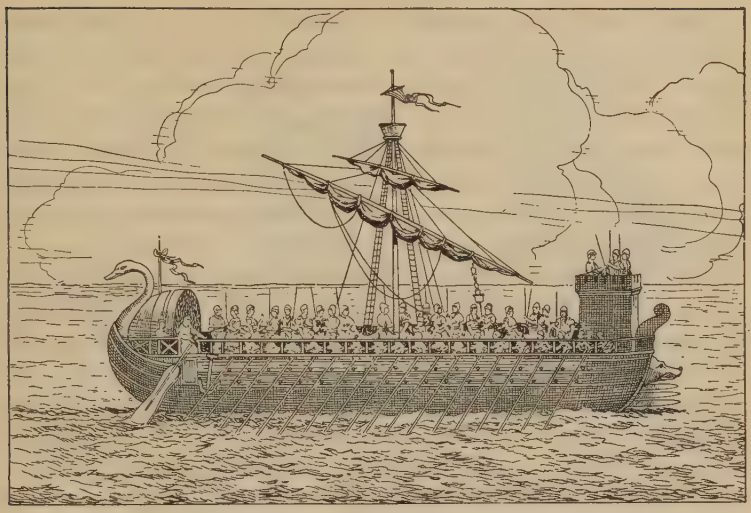


FIG. 132

A ROMAN GALLEY

Note the projecting *rōstrum*, near the water line, with which another ship could be rammed.

fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus

---

16. antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. 3

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast. 1

dēstinō, 1, *tr.*, fasten, secure, make fast. 1

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [**prehendō** (**prēndō**), seize], grasp, lay hold of, catch. 2

17. nāvigium, -gī, *n.* [**nāvigō**, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. 2

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**rumpō**, break], break off, tear away. 1

---

nōn . . . falcium, *of a form not unlike (that) of mural hooks.*

Hīs . . . concidēbant: the ships of the Veneti had each a single square sail, supported by a sail-yard. The sail was hoisted and held up by means of a rope (halyard) which ran from this sail-yard through a pulley at the top of the mast down to one side (gunwale) of the ship, where it was made fast. The Romans caught the halyard just above the gunwale and cut it, whereupon the sail fell.

Hīs: i.e., hooks. Ablative of means.

cum . . . comprehēnsī erant: mood? App. 241, *b*: G.-L. 584: A. 542: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4.

17. Quibus: i.e., *fūnibus*.

abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō mo-

---

18. abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō,** cut], cut off, tear away. 1
concidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall down, fall. 1

19. armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [**armō,** arm], implements, gear; tackle *or* rigging *of a ship.* 2

21. certāmen, -inis, *n.* [**certō,** strive], strife, struggle, contest. 1

23. factum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* **faciō,** do], act, exploit, deed. 1

25. dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēspiciō,** look down upon], view. 1

1. bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**bis,** twice], two each, two apiece. 3
2. ternī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**ter,** thrice], three each, three apiece. 1
circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, —, *tr.* [**sistō,** stand], surround, hem in. *
trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr. and intr.* [**scandō,** climb], climb across; board. 1

7. malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm *at sea.* 1
tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. 1
exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], stand forth, arise; ensue. 1

---

18. cum: causal.

19. nāvibus, *of the ships:* a dative of reference.

22. in cōnspectū, etc.: Caesar and his army were on the heights of St. Gildas; see the map on p. 272.

23. paulō fortius, *a little braver than usual.*

Chap. **15.** *Almost all the ships of the Veneti are destroyed.*

1. cum circumsteterant: for mood see note on *cum comprehēnsī erant,* **14, 15.**

singulās . . . ternae, *two or three . . . each.* Only a few at a time were thus surrounded, for probably there were more Gallic ships than Roman.

3. Quod, eī reī: both refer to the statement in the first sentence, *cum . . . contendēbant.*

6. in . . . ferēbat, *in that direction toward which the wind was blowing.*

9. singulās, *one by one.*

11. cum pugnārētur, *when the battle*

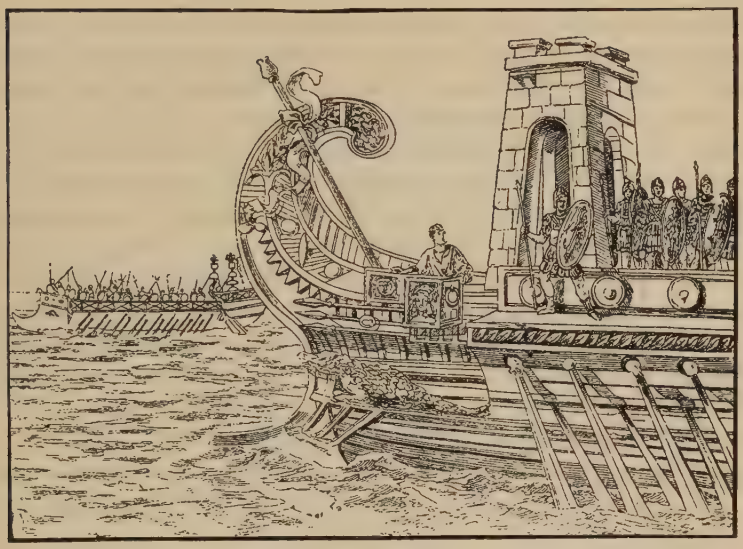


FIG. 133
PROW OF ROMAN GALLEY

vēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximae fuit opportūnitātī; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam

9. cōnsector, 1, *tr.* [**sector,** *freq. of* **sequor,** follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. 4

10. interventus, -ūs, *m.* [**intervenīō,** come between], intervention, help. 1

11. terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land. 3

usque, *adv.*, up to; *with* **ad,** until. 3

2. iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**iuvenis,** young], period of youth; the youth, the young men. 1

had been going on. For this translation of the imperfect see note on *Cum pugnārētur*, **5**, 1.

hōrā quārtā: between about 8:30 and 9:30 A.M., at that season.

Chap. **16.** *The Veneti surrender. Caesar slays their senate and sells the rest into slavery.*

2. cum . . . tum, *not only . . . but also.*

graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum

---

3. dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [**dignus,** worthy], worthiness; rank. 3

4. ubīque, *adv.* [**ubi,** where], anywhere, everywhere. 1

8. vindicō, 1, *tr.*, assert authority; inflict punishment. 1

10. necō, 1, *tr.* [**nex,** death], put to death, kill. 2

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath; **sub corōnā vēndere,** sell at auction. 1

3. Viridovīx, -īcis, *m.*, Viridovix (vĭ-rĭd'ō-vĭks). 4

---

3. in quibus . . . fuit, *who had any ability to advise or any rank.*

eō: to the seat of war.

4. nāvium . . . fuerat, *whatever [of] ships they had had anywhere.*

5. quibus refers to both men and ships.

neque . . . habēbant, *did not know where to take refuge,* etc. For construction see note on *quid . . . insisterent,* **14,** 9.

7. eō gravius, quō, lit. *more severely on this account, in order that* = *the more severely, in order that.*

10. reliquōs: i.e., all who fell into his hands; certainly not all the state, since it remained in existence.

sub corōnā: the phrase came down from early times, when it was the custom to put chaplets of leaves on the heads of captives who were to be sold.

The punishment of the Veneti, like that of the Atuatuci (II, **33,** 18), seems barbarous to us. It is nevertheless true that on the whole Caesar was merciful to the Gauls, judging him by the standards of his own times, and that these severe punishments were necessary for the accomplishment of his purposes.

Chap. **17-19.** *Sabinus defeats the land forces of the allies.*

FIG. 134
A COIN OF THE VENELLI

Chap. **17.** *Sabinus encamps among the Venelli and refuses battle.*

1. Dum geruntur: for mood and tense, see App. 234, *a*: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 604, 1.

Sabīnus: see **11,** 8.

coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

5. Eburovīcēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Eburovices (aw-lĕr′sī ĕb′ū-rō-vī′sēz). 1

6. auctor, -ōris, *m.* [**augeō,** increase], one who originates *or* vouches for; promoter, instigator. 1

8. praetereā, *adv.* [**praeter,** beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

9. perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], ruin; **perditus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. 1

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, bandit, robber. 1

10. agricultūra, -ae, *f.* [**ager,** land +**colō,** cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. 3

13. prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead out. *

14. contemptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**contemnō,** despise], disdain, contempt. 1

15. carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, *tr.*, pluck; censure, jeer at. 1

18. absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **absum,** be absent], absent. 2

19. aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, equal; favorable. 3

5. hīs paucīs diēbus, *a few days before;* i.e., before the arrival of Sabinus.

6. quod . . . nōlēbant, *because they* [the senators] *refused to be responsible for the war.*

8. undique ex Galliā, *from all parts of Gaul;* not simply from the Aremorican states.

11. idōneō . . . tenēbat, *shut himself up in camp in a place suitable in all respects.* Notice the three ablatives: *rēbus* is an ablative of specification; *locō* is an ablative of place, App. 151, *b*; *castrīs* appears to be an ablative of place, but is an ablative of means, App. 151, *c*.

12. cum, *although.*

mīlium: supply *passuum.*

spatiō: ablative of degree of difference; lit. *opposite by a distance,* etc.

14. hostibus: dative of reference.

18. eō absente, *in the absence of the man;* i.e., Caesar.

20. lēgātō: dative of the agent with *dīmicandum (esse); that a legate ought to fight.*

18. Hāc cōnfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēligit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse: ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cūnctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī,

---

2. callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd, clever. 1

3. praemium, -mī, *n.*, reward. *

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**polliceor,** promise], promise, offer. 2

4. ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctum, *tr.* [**doceō,** teach], teach thoroughly, explain. 1

7. clam, *adv.*, secretly. 3

9. conclāmō, 1, *intr.* [**clāmō,** cry out], shout *or* cry out, call aloud. 2

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. 1

bene, *adv.* [**bonus,** good], well, rightly, successfully. 2

12. cūnctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cūnctor,** delay], delay, hesitation. 2

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cōnfirmō,** assert], assurance. 1

13. parum, *adv.* [**parvus,** little], little, too little, not sufficiently. 1

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti, Venetan. 2

Chap. **18.** *Sabinus tricks the enemy into attacking his camp.*

2. Gallum, *a Gaul.*

ex iīs, (*one*) *of those.*

5. prō perfugā, *pretending to be a deserter.*

6. docet has as objects the two clauses *quibus . . . premātur* (indirect question) and *abesse*, etc. (indirect discourse).

neque . . . nocte, lit. *and that it was not farther off but that on the next night* =*and that no later than the next night.*

9. negōtī . . . gerendī, *of winning a victory.*

10. īrī oportēre, *they must go.*

11. superiōrum diērum, *during the preceding days.*

13. spēs . . . bellī, *the hope of* (*a fortunate outcome*) *of*, etc. The genitive is objective. They had not yet learned the result of the war.

FIG. 135
A COIN OF THE LEXOVII

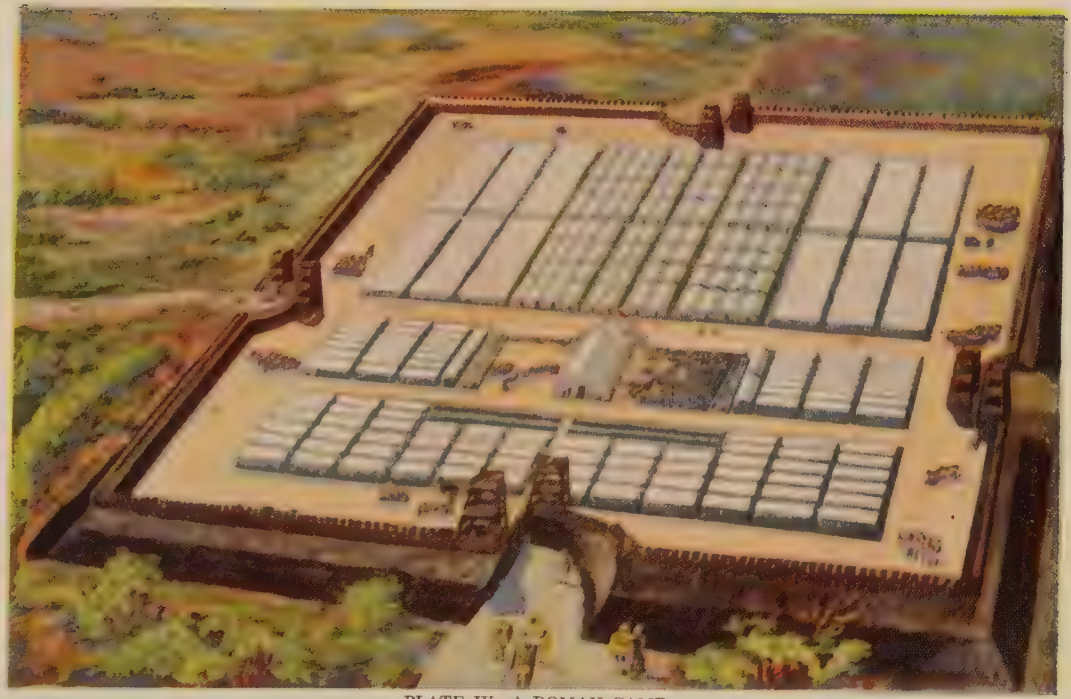


PLATE IV—A ROMAN CAMP

For a description of the Roman camp and of the means of defending the gates, see Int. 49-52.

et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex con- 15
ciliō dīmittunt quam ab iīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque collēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea quae 5
ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī mag- 10

14. libenter, *adv.* [**libēns,** willing], willingly, gladly. 2

17. laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful. 1

explōrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **explōrō,** search out], ascertained; sure, certain. 1

18. sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, small branches. 1

virgultum, -ī, *n.*, thicket, bushes, brushwood. 1

19. pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* [per + **regō,** keep straight], go on, proceed. 1

7. dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēfatīgō,** weary], fatigue, weariness. 1

8. exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**exerceō,** train], exercise, training. *

9. tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back; **terga vertere,** flee. *

10. vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *tr.*, turn, turn around. *

14. quod ferē . . . crēdunt: this substantive clause, like the preceding nominatives, is in apposition with *rēs*, l. 11.

15. prius quam . . . concessum, *until they had granted them permission.* The fate of the senate, **17,** 6, no doubt helped the council to yield. Mood? App. 236, *b*: G.-L. 577, 2, n. 2: A. 551, *b*, n. 2: B. 292: H.-B. 507, 4, *c*: H. 605, I.

17. ut . . . victōriā, *as if victory were assured.*

18. quibus . . . compleant: a purpose clause.

Chap. **19.** *The enemy are routed and the states are forced to surrender.*

1. ab īmō, *from the bottom.*

3. quam . . . spatī, *the least possible time.*

5. cupientibus, lit. *to them desiring* = *as they eagerly awaited it.*

6. onera: the bundles of brush; **18,** 18.

7. Factum est opportūnitāte, *it resulted from the advantage,* etc. The subject of *factum est* is *ut . . . verterent.*

8. mīlitum: the Romans.

9. ac, *but.*

num numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs quī ex fugā ēvāserant relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, tertia pars Galliae est, cum intellegeret in iīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs antę annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs

---

12. ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.* [vādō, go], escape. 1

13. nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. 1

15. alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, lively, quick. 2

prōmptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. 1

16. mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft. 1

17. mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind. 4

4. Praecōnīnus, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū'shyŭs vă-lē'rĭ-ŭs prĕk'ō-nī'nŭs). 1

5. Manlius, -lī, *m.*, Lucius Manlius (lū'shyŭs măn'lĭ-ŭs), *proconsul in 78 B.C.* 1

prōcōnsul, -is, *m.*, a proconsul, *one who, like Caesar, at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province.* 1

FIG. 136

A COIN OF CRASSUS

Left: Head of Venus. (In compliment to Caesar.)

Right: **P. Crassus M(arci) F(ilius).** He was the son of one of Caesar's partners in the Triumvirate.

11. equitēs: nominative.

13. Sabīnus: supply *certior factus est.*

14. Titūriō: Titurius Sabinus.

15. ut . . . sīc, *while . . . yet.*

16. animus, *impulse.*

17. mēns, *will power.*

Chap. **20-27.** *Crassus forces the Aquitani to submit.*

Chap. **20.** *Crassus is attacked on the march by the Sotiates.*

1. Crassus: read **11,** 5-8, and see map facing p. 259.

2. ante: see I, **1,** 2.

3. paucīs annīs: twenty-two years before, in 78 B.C. Our knowledge of these events is very vague. Manlius, governor of the Gallic Province, marched against Sertorius, who was in Spain, and was defeated by a lieutenant of Sertorius. The Aquitani seem to have stripped him of his baggage as he retreated. Nothing whatever is known of Praeconinus.

profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōmināti m ēvocātīs, in Sotiātium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sotiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent perspicī

---

6. mediocris, -cre, *adj.* [**medius,** the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. 2

dīligentia, -ae, *f.* [**dīligēns,** careful], carefulness, heedfulness, care. 4

8. Tolōsa, -ae, *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō′sä), *now* Toulouse. 1

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kär′kä-sō). 1

9. Narbō, -ōnis, *m.* (Ee), Narbo (när′bō), *now* Narbonne. 1

10. ēvocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō,** call], call forth *or* out, summon. 3

Sotiātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō′shĭ-ā′tēz). 4

15. convallis, -is, *f.* [**vallis,** valley], inclosed valley, defile. 1

2. frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. 1

4. adulēscentulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* **adulēscēns,** youth], a very young man. 1

---

6. nōn mediocrem, *unusual.*

8. virīs: ablative absolute with *ēvocātīs.* These were retired veterans who were induced to serve again by high pay and special privileges.

Tolōsā: place from which, with *ēvocātīs.*

9. cīvitātēs, *cities.* *fīnitimae* agrees with it.

hīs regiōnibus: Aquitania. The dative depends on *fīnitimae.*

12. quō: ablative of specification.

13. prīmum: the adverb.

16. disiectōs, *while scattered,* in pursuit of the cavalry.

Chap. **21.** *Crassus defeats the Sotiates and takes their town.*

1. superiōribus victōriīs: those mentioned in **20,** 4-5. Case? App. 143, *a*: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431, *a*: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 432: H. 476, 1.

3. quid . . . possent: subject of *perspicī.*

imperātōre, *commander in chief.*

sine . . . legiōnibus: Crassus had only twelve cohorts of legionary soldiers.

4. adulēscentulō duce: ablative absolute.

cuperent; tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cuius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, propterea quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs (quōs illī solduriōs appellant, quōrum haec est

---

9. cunīculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. 1

11. aerāria, -ae, *f.* [**aes,** copper], copper mine. 1

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [**secō,** cut], cutting; shaft, mine. 1

12. prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**faciō,** make], make progress, effect, gain. 2

1. intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [**tendō,** stretch], stretch out; **intentus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, intent on, absorbed in. 3

2. Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, Adiatunnus (ā′dĭ-ā-tŭn′ŭs). 2

3. dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *tr.* [**voveō,** vow], consecrate, devote; **dēvōtus,** *pf. part. as noun,* a sworn follower. 2

soldurius, -rī, *m.*, vassal. 1

FIG. 137

A COIN OF THE SOTIATES

Rex Adietuanus is supposed to be the Adiatunnus mentioned in **22**, 2.

5. cuperent: like *putārent*, with *cum*, l. 1.

6. ex itinere: as in II, **12**, 4.

8. aliās: the adverb.

9. cunīculīs āctīs, *having driven tunnels.* They probably tried to set fire to the agger from beneath, as it was made largely of wood.

cuius reī, *an art in which.* Case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 451, 1.

11. dīligentiā: ablative of cause. The Romans may have dug countermines, thus meeting the enemy before they got under the agger.

14. faciunt, *they did so.*

Chap. **22.** *The chief of the Sotiates vainly attempts to escape.*

1. rem: the surrender of the arms.

3. quōrum . . . condiciō, ut fruantur, *whose position is this, that they enjoy.*

condiciō, ut omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum iīs fruantur quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret), cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus

---

4. commodum, -ī, *n.* [**commodus,** convenient], convenience, advantage. 2

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *intr.*, enjoy. 1

7. adhūc, *adv.* [**hūc,** hither], hitherto, as yet. 1

8. recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse. *

10. vehementer, *adv.* [**vehemēns,** violent], violently, fiercely. 4

1. Vocātēs, -ium, *m.* (Dcd), the Vocates (vō-kā′tēz). 2

2. Tarusātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEc), the Tarusates (tăr′ū-sā′tēz). 2

---

4. ut . . . fruantur . . . ferant . . . cōnscīscant: substantive clauses of fact (result).

commodīs: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

ūnā: the adverb.

5. quōrum . . . dēdiderint: a determining clause, App. 231. Mood? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

sī . . . accidat: the mood is for the same reason as that of *dēdiderint*. Otherwise such a condition would be expressed by the indicative: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, *b*: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

7. memoriā: ablative of time within which.

quisquam: why is this the proper indefinite? App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

8. dēvōvisset: see note on *quōrum . . . dēdiderint*, l. 5.

recūsāret: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

cum hīs: this simply repeats *cum DC dēvōtīs*, l. 3, after the long parenthesis.

11. tamen, *nevertheless;* i.e., in spite of his attempt to escape after surrender. The offense was the same as that of the Atuatuci, II, **33,** and might have been punished as severely.

12. eādem: i.e., the same as those who had not attempted to escape.

Chap. **23.** *The Aquitani assemble a large force. Crassus decides to give battle.*

1. in fīnēs, etc.: see map facing p. 259.

3. oppidum: subject of *expugnātum (esse)*.

paucīs . . . erat, lit. *within the few days within which it had been come there = within a few days after his arrival.*

quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quō-
queversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās
parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī
quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde
auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum
auctōritāte et magnā hominum multitūdine bellum gerere
cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō
omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris
habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca
capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnsti-
tuunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cōpiās propter
exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre
et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus
commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs
hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūnctandum exīstimāvit quīn
pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem
sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

---

4. quōqueversus, *adv.*, in every direction, all around. 1

10. Sertōrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Sertorius (kwĭn′tŭs sĕr-tō′rĭ-ŭs) *a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C.* 1

15. dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead *or* draw apart; separate, divide. 1

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], *sit in the way of*, obstruct. 2

18. cūnctor, 1, *intr.*, delay, hesitate. 2

---

7. citeriōris Hispāniae: northern Spain, between the Pyrenees and the Ebro.

fīnitimae agrees with *quae* and governs *Aquītāniae*.

10. Ducēs, *as commanders.*

Sertōriō: as Sertorius was a Roman general of great ability and had organized his Spanish army after the Roman fashion, those who had served under him understood Roman tactics. But the result shows that it took more than Roman tactics to make a Roman general or army.

12. cōnsuētūdine: ablative of accordance.

loca capere, *to choose suitable positions.*

14. Quod, *therefore:* conjunction, not pronoun.

15. nōn facile dīdūcī, *could not easily be divided.* This and the following infinitives, through *augērī*, depend on *animadvertit*.

18. nōn . . . dēcertāret, *he thought he must not delay to fight a decisive battle.* On the *quīn* clause, see App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 298: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 595, 1.

19. cōnsilium, *a council of war.* For this meaning see Vocabulary.

20. pugnae: dative.

FIG. 138

THE VARIED OCCUPATIONS OF SOLDIERS

There are several groups. In the lower left corner is a camp with two sentries on guard, looking to the right as if the enemy were in sight. Toward this enemy three auxiliaries hurry across a bridge. Above them stands the general, directing their movement.

In the middle background is a fortress, from which a soldier has come down to the river to get a pail of water.

The right half shows a group of soldiers cutting and carrying timber, perhaps to make a bridge. In the upper left corner, too, a soldier is felling a tree.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs 5

3. etsī, *conj.* [**et** + **sī,** if], even if, although. *

Chap. **24.** *Since the enemy refuses to meet him, Crassus attacks their camp.*

1. duplicī aciē: The Roman force was smaller than that of the enemy, and this arrangement made a longer front than the usual triple line; but it left no reserve line.

2. auxiliīs . . . coniectīs: the longer line of the enemy might be expected to turn both Roman flanks; therefore it was important that the wings consist of reliable Roman legionaries. Caesar never trusted the auxiliaries anywhere in the line.

4. sē . . . dīmicātūrōs, *that it would be safe to fight.*

5. tūtius esse, *that it was still safer.*

obsessīs . . . interclūsō, *by blocking . . . and cutting off.*

viīs, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūnctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs

---

8. cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**co** +**agitō**, consider], consider thoroughly; purpose, plan. 3

2. dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō**, drive], drive from *or* away. 1

auxiliāris, -e, *adj.* [**auxilium**, aid], auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliary troops. 1

4. subministrō, 1, *tr.* [**ministrō**, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. 3

caespes, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. 1

6. timidē, *adv.* [**timidus**, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 1

---

7. coepissent: indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

8. impedītōs: both by their heavy baggage and by the difficulty of fighting in marching order.

10. suā refers to the subject, *hostēs*.

11. opīniōne, lit. *impression* which they gave =*appearance*.

13. exspectārī . . . oportēre, *that they ought not to delay longer*.

quīn . . . īrētur: see note on **23**, 18.

14. omnibus cupientibus, *to the delight of all*.

Chap. **25.** *The camp is vigorously defended, but Crassus learns that the rear is weak.*

1. cum, *while*. Its force continues through *praebērent* (l. 5).

coniectīs, *by throwing*.

3. quibus: the dative, since with *cōnfīdō* the dative (App. 115) is regularly used of persons, the ablative (App. 143, *a*) of things.

4. subministrandīs: to the legionary soldiers.

ad aggerem, *for an agger*. The Romans were compelled to build a sloping embankment in order to surmount the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs iīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid reī gererētur cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus ex mīlium L numerō,

---

8. circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go around. 1

4. intrītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + trītus, worn], unwearied, not worn out. 1

5. circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead around. 2

7. prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], overthrow. 1

8. plānē, *adv.* [plānus, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 1

11. impugnō, 1, *tr.* [in + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2

14. campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, open space *or* country. 1

---

8. circumitīs castrīs, *having ridden around the camp.*

9. ab, *at.*

Chap. **26.** *The Romans capture the camp and cut down the fleeing enemy.*

1. cohortātus ut excitārent, *urging . . . to stimulate.*

4. intrītae ab labōre, *not worn out by fighting. ab labōre* is strictly an ablative of separation, as if Caesar had said "free from"; hence the preposition.

longiōre, *roundabout.*

7. dīximus: in **25,** 9.

8. prius . . . quam: for the division, see App. 236, *c.*

vidērī: supply *possent* from *posset.*

9. quid reī gererētur, *what was going on:* subject of *posset.*

10. nostrī: i.e., those who were attacking in front.

quod, *a thing which.* The antecedent is *redintegrātīs vīribus.*

12. per, *over.*

14. campīs: ablative of the way, not of place; therefore without a preposition.

ex . . . numerō depends on *quārtā parte.*

quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc audītā pugnā maxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōn-

15. Cantabrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Fab), the Cantabri (kăn′tă-brī). 1

2. ultrō, *adv.*, to *or* on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily. *

Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tär-bĕl′ī). 1

3. Bigerriōnēs, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the Bigerriones (bī-jĕr′ī-ō′nēz). 1

Ptianiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptianii (tī-ā′nĭ-ī). 1

Elusātēs, -ium, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ĕl′ū-sā′tēz). 1

Gatēs, -ium, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā′tēz). 1

4. Auscī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Ausci (aw′sī). 1

Garumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (gă-rŭm′nī). 1

Sibusātēs, -ium, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sĭb′ū-sā′tēz). 1

Cocosātēs, -ium, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kŏk′ō-sā′tēz). 1

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* [**ultrā**, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant *or* remote. 2

1. exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**agō**, drive], finish, end. 1

3. umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; **neque . . . umquam,** and never. 2

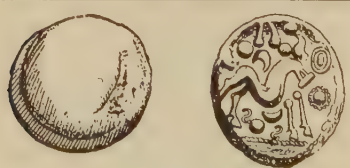


FIG. 139

A COIN OF THE MORINI

15. quae (*mīlia*) **convēnisse** is the subject of the impersonal *cōnstābat, who were known to have gathered.*

16. multā nocte, *late at night.*

Chap. **27.** *Nearly the whole of Aquitania submits.*

4. paucae ultimae nātiōnēs, *only a few tribes, the most remote;* probably those living among the Pyrenees.

5. tempore: see note on *quibus*, **25,** 3.

Chap. **28-29.** *Caesar makes an unsuccessful attempt to subdue the Morini and the Menapii.*

Chap. **28.** *The Morini take refuge in forests and swamps.*

1. exācta, *past:* the participle used as an adjective.

2. omnī Galliā: Gaul in general, including Aquitania and Belgium, though the same words in II, **1,** 6, refer only to Celtic Gaul.

ficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs

---

8. continēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **contineō,** hold together], continuous, unbroken. *

11. dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, *tr.* [**spargō,** scatter], scatter, disperse. 3

12. ēvolō, 1, *intr.* [**volō,** fly], fly *or* rush forth. 1

15. dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [**perdō,** destroy], destroy utterly; lose. 2

1. deinceps, *adv.*, one after the other, in succession. 1

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, *tr.*, cut. 2

2. imprūdēns, -entis, *adj.* [**in-** + **prūdēns,** prudent], off one's guard. 1

3. māteria, -ae, *f.*, material; wood, timber. 4

---

3. quī essent, mīsissent: a clause of characteristic.

5. eō, *against them.*

exercitum: on his march from the Veneti he doubtless picked up Sabinus and his legions. See map facing p. 259.

quī, *but they.*

ac, *than* or *from:* see *aliam atque,* **9,** 20.

7. contendissent: the mood is due only to indirect discourse.

9. initium, *edge.*

11. dispersīs nostrīs: just as they had been surprised at the Sabis, II, **19-20.**

13. complūribus: of the enemy.

14. longius, *too far.*

impedītiōribus, *very difficult.*

Chap. **29.** *Caesar ravages the country and withdraws to winter quarters.*

2. nē quis impetus, *that no attack.*

inermibus . . . mīlitibus: ablative absolute.

4. conversam ad hostem, *with their tops turned toward the enemy.*

prō vāllō, *to serve as a rampart.* Caesar cut a way through the forest, with this rampart on each side.

FIG. 140
ROAD BUILDING AND DEVASTATION

The soldiers on the left are building a road. They are cutting down a tree, carrying off timber, and emptying baskets of stones on spots that need them. Their shields stand on the ground, with helmets hanging on them, ready for quick use in case of an attack. Against the camp wall stand two Dacian heads on stakes. On the right, cavalry gallop off on a raid. In the upper right hand corner a soldier is burning an enemy's house.

diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs collocāvit.

6. pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle. 2

9. continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**continuus,** continuous], continuance, succession. 1

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. 1

6. cōnfectō, lit. *finished = cleared.*

7. ipsī: the Morini themselves, in contrast with their animals and baggage.

9. sub pellibus: in winter the soldiers lived in huts.

12. reliquīs cīvitātibus: not in Aquitania, however.

THE STORY OF BOOK IV

WAR WITH THE GERMANS. FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

The campaign of 55 B.C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were first carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel. The map facing page 301 shows how completely Gaul had come under Caesar's control, either by conquest or by peaceful submission. But Caesar knew that his task was not yet finished. If the Rhine was to be the Roman frontier (Int. 3), the Germans must be taught to respect that frontier. And the unknown Britain, lying so near Gaul, tempted him. It might be worth conquering. If not, at any rate both Gauls and Britons must be shown that Britain could afford neither to send aid to Gaul nor to offer refuge to Gauls who wished to escape from Caesar. Only when Caesar had shown that neither the Rhine nor the Channel could stop a Roman army, might he expect Gaul to rest quietly under Roman government.

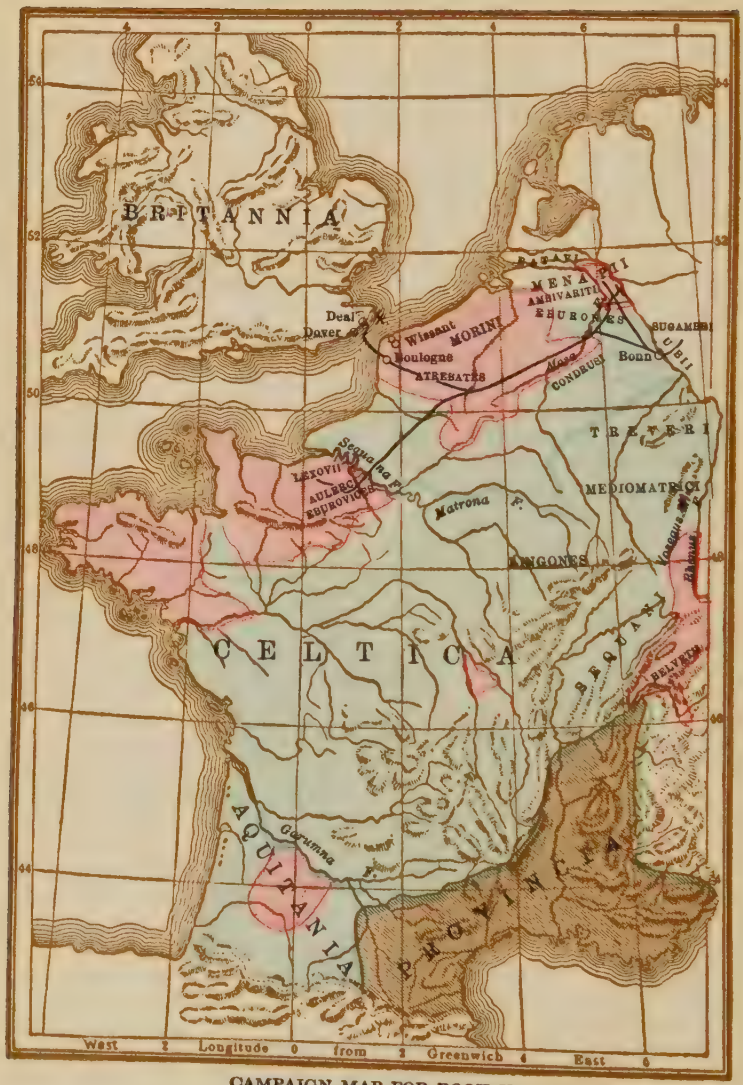
Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been driven out of their homes, far in the interior of Germany, by the Suebi. After wandering homeless for three years, they crossed the Rhine into the Gallic possessions of the Menapii and there spent the early months of 55. Nothing shows more clearly the lack of unity among the states of Gaul than the indifference with which the neighbors of the Menapii regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some states even tried to repeat the mistake of the Sequani (I, **31**), and invited the Germans to settle in their territory and make common cause with them against Caesar or the rest of Gaul. But Caesar interfered at once by marching against the Germans. Using as a pretext a treacherous attack by a small body of German cavalry, he made himself guilty of the most treacherous and indefensible act in his whole career. He arrested all their leaders, who had come to apologize for the attack, and then surprised and slew almost the whole German host, men, women, and children. If the deed has an excuse, it lies in the absolute necessity of teaching the other Germans never to invade Gaul.

Caesar decided to reënforce this terrible lesson by making the Germans fear for their own territory. The Sugambri, who had given refuge to the remnants of the Usipetes and the Tencteri, refused to give them

up at Caesar's command. Moreover the Ubii begged Caesar's aid against the Suebi. In the marvelously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge across the Rhine, over which he led his entire army. At the first news of his approach the Sugambri and the Suebi had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests. Since it was no part of Caesar's purpose to subjugate these peoples, he contented himself with ravaging the nearer possessions of the Sugambri. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and destroyed his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

Caesar had neither time nor ships enough to attempt a real invasion of Britain this summer, nor could he learn by inquiry anything about the country and the amount of force needed for accomplishing his purpose there. Therefore he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition which would at least show him what preparations he must make for the next year. Taking only two legions he sailed from Boulogne to Deal. A landing was effected only after a sharp struggle with the Britons. A few near-by tribes surrendered, but Caesar waited for the arrival of his cavalry before penetrating the interior. Just as the cavalry transports were approaching the island, a storm not only drove them back to Gaul but shattered the main fleet, which lay in an exposed roadstead. Caesar beat off an attack of the natives, repaired his ships, and sailed back to Gaul.

Before leaving for Britain, Caesar had received the submission of a part of the Morini. During his absence the remainder of his army harried the Menapii and the rest of the Morini. On the return voyage two ships were driven out of their course, and the men carried by them were attacked by the Morini. A vigorous raid at last caused the final submission of the Morini; but the Menapii still remained unconquered in their forests and swamps.



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR BOOK IV

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. The only additions to the red area of the map facing p. 259 are the territory of the Morini and a part of that of the Menapii.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. There is no change from the blue area of the map facing p. 259.

Battlefields are marked by x.

Every important geographical point in this year's campaign has been discussed at great length by many scholars, but the editor believes that the locations shown on this map should be regarded as certain. Mr. Holmes agrees with some other authorities in locating the battle with the Usipetes and the Tencteri near the junction of the Mosella and the Rhine, but his discussion is less fair than usual. His own arguments, carefully sifted, are decisive for the location near the junction of the Mosa and the Rhine. He locates the bridge near the mouth of the Mosella, but only because he puts the battle near that point. Since it was not fought there, there is no valid argument for putting the bridge at any other point than Bonn. Mr. Holmes has proved, in the second edition of his *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, that Boulogne was the sailing point for the first expedition to Britain, although in his first edition he championed Wissant. He has also proved decisively that the landing point of this expedition was just south of Deal, although many had argued that it was west of Dover.

COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum

---

1. Cn., *abbr.* for **Gnaeus** (nē′ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* 1

Pompeius, -ī, *m.*, Gnaeus Pompeius (nē′ŭs pŏm-pē′yŭs), *better*, Pompey, *triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C.* 1

2. Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, the Usipetes (ū-sĭp′ē-tēz). 4

Tēncterī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tencteri (tĕngk′tē-rī). 4

5. Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun*, **Suēbī** (Bhi), the Suebi (swē′bī), *a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes.* ∗

8. quotannīs, *adv.* [**quot,** as many as +**annus,** year], every year, yearly. 2

Chap. **1-4.** *Two German tribes cross the Rhine. Description of the German tribes who are concerned in the following narrative.*

Chap. **1.** *Two German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The warlike character and training of the Suebi.*

1. quī agrees with *annus*, though its antecedent is *hieme;* see note on *quod*, I, **38**, 3.

quī . . . cōnsulibus, *in the year when*, etc.

Cn. Pompeiō, etc.: Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate: Int. 11. Their election as consuls for the year 55 had been planned at a meeting with Caesar in the preceding spring. Caesar had been given his province for only five years, and he needed more time. These consuls secured another five years for him, and an important province for each of themselves.

4. nōn longē ā marī: probably near Emmerich, a few miles above the point at which the Rhine divides to flow around the island of the Batavi. See map facing p. 301.

quō: the adverb.

8. singula: i.e., a thousand from each canton.

bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agricultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et

Fig. 141
A GALLIC SWORD
This was found at Alesia.

9. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.*, remain, stay. 2

10. vicis, *gen.* (*no nom.*), change; *only in the phrase* **in vicem,** alternately, in turn. 1

11. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay *or* remain behind, remain. *

12. sēparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], separate; **sēparātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. 1

14. colō, colere, coluī, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in. 1

15. lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk. 1

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, *intr.*, live, subsist on. 2

16. vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase. 1

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. 1

17. disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [discō, learn], learning; discipline. 2

assuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. 2

10. illōs: i.e., those who are fighting.

annō post, lit. *afterwards by a year = the following year.*

12. ratiō atque ūsus, *the training and practice in.*

prīvātī . . . est: i.e., all the land belonged to the state, none to individuals. This is generally true of barbarous peoples.

14. frūmentō, *on grain:* ablative of means with *vīvunt.*

maximam partem: case? App. 128, *b*: G.-L. 334, R. 2: A. 397, *a*: B. 185, 1: H.-B. 388: H. 416, 2.

15. multumque . . . vēnātiōnibus, *engage much in hunting.*

16. quae rēs, *a practice which:* subject of *alit* and *efficit.*

et cibī genere, *both because of the kind of food.*

17. quod . . . faciunt explains *lībertāte.*

ā puerīs, *from boyhood.*

nūllō officiō assuēfactī, *trained by no service:* ablative of means.

immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum

---

19. immānis, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. 1

20. frīgidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. 1

vestītus, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō, clothe], clothing. 1

22. lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum, *tr.*, wash; *in pass.*, bathe. 1

3. dēsīderō, 1, *tr.*, desire, wish. 1

dēlectō, 1, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. 1

4. impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive; *with* **pretium,** great. 1

5. dēfōrmis, -e, *adj.* [fōrma, form], misshapen, unsightly. 1

7. dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum, *intr.* [saliō, leap], leap from *or* down, alight, dismount. *

8. vēstīgium, -gī, *n.*, track, footprint; spot. 2

---

19. hominēs: predicate accusative; *makes (them) men of*, etc.

in eam . . . addūxērunt, lit. *have brought themselves into this custom* = *have trained themselves to such hardiness.*

20. locīs frīgidissimīs, *though their climate is extremely cold:* ablative absolute.

vestītūs depends on *quicquam*. On the choice of indefinites, see App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

Chap. **2.** *Their freedom from luxury, and their cavalry tactics.*

1. Mercātōribus: dative of possessor.

eō, ut . . . habeant, *on this account, that they may have persons to whom they may sell what they have captured in war.*

cēperint: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.

2. quam quō dēsīderent, *than because they desire.*

3. iūmentīs importātīs nōn ūtuntur: the important word is the participle *importātīs*, as if he had said *they do not import the horses which they need.*

4. quaeque = *et quae.*

6. haec: antecedent of *quae* (*iūmenta*).

summī . . . efficiunt, lit. *make that they be (capable) of the greatest labor.* See App. 104.

7. pedibus, *on foot.*

9. eōrum mōribus, *according to their standards.*

mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum centum agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam

---

10. turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly; shameful, dishonorable. 2

iners, -ertis, *adj.* [in- + **ars,** skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. 1

ephippium, -pī, *n.*, saddle. 1

11. ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ephippium,** saddle], using a saddle. 1

12. quamvīs, *adv.*, however; although. 1

13. remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, *intr.*, become weak. 1

1. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, commendation; glory. 3

5. Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū′bĭ-ī). *

6. flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [**flōreō,** flower], flourishing, prosperous. 2

captus, -ūs, *m.* [**capiō,** take], comprehension, ideas. 1

quamquam, *conj.*, although. 1

---

10. habētur, *is considered.*

ephippiīs: the ancient saddles were of little real use, since they commonly had no stirrups.

12. quamvīs paucī, *however few (they may be).* Caesar does not exaggerate the strength of the German cavalry. In his seventh year in Gaul, when he had to face a revolt of the whole country, he hired a body of German cavalry. In three decisive battles they saved the day for him.

Vīnum: but we know from Tacitus that they drank great quantities of a kind of beer.

Chap. **3.** *Their treatment of the Ubii.*

1. Pūblicē, *for the state.*

2. vacāre agrōs: subject of *esse.*

3. ūnā ex parte: i.e., on the east of the Suebi.

5. Ad alteram partem: i.e., the northwest. See map in front cover.

fuit, *was (once);* i.e., before their defeat by the Suebi.

6. ut . . . Germānōrum, *according to the ideas of the Germans.*

paulō: with *hūmāniōrēs.*

FIG. 142

A BRITISH COIN

Left: **Com(mi) F(ilius)**
Right: **Eppillus**

Commius, mentioned first in IV, **21**, afterwards revolted against Caesar and fled to Britain, where his three sons Eppillus, Tincommius, and Verica or Virica, became kings. Several of their coins are shown in this book.

sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfirmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tēncterī, quōs suprā dīximus; quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simu-

7. hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**homō,** man], natural to man, human; civilized. 1

8. ventitō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* **veniō,** come], keep coming, resort; *with* **ad,** visit. 2

11. amplitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**amplus,** large], wide extent, size. 1

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [**gravis,** heavy], heaviness, weight; power. 1

12. humilis, -e, *adj.* [**humus,** the ground], *on the ground;* low, humble. 1

13. īnfirmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **firmus,** strong], weak, feeble. 2

3. Germānia, -ae, *f.,* Germania (jēr-mā′nĭ-ȧ), *better,* Germany. 1

4. triennium, -nī, *n.* [**trēs,** three + **annus,** year], three years. 1

7. dēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [**migrō,** move, migrate], move from *or* away. 2

11. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [**sedeō,** sit], seat, chair; residence, settlement, home. 2

simulō, 1, *tr.* [**similis,** like], make like; pretend. 2

10. cum, *although.*

multīs . . . expertī, *in spite of many attempts in numerous wars.*

Chap. **4.** *The stratagem by which the Germans crossed the Rhine.*

1. In eādem causā, *in the same condition;* i.e., of oppression by the Suebi. It is probable that the Usipetes and Tencteri lived in or near the kingdom of Saxony, to the northeast of the Suebi. Their location on the map in the front of the book shows where the survivors settled after their defeat by Caesar, not their original home.

2. suprā: in **1,** 2.

6. multitūdinis: 430,000 persons, according to a later chapter.

7. trāns: on the German side.

9. vī contendere, *force a passage.*

10. inopiam nāvium: the Menapii had, of course, taken all the boats with them.

lāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiō-

13. īnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], not knowing, not aware. 1

15. metus, -ūs, *m.* [metuō, fear], fear. 2

16. remigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, move], move back, return. 2

1. īnfirmitās, -tātis, *f.* [īnfirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. 2

2. mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [moveō, move], changeable. 1

4. viātor, -ōris, *m.* [via, road], traveler. 1

8. prōnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], announce, tell. 1

audītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, rumor. 1

13. equitātū: although cavalry are persons, they are thought of here as the *means* employed by the Germans.

19. eōrum cōpiīs, *on their supplies;* those which the Menapii had stored up for their own use.

Chap. **5-6.** *Caesar, fearing that the Gauls and the Germans will unite against him, hastens his preparations for war.*

Chap. **5.** *Caesar fears the fickleness of the Gauls.*

3. nihil . . . committendum, *that no confidence should be placed in them.*

4. cōnsuētūdinis: see App. 103.

utī: with *cōgant, quaerant, circumsistat,* and *cōgat.*

7. quāsque =*et quās.*

8. rēbus, *stories.*

FIG. 143
A BRITISH COIN

nibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cognōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs, invītātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent: Omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocā-

---

10. paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, —, *tr., impers.*, it causes regret; makes one repent; *when translated as pers. verb*, repent (App. 109). 1

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary. 2

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- +**certus,** decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy. 2

11. serviō, 4, *intr.* [**servus,** slave], be a slave to; pay attention to. 1

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictum, *tr.*, form, imagine, devise, invent. 2

2. mātūrē, *adv.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3

3. suspicor, 1, *tr.*, suspect, distrust; surmise. *

4. invītō, 1, *tr.*, invite. 2

---

9. quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est, lit. *of which it must repent them:* App. 109: G.-L. 377: A. 354, *b*: B. 209, 1: H.-B. 352, 1: H. 457.

11. plērīque . . . respondeant, *many persons give answers shaped to their wishes;* i.e., the wishes of the questioners.

Chap. **6.** *Caesar joins his army and learns that some Gallic states are welcoming the Germans.*

2. ad exercitum: where was it? See III, **29,** 11, and the map facing p. 301. Caesar himself, as usual, had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

3. ea facta (*esse*), *that those things had happened;* explained by the following clauses.

5. ab Rhēnō discēderent: i.e., to advance farther into Gaul. The purpose of the Gauls was to get help against Caesar.

postulāssent: for the future perfect indicative of the direct form.

6. fore parāta, lit. *would be in a prepared condition.* This is one of the ways of avoiding the rare future infinitive given in the grammars, *parātum īrī.* The infinitive depends on a verb of saying implied in *invītātōs.*

lātius vagābantur, etc.: this only means that small bodies were sent out in various directions to see where they could best settle, and that some of them had got as far as the Condrusi (see the map). The main body remained among the Menapii, between the Mosa and the Rhine.

7. quī refers only to *Condrūsōrum.*

tīs Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfirmātīs equitātūque impe- 10
rātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab iīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī laces- 5
santur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō

---

9. dissimulō, 1, *tr.* [**simulō,** make like], disguise, conceal. 1

10. permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *tr.*, soothe completely, appease. 1

---

10. permulsīs et cōnfirmātīs: Caesar pretended to believe that they were loyal to him and afraid of the Germans.

equitātū: it appears later that he secured 5000.

Chap. **7-10.** *Being met by envoys, Caesar proposes that the Germans settle among the Ubii; he then marches on into a locality whose geographical features he describes.*

Chap. **7.** *Caesar is met on his march by German envoys, who demand land.*

1. dēlēctīs, *having levied.*

iter coepit: for his route see the map facing p. 301, and the one on this page. The envoys must have met him near the point where the route crosses the Mosa.

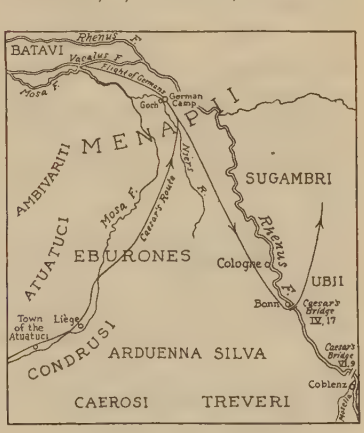
Caesar was now following for the second time the route which he followed as far as Mt. Falhize in Book II, and the one used by the main advance of the Germans at the beginning of the World War. See Int. 71. He probably crossed the Mosa (Meuse) a little north of Liège, the first town taken by the Germans in that war.

3. Ā quibus: the Germans.

4. haec, *as follows.* The haughty tone of the speech recalls the speeches of Divico, I, **13,** and of Ariovistus, I, **36.**

priōrēs, *first;* i.e., they were not the aggressors.

5. recūsāre quīn, *refuse to:* App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 595, 2.



MAP FOR IV, 7-19

sit ā maiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere: vēnisse sē invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint. Sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum iīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre, neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē

---

8. ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], cast *or* drive out, expel. 2

9. ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor, use], useful, serviceable. 1

3. tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, *tr.*, watch, guard, protect. 1

---

7. quīcumque = *omnibus* (dative with *resistere*) *quī*.

8. Haec tamen dīcere, *this, however, they would say.*

10. attribuant: the subjunctive represents an imperative of the direct form.

11. ūnīs, *alone.*

12. reliquum nēminem, *no one else.*

13. quem possint: a clause of characteristic.

Chap. **8.** *Caesar refuses Gallic land, but offers to let them settle among the Ubii.*

1. quae vīsum est, *what seemed best. quae* is the object of *respondēre*, to be supplied from *respondit.*

exitus, *the conclusion.*

3. vērum, *right,* or *just.*

quī: supply *eōs* as the antecedent.

7. Suēbōrum iniūriīs, *the wrongs done them by the Suebi.*

8. hoc: i.e., that they allow the Usipetes and Tencteri to settle among them. The arrangement would have been advantageous to both parties; for, as the Ubii were nearly a match for the Suebi, the combined Ubii, Usipetes, and Tencteri should have more than held their own.

Chap. **9.** *The envoys ask for time to consider, but Caesar marches on.*

2. post diem tertium, *on the third day;* i.e., the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.

propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricōrum, Tribo-

3. propius, *adv., and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, *b*) [*comp. of* **prope,** near], nearer. *

5. frūmentor, 1, *intr.* [**frūmentum,** grain], get grain, forage. 4

6. Ambivaritī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Ambivariti (ăm′bĭ-văr′ĭ-tī). 1

Mosa, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the *river* Mosa (mō′sȧ), *now* the Meuse. *

7. interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place between, interpose. 4

1. prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow forth, rise. 1

Vosegus, -ī, *m.* (BCg), the Vosegus (vŏs′ē-gŭs), *better,* the Vosges Mountains. 1

3. Vacalus, -ī, *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (văk′ȧ-lŭs) *river, now* the Waal. 1

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (bȧ-tā′vī). 1

5. Lepontiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pŏn′shyī). 1

6. Mediomatricī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē′dĭ-ō-măt′rĭ-sī). 1

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trĭb′ō-sī). 2

3. propius sē: App. 122, *b*: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, *a*: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, *b*: H. 420, 5.

5. diēbus: ablative of degree of difference.

6. trāns: to the west.

exspectārī equitēs: The German cavalry was far superior to Caesar's, and he could afford to take no risk. However, it is probable that the envoys were honest in asking time to consider, for they can have had no power to bind their people to accept Caesar's entirely unexpected proposition.

Chap. **10.** *Description of the Rhine, the Mosa, and their confluence.*

1. ex monte Vosegō: more correctly from the plateau lying between the Vosges and the Cevennes.

2. parte quādam, etc.: the Rhine divides at the eastern end of the island of the Batavi. The southern stream, called Vacalus, flows west till it joins the Mosa. The combined Mosa and Vacalus flow on into the sea, making the southern boundary of the island. The confluence of the Mosa and the Vacalus was probably eighty miles from the sea, as Caesar says; but it is now nearer the sea, owing to a change in the river beds.

3. inde: from the confluence.

5. longō spatiō, *in a long course.*

Nantuātium: either there is some mistake, or we know nothing of this tribe of Nantuates.

cōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur, multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XII abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia

7. citātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **citō**, put in motion], swift. 1

8. diffluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [**fluō**, flow], flow in different directions, divide. 1

ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2

10. piscis, -is, *m.*, fish. 1

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg. 1

avis, -is, *f.*, bird. 1

8. īnsulīs effectīs, *making islands.*

10. sunt quī, *there are some who,* is usually followed by the subjunctive of characteristic: App. 230, *b*. Because of this and other peculiarities of language, and because of some geographical errors, many scholars believe that Caesar did not write this chapter.

Chap. **11-15.** *Caesar slaughters the German host in revenge for a treacherous attack.*

Chap. **11.** *Envoys beg for time to consult the Ubii. Caesar grants a short truce.*

2. ut erat cōnstitūtum: translate after *ad . . . revertuntur*. See **9**, 2.

5. antecessissent: implied indirect discourse.

6. quōrum sī, *and if their.*

7. fēcisset: for the future perfect of the direct form.

8. eā condiciōne sē ūsūrōs, *that they would accept the terms;* i.e., the offer to let them settle among the Ubii.

9. trīduī spatium: this seems a short time for the purpose, since the Ubii were some seventy miles away; but there are well authenticated instances of longer rides in less time. The envoys of the Ubii, who were with Caesar, could tell them where to find the authorities, so that no time would be lost in looking them up.

daret: for the imperative of the direct form.

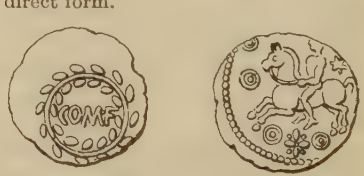


FIG. 144
A BRITISH COIN

Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sē nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

12. At hostēs ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frūmentandī causā erant trāns Mosam profectī nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus cōnsuētūdine

10. illō, *adv.* [**ille,** that], thither, to that place, there (=thither). 1

12. aquātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**aqua,** water], getting water. 1

13. frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, in great numbers, in crowds. 2

14. postulātum, -ī, *n.* [**postulō,** demand], demand, claim, request. 4

17. quoad, *conj.* [**quō,** whither +**ad,** to], till, until. 2

3. octingentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [**octō,** eight], eight hundred. 1

6. indūtiae, -ārum, *f.*, truce. 2

10. eōdem illō pertinēre, *tended to that same object.* See **9,** 6, and note. It is quite likely that Caesar was mistaken. At any rate their request for time to consult the Ubii was perfectly reasonable, for they could not know whether the Ubii would respect Caesar's command (**8,** 8).

13. hūc: i.e., to the camping ground.

14. convenīrent: see *daret*, l. 9, note.

15. quī nūntiārent, *men to give orders.*

17. sustinērent: i.e., they were simply to defend themselves.

accessisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect.

Chap. **12.** *The German cavalry treacherously attack and rout Caesar's cavalry.*

1. ubi prīmum, *as soon as.*

2. erat quīnque mīlium, *consisted of five thousand,* or *was five thousand:* a predicative genitive like that in I, **29,** 5.

3. equitēs: why not the ablative after the comparative *amplius*? App. 139, *b*. For this attack of 800 cavalry on 5000, compare **2,** 11.

quī erant profectī: see **9,** 4.

6. impetū factō: this attack cannot have been authorized by the German leaders. They certainly wanted a truce, whatever their motives may have been, and the defeat of Caesar's cavalry was not important enough to tempt them to break it. Either the German cavalry had failed to receive orders, or it could not resist the delight of attacking a despised foe.

7. cōnsuētūdine: see **2,** 7.

suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallōrum īnfirmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē

---

8. suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [sub +fodiō, dig], dig under; stab underneath. 1

12. septuāgintā (LXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [septem, seven], seventy. 1

5. dēmentia, -ae, *f.* [mēns, mind], madness, folly. 1

9. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tôr), *a treasury officer in charge of the finances of the army.* 3

commūnicō, 1, *tr.* [commūnis, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. 1

---

9. ita . . . ēgērunt, *drove them back in such a panic.*

10. prius quam vēnissent: the subjunctive is probably due to attraction, but may be explained by App. 236, *b*.

13. genere: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395: A. 403, *a*: B. 215: H.-B. 413: H. 469, 2.

15. interclūsō: translate by a relative clause.

Chap. **13.** *Caesar decides on vengeance, and detains the German leaders, who have come to apologize.*

1. neque iam, *no longer.*

4. exspectāre: subject of *esse*.

dum augērentur: App. 235, *b*.

5. summae . . . esse, *was* (*an act*) *of the utmost folly.*

6. quantum auctōritātis, *what prestige.*

Fig. 145

THE ROMANS STRENGTHEN THEIR FORTIFICATIONS AND RECEIVE A SUBMISSIVE DELEGATION

At the left is a Roman camp, its gate protected as described in Int. 52. Tents and standards are seen within. In the middle background is a circular fortified post, within which stand two carts holding barrels, which indicate that the post is provisioned. In front of this post, soldiers are building more fortifications.

At the right the general, with three officers behind him, is receiving a delegation which offers humble apologies.

quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid

10. praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send by; let pass. 1

11. māne, *adv.*, early in the morning. 1

perfidia, -ae, *f.* [**perfidus,** faithless], treachery, perfidy. 2

simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**simulō,** make like], simulation, pretense, deceit. 2

9. quaestōre: see Int. 39.

nē . . . praetermitteret, *not to let any opportunity for battle go by.* This depends on *cōnsiliō.*

11. quod, (*namely*) *that.*

13. ad eum . . . vēnērunt: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

14. suī pūrgandī causā, *to excuse themselves.* Construction? App. 291, *a*: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, *c*: B. 339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

contrā atque, *contrary to what.*

15. ut . . . impetrārent, *to obtain whatever* [lit. *if anything*] *they could in the way of a truce by deceiving him.*

possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōnfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma

17. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. 1

6. -ne, *interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, not translated; in indirect questions,* whether. 2

adversus, *prep. with acc.* [**adversus,** turned against], against. 1

an, *conj., used to introduce the second member of alternative questions,* or, or rather. *

9. irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**in** + **rumpō,** break], break into, rush into. 1

16. Quōs oblātōs (*esse*), *that they had come into his power.*

17. retinērī: this, with what follows, was a shocking violation of the law of nations. Compare what Caesar says of the action of the Veneti, III, **9**, 8. Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed in the Roman Senate that Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment. Caesar's motives may be summed up as follows: (1) a determination to teach the Germans, once for all, never to invade Gaul; (2) a determination to counteract at once the bad effect which the cavalry defeat must have had on the already disaffected Gauls; (3) irritation at the treacherous attack, although everything shows that it was not authorized by the leaders; (4) a real doubt as to whether the Germans were not trying to gain time for the return of their formidable cavalry; (5) the certainty that a pitched battle with the entire force of Germans would cost him the lives of many soldiers.

Chap. **14.** *Caesar surprises the German camp.*

This camp was at or near Goch. See the map on p. 309. On Goch in the World War see Int. 73.

1. Aciē . . . īnstitūtā: usually an army has to march in column along a road. Here the country was open and level, so that the army could march in battle formation.

2. prius quam possent: App. 236, *b.*

4. suōrum: i.e., their leaders, who had been detained by Caesar.

5. perturbantur -ne praestāret, *were in great confusion, (not knowing) whether it was better.* On the kind of question see App. 214; 264, *c.*

9. quī: supply *iī* as antecedent.

capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interfīcī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā magnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

---

13. passim, *adv.*, in all directions, in disorder. 1

2. abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away. 2

3. cōnfluēns, -entis, *f.* [cōnfluō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. 1

5. praecipitō, 1, *tr.* [praeceps, headlong], throw *or* hurl headlong. 1

6. pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be killed, perish. 2

---

14. cōnsectandōs: the beginning of the next chapter shows that the object was massacre, not the taking of prisoners.

Chap. **15.** *The Germans are routed and slaughtered.*

3. Rhēnī: i.e., the Vacalus; see note on **10,** 2, and map on p. 309.

4. reliquā, *further.*

5. reliquī periērunt: some must have escaped. At any rate in later years there were Usipetes and Tencteri living east of the Rhine, not far from this battlefield. But they may be accounted for by the escape of the cavalry.

6. oppressī, *overwhelmed.*

ad ūnum, *to a man.*

7. ex, *after.*

8. mīlium: see note on **12,** 2.

9. discēdendī . . . fēcit: if Caesar had believed the leaders guilty of treachery, they above all others should have been punished.

12. lībertātem, *permission* to remain.

However unjust and brutal Caesar's treatment of the Germans may have been, it served his purpose. More than a year later, when Caesar had lost a legion and a half and all Gaul seemed ripe for revolt, the Treveri tried to get German help. But the Germans replied (V, **55**) that the thing had been tried twice, by Ariovistus and by the Tencteri; they would tempt fortune no more.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tēncterōrum quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant

1. Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Germānus,** German], of *or* pertaining to the Germans, German. 1

2. iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**iūs,** right], in accordance with law *or* right, valid. 4

10. Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-găm′brī). 4

13. fīniō, 4, *tr.* [**fīnis,** limit], limit, bound. 1

14. cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4

16. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond *or* across the Rhine; *pl. as noun*, **Trānsrhēnānī,** the people across the Rhine. 1

Chap. **16-19.** *Caesar crosses the Rhine, as a warning to the Germans.*

Chap. **16.** *Caesar's reasons for deciding to cross the Rhine.*

3. quod . . . voluit: in apposition with *illa*.

4. suīs . . . rēbus, *for their own possessions, too.*

cum intellegerent, (*as they would*) *when they should see:* implied indirect discourse for the future indicative.

6. Accessit etiam quod, lit. *there was added also the fact that* =*moreover*, or *and besides*.

7. suprā: see **9,** 4.

12. (ut) dēderent: object of *postulārent*.

13. sē refers to the subject of *exīstimāret*, not to the speaker; so *suī*, l. 14.

14. cūr postulāret: mood? App. 268, III; 210, *a*.

suī . . . Rhēnum, *that anything across the Rhine belong to* (lit. *be of*) *his authority or control.*

17. obsidēs dederant: see note on II, **35,** 5.

ōrābant, *kept begging.* The envoys had been with him for some time, having come before the battle with the Germans; see **8,** 7.

ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne amīcitiae populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcen-

---

19. occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business. 2

20. trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry across, bring over, transport. *

22. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus (ā′rĭ-ō-vĭs′tŭs), *a king of the Germans.* *

5. rapiditās, -tātis, *f.* [rapidus, swift], swiftness. 1

FIG. 146
CASSIS

The *cassis* is mentioned in VII, **45**, 5 as the distinctive helmet of Caesar's cavalry.

19. occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae, *affairs of state.*

20. trānsportāret: in the same construction as *ferret*, l. 18.

21. reliquī temporis, *for the future.*

futūrum: this and the following infinitives depend on a verb of saying implied in *ōrābant.*

24. opīniōne . . . Rōmānī, *by the general knowledge of the friendship of the Romans (for them).*

Chap. **17.** *Description of Caesar's bridge across the Rhine.*

2. tūtum: an enemy could more easily prevent a landing from boats, and in case of defeat boats would offer a dangerous means of retreat.

3. neque suae . . . statuēbat, *he considered it inconsistent with his own dignity*, etc. *dignitātis* is a predicative possessive genitive. The construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4. summa prōpōnēbātur, *presented itself as very great.*

5. lātitūdinem: the bridge was probably built near Bonn, where the river is a little more than a quarter of a mile wide.

6. id contendendum, *that he ought to make the effort.*

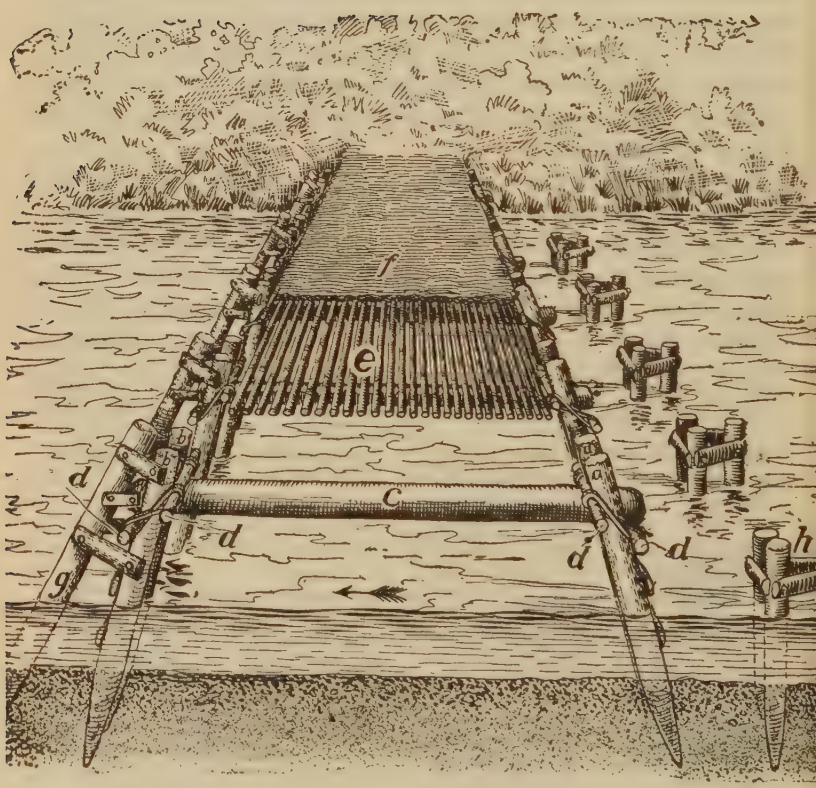


FIG. 147
CAESAR'S BRIDGE

a, a, *tigna bīna*, l. 8
b, b, *iis contrāria duo* (*tigna*), l. 13
c, *bipedālis trabs*, l. 16
d, d, d, d, *fibulae*, l. 17
e, *dērēcta māteria*, l. 21
f, *longuriī crātēsque*, l. 22
g, *sublica obliquē ācta*, l. 23
h, *aliae* (*sublicae*) *suprā pontem*, l. 25

dum exercitum exīstimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram

8. tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, timber. 2

sēsquipedālis, -e, *adj.* [**sēsqui-,** one and a half +**pēs,** foot], a foot and a half thick. 1

10. immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [in +**mittō,** send], send *or* let into, insert. 2

11. dēfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**fīgō,** fix], fix *or* fasten down, drive in. 1

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile driver. 1

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile. 2

dērēctē, *adv.* [**dērēctus,** straight], straight. 1

12. perpendiculum, -ī, *n.*, plummet, plumb line. 1

prōnē, *adv.* slanting downward. 1

fastīgātē, *adv.* [**fastīgātus,** sloping], sloping. 1

8. bīna, *two.* The distributive is used because there were many such timbers and they were handled two at a time. See plan, *a*, *a*.

dīmēnsa ad, *measured according to;* i.e., they were made shorter or longer according to the depth of the river where they were driven into its bed.

9. intervāllō . . . iungēbat, *he joined together* [by spiking wooden crosspieces on them] *with a space of two feet between them.* See plan and the diagram of the pile driver. **intervāllō** is an ablative of attendant circumstance.

10. Haec . . . dēfīxerat, *when he had let them down into the river by machines and had secured them there.* They were probably floated out to the raft on which the pile driver stood, and were then handled by a derrick or some such simple machine. *dēfīxerat*: mood? App. 241, *b*: G.-L. 584: A. 548: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4.

11. nōn . . . perpendiculum, *not straight to the plumb line* [vertically], *like a pile;* i.e., as piles are usually driven.

12. ut . . . prōcumberent, *so that they inclined downstream.*

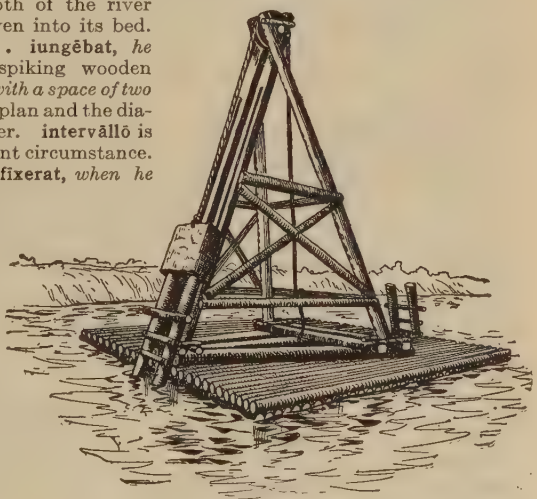


FIG. 148
PILE DRIVER

flūminis prōcumberent, iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque, īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrā-

14. quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**quadrāgintā,** forty], forty each. 1

16. īnsuper, *adv.* [**super,** above], above, on the top, from above. 1

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [**bis,** twice + **pēs,** foot], of two feet, two feet thick. 1

17. iūnctūra, -ae, *f.* [**iungō,** join], joining. 1

distō, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand apart, be apart *or* separated. 1

utrimque, *adv.* [**uterque,** each *of two*], on each side, on both sides. 2

fībula, -ae, *f.*, clasp, fastening. 1

18. disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō,** shut], shut off; hold *or* keep apart, separate. 1

13. iīs . . . statuēbat: i.e., a similar pair of piles was driven into the river bed opposite to these, forty feet downstream (*ab īnferiōre parte*), but sloping against the current. See plan, *b*, *b*.

14. quadrāgēnum: form? App. 16, *e*: G.-L. 33, 4: A. 49, *d*: B. 25, 6: H.-B. 71, 4: H. 84, 3.

The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water; the roadway was therefore a little less than forty feet.

16. Haec utraque, *these two pairs*, is the subject of *distinēbantur*.

A two-foot beam, exactly filling the space between the piles of each pair (*quantum . . . distābat*), was laid across from one pair of piles to the pair which faced it (plan, *c*). These pairs sloped toward each other, and although they were driven into the bottom they would sway with the current and would tend to fall together when the crossbeam had to carry a weight. Therefore they were held at the proper distance apart (*distinēbantur*) by a pair of fastenings (*fībulae*) at each end of the two-foot crossbeam.

quantum . . . distābat, lit. *as much as the joining of the timbers stood apart*. *quantum* is an accusative of extent of space and has *bipedālibus* as its antecedent.

17. fībulīs: it is not certain what these "fastenings" were. Those shown in the plan (*d*, *d*) are simple and effective, and are occasionally used in modern engineering. The two-foot crossbeam rests on a crossbar, which is spiked firmly to the outer sides of the piles. Another crossbar is laid loosely in the opposite angle, and the outer ends of the two crossbars are lashed firmly together. These two crossbars are the *fībulae*. Any ingenious pupil can make a model which will show the effectiveness of this arrangement.

18. quibus refers to *fībulīs*. It is in the ablative absolute with *disclūsīs* and *revīnctīs*.

disclūsīs: by the crossbeam and the piles.

in . . . revīnctīs, *bound together in*

FIG. 149
A BRITISH COIN

riam partem revīnctīs tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contegēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

20. aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. 2

artē, *adv.* [**artus,** close], closely, firmly. 1

21. illigō, 1, *tr.* [**ligō,** bind], attach, hold *or* bind together. 1

dērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dērigō,** put in line], straight. 1

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], throw into *or* upon; put *or* place on. 3

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [**tegō,** cover], cover up, cover. 1

22. crātēs, -is, *f.*, wickerwork; fascine (*bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.*). 1

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [**sternō,** strew], strew over, cover over. 2

sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; **nihilō sētius,** none the less, nevertheless. 2

23. oblīquē, *adv.* [**oblīquus,** slanting], obliquely, slantwise. 1

26. truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk *of a tree.* 1

the opposite direction; i.e., opposite to the direction of their separation.

19. ea rērum nātūra, *such was the nature of the structure.*

20. quō . . . incitāvisset, lit. *by what amount a greater force of water drove itself* = *the more the strength of the current increased.* On *hōc, quō,* see App. 148, *a.* For mood of *incitāvisset,* see App. 274.

hōc . . . tenērentur, *the more firmly the parts of the structure were bound together.*

21. Haec refers to the part of the structure already described, for which Caesar has no name. In modern engineering it is called a "bent." There were probably between fifty and sixty such bents. They were connected by timbers laid from one crossbeam to the next, lengthwise of the bridge (*dērēctā māteriā*). Plan, *e.*

22. nihilō sētius: i.e., although the bridge was already very strong.

23. et is correlative with *et* in l. 25; *both . . . and.*

oblīquē: i.e., they were driven in with a greater slant than the double piles had. See plan, *g.*

24. quae prō ariete subiectae exciperent, *which, set below as a buttress, were to withstand,* etc.

25. aliae: supply *sublicae agēbantur.* There is nothing in the text to show the number of these piles, but the plan (*h*) suggests an effective defense.

spatiō: ablative of degree of difference with *suprā.*

27. essent missae is subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for a future perfect indicative.

28. neu: why not *neque*? App. 188, *b.*

18. Diēbus decem quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tēncterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque

---

9. exportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry out *or* away. 1

10. sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. 1

2. succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [sub +caedō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. 2

4. posteāquam, *conj.* [posteā, afterwards +quam, than], after. 4

10. hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*) there, in that place. 1

Chap. **18.** *Caesar crosses the river and marches into the country of the Sugambri.*

1. Diēbus decem quibus, lit. *within ten days within which =within ten days after;* compare *paucīs diēbus quibus*, III, **23,** 3.

coepta erat: why passive? App. 86, *a.*

5. quibus petentibus: translate by a clause, *and when they*, etc.

7. hortantibus iīs, lit. *those urging =on the advice of those.*

8. quōs . . . habēbant: i.e., the cavalry, **16,** 6, and probably other survivors of the massacre, **15,** 5, note.

Chap. **19.** *Caesar ravages their country. As the Suebi have withdrawn, he returns to Gaul.*

3. sī premerentur: implied indirect discourse for the future.

6. nūntiōs dīmīsisse utī, *had sent messengers (urging) that.*

9. hunc . . . ferē, *that this place had been chosen almost in the middle.*

FIG. 150
THE RHINE AT BONN
Caesar's bridge was at or near this point.

ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus

14. obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**obsideō,** blockade], siege; oppression, 1
līberō, 1, *tr.* [**līber,** free], make *or* set free, release, deliver. 2
16. ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**ūtilis,** useful], usefulness, advantage. 1
1. exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, short, small. 1

10. hīc, ibi: both words refer to the same place.
12. iīs rēbus: explained by the substantive (*ut*) clauses of desire which follow.
13. ut . . . iniceret: see note at the end of Chap. **15.**
16. prōfectum: notice the *ō*; from *prōficiō*.

Chap. **20-22.** *Caesar makes preparations for an expedition to Britain.*

Chap. **20.** *Caesar decides on the expedition. He can get no information from the Gauls.*

1. Exiguā . . . reliquā: the ablative absolute is adversative: *although only a small part . . . , (and) in spite of the fact that the winters are early.*

ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam

8. incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + **cognitus,** known; **cognōscō,** learn], unknown. 2

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2

CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

4. hostibus nostrīs: indirect object of *subministrāta.*

subministrāta auxilia: for an instance see III, **9,** 26. In II, **14,** 8, we learn that Britain had afforded refuge to some of Caesar's enemies.

6. magnō . . . fore, *it would be of great advantage to him.*

sī adisset, etc.: for the future perfect of the direct form. These clauses give the real object of the expedition, which was only preparatory to that of the following year.

8. quae . . . incognita: the Gauls may have deceived Caesar; at any rate there are indications that some Gauls knew a good deal about Britain: in II, **4,** 19, we learn that a king of the Suessiones had been king of a part of Britain besides; and in VI, **13,** we learn that Gallic Druids went to Britain to study.

praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat.

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem iubet convenīre. Interim, cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus

5. trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [**trāiciō,** hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. 1

9. Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Britain, British; *m. pl. as noun*, the Britanni (brĭ-tăn′ī); *better*, the Britons. 1

11. obtemperō, 1, *intr.* [**temperō,** control oneself], obey. 1

13. Commius, -mī, *m.*, Commius (kŏm′ĭ-ŭs). 3

9. illō: the adverb.

hīs ipsīs: the traders; dative with *nōtum*.

11. vocātīs mercātōribus, *although he summoned traders.*

12. neque, etc.: a series of indirect questions, depending on *reperīre*.

Chap. **21.** *Caesar sends men in advance to gain information and to advise submission.*

2. Volusēnum: either the subject of *esse* or the object of *praemittit;* supply *eum* in one place or the other. See what Caesar says of Volusenus in III, **5,** 7; he is the only tribune whom Caesar mentions with honor.

nāvī longā: see Int. 64.

6. Hūc: at a harbor among the Morini. This was the modern Boulogne: see map on p. 326. Boulogne was the harbor most used by the British in the World War.

10. quī polliceantur: a purpose clause, but best translated by a present participle.

dare, obtemperāre: verbs of promising are more often followed by the future infinitive with subject accusative: App. 280, *c*.

13. Atrebātibus superātīs: in the battle with the Nervii, II, **23.**

Commium: see Fig. 114, p. 238.

superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat ne-

15. fidēlis, -e, *adj.* [**fidēs,** faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 1

3. excūsō, 1, *tr.* [**causa,** reason], give reason for; excuse; *with* **sē,** offer apologies. 1

4. imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **perītus,** experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4

6. opportūnē, *adv.* [**opportūnus,** fit], opportunely, seasonably. 1

14. ibi: i.e., among the Atrebates.

15. sibi fidēlem: but Commius became a leader in the general revolt against him three years later. This is why Caesar says *arbitrābātur.*

16. in hīs regiōnibus: i.e., in Belgium.

magnī: genitive of value.

Huic . . . cīvitātēs, *he instructed him to go to whatever states he could.*

18. fidem sequantur, lit. *follow the protection (of) =surrender (to).*

sē: i.e., Caesar.

19. quantum . . . potuit, lit. *(as much) as of opportunity could be given to a man = as much as a man could.*

20. quī . . . audēret: a clause of characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to blame Volusenus. Both the difficulty which Caesar himself experienced in landing with his army and the imprisonment of Commius will show that Volusenus could not possibly have landed and returned.

Chap. **22.** *Caesar accepts the surrender of the Morini, and completes his preparations for sailing.*

3. cōnsiliō, *behavior;* see III, **28.**

hominēs: in apposition with the omitted subject; *being barbarians.*

4. cōnsuētūdinis: of sparing those who voluntarily surrendered.

5. fēcissent, imperāsset: implied indirect discourse for the perfect indicative and the future perfect, respectively.

FIG. 151

ENTRANCE OF HARBOR AT BOULOGNE

Of course the breakwaters were not there in Caesar's day. The harbor was a small river, from which the ships probably had to sail one at a time.

que hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs contractīsque, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs, praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem

9. antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. 1

12. onerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; *with* nāvis, transport, freight ship. *

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw *or* bring together, assemble, collect. 2

16. quōminus, *conj.* [quō, so that + minus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2

9. hās . . . antepōnendās, *engaging in such trivial matters should not interfere with his expedition to Britain;* lit. *be put ahead of Britain.*

12. coāctīs contractīsque, *having levied and brought together.*

13. quod . . . habēbat, lit. *whatever of ships of war he had besides = the ships which he had.*

15. Hūc accēdēbant, lit. *there were added to this number = he had in addition.*

ā . . . octō, *eight miles away.* As the chief harbor was Boulogne, the smaller was Ambleteuse, north of Boulogne. See map on p. 326.

16. tenēbantur quōminus possent, *were kept from being able:* App. 228, *c.*

portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum

---

20. Sulpicius, -cī, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pŭb'lĭ-ŭs sŭl-pĭsh'yŭs rōō'fŭs). 1

1. nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

2. solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, untie; *with or without* **nāvēs,** weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 3

3. cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr.* [**scandō,** climb], climb; go on board, embark. 1

4. tardē, *adv.* [**tardus,** slow], slowly. 1

6. expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], put *or* set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up. 2

7. angustē, *adv.* [**angustus,** narrow], narrowly, closely. 1

8. lītus, -oris, *n.*, seashore, beach, shore. 3

9. nēquāquam, *adv.*, in no way, not at all. 1

---

18. exercitum dūcendum dedit: construction? App. 285, II, *b*: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, *b*, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

Chap. **23-27.** *After a sharp contest Caesar effects a landing and accepts the surrender of the Britons.*

Chap. **23.** *Caesar crosses to Britain and makes preparations for landing.*

1. idōneam tempestātem: a gentle southerly wind and clear weather, with the moon nearly full.

2. tertiā vigiliā: just after midnight, the morning of August 26.

ulteriōrem portum: Ambleteuse. See **22,** 15, and note.

4. tardius, *too late.* The wind changed and delayed them for four days.

hōrā quārtā: about 9 A.M. At this time of year the fourth hour began about 8:30 and ended after 9:30.

5. Britanniam attigit: at Dover. The hills spoken of are the famous chalk cliffs. See Fig. 152.

7. haec, *such.*

10. dum convenīrent: mood? App.

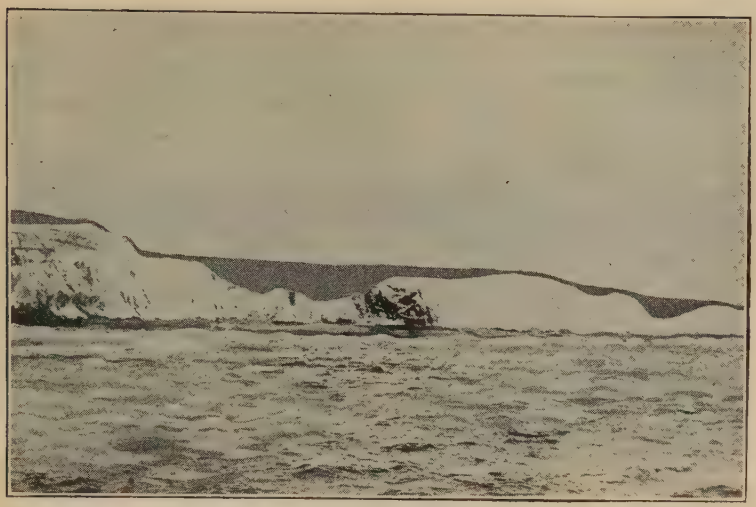


FIG. 152

CLIFFS AT DOVER

This is made from a photograph on which everything modern has been painted out. It shows the harbor about as Caesar saw it while lying at anchor.

locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximēque ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut, cum celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō

14. celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick. 1

īnstabilis, -e, *adj.* [in- + **stabilis,** firm], not firm, unsteady, quickly changing. 1

15. mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [**moveō,** move], movement, motion. 3

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [**nuō,** nod], nod; sign, command; **ad nūtum,** at one's nod *or* command. 2

235, *b*. The clause depends on *exspectāvit*.

reliquae nāvēs, i.e., the cavalry transports, which, however, did not arrive.

ad hōram nōnam: about 3 P.M.

11. in ancorīs, *at anchor*.

13. ut . . . postulārent, *as military science, and especially as seamanship requires;* the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

14. ut administrārentur: the object of *monuit; that all things be done*.

15. ad tempus, *on the instant*.

FIG. 153

THE SHORE SOUTH OF DEAL

This is looking inland from the beach on which Caesar landed. A comparison of this with Fig. 152 makes it clear why Caesar chose this point.

tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō

2. essedārius, -rī, *m.* [**essedum,** a war chariot], charioteer. 1

6. ignōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** +(g) **nōtus,** known], unknown, unfamiliar. 1

18. apertō . . . lītore, *on an open and evenly shelving shore.* This was near Deal. See map, p. 326. The chalk cliffs run almost to Deal, but there the shore is as Caesar describes it.

Chap. **24.** *The Britons try to prevent the landing.*

2. quō genere, *a kind of troops which.*

5. nisi . . . poterant, *could be stationed only in deep water.*

6. mīlitibus: dative of the agent with *dēsiliendum,* etc., *erat.*

ignōtīs . . . manibus: ablatives absolute.

et gravī onere armōrum pressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cūnctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlī-

---

9. āridus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āreō,** be dry], dry; *neut. as noun,* dry land. 3

10. membrum, -ī, *n.,* member of the body, limb. 1

11. īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**suēscō,** become accustomed +**faciō,** make], accustomed, trained. 1

13. alacritās, -tātis, *f.* [**alacer,** lively], liveliness, ardor. 3

4. funda, -ae, *f.,* sling. 1

sagitta, -ae, *f.,* arrow. 1

6. figūra, -ae, *f.* [**fingō,** form], form, shape, figure. 1

10. aquila, -ae, *f.,* an eagle; a standard (*as the* **aquila** *was the chief standard of the legion*). 3

obtestor, 1, *tr.* [**testor,** witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. 1

fēlīciter, *adv.* [**fēlīx,** happy], happily, fortunately. 1

---

7. pressīs, *weighed down as they were:* in agreement with *mīlitibus.*

8. cōnsistendum, *keep their footing.*

9. cum illī, *while the enemy.*

12. nōn ūtēbantur, *did not display.*

13. quō agrees with the nearer antecedent.

Chap. **25.** *Caesar brings his warships into action. A Roman standard bearer sets an example of bravery.*

2. inūsitātior, *less familiar* than that of the transports. The latter were more like the trading vessels, with which the Britons were acquainted.

mōtus . . . expedītior, lit. *whose motion was freer for use =which were more easily managed.*

4. latus apertum, *the right flank,* which was unprotected by shields.

9. quī, *the man who.*

10. aquilam: see Int. 43, and Fig. 154.

citer ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī, cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset, Caesar

---

11. ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], turn out, result. 1

inquam, -is, -it, *def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation,* say. 1

commīlitō, -ōnis, *m.* [mīles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. 1

12. certē, *adv.* [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. 1

meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron.,* my, mine, my own. 1

15. dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. 1

2. firmiter, *adv.* [firmus, strong], firmly. 1

4. aggregō, 1, *tr.* [ad +grex, flock], *unite in a flock;* join, attach. 1

---

13. praestiterō: note the force of the tense; (*whatever the result shall be*) *I at least shall have done my duty.*

15. inter sē, *one another.*

16. ex proximīs nāvibus (*the men*) *from the nearest ships.*

Chap. **26.** *After a fierce contest the Britons are put to flight.*

2. firmiter īnsistere, *get a firm footing.*

signa subsequī: i.e., keep their formation by cohorts.

3. alius . . . nāvī, *men from different ships.*

quibuscumque . . . aggregābat, *gathered about whatever standards they chanced upon;* as in the battle with the Nervii, II, **21**, 13.

5. ubi cōnspexerant: the past perfect instead of the usual perfect with *ubi*, expressing repeated action, just as the following imperfects do.

7. plūrēs, *several* of the enemy.

in ūniversōs, *upon the main body.*

9. scaphās, speculātōria nāvigia: these boats could be rowed into shallow water.

FIG. 154
THE EAGLE
The standard of the legion.

PLATE V—CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN

scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; sēsē obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce eius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere sē imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinqui-

9. scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. 1

speculātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**speculātor,** spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. 1

10. labōrō, 1, *intr.* [**labor,** toil], toil, work hard; labor, suffer. 3

6. ōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [**ōrō,** speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. 1

8. culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. 1

9. imprūdentia, -ae, *f.* [**imprūdēns,** imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight, ignorance. 2

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.*, forgive, pardon. 3

13. longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**longus,** long], far off, distant. 2

11. simul =*simul atque.*

13. neque, *but . . . not.*

longius, *very far.*

14. capere, *reach.* See note on *tardius,* **23,** 4.

Hoc ūnum: the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement.

Chap. **27.** *The Britons sue for peace.*

2. sēsē datūrōs, factūrōs: the regular construction after verbs of promising; see note on *dare,* **21,** 10.

4. suprā: see **21,** 13.

6. cum, *although.*

modō, *in the capacity of,* or *as.*

8. eius reī: the treatment of Commius.

9. ut ignōscerētur, *that they be pardoned.* In what case would "they" be, if expressed? App. 115, *d.*

10. cum lēgātīs missīs petīssent, *after they had sent hostages and begged;* see **21,** 10.

ōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs, cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs mari-

---

16. commendō, 1, *tr.* [**mandō**, intrust], intrust; surrender. 1

3. lēnis, -e, *adj.*, gentle, mild. 1

10. prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō**, carry], carry forward; *pass.*, be carried forward, sail. 1

1. lūna, -ae, *f.*, the moon. 2

---

14. arcessītam, *for whom they had sent.*

15. in agrōs, *to their farms.*

Chap. **28-31.** *A storm turns back Caesar's cavalry and wrecks his fleet. Although he partially repairs the fleet, the Britons are encouraged to attack him.*

Chap. **28.** *The cavalry transports are driven back by a storm.*

1. post . . . quam = *diē quārtō postquam.* When *postquam* is divided, *post* is usually an adverb, *afterwards . . . than.* Here it is a preposition.

As Caesar always sailed by night, we may suppose that these ships did so and that they arrived on the morning of the fifth day after Caesar's arrival. The day of their arrival was August 30. The fifth day before that, by Roman reckoning, was August 26.

2. suprā: see **22**, 15 and **23**, 4.

6. aliae, aliae: the wind must have come from the north northeast. The ships that were farthest out at sea were driven back at once; the others got some shelter near Dover, but as the storm proved too severe they preferred to return to Gaul rather than land on the hostile shore of Britain, miles from Caesar's camp.

8. occāsum: for construction see note on *propius sē*, **9**, 3.

9. cum complērentur, *since they began to fill.*

10. adversā nocte, *in the face of the night.*

Chap. **29.** *The storm and the tide wreck Caesar's fleet.*

1. lūna plēna: there was a full moon on the night of August 30. This is what enables us to calculate the day of Caesar's arrival in Britain.

2. aestūs maximōs: the "spring"

FIG. 155

CLIFFS EAST OF DOVER

The cavalry transports, caught by the northerly gale, found some refuge by running south of these cliffs.

timōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit; nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs, reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna,

5. dēligō, 1, *tr.* [ligō, bind], bind *or* tie down, fasten, moor. 2

6. auxilior, 1, *intr.* [**auxilium**, aid], give aid, help, assist. 1

7. frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck. 2

tide. The average rise and fall of the tide at Deal is said to be 16 feet. This tide, helped by the wind, rose much higher.

nostrīs . . . incognitum: the Romans were best acquainted with the Mediterranean, where the tides rise only a few inches. Yet they had had some experience with the tides in the war with the Veneti.

4. quae . . . dēligātae, *which were riding at anchor*. The transports were heavier than the warships, and Caesar had not thought it worth the effort to beach them.

6. administrandī, *of managing them*.

id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs

9. perturbātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**perturbō**, disturb], disturbance, alarm. 1

10. reportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō**, carry], carry *or* convey back. 1

8. reditus, -ūs, *m.* [**redeō**, return], returning, return. 1

9. id quod or *quae rēs* is commonly used instead of *quod* when the antecedent is a clause.

10. quibus possent: a clause of characteristic.

11. omnia quae erant ūsuī, *all the things which were needed;* a determining clause: App. 231.

12. hiemārī oportēre, *that they must pass the winter.*

13. in hiemem, *for the winter.*

Chap. **30.** *The Britons plan to renew hostilities.*

1. prīncipēs: subject of *dūxērunt,* l. 6.

5. etiam, *still.*

6. optimum: predicate adjective with *esse,* the subject being *prohibēre* and *prōdūcere.*

factū: App. 296. It is not needed in translation.

7. factā: translate as an infinitive, coördinate with *prohibēre.*

8. rem, *operations.*

hīs superātīs, *if these (troops) were overpowered.*

Chap. **31.** *Caesar repairs his fleet.*

2. ex . . . eō, *from the disaster to his ships and from the fact.*

3. quod accidit, *which really did happen.*

ad omnēs cāsūs, *for all emergencies;* i.e., for both a return to Gaul and the defense of his camp if he should be attacked.

cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissimē afflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset effēcit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hosti-

5. afflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *tr.*, strike against; damage, injure. 1
6. aes, aeris, *n.*, copper. 1
5. pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. 1
10. cōnfestim, *adv.*, hastily, at once, immediately. 1

5. quae nāvēs, eārum, *of those ships which.*

6. aere: iron was not much used in the construction of ships, because it rusts, and the Romans had no paint which would protect it.

8. summō studiō: the soldiers were as anxious to get away as Caesar was.

9. reliquīs . . . effēcit, lit. *made that it could be sailed by the rest = made the others fit to sail in.*

Chap. **32-36.** *After repelling the Britons, who attack first one legion, then the camp, Caesar returns to Gaul.*

Chap. **32.** *The Britons attack one legion while it is engaged in foraging.*

1. frūmentātum: App. 295.

3. interpositā, *having arisen.*

in agrīs remanēret: ostensibly engaged in labor on the farms near the camp.

6. quam . . . ferret, *than usual.*

7. id quod erat, *what was really the case;* explained by the clause *aliquid . . . consilī, that some new plan had been entered upon.*

8. cohortēs: probably two.

10. succēdere, *to take their places.* **armārī,** *to arm themselves.*

FIG. 156
A BRITISH COIN
Right: Tinc(ommius) Commi F(ilius).
See Fig. 142, p. 305.

bus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulum ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hos-

---

14. dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messum, *tr.* [**metō,** reap], mow, reap. 1

15. dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, —, *intr.* [**latēscō,** *incept. of* **lateō,** lie hidden], hide oneself, lurk. 1

16. metō, metere, messuī, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. 1

18. essedum, -ī, *n., a two-wheeled war* chariot *of the Britons.* 2

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [**dō,** put], put around, surround. 3

2. perequitō, 1. *intr.* [**equitō,** ride], ride about, ride through *or* around. 1

3. rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. 1

4. turma, -ae, *f.*, troop *or* squadron *of about thirty cavalrymen.* 1

īnsinuō, 1, *tr.* [**sinuō,** wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. 1

5. aurīga, -ae, *m.*, chariot driver, charioteer. 1

6. currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. 2

---

14. ūna, *only one.*

17. incertīs ōrdinibus: owing to the surprise the usual line of battle could not be formed.

Chap. **33.** *How the Britons use their war chariots in battle.*

2. equōrum, *caused by the horses.*

3. cum . . . īnsinuāvērunt: i.e., they drove into the intervals between the squadrons of their own cavalry; there the warriors dismounted and on foot supported the cavalry. Each chariot carried one driver (*aurīga*) and one warrior.

6. illī: the warriors, who had alighted.

FIG. 157
BRITISH WAR CHARIOT

tium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant; ac tantum ūsū et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et

---

7. receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō, receive], retreat. 1

8. stabilitās, -tātis, *f.* [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. 1

11. moderor, 1, *tr.* [modus, limit], manage, control. 1

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn. 1

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (*of a wagon*). 1

percurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run along *or* over. 1

12. citō, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, **citius**; *sup.*, **citissimē.** 1

8. continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, continuous. 2

11. praedicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly; report, tell of. 3

---

7. expedītum receptum, *a ready retreat.*

8. praestant, *display.*

9. utī: with *cōnsuērint*, l. 12.

10. ac, *and even.*

incitātōs, *when at full speed.*

sustinēre, *to check;* depending on *cōnsuērint.*

brevī, *quickly.*

11. per, *along.*

iugō: the crossbar attached to the end of the pole and resting on the horses' necks. See Fig. 157.

Chap. **34.** *Caesar rescues the imperiled legion, and the Britons march against his camp.*

1. rēbus: ablative of means.

nostrīs: indirect object of *tulit. perturbātīs* agrees with it.

4. aliēnum, lit. *belonging to another* = *unfavorable.* **suō,** *his own,* almost illustrates the corresponding meaning, *favorable.*

7. quī . . . reliquī: mentioned in **32,** 3.

9. quae continērent: App. 230, *a.*

quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquō diē aequinoctī īnfirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem

---

12. praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder. 2

14. peditātus, -ūs, *m.* [**pedes,** foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. 1

3. effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *tr. and intr.* [**ex** +**fugiō,** flee], flee from *or* away, escape. 1

3. duplicō, 1, *tr.* [**duplex,** double], double. 1

4. aequinoctium, -tī, *n.* [**aequus,** equal +**nox,** night], the equinox. 1

---

12. praedae faciendae: they would have been disappointed, for the Romans had left their heavy baggage in Gaul: **30,** 5.

suī līberandī: see note on *suī pūrgandī,* **13,** 14.

Chap. **35.** *The Britons are put to flight.*

1. idem fore, ut, *that the same thing would occur . . . namely, that.*

4. ante: in **21,** 13 and **27,** 4.

5. diūtius, *very long.*

6. ac, *but.*

7. tantō spatiō quantum . . . potuērunt, *over as great a distance as their speed and strength permitted.* *spatiō* is an ablative of the way (App. 144), where an accusative of extent of space would seem more natural.

Chap. **36.** *Caesar returns to Gaul.*

2. Hīs: dative of reference.

3. eōs . . . iussit: it is not surprising to learn later that most of the tribes failed to do this.

4. propinquō diē: ablative absolute. As Caesar reached Britain August 26, and the equinox then fell on September 24, he must have remained in Britain about three weeks.

hiemī . . . subiciendam, *that his voyage should be exposed to wintry weather.*

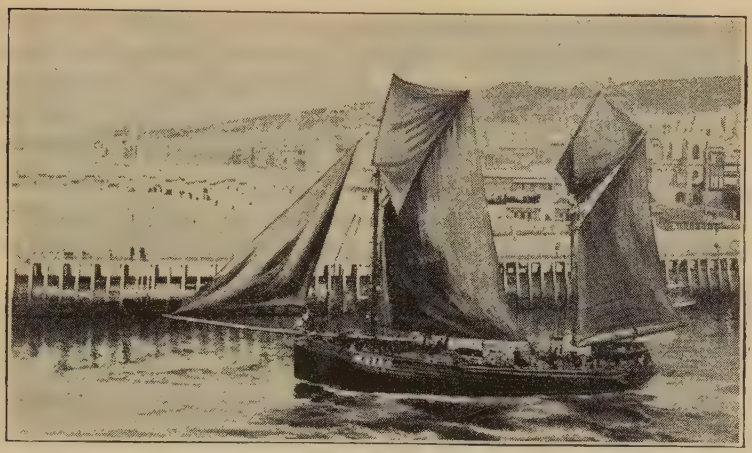


FIG. 158
LOOKING NORTH FROM THE ENTRANCE OF BOULOGNE HARBOR

nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī

9. īnfrā, *adv.* [**īnferus,** below], below. 1

2. trecentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [**trēs,** three +**centum,** hundred], three hundred. 1

8. quōs reliquae, *as the rest (did).*
capere, *reach.*
et, *but.*

9. īnfrā: to the south. We do not know where they landed.

Chap. **37-38.** *The Morini revolt and are conquered.*

Chap. **37.** *The Morini attack the troops from the two transports, but are repulsed.*

1. Quibus ex nāvibus: i.e., the two transports.

2. in castra: at Boulogne.

3. pācātōs: see **22,** 1-11.

4. prīmō: the adverb.
ita, *so very,* or *very.*

5. pōnere, *to lay down.*
orbe: a formation used when troops were attacked on all sides. It is now called a hollow square.

sē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī vēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omninō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

---

5. orbis, -is, *m.*, orb, ring, circle. 1
3. siccitās, -tātis, *f.*, dryness. 1
4. perfugium, -gī, *n.* [**perfugiō**, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. 1

---

6. hominum: with *mīlia*.

Chap. **38.** *Labienus conquers the Morini. The army is quartered for the winter among the Belgae. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.*

3. siccitātēs: translate by the singular.

quō . . . habērent, lit. *had not where they could retreat* =*had nowhere to retreat:* App. 230, *c*.

4. quō perfugiō erant ūsī, lit. *which refuge they had used* =*the refuge* [i.e., the swamps] *which they had used.* For the fact see III, **28,** 8.

6. quī . . . dūxerant: see **22,** 18.

9. in Belgīs: in readiness for the next year's expedition to Britain.

12. diērum vīgintī supplicātiō: see note on II, **35,** 10, and notice the increased number of days. Caesar's two expeditions into lands where no Roman general had ever before set foot had made a wonderful impression at Rome.

THE DIRECT FORM OF THE LONGER PASSAGES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

I, **13**, 7-19. Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs *faciet*, in eam partem *ībunt* atque ibi *erunt Helvētiī* ubi eōs *tū cōnstitueris* atque esse *volueris;* sīn bellō persequī *persevērābis*, *reminīscere* et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus *es*, cum iī quī flūmen *trānsierant* suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtūtī *tribuere* aut *nōs dēspicere; nōs* ita ā patribus maiōribusque *nostrīs didicimus* ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut īnsidiīs *nītāmur*. Quārē *nōlī committere* ut *hic* locus ubi *cōnstitimus* ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen *capiat* aut memoriam *prōdat*.

I, **14**, 1-20. Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis *datur*, quod eās rēs quās *vōs commemorāvistis* memoriā *teneō*, atque eō gravius *ferō* quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī *accidērunt;* quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn *fuit* difficile cavēre; sed eō *dēceptus est*, quod neque commissum ā sē *intellegēbat* quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum *putābat*. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī *velit*, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim *temptāvistis*, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs *vexāvistis*, memoriam dēpōnere *potest?* Quod *vestrā* victōriā tam īnsolenter *glōriāminī*, quodque tam diū *vōs* impūne iniūriās intulisse *admīrāminī*, eōdem *pertinent*. *Cōnsuēvērunt* enim *dī* immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī *volunt*, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā *vōbīs mihi dabuntur*, utī ea quae *pollicēminī vōs* factūrōs *intellegam*, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs

sociīsque *intulistis*, item sī Allobrogibus *satisfaciētis*, *vōbīscum* pācem *faciam*.

20-23. Ita *Helvētiī* ā maiōribus suīs *īnstitūtī sunt* utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; *huius* reī *populus Rōmānus est testis*.

I, **17**, 2-13. *Sunt* nōn *nūllī* quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs *possunt* quam ipsī magistrātūs. *Hī* sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem *dēterrent* nē frūmentum cōnferant quod *dēbent:* [these men say] "Praestat, sī (Haeduī) iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn *possunt*, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque *dubitāmus* quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī." Ab īsdem *vestra* cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs *geruntur* hostibus *ēnūntiantur*. *Hī ā mē* coërcērī nōn *possunt*. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus *tibi ēnūntiāvī*, *intellegō* quantō id cum perīculō *fēcerim*, et ob eam causam quam diū *potuī tacuī*.

I, **18**, 6-24. *Ipse est Dumnorīx*, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, *cupidus* rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta *habet*, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī *audet* nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem *auxit* et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās *comparāvit;* magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper *alit* et circum sē *habet;* neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter *potest*, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō *collocāvit*, *ipse* ex Helvētiīs uxōrem *habet*, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs *collocāvit*. *Favet* et *cupit* Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, *ōdit* etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris *est* restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī *venit;* imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam *habet* grātiā *dēspērat*.

I, **20**, 2-12. *Sciō ista* esse vēra, nec *quisquam* ex eō plūs quam *ego* dolōris *capit*, propterea quod, cum *ego* grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā *possem*, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per *mē crēvit;* quibus opibus ac nervīs non sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem *meam ūtitur*. *Ego* tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī *commoveor*. Quod sī quid eī ā *tē* gravius *acciderit*, cum *ego hunc* locum amīcitiae apud *tē teneam*, *nēmō exīstimābit* nōn *meā* voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtīus Galliae animī ā *mē āvertentur*.

I, **30**, 3-10. *Intellegimus*, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō *repetierīs*, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī *relīquērunt*, utī . . . habērent.

I, **31**, 5-8. Nōn minus id *contendimus* et *labōrāmus*, nē ea quae *dīxerimus ēnūntientur*, quam utī ea quae *volumus impetrēmus*, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum *erit*, summum in cruciātum *nōs* ventūrōs *vidēmus*.

8-56. Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs *sunt duae:* hārum alterīus prīncipātum *tenent Haeduī*, alterīus *Arvernī*. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum *est* utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum *trānsiērunt;* posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī *adamāvērunt*, *trāductī sunt* plūrēs. Nunc *sunt* in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs *Haeduī* eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs *contendērunt;* magnam calamitātem *pulsī accēpērunt*, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum *āmīsērunt*. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque *frāctī*, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā *potuerant*, *coāctī sunt* Sēquanīs obsidēs dare . . . imperiō essent. *Ūnus ego sum* ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn *potuerim* ut *iūrārem* aut līberōs *meōs* obsidēs

darem. Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte *profūgī* et Rōmam ad senātum *vēnī* auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus *tenēbar.* Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs *accidit,* propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus *cōnsēdit* tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī *est* optimus tōtīus Galliae, *occupāvit* et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere *iubet,* propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum *vēnērunt,* quibus locus ac sēdēs *parantur.* Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus *pellentur* atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum *trānsībunt;* neque enim *cōnferendus est Gallicus* cum Germānōrum agrō, neque *haec cōnsuētūdō* vīctūs cum illā *comparanda. Ariovistus* autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō *vīcit,* quod proelium factum *est* ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter *imperat,* obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs *poscit* et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque *ēdit,* sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta *est. Homō est barbarus, īrācundus, temerārius;* nōn *possunt* eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in *tē* populōque Rōmānō *erit* auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem *est* faciendum quod Helvētiī *fēcērunt,* ut domō . . . experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō *erunt,* nōn *dubitō* quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum *sunt* gravissimum supplicium sūmat. *Tū* vel auctōritāte *tuā* atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre *potes* nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā *potes* dēfendere.

I, **32**, 8-15. Hōc *est miserior* et *gravior fortūna* Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre *audent* absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram *adsit, horrent,* propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās *datur,* Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum *recēpērunt,* quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius *sunt,* omnēs cruciātūs *sunt* perferendī.

I, **34**, 5-12. Sī quid *mihi* ā *tē* opus esset, *ego* ad *tē vēnissem;* sī quid *tū mē vīs, tē* ad *mē* venīre *oportet.* Praetereā neque sine

exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre *audeō* quās *tū possidēs*, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere *possum*. *Mihi* autem mīrum *vidētur* quid in *meā* Galliā, quam bellō *vīcī*, aut *tibi* aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī *sit*.

I, **35**, 2-18. Quoniam tantō *meō* populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū *meō* rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus *es*, hanc *mihi* populōque Rōmānō grātiam *refers*, ut in colloquium venīre invītātus *gravēris* neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum *tibi* et cognōscendum *putēs*, haec *sunt* quae *ā tē postulō:* prīmum, *nōlī ūllam* multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam *trādūcere;* deinde, obsidēs quōs *habēs* ab Haeduīs *redde* Sēquanīsque *permitte* ut quōs ipsī *habent* voluntāte *tuā* reddere illīs *liceat; nōlī* Haeduōs iniūriā *lacessere*, aut hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum *īnferre*. Sī ita *fēceris*, *mihi* populōque Rōmānō *perpetua grātia* atque *amīcitia tēcum erit;* sī nōn *impetrābō*, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus *cēnsuit* utī . . . dēfenderet, Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglegam*.

I, **36**. Iūs *est* bellī ut quī *vīcerint* iīs quōs *vīcerint* quem ad modum *velint imperent;* item *populus Rōmānus* victīs nōn ad alterīus praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre *cōnsuēvit*. Sī *ego* populō Rōmānō nōn *praescrībō* quem ad modum suō iūre *ūtātur*, nōn *oportet mē* ā populō Rōmānō in *meō* iūre impedīrī. *Haeduī mihi*, quoniam bellī fortūnam *temptāvērunt* et armīs congressī ac superātī *sunt*, *stīpendiāriī sunt factī*. Magnam *tū* iniūriam *facis*, quī *tuō* adventū vectīgālia *mihi* dēteriōra *facis*. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn *reddam*, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum *īnferam*, sī in eō *manēbunt* quod *convēnit* stīpendiumque quotannīs *pendent;* sī id nōn *fēcerint*, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī *aberit*. Quod *mihi dēnūntiās tē* Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, *nēmō mēcum* sine suā perniciē *contendit*. Cum *volēs*, *congreditor: intellegēs* quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn *subiērunt*, virtūte *possint*.

I, **40**, 3-47. Prīmum (*vōs incūsō*) quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō *dūcāminī vōbīs* quaerendum aut cōgitandum *putātis*. *Ariovistus mē* cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam *appetiit;* cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum *iūdicet? Mihi* quidem *persuādētur*, cognitīs *meīs* postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque *meam* neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem *vereāminī?* aut cūr dē *vestrā* virtūte aut dē *meā* dīligentiā *dēspērētis?* Factum *est huius* hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā; . . . factum *est* etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs *accēperant sublevābant*. Ex quō iūdicārī *potest* quantum *habeat* in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā *timuistis*, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs *superāvistis*. Dēnique *hī sunt īdem Germānī* quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque *superāvērunt*, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn *potuērunt*. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum *commovet, hī*, sī *quaerent*, reperīre *possunt* . . . vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus *fuit*, hāc nē *ipse* quidem *spērat* nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris *cōnferunt faciunt* arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere *videantur*. Haec *mihi sunt* cūrae: frūmentum *Sēquanī, Leucī*, Lingonēs *subministrant*, iamque *sunt* in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere *ipsī* brevī tempore *iūdicābitis*. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī *dīciminī*, nihil eā rē *commoveor; sciō* enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; *mea innocentia* perpetuā vītā, *fēlīcitās* Helvētiōrum bellō *est perspecta*. Itaque quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus *fuī repraesentābō* et *hāc* nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra *movēbō*, ut quam prīmum intellegere *possim* utrum apud

vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs *valeat.* Quod sī praetereā nēmō *sequētur*, tamen *ego* cum sōlā decimā legiōne *ībō*, dē quā nōn *dubitō, mihique ea praetōria cohors erit.*

I, **44**, 2-43. *Trānsiī* Rhēnum nōn *meā* sponte, sed *rogātus* et *arcessītus* ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque *relīquī;* sēdēs *habeō* in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium *capiō* iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere *cōnsuērunt.* Nōn *ego* Gallīs, sed *Gallī mihi* bellum *intulērunt;* omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad *mē* oppugnandum *vēnērunt* ac contrā *mē* castra *habuērunt; eae* omnēs *cōpiae* ā *mē* ūnō proeliō *pulsae* ac *superātae sunt.* Sī iterum experīrī *volunt*, iterum *parātus sum* dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī *volunt*, inīquum *est* dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad *hoc* tempus *pependērunt.* Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī *mihi* ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse *oportet*, atque hāc spē *petiī.* Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium *remittētur* et dēditicīī *subtrahentur*, non minus libenter *recūsābō* populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam *appetiī.* Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam *trādūcō*, id *meī* mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā *faciō;* eius reī testimōnium *est* quod nisi rogātus nōn *vēnī* et quod bellum nōn *intulī*, sed *dēfendī. Ego* prius in Galliam *vēnī* quam *populus Rōmānus.* Numquam ante hoc tempus *exercitus* populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus *ēgressus est.* Quid *tibi vīs?* Cūr in *meās* possessiōnēs *venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia*, sīcut *illa vestra.* Ut *mihi* concēdī nōn *oporteat*, sī in *vestrōs* fīnēs impetum *faciam*, sīc item *vōs estis inīquī*, quod in *meō* iūre *mē interpellātis.* Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs *dīcis*, nōn tam *barbarus* neque tam *imperītus sum* rērum ut nōn *sciam* neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī *mēcum* et cum Sēquanīs *habuērunt* auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. *Dēbeō* suspicārī simulātā *tē* amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā *habēs, meī* opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi *dēcēdēs* atque exercitum *dēdūcēs* ex hīs regiōnibus, *tē* nōn prō amīcō sed prō

hoste *habēbō*. Quod sī *tē interfēcerō*, multīs nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum *faciam* (id ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum *habeō*), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam *tuā* morte redimere *possum*. Quod sī *dēcesseris* et līberam possessiōnem Galliae *mihi trādideris*, magnō *tē* praemiō *remūnerābō* et quaecumque bella gerī *volēs* sine ūllō *tuō* labōre et perīculō *cōnficiam*.

I, **45**, 2-11. Neque *mea* neque populī Rōmānī *cōnsuētūdō patitur* utī optimē meritōs sociōs *dēseram*, neque *ego iūdicō* Galliam potius esse *tuam* quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō *superātī sunt Arvernī* et *Rutēnī* ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus *ignōvit* neque in prōvinciam *redēgit* neque stīpendium *imposuit*. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī *oportet*, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum *est* in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī *oportet*, *lībera dēbet* esse *Gallia*, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī *voluit*.

II, **3**, 4-14. *Nōs nostraque* omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī *permittimus;* neque *nōs* cum reliquīs Belgīs *cōnsēnsimus*, neque contrā populum Rōmānum *coniūrāvimus, parātīque sumus* et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre. *Reliquī* omnēs *Belgae* in armīs *sunt*, *Germānīque* quī cis Rhēnum *incolunt* sēsē cum hīs *coniūnxērunt; tantusque* est eōrum omnium *furor* ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque *nostrōs*, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus *ūtuntur*, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum *nobīscum habent*, dēterrēre *potuerīmus* quīn cum hīs consentīrent.

II, **4**, 2-28. *Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī* ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus *trāductī* propter locī fertilitātem ibi *cōnsēdērunt*, Gallōsque quī ea loca *incolēbant expulērunt*, *sōlīque sunt* quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē *fit* utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī *sūmant*. Dē numerō eōrum omnia *nōs habēmus* explōrāta, propterea quod propinquitāti-

bus affīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit *cognōvimus*. Plūrimum inter eōs *Bellovacī* et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō *valent; hī possunt* cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; *pollicitī sunt* ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi *postulant*. Suessiōnēs *nostrī sunt fīnitimī;* fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs *possident*. Apud eōs *fuit rēx* nostrā etiam memoriā *Dīviciācus*, tōtīus Galliae *potentissimus*, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium *obtinuit;* nunc *est rēx Galba;* ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque *summa* tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida *habent* numerō XII; *pollicentur* mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem *Nerviī*, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs *habentur* longissimēque *absunt;* quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, *Ambiānī* decem mīlia, *Morinī* XXV mīlia, *Menapiī* VII mīlia, *Caletī* X mīlia, Veliocassēs et *Viromanduī* totidem, *Atuatucī* XIX mīlia; *Condrūsī*, Eburōnēs, *Caerōsī*, *Caemānī*, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, *arbitrāmur* posse armāre XL mīlia.

II, **14**, 3-13. *Bellovacī* omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae *fuērunt; impulsī* ab suīs prīncipibus, quī *dīcēbant* Haeduōs ā *tē* in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs *dēfēcērunt* et populō Rōmānō bellum *intulērunt*. Quī eius consilī prīncipēs *fuerant*, quod *intellegēbant* quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam *profūgērunt*. *Petunt* non sōlum *Bellovacī* sed etiam prō hīs *Haeduī* ut *tuā* clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs *ūtāris*. Quod sī *fēceris*, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās *amplificābis;* quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella *incidērunt*, sustentāre *cōnsuērunt*.

II, **15**, 8-15. *Nūllus est aditus* ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil *patiuntur* vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem *exīstimant*. *Sunt* hominēs *ferī* magnaeque virtūtis; *increpitant* atque *incūsant* reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō

dēdiderint patriamque virtūtem *prōiēcerint; cōnfirmant* sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

II, **16**, 2-9. *Sabis* flūmen ā castrīs *tuīs* nōn amplius mīlia passuum x *abest;* trāns id flūmen omnēs *Nerviī cōnsēdērunt* adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum *exspectant* ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs; *exspectantur* etiam ab iīs Atuatucōrum *cōpiae* atque *sunt* in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs *vidēbantur* in eum locum *coniēcērunt* quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

II, **31**, 3-13. Nōn *exīstimāmus* Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre *possint. Nōs nostraque* omnia eōrum potestātī *permittimus.* Ūnum *petimus* ac *dēprecāmur:* sī forte prō *tuā* clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam *nōs* ab aliīs *audīmus, statueris nōs* esse cōnservandōs, *nōlī nōs* armīs *dēspoliāre. Nōbīs* omnēs ferē *fīnitimī sunt inimīcī* ac *nostrae* virtūtī *invident;* ā quibus *nōs* dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn *possumus. Nōbīs praestat,* sī in eum cāsum *dēdūcēmur,* quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī *cōnsuēvimus.*

II, **32**, 1-6. Magis cōnsuētūdine *meā* quam meritō *vestrō* cīvitātem *cōnservābō,* sī priusquam mūrum ariēs *attigerit vōs dēdideritis;* sed dēditiōnis *nūlla est condiciō* nisi armīs trāditīs. Id quod in Nerviīs *fēcī faciam,* fīnitimīsque *imperābō* nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam *īnferant.*

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

This Grammatical Appendix is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put in the hands of a class reading Caesar or Cicero. The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially from the first half of Book One. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, **14,** 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

A vowel is usually short:

a. Before another vowel, or **h**; as **eō, nihil.**

b. Before **nd** and **nt**; as **laudandus, laudant.**

c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than **s**; as **laudem, laudat.**

2. A vowel is long:

a. Before **nf, ns, nx,** and **nct**; as **īnferō, cōnsul, iūnxī, iūnctum.**

b. When it results from contraction; as **īsset,** for **iisset.**

3. A vowel is usually long:

a. In monosyllables not ending in **b, d, l, m,** or **t**; as **mē, hīs;** but **ab, ad.**

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

a = *a* in *Cuba*	**ā** = *ah!*
e = *e* in *net*	**ē** = *e* in *they*
i = *i* in *pin*	**ī** = *i* in *machine*
o = *o* in *for* (not as in *got*)	**ō** = *oh!*
u = *oo* in *foot*	**ū** = *oo* in *boot*

y = French *u* or German *ü;* it rarely occurs.

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:

ae = *ai* in *aisle*
oe = *oi* in *oil*
au = *ow* in *how*
eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh'oo*.
ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo'ee*. The diphthong appears in **cui, huic, cuius,** and **huius.**

a. When the consonant **i** (= **j**) stands between two vowels, as in **maior, eius, Troia,** and **cuius,** though **i** was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, **maiior, eiius, Troiia,** and **cuiius.** The second **i** is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet.*

The first **i** makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases:

ai = *ai* in *aisle*
ei = *ey* in *they*
oi = *oi* in *oil*
ui as indicated above.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can, go*
i (consonant, sometimes printed **j**) = *y* in *yet*
n before **c, g, q,** and **x** = *ng* in *sing*
r pronounced distinctly
s as in *this,* never as in *these*
t as in *tin,* never as in *nation*
v = *w*
x = *ks*
ch, ph, th = *c, p, t*
bs, bt = *ps, pt*
qu = *qu* in *quart*
ngu = *ngu* in *anguish*
su = *sw* in **suādeō, suāvis, suēscō,** and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in **mittō, annus,** both consonants should be sounded, as they are in *out-talk, pen-knife.* (We sound only one consonant in *ditty, penny.*)

7. **i** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of **iaciō**, the form **iciō** was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant **i** was pronounced, though not written, before vowel **i**; as **dēiciō**, pronounced as if **dēiiciō**; **abiciō**, as if **abiiciō**.

SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as **fe-rō, a-gō, mo-nē.**

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (**b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph,** or **th,** followed by **l** or **r**) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as **pa-tris, a-grī.**

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as **mit-tō, dic-tus, magis-ter, magis-trī.**

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of **laudō,** and the first syllable of **eius** (**5,** *a*).

b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants **x** and **z.** The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position; **est** is **est,** not **ēst.** The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (**8,** *c*), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in **mit-tō** (**6,** *a*), **an-nus, dic-tus, par-tēs, nos-ter.**

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as **om'nis.**

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as **dīvī'sa, appel'lō, in'colunt.**

12. When an enclitic (**-ne, -que, -ve**) is joined to another word, the combination is accented like a single word, according to **10** and **11**; as **dictō'que, dictum'que, ar'maque.** As enclitics are seldom added to short final vowels, the accent usually falls on the syllable before the enclitic.

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful:

a. The names of male beings, winds, months, and of most rivers are *masculine*.

b. The names of female beings, and of most countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and abstract qualities are *feminine*.

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter*.

THE DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from one another by the final letter of the stem, and by the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GEN. SING.
I.	ā	-ae
II.	o	-ī
III.	consonant i	-is
IV.	u	-ūs
V.	ē	-ēī or -eī

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in **-ā**; the nominative in **-a**. The gender is usually feminine.

porta, F., *gate*

	SINGULAR		ENDINGS
Nominative	**porta**	a gate (*as subject*)	**-a**
Genitive	**portae**	of a gate, gate's	**-ae**
Dative	**portae**	to *or* for a gate	**-ae**
Accusative	**portam**	a gate (*as object*)	**-am**
Ablative	**portā**	by, from, in, *or* with a gate	**-ā**
	PLURAL		
Nominative	**portae**	gates (*as subject*)	**-ae**
Genitive	**portārum**	of gates, gates'	**-ārum**
Dative	**portīs**	to *or* for gates	**-īs**
Accusative	**portās**	gates (*as object*)	**-ās**
Ablative	**portīs**	by, from, in, *or* with gates	**-īs**

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (**13**); as **Belgae**, M., *the Belgae;* **Matrona**, M., *the (river) Marne.*

b. The locative singular ends in **-ae**; as **Samarobrīvae**, *at Samarobriva.*

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in **-o**; the nominative masculine in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir**; the nominative neuter in **-um**. Note that nouns in **-us** have, in the singular, a special case-ending for the vocative, the case of address.

	animus, M., *mind*	**puer**, M., *boy*	**ager**, M., *field*	**vir**, M., *man*	**bellum**, N., *war*
			SINGULAR		
Nom.	animus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
Gen.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
Dat.	animō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
Acc.	animum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
Abl.	animō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
Voc.	anime				
			PLURAL		
Nom.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
Gen.	animōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
Dat.	animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
Acc.	animōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
Abl.	animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

	fīlius, M., *son*	**Gāius**, M., *Gaius*	**Boī**, M., *the Boi*	**deus**, M., *god*	
	SING.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	fīlius	Gāius	Boī	deus	diī, dī
Gen.	fīlī	Gāī	Boiōrum	deī	deōrum
Dat.	fīliō	Gāiō	Boīs	deō	diīs, dīs
Acc.	fīlium	Gāium	Boiōs	deum	deōs
Abl.	fīliō	Gāiō	Boīs	deō	diīs, dīs
Voc.	fīlī	Gāī	Boī	deus	diī, dī

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (**13**). **Vulgus,** *crowd,* is usually neuter. **Locus,** M., *place,* has plural **loca,** N., *places.*

b. The locative singular ends in **-ī**; as **Agedincī,** *at Agedincum.*

c. Nouns in **-ius** regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in **-ī,** instead of **-iī** and **-ie**; and nouns in **-ium** form the genitive in **-ī.** The words are accented as if the longer form were used; as **cōnsi'lī,** *of a plan;* **ini'tī,** *of a beginning.*

d. Proper names ending in **-aius, -eius,** and **-oius** are declined like **Gāius** and **Boī.**

e. A few words may have **-um** instead of **-ōrum** in the genitive plural; as **socium** (or **sociōrum**), *of allies.*

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in **-i.** Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, **-s** or none; for neuters, none.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, **b** or **p.** The nominative ending is **-s.**

prīnceps, M., *chief*
Stem **prīncip-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	prīnceps	prīncipēs
Gen.	prīncipis	prīncipum
Dat.	prīncipī	prīncipibus
Acc.	prīncipem	prīncipēs
Abl.	prīncipe	prīncipibus

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, **d** or **t**. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is **-s**, and the final **d** or **t** of the stem is dropped before it.

	laus, F., *praise* Stem **laud-**		**mīles**, M., *soldier* Stem **mīlit-**		**caput**, N., *head* Stem **capit-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	laus	laudēs	mīles	mīlitēs	caput	capita
Gen.	laudis	laudum	mīlitis	mīlitum	capitis	capitum
Dat.	laudī	laudibus	mīlitī	mīlitibus	capitī	capitibus
Acc.	laudem	laudēs	mīlitem	mīlitēs	caput	capita
Abl.	laude	laudibus	mīlite	mīlitibus	capite	capitibus

a. Nouns in **-tās, -tātis** belong here, though a few of them, especially **cīvitās,** *state,* sometimes have **-ium** in the genitive plural.

20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, **g** or **c**. The nominative ending is **-s,** which unites with the final **g** or **c** of the stem to form **x**.

	lēx, F., *law* Stem **lēg-**		**dux**, M., *leader* Stem **duc-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
Gen.	lēgis	lēgum	ducis	ducum
Dat.	lēgī	lēgibus	ducī	ducibus
Acc.	lēgem	lēgēs	ducem	ducēs
Abl.	lēge	lēgibus	duce	ducibus

21. Stems ending in a liquid, **l** or **r**. There is no nominative case-ending.

	cōnsul, M., *consul* Stem **cōnsul-**		**pater**, M., *father* Stem **patr-**		**aequor**, N., *sea* Stem **aequor-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	cōnsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
Gen.	cōnsulis	cōnsulum	patris	patrum	aequoris	aequorum
Dat.	cōnsulī	cōnsulibus	patrī	patribus	aequorī	aequoribus
Acc.	cōnsulem	cōnsulēs	patrem	patrēs	aequor	aequora
Abl.	cōnsule	cōnsulibus	patre	patribus	aequore	aequoribus

22. Stems ending in a nasal, **m** or **n**. There is no nominative case-ending, except in **hiems,** the only stem in **-m.** The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final **n** and changes the preceding vowel to **ō.**

	homō, M., F., *human being* Stem **homin-**		**ratiō**, F., *reason* Stem **ratiōn-**		**flūmen**, N., *river* Stem **flūmin-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
Gen.	hominis	hominum	ratiōnis	ratiōnum	flūminis	flūminum
Dat.	hominī	hominibus	ratiōnī	ratiōnibus	flūminī	flūminibus
Acc.	hominem	hominēs	ratiōnem	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
Abl.	homine	hominibus	ratiōne	ratiōnibus	flūmine	flūminibus

23. Stems ending in **s** (apparently **r**, because **s** changes to **r** between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in **s**, sometimes in **r**.

	mōs, M., *custom* Stem **mōs-**		**honor**, M., *honor* Stem **honōs-**		**tempus**, N., *time* Stem **tempos-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
Gen.	mōris	mōrum	honōris	honōrum	temporis	temporum
Dat.	mōrī	mōribus	honōrī	honōribus	temporī	temporibus
Acc.	mōrem	mōrēs	honōrem	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
Abl.	mōre	mōribus	honōre	honōribus	tempore	temporibus

B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong: (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs** if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative; (2) neuters in **-e, -al, -ar.**

25. Theoretically the **i** should appear in most of the cases; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc. **-em,** abl. **-e,** acc. plural either **-ēs** or **-īs.** Neuters have abl. **-ī.** All have **-ium** in the gen. plural.

	turris, F., *tower* Stem **turri-**	**hostis**, M., F., *enemy* Stem **hosti-**	**caedēs**, F., *slaughter* Stem **caedi-**
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	turris	hostis	caedēs
Gen.	turris	hostis	caedis
Dat.	turrī	hostī	caedī
Acc.	turrim *or* **-em**	hostem	caedem
Abl.	turrī *or* **-e**	hoste	caede
		PLURAL	
Nom.	turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
Gen.	turrium	hostium	caedium
Dat.	turribus	hostibus	caedibus
Acc.	turrīs *or* **-ēs**	hostēs *or* **-īs**	caedēs *or* **-īs**
Abl.	turribus	hostibus	caedibus

	cubīle, N., *couch* Stem **cubīli-**		**vectīgal**, N., *tax* Stem **vectīgāli-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	cubīle	cubīlia	vectīgal	vectīgālia
Gen.	cubīlis	cubīlium	vectīgālis	vectīgālium
Dat.	cubīlī	cubīlibus	vectīgālī	vectīgālibus
Acc.	cubīle	cubīlia	vectīgal	vectīgālia
Abl.	cubīlī	cubīlibus	vectīgālī	vectīgālibus

a. Most nouns in **-is** are declined like **hostis**. **Arar** (for **Araris**), M., *the Saone*, and **Liger** (for **Ligeris**), M., *the Loire*, are declined in the singular like **turris**. **Ignis**, M., *fire*, and **nāvis**, F., *ship*, often have abl. **-ī**. **Mare**, N., *sea*, is declined like **cubīle**, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-īs**. Here belong most nouns in **-s** and **-x** preceded by any consonant except **p**; **nox**, *night;* and a few other monosyllables.

	cliēns, M., *retainer* Stem **client-**		**urbs**, F., *city* Stem **urb-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	cliēns	clientēs	urbs	urbēs
Gen.	clientis	clientium	urbis	urbium
Dat.	clientī	clientibus	urbī	urbibus
Acc.	clientem	clientēs *or* **-īs**	urbem	urbēs *or* **-īs**
Abl.	cliente	clientibus	urbe	urbibus

D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

	senex, M., *old man*	**os**, N., *bone*	**vīs**, F., *force*	**bōs**, M., F., *ox, cow*	**Iuppiter**, M., *Jupiter*
			SINGULAR		
Nom.	senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
Gen.	senis	ossis	vīs	bovis	Iovis
Dat.	senī	ossī	vī	bovī	Iovī
Acc.	senem	os	vim	bovem	Iovem
Abl.	sene	ōsse	vī	bove	Iove

			PLURAL	
Nom.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs
Gen.	senum	ossium	vīrium	bovum *or* boum
Dat.	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus *or* būbus
Acc.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs
Abl.	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus *or* būbus

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (**13**).

The following rules are useful, though there are some exceptions:

a. *Masculine* are nouns in **-ō** (except those in **-dō**, **-gō**, and **-iō**), and **-or.**
b. *Feminine* are nouns in **-dō**, **-gō**, **-iō**; **-tās**, **-tūs**; and **-rs.**
c. *Neuter* are nouns in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**; **-n**; and **-us.**

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in **-u**; nominative masculine in **-us**, nominative neuter in **-ū.**

	passus, M., *pace*		**cornū**, N., *horn*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	passuī	passibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	passum	passūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus

a. **Domus,** *house,* **manus,** *hand,* **Īdūs,** *Ides,* are feminine.
b. The dative singular of nouns in **-us** sometimes ends in **-ū.**
c. The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in **-ubus.**
d. **Domus,** F., *house,* has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs (domī)	domōrum (domuum)
Dat.	domuī (domō)	domibus
Acc.	domum	domōs (domūs)
Abl.	domō (domū)	domibus
Loc.	domī (*at home*)	

FIFTH DECLENSION

30. Stem ends in **-ē**; nominative in **-ēs**. Usually feminine.

	diēs, M., *day*		rēs, F., *thing*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

a. **Diēs** in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is **-ēī** after a vowel, **-eī** after a consonant. **-ē** is sometimes used instead of either.

c. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. **Aciēs, spēs,** and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

ADJECTIVES

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

magnus, *large*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	magnus	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Voc.	magne	magna	magnum			

līber, *free*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	liberum	liberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

noster, *our*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
Dat.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Acc.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Abl.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ĪUS

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in **-īus** and the dative singular in **-ī** in all genders. These are **alius**, *another*, **sōlus**, *only*, **tōtus**, *whole*, **ūllus**, *any*, **nūllus**, *no*, **ūnus**, *one*, **alter**, *the other*, **uter**, *which* (of two), **neuter**, *neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as of **magnus**. Note the ending **-ud** in the neuter of **alius**, and that **alterīus** is generally used instead of the genitive **alīus**.

	SINGULAR					
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	(alīus)	(alīus)	(alīus)	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and i-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one*

termination have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of two or three terminations have only **-ī** in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two terminations.

fortior, *braver*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

a. Here belong all comparatives; but **plūs,** *more,* is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	plūs	plūrēs (-īs)	plūra
Abl.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

35. One termination.

vetus, *old*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Gen.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
Dat.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Acc.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Abl.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

a. Here belongs **prīnceps,** *chief.* **Dīves,** *rich, gen.* **dīvitis** also belongs here, but has **dītia** for the nominative and accusative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three terminations.

ācer, *sharp*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs *or* -īs	ācrēs *or* -īs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. Here belong **celer,** *swift,* **equester,** *equestrian,* **pedester,** *pedestrian;* names of months in **-ber;** and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

omnis, *all*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	omnem	omne	omnēs *or* -īs	omnia
Abl.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

a. Here belong all adjectives in **-is, -e.**

38. One termination.

audāx, *bold*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācēs *or* -īs	audācia
Abl.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus

oriēns, *rising*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
Gen.	orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
Dat.	orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
Acc.	orientem	oriēns	orientēs *or* -īs	orientia
Abl.	oriente *or* -ī	oriente *or* -ī	orientibus	orientibus

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in **-āns** and **-ēns.** Participles usually have the ablative singular in **-ī** only when used as adjectives, in **-e** when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are **-ior, -ius;** the superlative, **-issimus, -a, -um.** They are added to the *base* of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular).

altus, *high;* **altior, -ius,** *higher;* **altissimus, -a, -um,** *highest:* fortis, *brave;* **fortior,** *braver;* **fortissimus,** *bravest.*

40. Adjectives in **-er** form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the *nominative* of the positive.

Ācer, *sharp* (base, ācr-), **ācrior, ācerrimus.**

41. Most adjectives in **-ilis** are compared regularly; as **nōbilis, nōbilior, nōbilissimus.** Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the *base* of the positive. They are **facilis,** *easy;* **difficilis,** *difficult;* **similis,** *like;* **dissimilis,** *unlike;* **humilis,** *low;* **gracilis,** *slender.*

Facilis, facilior, facillimus.

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, melior, optimus, *good, better, best.*
malus, peior, pessimus, *bad, worse, worst.*
magnus, maior, maximus, *great, greater, greatest.*
parvus, minor, minimus, *small, less, least.*
multus, plūs, plūrimus, *much, more, most.*

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive, because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(**citrā,** adv., *on this side*) **citerior, citimus,** *hither, hithermost.*
(**dē,** prep., *down*) **dēterior, dēterrimus,** *worse, worst.*
(**intrā,** prep., *in, within*) **interior, intimus,** *inner, inmost.*
(**prae,** prep., *before*) **prior, prīmus,** *former, first.*
(**prope,** adv., *near*) **propior, proximus,** *nearer, next.*
(**ultrā,** adv., *beyond*) **ulterior, ultimus,** *farther, farthest.*

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

exterus, exterior, extrēmus (extimus), *outer, outmost.*
īnferus, īnferior, īnfimus (īmus), *lower, lowest.*
posterus, posterior, postrēmus (postumus), *latter, last.*
superus, superior, suprēmus (summus), *higher, highest.*

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs **magis,** *more,* and **maximē,** *most.*

Idōneus, *suitable;* **magis idōneus,** *more suitable;* **maximē idōneus,** *most suitable.*

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The *positive* is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base; as **lātus,** *wide,* **lātē,** *widely:* from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** or **-iter** to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in **nt** add only **-er;** as audāx, **audācis,** *bold,* **audācter,** *boldly;* **fortis,** *brave,* **fortiter,** *bravely;* prūdēns, **prūdentis,** *prudent,* **prūdenter,** *prudently.* But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as **multum,** *much,* **facile,** *easily.*

b. The *comparative* is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as **lātius,** *more widely,* **audācius,** *more boldly,* **fortius,** *more bravely,* **prūdentius,** *more prudently,* plūs, *more,* **facilius,** *more easily.*

c. The *superlative* is usually formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the adjective; as **lātissimē,** *most widely,* **audācissimē,** *most boldly,* **facillimē,** *most easily.* Less often it is the accusative singular neuter of the superlative of the adjective; as **plūrimum,** *most.*

NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals,* answering the question *how many?* as *one, two,* etc.; *ordinals,* answering the question *which in order?* as, *first, second,* etc.; and *distributives,* answering the question *how many each?* as, *one each, two each,* etc.

Roman Numerals	*Cardinal*	*Ordinal*	*Distributive*
I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
II	duo, -ae, -o	secundus *or* alter	bīnī
III	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī *or* trīnī
IV	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī
VI	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX	novem	nōnus	novēnī

X	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus	duodēvīcēnī
XIX	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	ūndēvīcēnī
XX	vīgintī	vīcēsimus	vīcēnī
XXI	ūnus et vīgintī *or* vīgintī ūnus	vīcēsimus prīmus	vīcēnī singulī
XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus	duodētrīcēnī
XXIX	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus	ūndētrīcēnī
XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsimus	trīcēnī
XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī
XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī
C	centum	centēsimus	centēnī
CI	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus prīmus	centēnī singulī
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī
CCC	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecēnī
CCCC	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī
D	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	quīngēnī
DC	sescentī	sescentēsimus	sescēnī
DCC	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī
DCCC	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī
DCCCC	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī
M	mīlle	mīllēsimus	singula mīlia
MM	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus	bīna mīlia

a. The ending **-ēnsimus** is often used for **-ēsimus.**

48. Of the cardinals, **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs** are declined; **quattuor** to **centum,** inclusive, are indeclinable; **ducentī** to **nōngentī,** inclusive, are declined like the plural of **magnus (31); mīlle** as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of **cubīle (25)** and generally spelled **mīlia.** Ordinals are declined like **magnus,** distributives like the plural of **magnus.**

49. For the declension of **ūnus** see **32.** Its plural usually means *only* or *alone,* but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as **ūna castra,** *one camp.* **Duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

	duo, *two*			trēs, *three*	
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by **et**; as **trēs et quadrāgintā**, *three and forty;* or the tens may precede without an **et**; as **quadrāgintā trēs**, *forty-three.* In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without **et**; as **ducentī** (**et**) **vīgintī**, *two hundred* (*and*) *twenty.* In combinations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without **et**; as **duo mīlia sescentī vīgintī sex**, *two thousand six hundred* (*and*) *twenty-six.*

PRONOUNS

51. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	First person, **ego**, *I*		Second person, **tū**, *you* (*thou*)	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	{nostrum nostrī	tuī	{vestrum vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually **is**, *he*, **ea**, *she*, **id**, *it* (**57**); or, when *him, them,* etc., refer to the subject (**163**), by the reflexive pronoun of the third person (**52**).

b. **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are the forms used as partitive genitives (**101**); **nostrī** and **vestrī**, as objective genitives (**98**).

c. The preposition **cum** is enclitic with personal pronouns; as **nōbīscum**, *with us.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun *refers back to* the subject, but cannot *be* the subject of a finite verb; therefore, there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

	First person, **meī**, *of myself*		Second person, **tuī**, *of yourself*		Third person, **suī**, *of himself, etc.*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Gen.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī	suī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē	sē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē	sē

a. The preposition **cum** is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as **sēcum**, *with himself*.

53. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1*st pers.*	**meus, -a, -um**, *my*	**noster, -tra, -trum**, *our*
2*d pers.*	**tuus, -a, -um**, *your* (of one)	**vester, -tra, -trum**, *your* (of more than one)
3*d pers.*	**suus, -a, -um**, *his, her, its* (when referring to the subject)	**suus, -a, -um**, *their* (when referring to the subject)
	eius (gen. sing. of **is**) *his, her, its* (when not referring to the subject)	**eōrum, eārum, eōrum** (gen. plur. of **is**) *their* (when not referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54. **hic**, *this* (near the speaker)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

55. **iste**, *that* (near the person spoken to)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

56. **Ille**, *that* (something more remote) is declined like **iste**.

57. **is,** *this, that, he, she, it* (unemphatic)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

58. **īdem,** *the same*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem

59. **THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN**

ipse, *self*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

60. **THE RELATIVE PRONOUN**

quī, *who*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. **Quīcumque** and **quisquis,** *whoever,* are generalizing relatives. The **quī** of **quīcumque** is declined regularly. **Quisquis, quicquid (quidquid),** and **quōquō** are the only common forms of **quisquis.**

b. The preposition **cum** is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun; as **quibuscum,** *with whom.*

61. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, quae, quod, the adjective *what?* is declined like the relative. **Quis, quid,** the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

quis, *who?*

SINGULAR

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quis	quid
Gen.	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quid
Abl.	quō	quō

a. The enclitic **-nam** is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; as **quisnam,** *who, pray?*

62. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are **quis, quī,** and their compounds. **Quis** and **quī** in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE	ADJECTIVE
quis, quid, *anyone*	**quī, quae (qua), quod,** *any*
aliquis, aliquid, *someone*	**aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,** *some*
quispiam, quidpiam, *someone*	**quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam,** *some*
quisquam, quicquam (quidquam), *anyone* (abl. sing. and entire plural supplied by **ūllus, -a, -um**)	(adjective supplied by **ūllus**)
quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs } **quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet** } *anyone,* etc., *you like*	**quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs** } **quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet** } *any you like*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *a certain man, woman, thing*	**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam,** *a certain*
quisque, quidque, *each*	**quisque, quaeque, quodque,** *each*

a. In **quī** and **aliquī** the nominative and accusative plural neuter are **qua** (or **quae**) and **aliqua.**

b. In the declension of **quīdam,** m becomes **n** before **d**; as **quendam.**

VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE
I.	**ā**	**-āre**
II.	**ē**	**-ēre**
III.	**e (i, u)**	**-ere**
IV.	**ī**	**-īre**

Because the final vowels of the stems are modified by the endings, they are printed in black type in the paradigms, as if they were part of the endings. The parts printed in light type (e.g., laud-, laudāv-, laudāt- in **67**) are bases, not stems. Compare **14,** *a*.

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are formed on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the *active:* (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine or the nominative singular neuter of the perfect passive participle (to give the supine stem). For a few verbs which have neither a supine nor a perfect passive participle, the future active participle may be used.

In the *passive* the principal parts are: (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

So, for example, the principal parts of **capiō** are:

capiō, given as the first form of the verb and needed to show to which type of the third conjugation the verb belongs;

cap**ere**, given to show that the verb belongs to the third conjugation, and that the present base is cap-;

cēpī, given to show that the perfect base is cēp-;

capt**us**, given to show that the supine base is capt-.

66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

The present stem is **es-** (changing to **er-** before a vowel), or **s-**.

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

INDICATIVE

Present

sum	sumus
es	estis
est	sunt

Imperfect

eram	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

Future

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

Perfect

fuī	fuimus
fuistī	fuistis
fuit	fuērunt *or* -ēre

Past Perfect

fueram	fuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis
fuerat	fuerant

Future Perfect

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

sim	sīmus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint

Imperfect

essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

Perfect

fuerim	fuerīmus
fuerīs	fuerītis
fuerit	fuerint

Past Perfect

fuissem	fuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis
fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

Pres.,	2*d pers.*	es	este
Fut.,	2*d pers.*	estō	estōte
	3*d pers.*	estō	suntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	esse
Perf.	fuisse
Fut.	futūrus (esse) *or* fore

PARTICIPLE

———
———
futūrus

REGULAR VERBS

67. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts { *Active:* laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum
Passive: laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	
Present		*Present*	
laudō	laudāmus	laudor	laudāmur
laudās	laudātis	laudāris *or* -re	laudāminī
laudat	laudant	laudātur	laudantur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
laudābam	laudābāmus	laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābās	laudābātis	laudābāris *or* -re	laudābāminī
laudābat	laudābant	laudābātur	laudābantur
Future		*Future*	
laudābō	laudābimus	laudābor	laudābimur
laudābis	laudābitis	laudāberis *or* -re	laudābiminī
laudābit	laudābunt	laudābitur	laudābuntur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
laudāvī	laudāvimus	laudātus sum	laudātī sumus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis	laudātus es	laudātī estis
laudāvit	laudāvērunt *or* -ēre	laudātus est	laudātī sunt
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
laudāveram	laudāverāmus	laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis	laudātus erās	laudātī erātis
laudāverat	laudāverant	laudātus erat	laudātī erant
Future Perfect		*Future Perfect*	
laudāverō	laudāverimus	laudātus erō	laudātī erimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis	laudātus eris	laudātī eritis
laudāverit	laudāverint	laudātus erit	laudātī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present		*Present*	
laudem	laudēmus	lauder	laudēmur
laudēs	laudētis	laudēris *or* -re	laudēminī
laudet	laudent	laudētur	laudentur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
laudārem	laudārēmus	laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēs	laudārētis	laudārēris *or* -re	laudārēminī
laudāret	laudārent	laudārētur	laudārentur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
laudāverim	laudāverīmus	laudātus sim	laudātī sīmus
laudāverīs	laudāverītis	laudātus sīs	laudātī sītis
laudāverit	laudāverint	laudātus sit	laudātī sint
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus	laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis	laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent	laudātus esset	laudātī essent

IMPERATIVE

Pres.,	2*d pers.*	laudā	laudāte	laudāre	laudāminī
Fut.,	2*d pers.*	laudātō	laudātōte	laudātor	————
	3*d pers.*	laudātō	laudantō	laudātor	laudantor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laudāre	*Pres.*	laudārī
Perf.	laudāvisse	*Perf.*	laudātus esse
Fut.	laudātūrus (esse)	*Fut.*	laudātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	laudāns	*Pres.*	————
Perf.	————	*Perf.*	laudātus
Fut.	laudātūrus	*Fut.*	laudandus

GERUND		SUPINE	
Gen.	laudandī		————
Dat.	laudandō		————
Acc.	laudandum	*Acc.*	laudātum
Abl.	laudandō	*Abl.*	laudātū

68. SECOND CONJUGATION

Principal Parts { *Active:* **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**
Passive: **moneor, monērī, monitus sum**

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	
		INDICATIVE	
Present		*Present*	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris *or* -re	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris *or* -re	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur
Future		*Future*	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis *or* -re	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
monuī	monuimus	monitus sum	monitī sumus
monuistī	monuistis	monitus es	monitī estis
monuit	monuērunt *or* -ēre	monitus est	monitī sunt
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	monitus erās	monitī erātis
monuerat	monuerant	monitus erat	monitī erant
Future Perfect		*Future Perfect*	
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus erō	monitī erimus
monueris	monueritis	monitus eris	monitī eritis
monuerit	monuerint	monitus erit	monitī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
Present		*Present*	
moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris *or* -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris *or* -re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis	monitus sīs	monitī sītis
monuerit	monuerint	monitus sit	monitī sint
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monuisset	monuissent	monitus esset	monitī essent
IMPERATIVE			
Pres., 2*d pers.* monē	monēte	*Pres.*, 2*d pers.* monēre	monēminī
Fut., 2*d pers.* monētō	monētōte	*Fut.*, 2*d pers.* monētor	————
3*d pers.* monētō	monentō	3*d pers.* monētor	monentor
INFINITIVE			
Pres. monēre		*Pres.* monērī	
Perf. monuisse		*Perf.* monitus esse	
Fut. monitūrus (esse)		*Fut.* monitum īrī	
PARTICIPLE			
Pres. monēns		*Pres.* ————	
Perf. ————		*Perf.* monitus	
Fut. monitūrus		*Fut.* monendus	

GERUND	SUPINE
Gen. monendī	————
Dat. monendō	————
Acc. monendum	*Acc.* monitum
Abl. monendō	*Abl.* monitū

69. THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts { *Active:* dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum
Passive: dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	
INDICATIVE			
Present		*Present*	
dūcō	dūcimus	dūcor	dūcimur
dūcis	dūcitis	dūceris *or* -re	dūciminī
dūcit	dūcunt	dūcitur	dūcuntur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcēbāris *or* -re	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbat	dūcēbant	dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur
Future		*Future*	
dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris *or* -re	dūcēminī
dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
dūxī	dūximus	ductus sum	ductī sumus
dūxistī	dūxistis	ductus es	ductī estis
dūxit	dūxērunt *or* -ēre	ductus est	ductī sunt
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus eram	ductī erāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis	ductus erās	ductī erātis
dūxerat	dūxerant	ductus erat	ductī erant
Future Perfect		*Future Perfect*	
dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus erō	ductī erimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	ductus eris	ductī eritis
dūxerit	dūxerint	ductus erit	ductī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
Present		*Present*	
dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris *or* -re	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris *or* -re	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
dūxerim	dūxerīmus	ductus sim	ductī sīmus
dūxerīs	dūxerītis	ductus sīs	ductī sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint	ductus sit	ductī sint
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus essem	ductī essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	ductus essēs	ductī essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent	ductus esset	ductī essent
IMPERATIVE			
Pres., 2*d pers.* dūc*	dūcite	*Pres.*, 2*d pers.* dūcere	dūciminī
Fut., 2*d pers.* dūcitō	dūcitōte	*Fut.*, 2*d pers.* dūcitor	————
3*d pers.* dūcitō	dūcuntō	3*d pers.* dūcitor	dūcuntor
INFINITIVE			
Pres. dūcere		*Pres.* dūcī	
Perf. dūxisse		*Perf.* ductus esse	
Fut. ductūrus (esse)		*Fut.* ductum īrī	
PARTICIPLE			
Pres. dūcēns		*Pres.* ————	
Perf. ————		*Perf.* ductus	
Fut. ductūrus		*Fut.* dūcendus	

GERUND	SUPINE
Gen. dūcendī	————
Dat. dūcendō	————
Acc. dūcendum	*Acc.* ductum
Abl. dūcendō	*Abl.* ductū

*Irregular for dūce.

70. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts { *Active:* audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum
Passive: audior, audīrī, audītus sum

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	
Present		*Present*	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris *or* -re	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris *or* -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur
Future		*Future*	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris *or* -re	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
audīvī	audīvimus	audītus sum	audītī sumus
audīvistī	audīvistis	audītus es	audītī estis
audīvit	audīvērunt *or* -ēre	audītus est	audītī sunt
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis	audītus erās	audītī erātis
audīverat	audīverant	audītus erat	audītī erant
Future Perfect		*Future Perfect*	
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus erō	audītī erimus
audīveris	audīveritis	audītus eris	audītī eritis
audīverit	audīverint	audītus erit	audītī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
Present		*Present*	
audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris *or* -re	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris *or* -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
audīverim	audīverīmus	audītus sim	audītī sīmus
audīverīs	audīverītis	audītus sīs	audītī sītis
audīverit	audīverint	audītus sit	audītī sint
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis	audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent	audītus esset	audītī essent
IMPERATIVE			
Pres., 2*d pers.* audī	audīte	*Pres.*, 2*d pers.* audīre	audīminī
Fut., 2*d pers.* audītō	audītōtē	*Fut.*, 2*d pers.* audītor	————
3*d pers.* audītō	audiuntō	3*d pers.* audītor	audiuntor
INFINITIVE			
Pres. audīre		*Pres.* audīrī	
Perf. audīvisse		*Perf.* audītus esse	
Fut. audītūrus (esse)		*Fut.* audītum īrī	
PARTICIPLE			
Pres. audiēns		*Pres.* ————	
Perf. ————		*Perf.* audītus	
Fut. audītūrus		*Fut.* audiendus	

GERUND	SUPINE
Gen. audiendī	————
Dat. audiendō	————
Acc. audiendum	*Acc.* audītum
Abl. audiendō	*Abl.* audītū

71. THIRD CONJUGATION IN *-IŌ*

These verbs have fourth conjugation endings wherever those endings have two successive vowels; elsewhere they have third conjugation endings.

Principal Parts { *Active:* capiō, capere, cēpī, captum
Passive: capior, capī, captus sum

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	
INDICATIVE			
Present		*Present*	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis *or* -re	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris *or* -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur
Future		*Future*	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris *or* -re	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
cēpī	cēpimus	captus sum	captī sumus
cēpistī	cēpistis	captus es	captī estis
cēpit	cēpērunt *or* -ēre	captus est	captī sunt
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
cēperam	cēperāmus	captus eram	captī erāmus
cēperās	cēperātis	captus erās	captī erātis
cēperat	cēperant	captus erat	captī erant
Future Perfect		*Future Perfect*	
cēperō	cēperimus	captus erō	captī erimus
cēperis	cēperitis	captus eris	captī eritis
cēperit	cēperint	captus erit	captī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE		*PASSIVE VOICE*	

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present		*Present*	
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris *or* -re	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris *or* -re	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur
Perfect		*Perfect*	
cēperim	cēperīmus	captus sim	captī sīmus
cēperīs	cēperītis	captus sīs	captī sītis
cēperit	cēperint	captus sit	captī sint
Past Perfect		*Past Perfect*	
cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus essem	captī essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis	captus essēs	captī essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent	captus esset	captī essent

IMPERATIVE

Pres.,	2*d pers.* cape	capite	*Pres.*,	2*d pers.* capere	capiminī
Fut.,	2*d pers.* capitō	capitōte	*Fut.*,	2*d pers.* capitor	— — — —
	3*d pers.* capitō	capiuntō		3*d pers.* capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capere	*Pres.*	capī
Perf.	cēpisse	*Perf.*	captus esse
Fut.	captūrus (esse)	*Fut.*	captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	capiēns	*Pres.*	————
Perf.	————	*Perf.*	captus
Fut.	captūrus	*Fut.*	capiendus

GERUND		SUPINE	
Gen.	capiendī		————
Dat.	capiendō		————
Acc.	capiendum	*Acc.*	captum
Abl.	capiendō	*Abl.*	captū

CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in **v**, the **v** is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.

a. Perfects in **-āvī, -ēvī,** and **-ōvī,** and the other tenses formed on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop **ve, vē,** or **vi** before **r** or **s.**

Laudāstī for **laudāvistī; laudāsse** for **laudāvisse; dēlērunt** for **dēlēvērunt; nōrim** for **nōverim.**

b. Perfects in **-īvī,** and the other tenses formed on the same stem, sometimes drop **v** in all forms. When the resulting combination is **iis** it usually contracts to **īs.**

Audiī for **audīvī; audieram** for **audīveram; audīsse** for **audīvisse.**

DEPONENT VERBS

73. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, and supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

hortor, *urge* = laudor (67)	vereor, *fear* = moneor (68)	sequor, *follow* = dūcor (69)	partior, *share* = audior (70)

Infinitive

Pres.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus (esse)	veritūrus (esse)	secūtūrus (esse)	partītūrus (esse)

Participle

Pres.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
Fut. Pass.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUND

hortandī, -ō, -um, -ō	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	partītum, -tū

74. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses formed on the present stem, passive forms for those formed on the perfect stem.

They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future* or *intended* action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. laudātūrus sum, *I am about to praise, I intend to praise,*
Imp. laudātūrus eram, *I was about to praise, I intended to praise,* etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation* or *necessity*. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. laudandus sum, *I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised,*
Imp. laudandus eram, *I was to be praised, I had to be praised,* etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of **sum** see **66.** **Sum** is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions **ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super.** **Praesum** has a present participle, **praesēns.**

78. In **absum, sum** is inflected in the same way, but **ā** is used for **ab** before **f,** giving **āfuī, āfutūrus,** etc. There is a present participle **absēns.**

79. In **prōsum, sum** is inflected in the same way, but the preposition **prō** has its original form **prōd** before all forms of **sum** beginning with **e;** as **prōdesse, prōderam.** The present tense is, **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.**

POSSUM

80. **Possum,** *be able, can,* is a compound of **pot-** and **sum,** in which the combination **ts** always becomes **ss.** Note that the perfect is **potuī,** not **potfuī;** the imperfect subjunctive is **possem,** not **potessem;** and the infinitive is **posse,** not **potesse.**

Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	possum	possumus	*Pres.*	possim
	potes	potestis		
	potest	possunt		
Imp.	poteram		*Imp.*	possem
Fut.	poterō			
Perf.	potuī		*Perf.*	potuerim
Past P.	potueram		*Past P.*	potuissem
Fut. P.	potuerō			

	Infinitive	Participle	
Pres.	posse	*Pres.*	potēns
Perf.	potuisse		

81. **FERŌ**

Principal Parts { *Active:* ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
Passive: feror, ferrī, lātus sum

	ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE		
		INDICATIVE			
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	*Pres.*	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis		ferris	feriminī
	fert	ferunt		fertur	feruntur
Imp.	ferēbam		*Imp.*	ferēbar	
Fut.	feram		*Fut.*	ferar	
Perf.	tulī		*Perf.*	lātus sum	
Past P.	tuleram		*Past P.*	lātus eram	
Fut. P.	tulerō		*Fut. P.*	lātus erō	
		SUBJUNCTIVE			
Pres.	feram		*Pres.*	ferar	
Imp.	ferrem		*Imp.*	ferrer	
Perf.	tulerim		*Perf.*	lātus sim	
Past P.	tulissem		*Past P.*	lātus essem	
		IMPERATIVE			
Pres., 2*d pers.*	fer	ferte	*Pres.*	ferre	feriminī
Fut., 2*d pers.*	fertō	fertōte	*Fut.*	fertor	———
3*d pers.*	fertō	feruntō		fertor	feruntor
		INFINITIVE			
Pres.	ferre		*Pres.*	ferrī	
Perf.	tulisse		*Perf.*	lātus esse	
Fut.	lātūrus (esse)		*Fut.*	lātum īrī	
		PARTICIPLE			
Pres.	ferēns		*Pres.*	———	
Perf.	———		*Perf.*	lātus	
Fut.	lātūrus		*Fut.*	ferendus	

GERUND	SUPINE
ferendī, -ō, -um, -ō	lātum, -ū

82. *VOLŌ* AND ITS COMPOUNDS

Principal Parts { volō, velle, voluī, *be willing*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer*

Indicative

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imp.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Past P.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
Imp.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Past P.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Imperative

Pres., 2*d pers.*	nōlī	nōlīte
Fut., 2*d pers.*	nōlītō	nōlītōte
3*d pers.*	nōlītō	nōluntō

Infinitive

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
Fut.	————	————	————

Participle

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns
Perf.	————	————
Fut.	————	————

FĪŌ

83. **Fīō,** *be made, be done, become, happen,* is the irregular passive of **faciō,** *make.* Note the **ī** before all vowels, except before **e** in the combination **-er.**

Principal Parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	fīō	fīmus	*Pres.*	fīam
	fīs	fītis		
	fit	fīunt		
Imp.	fīēbam		*Imp.*	fierem
Fut.	fīam			
Perf.	factus sum		*Perf.*	factus sim
Past P.	factus eram		*Past P.*	factus essem
Fut. P.	factus erō			

Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
Pres. fī, fīte	*Pres.* fierī	*Pres.* ————
	Perf. factus esse	*Perf.* factus
	Fut. factum īrī	*Fut.* faciendus

EŌ

84. *Principal Parts:* **eō, īre, iī, itum**

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pres.	eō	īmus	*Pres.*	eam
	īs	ītis		
	it	eunt		
Imp.	ībam		*Imp.*	īrem
Fut.	ībō			
Perf.	iī (*for* īvī)		*Perf.*	ierim
Past P.	ieram		*Past P.*	iissem *or* īssem
Fut. P.	ierō			

Imperative		Infinitive	Participle
Pres. ī,	īte	*Pres.* īre	*Pres.* iēns (*Gen.* euntis)
Fut. ītō,	ītōte	*Perf.* iisse *or* īsse	*Perf.* ————
ītō,	euntō	*Fut.* itūrus (esse)	*Fut.* itūrus

Gerund	Supine
eundī, etc.	itum, -ū

a. In the tenses formed on the perfect stem, **ii** usually contract to **ī** before **s.**

DŌ

85. Dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give,* is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short **a.** The long vowel, **ā,** appears only in the following forms: **dās, dā, dāns.**

86. DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects **meminī,** *I remember;* **ōdī,** *I hate;* and **coepī,** *I have begun.* Notice that **meminī** and **ōdī** have the meanings of presents. Their past perfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

INDICATIVE

Perf.	meminī	ōdī	coepī
Past P.	memineram	ōderam	coeperam
Fut. P.	meminerō	ōderō	coeperō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf.	meminerim	ōderim	coeperim
Past P.	meminissem	ōdissem	coepissem

IMPERATIVE

Sing.	mementō
Plur.	mementōte

INFINITIVE

Perf.	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
Fut.	————	ōsūrus (esse)	coeptūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Perf.	————	ōsus	coeptus
Fut.	————	ōsūrus	coeptūrus

a. Instead of **coepī** the passive form **coeptus sum** is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it.

Laudārī coeptus est, *he began to be praised.*

87. IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as **pluit,** *it rains*.

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: **decet,** *it becomes;* **libet,** *it pleases;* **licet,** *it is permitted;* **miseret,** *it causes pity;* **oportet,** *it is right;* **paenitet,** *it repents;* **piget,** *it displeases;* **pudet,** *it shames;* **rēfert,** *it concerns;* **taedet,** *it wearies*. All of these except **rēfert** belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as **accēdit,** *it is added,* from **accēdō,** *I approach*.

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as **pugnātur,** *it is fought*.

SYNTAX

Syntax tells how words are put together to form sentences; that is, to express thoughts. It deals very largely with the uses of inflectional forms, because in Latin the connections between words in sentences are shown chiefly by those forms.

SENTENCES

88. A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts—the *subject* (that of which something is said), and the *predicate* (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

89. A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate.

Caesar vēnit, *Caesar came.*

90. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called *coördinate clauses*, and are connected by *coördinating conjunctions;* i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *and, but, for, or.*

Caesar vēnit et Gallī fūgērunt, *Caesar came and the Gauls fled.*

91. A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a *principal clause*), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called *subordinate* or *dependent clauses*). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by *subordinating conjunctions;* i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before.*

Ubi Caesar vēnit, Gallī fūgērunt, *when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.*

SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES

USES OF CASES

92. The cases show in what relation to the rest of a sentence a declined word stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending *'s* in *the soldier's arms* indicates that *soldier* modifies *arms* and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences *the soldier* (subject) *fights*, *he kills the soldier* (direct object), *he gives the soldier* (indirect object) *a sword*, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin **mīles** would be used in the first sentence, **mīlitem** in the second, and **mīlitī** in the third.

93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. E. g., the accusative may express duration of time, but **mīlitem,** *a soldier*, could not be used in this sense, while **multōs annōs,** *many years*, is quite probably so used. **Dīcit pīlum mīlitem vulnerāvisse** might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier*, or *that a soldier wounded the javelin*, but the latter makes no sense. **Persuāsit,** *he persuaded*, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English.

Ā mīlite interfectus est, *he was killed by a soldier;* **cum mīlite vēnit,** *he came in company with a soldier.*

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

GENERAL RULE: ***A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.***

Compare **97.** Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. ***RULE:*** ***A predicate noun is connected with the subject by*** **sum** ***or a verb of similar meaning.***

Such verbs are those meaning *appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be made, be regarded*, and the like.

Pīsō fuit cōnsul, *Piso was consul;* **Pīsō factus est cōnsul,** *Piso became consul;* **Pīsō appellātus est cōnsul,** *Piso was called consul.*

b. ***RULE: An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.***

Pīsō, cōnsul, mīlitī Pīsōnī gladium dedit, *Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.*

96. NOMINATIVE

RULE: The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i.e., the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods).

Gallia est dīvīsa (I, **1,** 1), *Gaul is divided.*

GENITIVE

A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

97. ***GENERAL RULE: A noun which limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.***

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of,* but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings, into the groups given in **98-105.**

A genitive may be either (*a*) *attributive,* depending directly upon another noun; as **domus Caesaris,** *Caesar's house;* or (*b*) *predicative,* connected by **sum** or a verb of similar meaning; as **domus est Caesaris,** *the house is Caesar's.*

a. **Appositional Genitive.** But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i.e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends.

Tuōrum comitum sentīna (Cic. Cat. I, 12), *that refuse, your comrades.*

Attributive

98. Subjective and Objective Genitives.

RULE: The genitive may express either the subject or the object of an action expressed by a noun.

The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject, it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object, it is an objective genitive. E. g., **amor patris,** *the love of the father,* may imply that *the father loves* (subjective), or that someone *loves his father* (objective).

Occāsum sōlis (I, **1,** 22), *the setting of the sun* (subjective); **rēgnī cupiditāte** (I, **2,** 2), *by desire for power* (objective).

99. Possessive Genitive.

***RULE:** The genitive may express the possessor.*

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns.

Fīnibus Belgārum (I, **1,** 16), *by the territory of the Belgae;* **fīnibus vestrīs,** *by your territory.*

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede **causā** or **grātiā,** *for the sake of.*

Huius potentiae causā (I, **18,** 14), *for the sake of this power;* **meā causā,** *for my sake.*

100. Descriptive Genitive.

***RULE:** The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing.*

The ablative is used in the same way, with no difference of meaning (**141**); but if the description is a measure, the genitive is always used.

Vir magnae sapientiae (or **magnā sapientiā**), *a man of great wisdom;* **trium mēnsium molita cibāria** (I, **5,** 7), *provisions for three months.*

101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

***RULE:** The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.*

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole.

Eōrum ūna pars (I, **1,** 14), *one part of them;* **hōrum omnium fortissimī** (I, **1,** 5), *the bravest of all these;* **ubinam gentium sumus** (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in the world are we?*

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on **satis** used substantively.

Quantum bonī (I, **40,** 17), *how much (of) good;* **satis causae** (I, **19,** 6), *sufficient (of) reason.*

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with **dē** or **ex** is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with **quīdam.**

Ūnus ē fīliīs captus est (I, **26,** 12), *one of his sons was captured.*

c. English often uses *of* in apparently similar phrases, especially with "all," when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive.

Hī omnēs (I, **1,** 3), *all of these.*

102. Genitive of Material.

RULE: The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.

Aciem legiōnum quattuor (I, **24,** 3), *a battle line (consisting) of four legions.*

PREDICATIVE

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (**99**) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as **est hominis**, *it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man.*

Est hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis (IV, **5,** 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs.*

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (**100**) is often used predicatively.

Senātūs cōnsultum est huiusce modī, *the decree is of this kind.*

105. The Genitive of Value. With **sum** and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of *valuing*, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (**147**). The words commonly so used are **magnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris.**

Tantī eius grātiam esse ostendit (I, **20,** 14), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value.*

B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

106. *RULE: Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.*

They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as *conscious (of), desirous (of), mindful (of), sharing (in), skilled (in)*, and their opposites, and **plēnus,** *full (of).*

Bellandī cupidī (I, **2,** 13), *desirous of fighting;* **reī mīlitāris perītissimus** (I, **21,** 9), *most skilled in military science.*

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (**122**), **similis,** *like;* **dissimilis,** *unlike.* The genitive is more common of living objects, and always used of personal pronouns.

Tuī similis (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you;* **vērī simile** (III, **13,** 11), *probable (like the truth).*

c. Occasionally other adjectives.

Locum medium utrīusque (I, **34,** 2), *a place midway between the two.*

C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

RULE: **Meminī** *and* **reminīscor,** *remember, and* **oblīvīscor,** *forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.*

Personal and reflexive pronouns are genitive; neuter pronouns and adjectives used as nouns are accusative; other words vary. **Recordor,** *remember,* takes only the accusative.

Reminīscerētur veteris incommodī (I, **13,** 10), *he should remember the former disaster;* **veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī** (I, **14,** 7), *to forget the former insult.*

108. Verbs of Judicial Action.

RULE: Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.

The penalty is expressed by the ablative.

Mē inertiae condemnō (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.*

109. Verbs of Emotion.

RULE: The impersonal verbs **miseret,** *pity,* **paenitet,** *repent,* **piget,** *dislike,* **pudet,** *be ashamed,* **taedet,** *be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.*

The personal verb **misereor,** *pity,* also takes the genitive.

Mē meōrum factōrum numquam paenitēbit (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds;* **mē eius miseret** or **eius misereor,** *I pity him.*

110. ***Interest*** **and** ***Rēfert.***

RULE: The impersonal verbs **interest** *and* **rēfert,** *it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.*

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, **interest** is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun.

Reī pūblicae intersit (II, **5,** 5), *it is to the interest of the state;* **meā interest,** *it is to my interest.*

111. *RULE:* **Potior** *occasionally governs the genitive.*

For **potior** with the ablative see **145.**

Galliae potīrī (I, **3,** 22), *to become masters of Gaul.*

THE DATIVE

112. The dative usually indicates the *person to* whom or *for* whom something is done; but in **119** the dative always denotes a *thing*, and it sometimes does so elsewhere. The dative may depend on a verb (Indirect Object) or an adjective, or may modify a whole clause without depending on any one word (Dative of Reference).

113. Indirect Object.

***GENERAL RULE:** The dative denotes the person (or thing) to whom something is said, given, shown, etc.*

For examples, see **114, 115,** and **116.**

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

***RULE:** Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.*

These are especially verbs of *giving* and *saying*. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see **116.**

Eī fīliam dat (I, **3,** 15), *he gives (to) him his daughter.*

a. **Dōnō,** *give, present,* and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing.

Eī librum dōnō, *I give (to) him a book;* **eum librō dōnō,** *I present him with a book.*

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially **cōnsulō,** *consult* or *consult for,* and **metuō,** *fear* or *fear for.*

Sī mē cōnsulis (Cic. Cat. I, 13), *if you consult me (ask my advice);* **cōnsulite vōbīs** (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves (for your own interests).*

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice.

Eī fīlia datur, *his daughter is given to him.*

115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

***RULE:** The dative is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.*

The most common of these verbs in Caesar are: **imperō,** *command (give orders to);* **noceō,** *injure (do harm to);* **persuādeō,** *persuade (make agreeable to);* **resistō,** *resist (stand up to);* **studeō,** *desire (be eager for).*

Cīvitātī persuāsit (I, **2,** 3), *he persuaded the state;* **novīs rēbus studēbat** (I, **9,** 8), *he was anxious for a revolution.*

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as **audiēns sum,** *obey,* and **fidem habēre,** *trust.*

Cui fidem habēbat (I, **19,** 15), *whom he trusted.*

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun.

Prōvinciae mīlitum numerum imperat (I, **7,** 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province;* **id iīs persuāsit** (I, **2,** 6), *he persuaded them to this* (lit., *he persuaded this to them*).

c. Some verbs with the meanings given above take the direct object instead of the indirect. The most important are **dēlectō,** *delight;* **iubeō,** *command;* **iuvō,** *please;* **vetō,** *forbid.*

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (**124,** *b*), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of **115** can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. E.g., **Caesarī persuādeō,** *I persuade Caesar,* becomes **Caesarī ā mē persuādētur,** *Caesar is persuaded by me* (lit. *it is persuaded to Caesar*).

116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive, the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from,* it is sometimes called the *dative of separation.*

This so-called dative of separation is common only with **adimō, auferō, dētrahō,** and **ēripiō,** all meaning *take away.*

RULE: ***The dative is required with many compounds of*** **ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super;** ***and with some compounds of*** **ab, circum,** ***and*** **ex.**

Cum omnibus praestārent (I, **2,** 5), *since they excelled all;* **fīnitimīs bellum īnferre** (I, **2,** 12), *to make war upon their neighbors;* **mūnītiōnī Labiēnum praeficit** (I, **10,** 7), *he puts Labienus in command of the works;* **scūtō mīlitī dētractō** (II, **25,** 13), *having snatched a shield from a soldier.*

II. RULE: The dative is used with compounds of **satis** *and* **bene.**

Sī Haeduīs satisfaciant (I, **14,** 19), *if they should make restitution to the Haedui.*

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs **aggredior,** *attack;* **incendō,** *burn;* **interficiō,** *kill;* **oppugnō,** *assault;* but there are many others.

Eōs aggressus (I, **12,** 9), *having attacked* (or *attacking*) *them.*

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed.

Illum in equum intulit (VI, **30,** 15), *he put him on a horse.*

c. The dative is retained with the passive.

Mūnītiōnī Labiēnus praeficitur, *Labienus is put in command of the works.*

117. Dative of Possession.

RULE: The dative is used in the predicate with **sum** *to denote the possessor.*

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have.*

Mihi est liber, *I have a book* (lit. *a book is to me*); **dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse** (I, **11,** 12), *they declared that they had nothing* (lit. *there was nothing to them*).

118. Dative of the Agent.

RULE: The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation **(76)** *to express the agent.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (**137**), which is used with the other forms of the passive.

Nōn exspectandum sibi statuit (I, **11,** 13), *he decided that he must not wait* (lit. *that it must not be waited by him*).

a. The ablative of the agent (**137**) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous.

Cīvitātī ā tē persuādendum est, *the state must be persuaded by you.*

119. Dative of Purpose.

RULE: The dative may express purpose or tendency.

The true dative of purpose is especially common in phrases meaning *to go, come,* or *send for an aid* or *guard* (**auxiliō, praesidiō, subsidiō**); *to*

choose a place for a camp, etc. (**castrīs,** etc.); *to set a day for a conference*, etc. (**colloquiō,** etc.).

Quem auxiliō Caesarī mīserant (I, **18,** 27), *whom they had sent to aid Caesar* (lit. *for an aid to Caesar*).

a. Predicative Dative. The dative of certain nouns is used regularly with **sum** where a predicate nominative would seem more natural. It is often used in connection with another dative (of possession or reference). The most common of these idiomatic datives are **auxiliō, cūrae, praesidiō, subsidiō, ūsuī;** but there are many others.

Quī novissimīs praesidiō erant (I, **25,** 14), *who were* (for) *a guard for the rear;* **Gallīs erat impedīmentō** (I, **25,** 5), *it was* (for) *a disadvantage to the Gauls.*

120. Dative of Reference.

***RULE:** The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.*

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare **113**) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun.

Cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent (I, **5,** 8), *they order each one to carry food for himself;* **sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt** (I, **31,** 4), *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet* (lit. *at the feet for Caesar*).

121. *Ethical Dative.* The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns.

Tongilium mihi ēdūxit (Cic. Cat. II, 4), *he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius,* or simply *he took out Tongilius.*

122. Dative with Adjectives.

***RULE:** The dative is used with most adjectives whose English translation takes* **to** *or* **for.**

These are chiefly adjectives meaning *friendly* or *unfriendly, like* or *unlike, useful* or *useless, equal, near,* and *suitable.*

Plēbī acceptus (I, **3,** 14), *acceptable (pleasing) to the people;* **proximī sunt Germānīs** (I, **1,** 9), *they are nearest to the Germans;* **castrīs idōneum locum** (VI, **10,** 5), *a place suitable for a camp.*

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative.

Ad amīcitiam idōneus, *suitable for friendship.*

b. The adjectives **propior** and **proximus** and the adverbs **propius** and **proximē** sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition **prope.**

Proximī Rhēnum (I, **54,** 3), *nearest the Rhine*

c. For **similis** and **dissimilis** see **106,** *b.*

ACCUSATIVE

123. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE: ***The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.***

Certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse (I, **12,** 5), *he was informed that the Helvetii had led across.*

124. Direct Object.

RULE: ***The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.***

The direct object may be either (*a*) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as **puerum laudat,** *he praises the boy;* or (*b*) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as **coniūrātiōnem fēcit,** *he made a conspiracy.*

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (**228, 229, 262, 279**).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive; as **puer laudātur,** *the boy is praised;* **coniūrātiō facta est,** *a conspiracy was made.*

c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially **ad, circum, in, per, praeter, sub, trāns,** have transitive meanings. E.g., **īre,** *to go,* is intransitive; but **flūmen trānsīre,** *to cross (go across) the river,* is transitive.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially **115.**

THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (**125-127**)

125. Two Objects. A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. ***RULE:*** ***Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching,*** (***also*** **cēlō,** ***I conceal***) ***have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.***

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab.**

Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre (I, **16,** 1), *he kept asking the Haedui for*

the grain; **eadem ab aliīs quaerit** (I, **18,** 5), *he asked the same questions of others.*

b. RULE: **Moneō,** ***I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.***

The pronoun is an *inner accusative* (**128,** *a*).

Eōs hoc moneō (Cic. Cat. II, 20), *I give them this advice;* **sī quid ille sē velit** (I, **34,** 6), *if he wanted anything of him.*

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained.

Haeduī frūmentum flāgitābantur, *the Haedui were asked for the grain;* **(iī) hoc monentur,** *they are given this advice.*

126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

RULE: Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing oneself, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective.

Quem rēgem cōnstituerat (IV, **21,** 13), *whom he had appointed king;* **Caesarem certiōrem fēcit,** *he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain).*

a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (**95,** *a*).

Quī rēx cōnstitūtus erat, *who had been appointed king;* **Caesar certior factus est** (I, **12,** 5), *Caesar was informed (made more certain).*

127. Two Objects with Compounds.

RULE: Transitive verbs compounded with **trāns** ***may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.***

Trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt (cf. I, **12,** 5), *they led three parts across the river.*

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained.

Trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt, *three parts were led across the river.*

128. Cognate Accusative.

RULE: An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.

Eam vītam vīvere, *to live that life;* **trīduī viam prōcēdere** (cf. I, **38,** 3), *to advance a three days' march.*

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an *inner accusative.*

Id iīs persuāsit (I, **2,** 6), *he persuaded them of this* (lit. *he persuaded this to them*); **multum posse,** *to have much power.*

b. Adverbial Accusative. A few accusatives are commonly called adverbial. They are partly inner accusatives (see *a*), partly accusatives of extent, like the examples under **130** except that they are less definite. The commonest are **quid,** *why? how?* **multum,** *much;* **paulum,** *a little;* **plūs,** *more;* **plūrimum,** *most;* **plērumque,** *for the most part;* **nihil,** *not at all.* Here belong also **id temporis** (Cic. Cat. I, **10**), *at that time,* and **maximam partem** (IV, **1,** 14), *for the most part.*

129. Accusative in Exclamations.

***RULE:** An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.*

O fortūnātam rem pūblicam (Cic. Cat. II, 7), *O fortunate state!*

130. Accusative of Extent.

***RULE:** The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.*

The noun must be one meaning time or distance; as **diēs,** *day;* **pēs,** *foot.* Compare **152** and **148.**

Rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat (I, **3,** 10), *he had held the royal power many years;* **mīlia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant** (I, **2,** 16), *extended two hundred and forty miles.*

131. Place to Which.

***RULE:** Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with* **ad** *or* **in,** *but names of towns and* **domus** *and* **rūs** *omit the preposition.*

Ad iūdicium coēgit (I, **4,** 4), *he brought to the trial;* **in agrum Nōricum trānsierant** (I, **5,** 11), *they had crossed over into the Noreian territory;* **sē Massiliam cōnferet** (Cic. Cat. II, 14), *he will go to Marseilles;* **domum reditiōnis** (I, **5,** 6), *of a return home.*

a. **Ad** is, however, sometimes used with names of towns in the sense of *toward* (not *to*), or *to the neighborhood of.*

Ad Genavam pervenit (I, **7,** 4), *he reached the neighborhood of Geneva.*

132. VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. This form is the same as the nominative; but see **16.**

Dēsilīte, commīlitōnēs (IV, **25,** 11), *jump down, comrades.*

133. ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has—the instrumental and the locative. The *original ablative* meant separation (*from*), the *instrumental* meant association or instrument (*with* or *by*), and the *locative* meant place where (*in*). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

134. Ablative of Separation.

RULE: Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without **ab, dē,** *or* **ex.**

With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see **116,** I.

Suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent (I, **1,** 13), *they repel them from their own territory;* **quae hostem ā pugnā prohibērent** (IV, **34,** 9), *which kept the enemy from battle;* **ā Bibracte aberat** (I, **23,** 2), *he was distant from Bibracte.*

a. **Place from Which.**

Rule: With verbs expressing motion, place from which is expressed by the ablative with **ab, dē,** *or* **ex,** *but names of towns and* **domus** *and* **rūs** *omit the preposition.*

Ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent (I, **2,** 4), *to go out from their territory;* **quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant** (I, **8,** 2), *who had gathered from the province;* **Rōmā profūgērunt** (Cic. Cat. I, **7**), *they fled from Rome;* **domō exīre** (I, **6,** 1), *to go out from home.*

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express *from the neighborhood of.*

b. RULE: With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.

Magnō mē metū līberābis (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will free me of great fear;* **proeliō abstinēbat** (I, **22,** 11), *refused battle* (lit. *refrained from battle*); **eā spē dēiectī** (I, **8,** 4), *deprived of this hope.*

135. Ablative of Source.

RULE: The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles **nātus** *and* **ortus,** *to express parentage or rank.*

Amplissimō genere nātus (IV, **12,** 13), *born of the highest rank;* **sorōrem ex mātre (nātam)** (I, **18,** 16), *his sister on his mother's side.*

136. Ablative of Material.

RULE: ***The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with* ex, *less often* dē.**

Nāvēs factae ex rōbore (III, **13,** 5), *the ships were made of oak.*

137. Ablative of Agent.

RULE: ***The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with* ab.**

The agent is the *person* who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (**143**), and the dative of agent (**118**).

Exercitum ab Helvētiīs pulsum (I, **7,** 13), *that his army had been routed by the Helvetii.*

138. Ablative of Cause.

RULE: ***Cause may be expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.***

Grātiā et largītiōne (I, **9,** 5), *because of his popularity and lavish giving;* **quod suā victōriā glōriārentur** (I, **14,** 11), *that they boasted (because) of their victory.*

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by the accusative with **ob, per,** or **propter;** or by **dē** or **ex** with the ablative.

Propter angustiās (I, **9,** 2), *because of its narrowness;* **quā dē causā** (I, **1,** 11), *and for this reason.*

139. Ablative of Comparison.

RULE: ***With comparatives, "than" may be expressed by the ablative.***

Lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōnsilia (Cic. Cat. I, 6), *your plans are clearer than day;* **nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum** (I, **15,** 14), *not more than five or six miles* (compare *b*).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of degree of difference (**148**).

a. When **quam** is used for *than*, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negatived.

b. **Plūs, minus, amplius,** and **longius** are often used instead of **plūs quam,** etc.

Quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore (V, **8,** 19), *of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time.*

140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

RULE: Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum.**

Ut cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent (I, **2,** 4), *to go out with all their troops.*

a. It is said that **cum** is sometimes omitted in military phrases. Such phrases are really the ablative of manner (**142**).

Omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt (II, **19,** 17), *they dashed out in full force.*

141. Descriptive Ablative.

RULE: The ablative modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing.

Hominēs inimīcō animō (I, **7,** 15), *men of unfriendly disposition;* **nōndum bonō animō vidērentur** (I, **6,** 11), *they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit).* Compare the descriptive genitive (**100**).

142. Ablative of Manner.

RULE: Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either **cum** *or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.*

Pars cum cruciātū necābātur (V, **45,** 5), *some were killed with torture;* **magnīs itineribus** (I, **10,** 8), *by forced marches.*

a. Ablative of Accordance.

RULE: In some common phrases the ablative means "in accordance with."

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive—**cōnsuētūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententiā, sponte, voluntāte.**

Mōribus suīs (I, **4,** 1), *in accordance with their customs;* **suā voluntāte** (I, **20,** 11), *in accordance with his wish.*

b. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

RULE: Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.

Imperiō populī Rōmānī (I, **18,** 22), *under the sovereignty of the Roman people;* **intervāllō pedum duōrum iungēbat** (IV, **17,** 9), *he joined at a distance apart of two feet.*

143. Ablative of Means.

RULE: The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Rēgnī cupiditāte inductus (I, **2,** 2), *influenced by the desire for royal power.*

a. Notice the ablative with the following words: verbs and adjectives of *filling* (except **plēnus, 106**); **fīdō, cōnfīdō,** *trust in;* **nītor,** *rely upon;* **lacessō (proeliō),** *provoke (to battle);* **assuēfactus, assuētus,** *accustomed to;* **frētus,** *relying upon.*

Nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant (III, **9,** 12), *they trusted in the nature of the country;* **nūllō officiō assuēfactī** (IV, **1,** 17), *accustomed to no obedience.*

144. Ablative of the Way.

***RULE:** The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.*

Quod flūmine Ararī subvexerat (I, **16,** 5), *which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone;* **eōdem itinere contendit** (I, **21,** 8), *he advanced by the same road.*

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs.

***RULE:** The ablative is used with* **ūtor,** *use,* **fruor,** *enjoy,* **fungor,** *perform, fulfill,* **potior,** *get possession of,* **vēscor,** *eat, and their compounds.*

Eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō (I, **5,** 9), *adopting (having used) the same plan;* **imperiō potīrī** (I, **2,** 6), *to get possession of the government.*

146. Ablative with *opus est*.

***RULE:** The ablative of means is used with* **opus est** *and* **ūsus est,** *meaning there is need of.*

Caesarī multīs auxiliīs opus est, *Caesar needs many auxiliaries.*

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with **opus** as predicate noun.

Sī quid opus esset (I, **34,** 5), *if he needed anything.*

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with **opus est.**

Sī opus factō esset (I, **42,** 19), *if there should be need of action.*

147. Ablative of Price.

***RULE:** With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.*

Parvō pretiō redēmpta (I, **18,** 9), *bought up at a low price.* Compare the genitive of value, **105.**

148. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

***RULE:** The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.*

Nihilō minus (I, **5,** 1), lit. *less by nothing = nevertheless;* **paucīs ante diēbus** (I, **18,** 25), *a few days before* (lit. *before by a few days*).

Multō, *by much, much,* **paulō,** *by a little, a little,* and similar words belong here, though often called adverbs.

a. **Eō . . . quō,** in this construction, may be translated *the . . . the.*

Eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent (I, **14,** 3), lit. *he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly = he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened.*

149. Ablative of Specification.

RULE: ***The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.***

Linguā inter sē differunt (I, **1,** 3), *they differ in language;* **maior nātū,** *older* (*greater in birth*).

a. The ablative is used with **dignus,** *worthy,* and **indignus,** *unworthy.*

Ipsīs indignum (V, **35,** 11), *unworthy of themselves.*

150. Ablative Absolute.

RULE: ***A noun and a participle in the ablative may be used instead of a clause.***

RULE: ***Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."***

Remember that **sum** has no present participle, so that Latin has no word for "being."

The construction is called absolute (from **absolvō,** *I set free*) because it is free from dependence on any word.

It may always be translated by the English nominative absolute, translating first the noun, then the participle; as **captā urbe,** *the city having been taken;* **illō licente** (I, **18,** 10), *he bidding;* or supplying "being" between two nouns or a noun and adjective; as **Caesare cōnsule,** *Caesar being consul.* But it is usually best to translate it in some other way.

Remōtīs equīs proelium commīsit (I, **25,** 2), lit. *the horses having been sent away,* better, *having sent away the horses,* or *he sent away the horses and began the battle;* **M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus** (I, **2,** 2), *in the consulship of,* etc.; **Sēquanīs invītīs īre nōn poterant** (I, **9,** 1), lit. *the Sequani being unwilling,* better *if the Sequani should refuse, they could not go;* **monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat** (I, **22,** 11), lit. *the mountain having been occupied,* better, *though he had occupied the mountain, he waited for our men.*

151. Place in Which.

RULE: Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with **in.**

In eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt (I, **1,** 13), *they fight in their territory.*

a. RULE: Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative (**15,** *b;* **16,** *b*) *if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions; otherwise, in the ablative without a preposition.*

The locatives **domī,** *at home,* and **rūrī,** *in the country,* are also in regular use.

Samarobrīvae (V, **24,** 1), *at Samarobriva;* **domī largiter posse** (I, **18,** 13), *he had great influence at home.*

b. RULE: No preposition is regularly used with **locō, locīs, parte, partibus** *when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or with any noun modified by* **tōtus.**

Nōn nūllīs locīs trānsītur (I, **6,** 8), *is crossed in several places;* **vulgō tōtīs castrīs** (I, **39,** 17), *everywhere throughout the entire camp.*

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So **ab** and **ex** are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used instead of the ablative with **in** if the construction is at all appropriate.

Ūnā ex parte (I, **2,** 7), *on one side;* **cotīdiānīs proeliīs contendunt** (I, **1,** 12), *they contend in* (*by means of*) *daily battles;* **memoriā tenēbat** (I, **7,** 12), *he held in* (*by means of*) *memory.*

152. Ablative of Time.

RULE: Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Eō tempore (I, **3,** 14), *at that time;* **id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant** (I, **13,** 4), *a thing which they had barely accomplished in* (*within*) *twenty days.*

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. See **130.**

Eā tōtā nocte iērunt (I, **26,** 13), *they marched during that whole night.*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: **ab, absque, cōram, cum, dē, ex, prae, prō, sine, tenus.**

a. The forms **ab** and **ex** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or **h.** It is always safe to use **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a consonant, though **ab** and **ex** are often found.

b. **Cum** is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. **In** and **sub** with the accusative imply motion from outside *into* and *under*, respectively; with the ablative they mean *in* and *under*. **Super** with the accusative means *above;* with the ablative, *concerning*.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

USES OF ADJECTIVES

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A *predicate* adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb **sum** or a verb of similar meaning (see **95**, *a*); as **flūmen est lātum,** *the river is wide.* An *attributive* adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as **flūmen lātum,** *the wide river.*

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

***RULE:** Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Homō bonus, *a good man;* **mulierī bonae,** *to a good woman;* **bellōrum magnōrum,** *of great wars.*

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun.

Vir bonus et mulier, *a good man and woman;* **bella et victōriae magnae,** *great wars and victories.*

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter, unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter.

Hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī, *the men and their characters are good;* **hominēs et arma sunt magnī,** *the men and their arms are large;* **montēs et flūmina sunt magna,** *the mountains and rivers are large.*

158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are sometimes used as nouns in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of *man* or *men,* and the feminine in the sense of *woman* or *women.* The

neuter is used in the sense of *thing* or *things*, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (**101,** *a*).

Multī, *many men;* **multōrum,** *of many men;* **multae,** *many women;* **multārum,** *of many women;* **multa,** *many things;* **multārum rērum,** *of many things.*

159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object.

Invītus vēnit, lit. *he came unwilling = he came unwillingly* or *he was unwilling to come;* **prīmus vēnit,** lit. *he the first came = he came first,* or *he was the first to come.*

160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are: **īmus, īnfimus,** *the bottom of;* **medius,** *the middle of;* **summus,** *the top of;* **prīmus,** *the first part of;* **extrēmus,** *the last part of;* **reliquus,** *the rest of.*

In colle mediō (I, **24,** 3), *on the middle of (half way up) the slope;* **summus mōns** (I, **22,** 1), *the top of the mountain;* **prīmā nocte** (I, **27,** 12), *in the first part of the night;* **multō diē,** *late in the day.*

161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by *quite, rather, somewhat,* or *too,* the superlative by *very.*

Diūturniōrem impūnitātem (I, **14,** 15), *quite long immunity;* **cupidius īnsecūtī** (I, **15,** 5), *following too eagerly;* **monte Iūrā altissimō** (I, **2,** 9), *by the very high mountain, Jura.*

a. The superlative is often strengthened by **quam,** with or without a form of **possum.**

Quam maximum numerum (I, **3,** 3), **quam maximum potest numerum** (I, **7,** 4), *as great a number as possible,* or *the greatest possible number.*

USES OF PRONOUNS

162. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (**51**) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast.

Ego maneō, tū abīs, *I remain, you go.*

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English.

Utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus (II, **1,** 1), *as I* (lit. *we*) *have said before.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. ***GENERAL RULE:*** ***Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence.***

They correspond to *myself, himself,* etc., in such sentences as *I praise myself, he praises himself.* This use of *myself,* etc., must not be confused with the use in such sentences as *I myself praise him,* where *myself* emphasizes *I* and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (**172**). The reflexive of the third person has two uses:

164. The Direct Reflexive.

RULE: **Suī** ***and*** **suus** ***are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.***

Sē ēripuit (I, **4,** 7), *he rescued himself;* **cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent** (I, **2,** 3), *he persuaded the citizens to leave their country.*

165. The Indirect Reflexive.

RULE: ***In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject,*** **suī** ***and*** **suus** ***are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.***

This is especially important in indirect discourse (**271**) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of **suī** or **suus.** It is also common, but not invariable, in purpose clauses (**225**), substantive clauses of desire (purpose) (**228**), and indirect questions (**262**). In other clauses **is** or some other demonstrative is used to refer to the principal subject.

Sē habēre arbitrābantur (I, **2,** 15), *they thought that they had;* **dat negōtium Senonibus utī sē certiōrem faciant** (II, **2,** 4), *he employed the Senones to inform him* (=the subject of **dat**).

166. *The Reciprocal Expression.* The reflexive pronouns are used with **inter** to express the reciprocal idea, *one another, each other.*

Inter nōs laudāmus, *we praise one another* or *each other;* **obsidēs utī inter sēsē dent** (I, **9,** 10), *that they give hostages to each other.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast.

a. **Suus** is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun **suī,** and is used in the same way. See **164** and **165.** When a reflexive is not wanted *his* is **eius,** *their* is **eōrum.** See **53.**

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. Hic refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person; as **hic liber,** *this book* (near me).

169. Iste refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person; as **iste liber,** *that book* (near you). When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

170. Ille refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person; as **ille liber,** *that book* (yonder).

a. **Ille** and **hic** are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter.* **Hic** is usually *the latter,* as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned.

171. Is is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When **is** is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by *this* or *that;* when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways—*the man, a man, such a man,* etc.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. Ipse emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self,* and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns (**163**); as **ipse Caesar,** *Caesar himself.*

a. **Ipse** is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive.

Meus ipsīus liber, *my own book* (*the book of me myself*); **vester ipsōrum liber,** *your own book* (*the book of you yourselves*).

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

173. ***RULE:*** ***A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.***

If it is used as subject, the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents, it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (**157,** *a*, 2). The relative is never omitted, as it often is in English.

Caesar, quem laudō, *Caesar, whom I praise;* **ego, quī eum laudō,** *I, who praise him;* **Caesar et Cicerō, quī mē laudant,** *Caesar and Cicero, who praise me; the books* (*which*) *he gave me,* must be **librī quōs mihi dedit.**

a. **Coördinate Relative.** It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coördinating conjunction (*and, but,* etc.) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun.

Relinquēbātur ūna via, quā īre nōn poterant (I, **9,** 1), *there was left only one way, and by it they could not go.*

Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence, as in I, **15,** 5. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun.

b. A relative usually agrees in gender with a predicate noun, if there is one, instead of with its antecedent.

Vesontiōnem (masc.), **quod est oppidum** (I, **38,** 2), *Vesontio, which is a town.*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

174. ***RULE:*** **Quis,** ***anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after*** **sī, nisi, nē,** ***and*** **num.**

Sī quis laudat, *if anyone praises.*

175. ***RULE:*** **Aliquis** (**aliquī**) ***is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean someone, some, etc.***

Aliquis dīcat, *someone may say.*

176. **Quispiam** has almost exactly the same meaning as **aliquis,** but is rare.

177. *RULE:* **Quisquam** *and* **ūllus** *are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with* **nē**), *and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.*

Neque quemquam laudō, *nor do I praise anyone;* **cur quisquam iūdicāret** (I, **40,** 6), *why should anyone suppose?*

178. Nesciō quis (nesciō quī), originally meaning *I know not who,* is often used in a sense very much like that of **aliquis,** but with even more indefiniteness. When the phrase is followed by the indicative, it must have this meaning; for if it means *I do not know who,* it introduces an indirect question.

Nesciō quis laudat, *some one or other praises.*

VERBS

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. *RULE: A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender.

Caesar laudātus est, *Caesar was praised;* **mulierēs laudātae sunt,** *the women were praised.*

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb; and a neuter noun sometimes has a masculine participle in agreement.

Multitūdō vēnērunt, *a great number came;* **duo mīlia occīsī sunt,** *two thousand were killed.*

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (**157,** *a,* 2). If the subjects differ in person, the first person is preferred to the second, and the second to the third.

Homō et mulier occīsī sunt, *the man and the woman were killed;* **ego et tū vēnimus,** *you and I came.*

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor.*

Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus, *Caesar and Labienus came;* **neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit,** *neither Caesar nor Labienus came;* **fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est** (I, **26,** 11), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken.*

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular.

Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit (I, **1,** 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

USES OF THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb cannot be used in the passive except impersonally.

Laudat, *he praises;* **laudātur,** *he is praised;* **eī crēditur** (**115,** *d*) lit. *it is believed to him = he is believed.*

USES OF THE MOODS

182. The Latin verb has three moods: the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative. The name *mood* (or *mode*) is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is thought of; for example, *as a fact, as wished, as willed.*

INDICATIVE

183. The indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact.

Laudat, *he praises;* **nōn laudat,** *he does not praise;* **laudatne?** *does he praise?*

SUBJUNCTIVE

184. The subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

a. **The Subjunctive of Desire.**

Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called *volitive*) or wish (then called *optative*).

Laudet, *let him praise* or *may he praise;* **imperō ut laudet,** *I command that he praise,* i.e., *I give the command "let him praise."*

b. **The Potential Subjunctive.**

Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied; this may be called the *would-should potential.*

Laudet, *he would praise* (if there should be reason); **is est quī laudet,** *he is a man who would praise.*

Less often it expresses what may or can take place; this may be called the *may-can potential.*

Aliquis dīcat, *someone may say.*

c. **The Subjunctive of Fact.**

In certain dependent clauses the subjunctive expresses certainty and is translated like the indicative.

Laudātur cum laudet, *he is praised because he praises.* Compare **laudātur quod laudat,** *he is praised because he praises.*

IMPERATIVE

185. The imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command.

Laudā, *praise (thou);* **dēsilīte** (IV, **25,** 11), *jump down.*

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mood, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mood in indirect discourse.

Dīcit Caesarem laudārī, *he says that Caesar is praised.*

187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are not moods, but are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

a. RULE: **Nōn,** *not, and* **neque,** *and not, nor, are used with all verb forms except the subjunctive of desire and the imperative.*

That is, they are used with the indicative, the potential subjunctive (**184,** *b*), the subjunctive of fact (**184,** *c*), and the infinitive.

Nōn laudat, *he does not praise;* **nōn laudet,** *he would not praise;* **nōnne laudat?** *does he not praise?*

b. ***RULE:*** **Nē,** *not, and* **nēve,** *and not, nor, are used with the subjunctive of desire* (**184,** *a*), *and in most subordinate clauses derived from it.*

But **nē . . . quidem,** *not even,* is used like **nōn.**

Nē laudet, *let him not praise,* or *may he not praise;* **nē laudat quidem,** *he does not even praise.*

USES OF THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: **laudāvit,** *he praised,* simply puts the action in the past; **laudāverat,** *he had praised,* means that the action was already completed in the past time; **laudābat,** *he was praising,* means that the action was going on in the past time; and **laudātūrus erat,** *he was going to praise,* means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present.

Laudat, *he praises* (simple), *he is praising* (progressive), *he does praise* (emphatic).

a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past.

Oppida incendunt (I, **5,** 3), *they burned* (*burn*) *their towns.*

b. With such expressions as **iam diū, iam prīdem,** *for a long time,* **multōs annōs,** *for many years,* the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect.

Multōs annōs tē moneō, *I have been warning you for many years.* There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses the former of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the latter.

c. For the present with **dum,** see **234,** *a.*

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time.

Laudābat, *he was praising.*

a. The imperfect is sometimes used of repeated past action.

Laudābat, *he used to praise,* or *he kept praising.*

b. With the expressions mentioned in **190,** *b* the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect.

Multōs annōs tē monēbam, *I had been warning you for many years.*

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See **199.**

Laudābō, *I shall* or *will praise,* or *be praising.*

193. The Perfect has two uses:

I. *The present perfect* corresponds to the English present perfect with *have.* It represents the action as completed at the present time.

Laudāvī, *I have praised.*

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, **vēnī,** *I have come,* is nearly equivalent to *I am here.* A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially **nōvī, cognōvī,** *I know* (lit. *I have found out*); **cōnsuēvī,** *I am accustomed* (lit. *I have become accustomed*); and **meminī,** *I remember.*

II. *The historical perfect* simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (**189**) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense.

Laudāvī, *I praised.*

194. The Past Perfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time.

Laudāveram, *I had praised.*

a. The past perfect of the verbs mentioned in **193,** I, *a* are nearly equivalent to imperfects.

Vēneram, *I had come,* i.e., *I was there;* **nōveram,** *I knew;* **cōnsuēveram,** *I was accustomed.*

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See **199.**

Laudāverō, *I shall* or *will have praised.*

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in **193,** I, *a* are nearly equivalent to futures.

Vēnerō, *I shall have come,* i.e., *I shall be there;* **nōverō,** *I shall know;* **cōnsuēverō,** *I shall be accustomed.*

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of **sum.**

Laudātūrus est, *he is about to praise;* **laudātūrus erat,** *he was about to praise;* **laudātūrus erit,** *he will be about to praise.*

INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. It is a mistake to think of the perfect and imperfect as interchangeable. Caesar was as careful in choosing between them as in choosing between the indicative and subjunctive. The forward steps (new events) in the story are all told by the perfect or the equivalent historical present. The imperfect and past perfect are *descriptive tenses* and describe the persons, places, and circumstances which concern each forward step. Sometimes the imperfect of repeated action is used where the perfect would be used of a single action. Sometimes the present is used instead of an imperfect in describing something that still exists. For other exceptions see **198,** *a.* No short examples can make these statements clear, but a careful reading of almost any chapter in Caesar will illustrate them. See the notes on the first few chapters of Book III.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and past perfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

RULE: In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and past perfect.

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important:

1. After **postquam, ubi,** etc. (see **237**), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also **235,** *a* and **236,** *a.*

2. After **dum,** *while* (see **234,** *a*), the present is regularly used.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see **256.**

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

200. The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings:

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (**184,** *c*), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.

b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (**184,** *a*, *b*), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. E. g., **laudet,** *let him praise*, is a command to praise in the future; **imperāvit ut laudāret,** *he commanded that he praise*, is a past command, to be carried into effect at a time future to the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses:

Present	= present *or* future
Imperfect	= imperfect *or* future to a past
Perfect	= perfect *or* future perfect
Past Perfect	= past perfect *or* future perfect to a past

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See **221, 254.**

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So **rogō quid faciās** regularly means *I ask what you are doing*, and would not be understood to mean *I ask what you will do.* Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by **rogō quid factūrus sīs.**

THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, the tenses are all used in accordance with the meanings given in **201.** One who thoroughly understands the meaning of the subjunctive tenses has little need of a rule for their use. But the following rule is very convenient and has very few exceptions:

RULE: In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.

The following table of examples shows that the rule could be stated in this way:

If a subjunctive depends on a verb meaning either present or future time, use either the present or perfect tense; if it depends on a verb meaning past time, use either the imperfect or past perfect.

203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive:

Principal Tenses

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	**rogō,** *I ask*	Present	**quid faciat,** *what he is doing*
Future	**rogābō,** *I shall ask*		
Future perfect	**rogāverō,** *I shall have asked*	Perfect	**quid fēcerit,** *what he has done* (or *did*)

Historical Tenses

Imperfect	**rogābam,** *I was asking*	Imperfect	**quid faceret,** *what he was doing*
Perfect	**rogāvī,** *I asked, I have asked*	Past Perfect	**quid fēcisset,** *what he had done*
Past perfect	**rogāveram,** *I had asked*		

a. Although the perfect subjunctive is called a primary tense, another subjunctive depending on it must be imperfect or past perfect, because the perfect subjunctive means past time.

204. Exceptions to Sequence of Tenses.

Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on one another.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, *he marched around because the mountains are high*, is to be put into Latin, **cum sint** would be an exception to sequence, and it is better to use the indicative construction **quod sunt.**

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ut tempus dēfuerit (II, **21,** 8), *so short was the time that there was no opportunity.*

b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used.

Diem dīcunt quā diē conveniant (I, **6,** 14), *they appoint a day on which they are to assemble;* **frūmentum omne combūrunt ut parātiōrēs ad perīcula subeunda essent** (I, **5,** 5), *they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger.*

c. For a very common apparent exception in indirect discourse, see **270,** *a.*

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. ***RULE: The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.***

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

dīcō eum	**laudāre**	**laudātūrum esse**	**laudāvisse**
lit. *I say him*	*to be praising*	*to be about to praise*	*to have praised*
I say that he	*is praising*	*will praise*	*has praised*, or *praised*
dīcam eum,			
I shall say that he	*is praising*	*will praise*	*has praised*, or *praised*
dīxī eum,			
I said that he	*was praising*	*would praise*	*had praised*

a. With such perfects as **dēbuī, licuit, oportuit, potuī,** Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says *ought to have*, etc.

Laudāre potuī, lit. *I was able to praise = I could have praised.*

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by **fore (futūrum esse) ut,** *it will (would) be that,* with the present or imperfect subjunctive.

Dīcit fore ut timeat, lit. *he says that it will be that he fears = he says that he will fear;* **dīxit fore ut laudārētur,** lit. *he said that it would be that he was praised = he said that he would be praised.*

SIMPLE SENTENCES

STATEMENTS

206. The Indicative is used to state facts.

Caesar vēnit, *Caesar came;* **Caesar nōn veniet,** *Caesar will not come.*

207. The Would-Should Potential (**184,** *b*) is used to state what *would* take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in **254** and **257.** For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs.

Caesar veniat, *Caesar would come;* **Caesar nōn vēnisset,** *Caesar would not have come;* **velim,** *I should like.*

208. The May-Can Potential (**184,** *b*) is sometimes used to state what *may* or *can* happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase **aliquis dīcat,** *someone may say.* In an independent sentence the student should express *may, might, can, could,* by such words as **possum** and **licet.**

Nēmō dubitet, but usually **nēmō dubitāre potest,** *no one can doubt.*

QUESTIONS

USE OF MOODS

209. The indicative and the potential subjunctive are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (**206-208**).

Quis veniet? *who will come?* **quis veniat?** *who would come?* **quis dubitet?** *who can doubt?*

210. A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of someone's will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive.

Quid faciam? *what shall I do? what am I to do?*

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do.

Cūr dubitem? *why should I doubt?*

211. A Rhetorical Question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the foregoing questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mood.

INTRODUCTORY WORDS

212. Questions which can not be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb.

Quis vēnit? *who came?* **quālis est?** *what sort of man is he?* **ubi est?** *where is he?*

213. Questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle. In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. ***RULE: When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic*** **-ne** ***is added to the first word.***

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis.

Scrībitne epistulam? *is he writing a letter?* **epistulamne scrībit?** *is it a letter that he is writing?*

b. ***RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer yes, the interrogative particle is*** **nōnne.**

Nōnne epistulam scrībit? *is he not writing a letter?*

c. ***RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer no, the interrogative particle is*** **num.**

Num epistulam scrībit? *he is not writing a letter, is he?*

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. **Utrum** may stand at the beginning, not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or **-ne** may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The *or* is expressed by **an**; *or not* is **annōn.**

Utrum pugnāvit an fūgit? pugnāvitne an fūgit? pugnāvit an fūgit? *did he fight or run away?* **pugnāvit annōn?** *did he fight or not?*

ANSWERS

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to *yes* and *no*. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use **ita, sānē,** etc., for *yes,* **nōn, minimē,** etc., for *no.*

Epistulamne scrībit? scrībit, *yes;* **nōn scrībit,** *no.*

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate moods are the subjunctive of desire (**184,** *a*) and the imperative (**185**). The negative with the subjunctive is **nē** (**188,** *b*).

217. ***RULE:*** ***An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.***

Laudēmus, *let us praise;* **nē eāmus,** *let us not go.*

218. ***RULE:*** ***A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.***

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present.

Venīte, *come (ye);* **mementō,** *remember.*

219. ***RULE:*** ***A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by*** **nōlī, nōlīte,** ***be unwilling, and the present infinitive.***

A prohibition is less often expressed by **cavē** (with or without **nē**), *take care,* and the present subjunctive; or by **nē** and the perfect subjunctive.

Nōlī dubitāre, *do not doubt;* less often **cavē** (**nē**) **dubitēs,** or **nē dubitāverīs.**

220. ***RULE:*** ***A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.***

Eat, *let him go;* **nē veniant,** *let them not come.*

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (**184,** *a*) and are usually introduced by **utinam** (not to be translated).

a. ***RULE:*** ***A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without*** **utinam.**

(**Utinam**) **adsit,** *may he be here!*

b. ***RULE:*** ***A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with*** **utinam.**

c. ***RULE:*** ***A wish for something in the past is expressed by the past perfect subjunctive with*** **utinam.**

Both *b* and *c* express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable.

Utinam adesset, *would that he were here!* **utinam affuisset,** *would that he had been here!*

COÖRDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coördinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a *coördinating conjunction*. The coördinating conjunctions are such as mean *and, but, or, for*, and the like. Their forms and uses are the same as those of simple sentences (**206-221**).

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean *if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that*, and the like.

The clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (**184,** *a-c*).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. The subjunctive of desire (**184,** *a*) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (**184,** *c*) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (**188**), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the **ut** clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. ***RULE:*** ***Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with*** **ut, nē, quō,** ***or a relative.***

The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see **228.** The connecting words are used as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. A relative pronoun or adverb is used if the principal clause contains a noun which can be used conveniently as an antecedent.

Hominēs mīsit quī vidērent, *he sent men to see* (lit. *who were to see*).

2. **Quō** is used if the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree.

Vēnit quō facilius vidēret, *he came that he might see more easily* (lit. *by which the more easily he might see*).

3. **Ut** is used in all other affirmative purpose clauses.

Vēnit ut vidēret, *he came to see, that he might see,* or *in order to see;* **venit ut videat,** *he comes to see.*

b. In negative clauses **nē** is always used.

Hoc fēcit nē quis (not **ut nēmō**) **vidēret,** *he did this that no one might see,* or *to keep anyone from seeing.*

RESULT CLAUSES

226. ***RULE: Result is expressed by the subjunctive with*** **ut** ***or*** **ut nōn.**

For the so-called relative clause of result see **230,** *a.* For the substantive clause of result see **229.**

Mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent (I, **6,** 4), *a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check;* **incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit** (I, **12,** 2), *of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined.*

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (**224**).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (**184,** *a*) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the *volitive* (expressing will) and the *optative* (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into *substantive volitive clauses* and *substantive optative clauses.* The older name, *substantive purpose clauses,* is not good, because they do not really express purpose.

a. ***RULE: Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, take the subjunctive with*** **ut** ***or*** **nē.**

Such are verbs meaning *accomplish* (when the subject is a conscious agent), *command, permit, persuade, request, resolve, strive, urge, wish,* and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive is sometimes used instead, and it always is used after **iubeō,** *command,* **cōnor,** *attempt,* **patior, sinō,** *permit.* See **280,** *a.* **Ut** is often omitted after verbs of *asking, command-*

ing, and *wishing*, especially after **volō**. The subjunctive, usually without **ut**, is often used with **oportet**, *it is right*, and **licet**, *it is permitted;* but see **276.**

Cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent (I, **2**, 3), *he persuaded the citizens to leave;* **cīvitātī persuāsit nē exīrent**, *he persuaded the citizens not to leave;* **oportet eat**, *he ought to go;* **eī licet eat**, *he may go.*

b. ***RULE:*** ***Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with*** **nē** ***meaning that, or*** **ut** ***meaning that not.***

But **nē nōn**, *that not*, is often used instead of **ut.**

Timeō nē veniat, *I fear that he will come* (originally **timeō: nē veniat**, *I am afraid: let him*, or *may he, not come*); **timeō ut** (or **nē nōn**) **veniat**, *I fear that he will not come* (originally **timeō: veniat**, *I am afraid: let him*, or *may he, come;* **ut** or **nē nōn** was then used as the opposite of **nē**).

c. ***RULE:*** ***Verbs meaning avoid, hinder, prevent, and refuse take the subjunctive with*** **nē, quīn,** ***or*** **quōminus.**

Nē is used after an *affirmative principal clause*, **quīn** after a *negative*, **quōminus** after *either* positive or negative.

Eum impediō nē, or **quōminus, veniat**, *I hinder him from coming;* **eum nōn impediō quīn**, or **quōminus, veniat**, *I do not hinder him from coming.*

But **prohibeō**, *I prevent*, takes the infinitive.

Quī Teutonōs ingredī prohibuerint (II, **4**, 6), *who prevented the Teutoni from entering.*

SUBSTANTIVE *UT* CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called **ut** clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (**184,** *c*) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. ***RULE:*** ***Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with*** **ut** ***or*** **ut nōn** ***when the subject is not a conscious agent.***

Montēs efficiunt ut nōn exīre possint, *the mountains make (that they cannot) it impossible for them to leave.* Compare **228,** *a.*

b. ***RULE:*** ***Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with*** **ut** ***or*** **ut nōn.**

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative **quod** clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See **248.**

Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut vagārentur (I, **2**, 11), *the result was that they wandered.*

c. ***RULE:*** ***Such phrases as*** **mōs est, cōnsuētūdō est,** ***it is the custom, may take the subjunctive with*** **ut** ***or*** **ut nōn.**

Mōs est ut ex equīs pugnent, *it is their custom to fight on horseback.*

d. ***RULE:*** ***Negatived verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with*** **quīn.**

After an affirmative expression of doubting, an indirect question with **num, an,** or **sī** is used, as *whether* is in English. **Dubitō** with the infinitive means *hesitate.*

Nōn est dubium quīn hoc fēcerit, *there is no doubt that he did this.*

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

230. The subjunctive is used in certain relative clauses which follow indefinite antecedents. A more accurate statement than those given in *a* and *b* is: The subjunctive is used in all relative clauses which follow indefinite antecedents, if they are neither determining (**231**) nor conditional (**250**).

a. ***RULE:*** ***The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to*** **ut** ***clauses of result.***

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like **is** = (*such*) *a man* (**171,** *a*), **eius modī,** *such,* or an adjective modified by **tam.** Certain grammars call some of these clauses *relative result clauses.* Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Is est quī pugnet, *he is a man who fights;* **secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent** (IV, **34,** 8), *storms followed which kept our men in camp* (= *such storms . . . that they kept*); **tam improbus quī nōn fateātur** (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *so villainous as not to admit.*

b. ***RULE:*** ***The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.***

So after **est quī,** *there is a man who;* **nōn** or **nēmō** or **nūllus est quī,** *there is no one who;* **quis est quī?** *who is there who?* **sōlus** or **ūnus est quī,** *he is the only man who;* etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Nūllī sunt quī putent, *there are none who think;* **erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus exīre possent** (I, **6,** 1), *there were only two ways by which they could leave.*

c. In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by *can, could,* or by *should, ought.*

Ūnum (iter) vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur (I, **6,** 4), *one road by which wagons could be moved;* **neque (populus Rōmānus) commissum intellegeret quārē timēret** (I, **14,** 6), *they did not know that anything had been done on account of which they should be afraid.*

DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. ***RULE:*** ***Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent employ the indicative.***

Ad eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam (I, **1,** 21), *to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.*

PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. ***RULE:*** ***A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.***

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (**230**), determining (**231**), or conditional (**250**).

Dumnorīgī, quī prīncipātum obtinēbat, persuādet (I, **3,** 13), *he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power;* the same meaning could be expressed by **Dumnorīgī (is prīncipātum obtinēbat) persuādet.**

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is **cum,** which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

CONJUNCTIONS MEANING *WHILE, AS LONG AS*

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. **Cum** with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. ***RULE:*** **Dum** ***meaning while (i.e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.***

Dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est (I, **46,** 1), *while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.*

b. ***RULE:*** **Dum, dōnec, quoad,** ***and*** **quam diū,** ***as long as, while (i.e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.***

Quoad potuit, restitit (IV, **12,** 16), *he resisted as long as he could.*

CONJUNCTIONS MEANING *UNTIL*

235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of moods.

a. ***RULE:*** **Dum, dōnec,** ***and*** **quoad** ***meaning until are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.***

The perfect is regularly used for past time.

Gallī fuērunt līberī dum Caesar vēnit, *the Gauls were free until Caesar came.*

b. ***RULE:*** **Dum, dōnec,** ***and*** **quoad** ***meaning until are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.***

Gallī exspectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret, *the Gauls waited until Caesar should come,* or *for Caesar to come,* or *until Caesar came.*

CONJUNCTIONS MEANING *BEFORE*

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of moods is based is the same as that given in **235.**

a. ***RULE:*** **Priusquam** ***and*** **antequam** ***are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.***

The perfect is regularly used for past time.

Gallī inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit, *the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.*

b. ***RULE:*** **Priusquam** ***and*** **antequam** ***are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.***

Gallī magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnātī sunt priusquam Caesar venīret, *the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive,* or *arrived,* or *in view of Caesar's arrival.*

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the **prius** or **ante** standing in the principal clause, and the **quam** at the beginning of

the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where **quam** does.

Gallī prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit, translated as in *a*.

d. When the principal verb is future, the present indicative is commonly used with **priusquam** and **antequam,** instead of either the future indicative or the present subjunctive.

Antequam ad sententiam redeō, pauca dīcam (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *before I come back to the voting, I will say a few words.*

CONJUNCTIONS MEANING *AFTER*

237. ***RULE:*** **Postquam,** *after,* **ut, ubi,** *when* (*= after, not while*), **simul ac, cum prīmum,** *as soon as* (*immediately after*), *are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present.*

Ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt (I, **7,** 6), *when they were informed of it, they sent envoys.*

CUM CLAUSES

238. Cum has three chief uses:

temporal, *when, after;*
causal, *since, because;*
adversative (concessive), *although.*

239. Causal and Adversative *Cum*.

RULE: **Cum** *meaning since or although is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.*

Quae cum ita sint, perge (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on;* **hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt** (I, **9,** 2), *since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys;* **cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit** (I, **26,** 4), *although they fought till evening.*

240. Temporal *Cum*.

The following rules are incomplete for Cicero, but are sufficient for Caesar:

RULE: **Cum** *meaning when is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.*

RULE: **Cum** *meaning when is generally followed by the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past.*

In Caesar I-IV the only exceptions to these rules are a few examples of **241,** *b;* and **vidēbātur** in I, **40,** 14, which no one understands.

241. The rules given in **240** hold true for Cicero in general, but he uses more exceptions to the second rule. In reading Cicero (and Caesar V-VII), while expecting all **cum** clauses depending on past tenses to be subjunctive, one finds the following:

INDICATIVE *CUM* CLAUSES DEPENDING ON PAST TENSES

a. **Date Clauses.**

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning when is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.***

These are determining clauses (**231**), the antecedent being "at the time"; but they are much less common than relative determining clauses. They are seldom used except with the expressed antecedent **tum**; or when the **cum** clause has no bearing on the story, but is introduced solely for dating purposes. Although Caesar uses hundreds of **cum** clauses in his *Gallic War*, and although many of them seem to date events, his only indicative date clause is given below.

Tum cum ex urbe Catilīnam ēiciēbam (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city;* **cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, prīncipēs erant Haeduī** (VI, **12,** 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haedui were the leaders.*

b. **Clauses of Repeated Action.**

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning whenever is usually followed by the indicative.***

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (**250**). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of **cum**; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see **242,** *b*.

Haec cum dēfīxerat, contrāria duo statuēbat (IV, **17,** 10), *when he had set them firmly* (in each of several cases), *he put two others opposite.*

c. **Inverted *Cum* Clauses.**

RULE: **Cum** ***meaning when is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the*** **cum** ***clause.***

In the most common type of **cum** clauses (**242,** *a*) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the **cum** clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī (sunt) inter sē (VI, **8,** 1), *hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another* (for **cum . . . prōcessisset, . . . cohortātī sunt,** *when the line had advanced, the Gauls encouraged,* etc.).

242. TEMPORAL *CUM* WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE

The rules given in **240,** with the exceptions given in **241,** are sufficient for all practical purposes. If one wants names and rules for the subjunctive clauses, the following may be used:

a. **Situation and Narrative Clauses.**

RULE: **Cum** *meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.*

RULE: **Cum** *meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story.* (*Unless the clause is inverted, 241, c.*)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (**230**).

Cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorīx mortuus est (I, **4,** 8), *while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died* (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this **cum** clause).

b. **Clauses of Repeated Action.**

RULE: **Cum** *meaning whenever is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.*

Cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere poterant (I, **25,** 7), *when the iron had bent* (in each of many cases), *they could neither draw it out,* etc. Compare **241,** *b.*

CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions **cum, quod, quia, quoniam,** and **quandō,** or by the relative. The conjunctions **nam, enim, etenim,** *for,* introduce coördinate clauses.

244. *RULE:* **Quod, quia, quoniam,** *and* **quandō,** *because, since, are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted; with the subjunctive if the reason is quoted.*

When the writer wishes to imply because (*as he said*), (*as he thought*), (*as I said*), (*as I thought*), the subjunctive is used. See **273.**

Reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, quod contendunt (I, **1,** 11), *they surpass the other Gauls, because they fight;* **quod sit dēstitūtus queritur** (I, **16,** 18), *he complained because* (as he said) *he had been deserted.*

245. ***RULE:*** **Cum,** ***since, because, and often*** **quī,** ***since he, etc., are used with the subjunctive.***

But the indicative is often used with **quī,** where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If **praesertim,** *especially,* stands in a subjunctive **quī** or **cum** clause, the clause is probably causal.

Illī autem, quī omnia praeclāra sentīrent, negōtium suscēpērunt (Cic. Cat. III, 5), *and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter;* **fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī adaequārunt** (V, **8,** 12), *the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who* (=since they) *kept up with,* etc. For examples with **cum,** see **239.**

ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. ***RULE:*** **Quamquam,** ***although, and*** **etsī, tametsī,** ***even if, although, are used with the indicative.***

Etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverant, tamen suspicābātur (IV, **31,** 1), *although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected.*

247. ***RULE:*** **Cum,** ***although, and less commonly*** **quamvīs** ***(in Cicero), however much, however, although,*** **quī,** ***although he, etc.,*** **ut,** ***although, are used with the subjunctive.***

But the indicative is sometimes used with **quī** when the adversative idea is clear.

Quamvīs senex sit, fortis est, *however old he may be, he is brave;* **ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent** (Caes. III, **9,** 16), *though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations.* For **cum** see **239.**

SUBSTANTIVE *QUOD* CLAUSES

248. ***RULE:*** ***Substantive clauses with*** **quod,** ***that, employ the indicative.***

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun.

Illa praetereō, quod Maelium occīdit (Cic. Cat. I, 3), *I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.*

a. Sometimes the **quod** clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of *as to the fact that, whereas.*

Quod ūnum pāgum adortus es, nōlī ob eam rem dēspicere (cf. I, **13,** 12), *as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a *condition* and a *conclusion*. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause.

If he comes (condition), *I shall see him* (conclusion).

CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

250. The connectives are the conjunctions **sī,** *if*, **sī nōn,** *if not*, **nisi,** *if not* or *unless*, **sīn,** *but if*, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone, everyone, always, everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see*, means *if anyone thinks he will see; whenever I saw him he used to say*, means *if at any time I saw him he used to say*. Compare this use of the relative with those given in **230-232.**

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. **Neutral Present or Past (253).**

Sī pugnat, vincit, *if he fights, he conquers;* **sī pugnāvit, vīcit,** *if he fought, he conquered.*

b. **Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254).**

Sī pugnāret, vinceret, *if he were fighting, he would be conquering;* **sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset,** *if he had fought, he would have conquered.*

c. **More Vivid (Confident) Future (256).**

Sī pugnābit, vincet, *if he fights (shall fight), he will conquer.*

d. **Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257).**

Sī pugnet, vincat, *if he should fight, he would conquer.*

A. PRESENT OR PAST

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. Neutral Present or Past.

***RULE:** A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.*

Sī fortis est, eum laudō, *if he is brave, I praise him;* **quī fortis est prō patriā pugnat,** *whoever is brave fights for his country;* **nisi prō patriā pugnāvit, nōn fortis fuit,** *unless he fought for his country, he was not brave.*

254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact.

***RULE:** A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive.*

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the past perfect to express past time.

Sī fortis esset, eum laudārem, *if he were brave, I should praise,* or *be praising, him* (implying *but he is not, and I do not*); **nisi prō patriā pugnāvisset, eum nōn laudāvissem,** *unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country, I should not have praised him* (implying *but he did, and I do;* the contrary of the negative supposition); **sī pugnāvisset, eum laudārem,** *if he had fought, I should praise,* or *be praising, him* (implying *but he did not, and I do not;* notice the change of tense).

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning *could* or *ought*, or such expressions as *it would be hard*, or *just*, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or past perfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used.

Sī fortis esset, pugnāre poterat, *if he were brave, he could fight* (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); **sī fortis fuisset, pugnāre dēbuit** or **dēbuerat,** *if he had been brave, he ought to have fought* (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).

B. FUTURE

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one cannot be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. More Vivid (Confident) Future.

***RULE:** A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.*

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him, I shall tell him,* means *if I shall see him, I shall tell him,* and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. *If he arrives first, he will tell him,* means *if he shall have arrived first,* and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect.

Sī pugnābit, eum laudābō, *if he fights* or *is fighting* (*shall fight* or *shall be fighting*), *I shall praise him;* **quī pugnāverit laudābitur,** *whoever fights* or *has fought* (*shall have fought*) *will be praised.*

257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future.

***RULE:** A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive.*

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in **256.**

Sī pugnet, vincat, *if he should fight,* or *were to fight, he would conquer;* **quī pugnet laudētur,** *whoever should fight,* or *should be fighting, would be praised;* **sī nōn pugnāverit, eum nōn laudem,** *if he should not fight,* or *should not have fought, I should not praise him.*

MIXED CONDITIONS

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another.

Sī veniat, hīc adsumus, *if he should come, we are here.*

CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause, as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought.

Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat (I, **4**, 3), *(if) condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him;* **dīcat,** *he would say* (if he should be asked); **velim,** *I should like.* The last two are simply the independent potential subjunctive (**207**).

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

260. ***RULE:*** **Dum, modo,** *and* **dummodo** ***in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.***

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often **nē.** This is because the construction originally meant *only let (him come: I will,* etc.), and the mood is the subjunctive of desire (**184,** *a*).

Magnō mē metū līberābis dummodo mūrus intersit (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us;* **modo nē** (or **nōn**) **discēdat eum vidēbō,** *if only he do not leave I shall see him.*

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

261. ***RULE: The subjunctive is used with*** **ac sī, quam sī, quasi, ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī,** ***as if, just as if.***

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and past perfect subjunctive.

Currit quasi timeat, *he runs as if he were afraid;* **cucurrit quasi timēret,** *he ran as if he were afraid.*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

262. ***GENERAL RULE: The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.***

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked; as *he asked, "where are you going?";* or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as *he asked where I* (or *he*) *was going.* In the latter form it is an indirect question.

263. ***RULE: Subjunctive questions*** **(209, 210)** ***retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.***

The modal meaning is unchanged.

Quis veniat? *who would come?* (indirect) **rogō quis veniat,** *I ask who would come;* **quid faciam?** *what am I to do?* (indirect) **rogāvī quid facerem,** *I asked what I was to do.*

264. ***RULE:*** ***All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.***

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (**212**), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form.

Quis vēnit? *who came?* (indirect) **rogō quis vēnerit,** *I ask who came;* **ubi est?** *where is he?* (indirect) **mihi dīxit ubi esset,** *he told me where he was.*

b. When the direct question can be answered by *yes* or *no* (**213**) the indirect form is introduced by **num** or **-ne,** *whether* (no difference in meaning). **Sī** is also used in the sense of *to see whether* or *whether.*

Venitne? *is he coming?* (indirect) **rogō num veniat,** or **rogō veniatne,** *I ask whether he is coming;* **exspectāvit sī venīrent,** *he waited to see whether they would come.*

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (**214**), but *or not* is expressed by **necne,** instead of **annōn.**

Rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset an fūgisset, *I asked whether he had fought or run away;* **rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset necne,** *I asked whether he had fought or not.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

265. *Direct discourse* repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought; as *he said, "the soldiers are brave."* *Indirect discourse* repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction; as *he said that the soldiers were brave.*

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking,* which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse, one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.

PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

266. Declarative Sentences.

RULE: ***Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse*** (**279**).

Mīles est fortis, *the soldier is brave,* becomes **dīxit mīlitem esse fortem,** *he said that the soldier was brave.* But the subject is not always expressed.

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see **205.** It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and past perfect indicative.

267. Imperative Sentences.

***RULE:** Every sentence containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is **nē.**

Ad Īd. Apr. revertiminī, *return about the thirteenth of April,* becomes **respondit: . . . ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur** (I, **7,** 19), *he replied . . . : (that) they should return,* etc.; **is ita ēgit: . . . nē . . . dēspiceret** (I, **13,** 14), *he should not despise* (from an original **nōlī dēspicere (219),** *do not despise*).

268. Interrogative Sentences.

***I. RULE:** An indicative question* (**209**)*, if real* (**211**)*, changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Respondit: . . . quid sibi vellet (I, **44,** 24), *what did he want?* (for an original **quid tibi vīs,** *what do you want?*)

***II. RULE:** An indicative question* (**209**)*, if rhetorical* (**211**)*, changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.*

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (**266**).

Respondit: . . . num memoriam dēpōnere posse (I, **14,** 8), *could he forget?* (for an original **num . . . possum,** *can I?*)

***III. RULE:** A subjunctive question* (**209, 210**)*, whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Incūsāvit: . . . cūr quisquam iūdicāret (I, **40,** 6), *why should anyone suppose?* (for an original **iūdicet.** See **210,** *a*)

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

269. ***RULE:** Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Infinitives remain unchanged.

Incūsāvit: . . . ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod . . . superāssent (I, **40,** 17), *from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered* (for original **iūdicārī, potest, habeat, superāvistis**).

a. But a coördinate relative clause (**173,** *a*), being equivalent to a clause connected by **et,** or some other coördinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under **269:** since **quō** connects with the preceding sentence, **posse** might have been a subjunctive.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

270. The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of *saying* or *thinking.*

a. **Repraesentātiō.** But after a past verb of *saying* or *thinking* the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating.

Respondit: . . . cum ea ita sint . . . sēsē pācem esse factūrum (I, **14,** 16), *he replied . . . that although these things were so he would make peace.*

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of *saying* or *thinking;* for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present.

Dīcit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset, *he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.*

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: *keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence.* So, for example, a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after **dīcit,** imperfect after **dīxit,** in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after **dīcit,** past perfect after **dīxit,** in either case retaining the perfect stem.

OTHER CHANGES

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of **suī** or **suus** (rarely of **ipse**). See **165.** All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English.

Hunc mīlitem laudō, *I praise this soldier,* may become **dīcō mē hunc mīlitem laudāre,** *I say that I praise this soldier,* or **dīcit sē illum mīlitem laudāre,** *he says that he praises that soldier.* Adverbs will be changed in the same way, *now* to *then, here* to *there,* etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and past perfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to **266,** *a.* The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in **-ūrus esse.** The imperfect and past perfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in **-ūrus fuisse.**

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. **Sī pugnāret, eum laudārem,** *if he were fighting, I should praise him,* becomes, after either **dīcit** or **dīxit, sī pugnāret, sē eum laudātūrum fuisse; sī pugnāvisset, eum laudāvissem,** *if he had fought, I should have praised him,* becomes, after either **dīcit** or **dīxit, sī pugnāvisset, sē eum laudātūrum fuisse.**

IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. ***RULE:*** ***The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.***

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with **quod,** etc. (**244**). It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose).

Caesar frūmentum quod essent pollicitī flāgitāre (I, **16,** 1), *Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised;* **erat eī praeceptum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsīus cōpiae vīsae essent** (I, **22,** 8), *he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar's forces should be seen* (Caesar had said **nisi meae copiae visae erunt,** *unless my forces shall be seen.*)

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. ***RULE:*** ***Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.***

Utī ab iīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātiōnēs mitterentur (II, **35,** 2), *that embassies were sent by those nations which lived across the Rhine.* The clause **quae . . . incolerent** is determining (**231**) and would ordinarily be indicative.

USES OF THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see **205.**

A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. ***RULE:*** ***Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.***

Such are verbs meaning *be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish,* and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See **228,** *a.*

Īre potest, *he can go;* **īre potuit,** *he could have gone* (lit. *he was able to go*)*;* **īre dēbet,** *he ought to go;* **cōnstituērunt comparāre** (I, **3,** 2), *they determined to prepare.*

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb.

Fortis esse cōnātur, *he tries to be brave.*

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

276. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in **278.** With **licet,** *it is permitted,* the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative.

Īre oportet, *one must go* (lit. *to go is right*)*;* **īre oportuit,** *one ought to have gone* (**205,** *a*) (lit. *to go was right*)*;* **eī īre licuit,** *he might have gone* (lit. *to go was permitted to him*)*;* **īre necesse est,** *one must go.*

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accusative. But with **licet** a predicate is commonly dative.

Fortem esse oportet, *one ought to be brave;* **virō licet esse fortī** (**fortem**), *a man may be brave* (lit. *it is permitted to a man to be brave*).

B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (**123**) forms an infinitive clause (**186**).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. ***RULE:*** ***The present infinitive*** (***rarely the perfect***) ***with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as*** **decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, vīsum est,** ***and of*** **est** ***with a predicate noun or adjective.***

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See **228,** *a* and **229,** *c.* As stated in **276,** the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with **licet** the dative is much more common.

Mē īre oportet, *I ought to go;* **Caesarem īre oportuit,** *Caesar ought to have gone* (**205,** *a*); **mē īre necesse est,** *I must go.*

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. ***RULE: The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.***

This is indirect discourse. For examples see **205** and **266.**

a. When these verbs are made passive, either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses.

(Personal) **Caesar vēnisse fertur,** *Caesar is said to have come;* (impersonal) **Caesarem vēnisse dictum est,** *it has been said that Caesar came.*

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs:

a. Regularly with **iubeō,** *order,* **vetō,** *forbid,* **patior, sinō,** *permit,* which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (**228,** *a*)

Mīlitēs pugnāre iussit, *he ordered the soldiers to fight.*

b. With **volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō,** regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare **275**).

Volō eum īre, *I wish him to go;* **cupiō mē esse clēmentem** (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I desire to be merciful.*

c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping,* and *promising.* But **posse** may be used, instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping,* because **possum** implies futurity.

Id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant (VII, **26,** 4), lit. *they hoped that they could accomplish this = they hoped to accomplish this;* **sēsē potīrī posse spērant** (I, **3,** 22), *they hoped that they could get possession.*

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. Historical Infinitive.

RULE: The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.

Cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre (I, **16,** 1), *Caesar daily demanded the grain.*

USES OF PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (**156**). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (**158**). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see **205.**

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coördinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating.

Victus fūgit may mean *he was conquered and fled, when he had been conquered he fled,* or *because he had been conquered he fled;* **victus fugiet** may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee.* See also the examples under **150.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing,* usually, and such forms as *being seen,* always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. E.g., *seeing this he fled* means *having seen,* etc., and may be translated **hōc vīsō** (**150**) **fūgit** (lit. *this having been seen*).

2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses **dum** with the present indicative (**234,** *a*) or **cum** with the imperfect (or past perfect) subjunctive (**242,** *a*).

He was killed (*while*) *fighting,* sometimes **pugnāns occīsus est,** usually either **dum pugnat occīsus est,** or **cum pugnāret occīsus est;** *seeing this he fled,* **cum hoc vīdisset fūgit.**

285. FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. **The future active participle** is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of **sum,** making either the active periphrastic conjugation (**75** and **196**) or the future active infinitive.

Praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant (I, **5,** 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them = except what they intended,* etc.

II. **The future passive participle** has the following uses (see also the gerundive, **288**):

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb **sum** to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (**76**). This denotes duty or necessity; as **laudandus est,** *he is to be praised, he must (ought, deserves to) be praised.* The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (**118**). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally.

Caesar est mihi laudandus, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me = I must praise Caesar;* **mihi pugnandum fuit** (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me = I had to fight.*

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially **cūrō,** *cause, have* (lit. *take care*), **dō,** *give over,* **suscipiō,** *undertake.*

Pontem faciendum cūrat (I, **13,** 2), *he had a bridge made;* **cōnsulibus senātus rem pūblicam dēfendendam dedit,** *the Senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls* (lit. *gave the state to the consuls to be defended*).

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen,* but no perfect active participle (but see *a*), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen.* The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, **150**).

Vīsus fūgit, *having been seen, he fled;* **Caesare vīsō fūgit,** *having seen Caesar, he fled* (lit. *Caesar having been seen, he fled*). See also **150.**

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in **286** is not to be made.

Caesarem cōnspicātus fūgit, *having seen Caesar he fled.*

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of **habeō.** The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act.

Magnās cōpiās coāctās habet, *he has great forces (which he has) collected,* or *he has collected great forces* (and still has them); while **magnās cōpiās coēgit,** *he (has) collected great forces,* leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as **post urbem conditam,** *after the founding of the city* (lit. *after the city founded*).

USES OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in *-ing*. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see **289, II.**

Fugiendī causā (**99,** *a*), *for the sake of fleeing;* **ad persuādendum eī** (**115**), *for persuading him;* **urbem videndī causā,** *for the sake of seeing the city.*

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is the future passive participle (**285, II**) used in a special idiom. In this use it agrees with a noun, but is translated as if it were the gerund (**287**) governing that noun as object. In translating from English into Latin, the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. E.g., in the gerund construction **urbem videndī causā, videndī** is the genitive modifying **causā,** and **urbem** is the direct object of **videndī.** In the gerundive construction **urbis videndae causā, urbis** is the genitive modifying **causā** and **videndae** agrees with **urbis** (lit. *for the sake of the city to be seen*). Both alike must be translated *for the sake of seeing the city.*

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. *I. RULE: If the verb is intransitive, the gerund must be used.*

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally.

Eī crēdendī causā, *for the sake of believing him* (**115**).

a. But the gerundive of **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** (**145**) is used.

Spēs potiundī oppidī (II, **7,** 5), *hope of taking the town.*

II. RULE: If the verb is used transitively, the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition.

(Always) **ad effēminandōs animōs** (I, **1,** 8), *to weaken the courage;* (usually) **urbis videndae causā,** *for the sake of seeing the city;* sometimes **urbem videndī causā,** *for the sake of seeing the city.*

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With **causā** and **grātiā** it forms a common expression of purpose.

Bellandī cupiditās, *a desire of fighting;* **Caesaris** (or **Caesarem**) **videndī cupidus,** *desirous of seeing Caesar;* **bellandī causā vēnit,** *he came to fight (for the sake of fighting).*

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used—**meī, tuī, suī, nostrī,** or **vestrī** with a genitive in **-ī** (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number.

Suī cōnservandī causā, *for the sake of saving themselves.* The usual gerund would be **sē cōnservandī;** the gerundive, **suī cōnservandōrum.**

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially **ad** expressing purpose.

Parātus ad proficīscendum, *ready to set out;* **ad Caesarem videndum vēnit,** *he came to see Caesar.*

294. The Ablative is used with the prepositions **ab, dē, ex, in,** and as the ablative of means or cause.

In quaerendō reperiēbat, *in questioning (them) he learned;* **lapidibus subministrandīs** (III, **25,** 4), *by furnishing stones.*

USES OF THE SUPINE

295. ***RULE: The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.***

It may govern a direct object.

Grātulātum vēnērunt (I, **30,** 2), *they came to offer congratulations;* **lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium** (I, **11,** 4), *they sent envoys to ask aid.*

296. ***RULE: The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification*** **(149).**

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs **audiō, cognōscō, dīcō, faciō, videō,** is most commonly found; and with the adjectives **facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mīrābilis,** and the expressions **fās est, nefās est, opus est.**

Perfacile factū (I, **3,** 16) lit. *very easy as to the doing = very easy to do.*

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. The Months. The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were **Iānuārius** (**-a, -um**), **Februārius**, **Mārtius**, **Aprīlis** (**-e**), **Maius**, **Iūnius**, **Quīntīlis**, **Sextīlis**, **September** (**-bris, -bre**), **Octōber**, **November**, and **December**. Later **Quīntīlis** was changed to **Iūlius**, in honor of Julius Caesar, and **Sextīlis** to **Augustus**, in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 45 B.C., that is, till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B.C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days. The revised calendar went into effect in 45.

298. Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called the days "the third before the Ides," "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The *Calends* (**Kalendae, -ārum,** *f.*) were always the first of the month. The *Nones* (**Nōnae, -ārum,** *f.*) were the seventh, the *Ides* (**Īdūs, -uum,** *f.*) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

299. Method of Reckoning. In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

For example, **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.** (I, **6,** 15) means *the fifth day before the first of April*. The days involved are March 28, 29, 30, 31; April 1. Counting April 1 as the first day, and counting back, March 28 is the fifth day and the one meant by Caesar.

300. Method of Expressing Dates. An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example **a. d. v. Kal. Apr. = ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs.** The logical form would be **diē quīntō ante Kalendās Aprīlēs.**

VOCABULARY

NOTE

In this vocabulary the figures 1, 2, and 4, following verbs, mean that the principal parts are formed like those of **laudō, moneō,** and **audiō,** respectively; or, if the verb is deponent, like those of **hortor, vereor,** and **partior** (App. 73).

As the fourth principal part of verbs, the form in **-um** is given if a perfect participle is in use. The future active participle, in **-ūrus,** is given for the few verbs which have this form but no perfect participle. The form in **-um** may be called either the supine or the nominative singular neuter of the perfect passive participle. The only objection to calling it supine is that the supine is not in common use.

To all words occurring in the first four books of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the book and chapter of first occurrence. If the word occurs first in Chapters **30-54** of Book I, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the first four books.

Words in italics are purely explanatory, and are never intended as definitions for translation purposes.

After geographical names letters are given, inclosed in parentheses. These correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

Pronunciation of Proper Names. It is generally agreed that the English pronunciation of proper names should be used in translation; but as no modern grammar gives the rules for the English pronunciation, the greatest confusion exists in practice. Therefore the pronunciation of all proper names is indicated in parentheses. To indicate the sounds of vowels, diacritical marks are used with the following values:

ă = a in *mat.*	ē = e in *me.*	ō = o in *note.*
ā = a in *mate.*	ĕ = e in *fern.*	ô = o in *or.*
ä = a in *arm.*	ĭ = i in *is.*	ŭ = u in *up.*
å = a in *Cuba.*	ī = i in *ice.*	ū = u in *use.*
ĕ = e in *met.*	ŏ = o in *not.*	o͝o = u in *rude.*

The letter *y* has the sounds of *i*, and is used in indicating pronunciation only as the consonant (= *y* in youth), or to indicate an *i* sound so rapidly uttered that it is barely distinguishable from the consonant *y*, as in Lucius = lū′shyŭs.

It must be understood, however, that unaccented syllables are so hastily pronounced that their vowel sounds are usually somewhat indistinct.

Where a word has more than one accented syllable, the main accent is indicated by a heavy mark (′), the lighter, secondary accent, by a light mark (′).

In giving tribe names it is best to use always the Latin forms of the names (Nervii, Helvetii, etc.), rather than the Anglicized forms (Nervians, Helvetians, etc.). Most of these Anglicized forms have no warrant in good English usage; none has much warrant. The few that are possible are given in the Vocabulary, but are not recommended for use. Modern geographical names may well be used, so far as they are familiar.

VOCABULARY

A.

A., *abbr. for* **Aulus** (aw'lŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, 6.

a., *abbr. for* **ante.** I, 6.

ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before vowels and some consonants*), **abs** (*before* **tē**, *and in some compounds*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting separation:* (1) *of place, persons, time, etc.*, from, away from, from the vicinity of; (2) *denoting position, in some phrases*, at, in, on, on the side of; **ā tergō**, in the rear; (3) *with expressions of measure*, away, off; **ab mīlibus passuum duōbus**, two miles away; (4) *with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes*, by; (5) *variously translated in other relations*, from, by, in respect to, after. I, 1.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. I, 12.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw *or* carry off, withdraw. I, 11.

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go away, depart.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away *or* down; hurl. IV, 15.

abiēs, -ietis, *f.*, fir tree.

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], disjoin, detach.

abs, *see* **ā.**

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut *or* lop off, tear off *or* away. III, 14.

absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **absum**, be absent], absent, at a distance. I, 32; III, 17.

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [**similis**, like], unlike. III, 14.

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [sistō, stand], keep away from.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *intr.* [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. I, 22.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], drag away, carry away by force. III, 2.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.* [**sum**, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent *or* distant, be wanting *or* free from. I, 1.

abundō, 1, *intr.* [**unda**, wave], overflow; abound.

ac, *see* **atque.**

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**ad**+cēdō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; be added; **accēdēbat**, it was added. I, 19.

accelerō, 1, *intr.* [**ad**+celerō, hasten], hasten.

acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **accipiō**, accept], acceptable, beloved *by (with dative)*. I, 3.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——, *intr.* [**ad**+cadō, fall], fall to *or* upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; **accidit**, it happens. I, 14.

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**ad**+caedō, cut], cut into.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**ad**+capiō, take], take *or* receive to oneself, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. I, 14.

acclīvis, -e, *adj.* [**ad**+clīvus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. II, 29.

acclīvitās, -tātis, *f.* [**acclīvis**, ascending], ascent, slope. II, 18.

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, Acco (ăk'ō), *a chief of the Senones.*

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **accommodō**, adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. III, **13.**

accommodō, 1, *tr.*, adjust *or* adapt to oneself, fit *or* put on. II, **21.**

accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully.

accurrō, -currere, -currī *or* **-cucurrī, -cursum,** *intr.* [**ad**+**currō**, run], run *or* hasten to. I, **22.**

accūsō, 1, *tr.* [**ad**+**causa**, cause, case], *bring a case or charge against;* blame, censure, accuse. I, **16.**

acerbē, *adv.* [**acerbus**, harsh], harshly, with pain.

acerbitās, -tātis, *f.* [**acerbus**, harsh], harshness, rigor.

acerbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, harsh, biting, severe.

ācerrimē, *see* **ācriter.**

acervus, -ī, *m.*, a heap, mass. II, **32.**

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, sharp edge *of a weapon;* sharp *or* keen sight, glance; a line (*as forming an edge*), battle line; **aciēs prīma,** the van; **aciēs media,** the center. I, **22.**

acquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**ad**+**quaerō**, seek], seek *or* gain in addition, win, acquire.

ācriter, *adv.* [**ācer**, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *Comp.* **ācrius**; *sup.* **ācerrimē** (App. 40). I, **26.**

āctuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**agō**, move, drive], fitted with oars.

āctus, *see* **agō.**

acūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sharpened, pointed.

ad, *prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward:* (1) *denoting motion,* to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) *denoting position,* at, by, near; (3) *denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive,* to, for; (4) *with numerals,* up to, about; (5) *of time,* up to, until; at, on; (6) *variously translated in other relations,* at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. I, **1.**

adāctus, *see* **adigō.**

adaequō, 1, *tr.* [**aequō**, make equal], make level with *or* equal to, equal; keep up with. I, **48**; II, **32.**

adamō, 1, *tr.* [**amō**, love], love strongly, covet. I, **31.**

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō**, put], place on; add.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead *or* draw to, bring to; induce, influence. I, **3.**

adēmptus, *see* **adimō.**

adeō, *adv.* [**eō**, thither], to such an extent, so much, so very, so; in fact.

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, **7.**

adeptus, *see* **adipīscor.**

adequitō, 1, *intr.* [**equitō**, ride; **equus**, horse], ride up. I, **46.**

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesūrus, *intr.* [**haereō**, stick], cling *or* stick to.

adhibeō, 2, *tr.* [**habeō**, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. I, **20.**

adhortor, 1, *tr.* [**hortor**, encourage], encourage, incite.

adhūc, *adv.* [**hūc**, hither], hitherto, as yet. III, **22.**

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacuī, ——, *intr.* [**iaceō**, lie], lie near *or* close to, adjoin.

Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, Adiatunnus (ā′dĭ-ā-tŭn′ŭs), *the leader of the Sotiates.* III, **22.**

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō**, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. III, **1.**

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**agō**, move], move, drive; thrust, plunge, hurl (*of weapons*); bind (*by an oath*). II, **21.**

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō**, take], take away, remove.

adipīscor, -ipīscī, -eptus sum, *tr.*, attain to, gain.

aditus, -ūs, *m.* [**adeō**, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. I, **43**; II, **15.**

adiūdicō, 1, *tr.* [**iūdicō**, judge], adjudge, assign.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō**, join], join to, attach, unite; add. III, **2.**

adiūtor, -ōris, *m.* [**adiuvō,** aid], helper, abettor, assistant.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *tr.* [**iuvō,** aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, **17.**

administer, -trī, *m.* [**minister,** servant], attendant; priest.

administrō, 1, *tr.* [**minister,** servant], manage, take charge of, administer; do, perform. II, **20.**

admīror, 1, *tr.* [**mīror,** wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. I, **14.**

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], admit; commit, incur; let go, put to full speed (*of a horse*). I, **22.**

admodum, *adv.* [**modus,** measure], *up to the limit;* very much, very; *with num.,* fully; *with neg.,* at all. III, **13.**

admoneō, 2, *tr.* [**moneō,** warn], warn.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultum, *intr.,* grow up.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *tr.* [**orior,** arise], rise against, assail, attack. I, **13.**

adsum, adesse, affuī, affutūrus, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be near *or* present, be at hand, appear. I, **16.**

adulēscēns, -entis, *m.* [*pres. part. of* **adolēscō,** grow up], youth, young man. I, **47**; III, **7.**

adulēscentia, -ae, *f.* [**adulēscēns,** youth], youthfulness, youth. I, **20.**

adulēscentulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* **adulēscēns,** youth], a very young man. III, **21.**

adventus, -ūs, *m.* [**veniō,** come], coming, arrival, approach. I, **7.**

adversārius, -rī, *m.* [**adversus,** turned against], antagonist, foe.

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **advertō,** turn to], turned to *or* against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; **adversō flūmine,** up the river; **in adversum ōs,** full in the face. I, **18.**

adversus, *prep. with acc.* [**adversus,** turned against], opposite to, against. IV, **14.**

advocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō,** call], call to, summon.

advolō, 1, *intr.* [**volō,** fly], fly to *or* against, rush on *or* at.

aedificium, -cī, *n.* [**aedificō,** build], building, house. I, 5.

aedificō, 1, *tr.* [**aedēs,** house+**faciō,** make], build, construct. III, **9.**

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.,* ill, sick.

aegrē, *adv.* [**aeger,** ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.,* **aegrius**; *sup.,* **aegerrimē** (App. 40). I, **13.**

Aemilius, -lī, *m.,* Aemilius (ē-mĭl'ĭ-ŭs). I, **23.**

aequāliter, *adv.* [**aequālis,** equal; **aequus,** equal], equally, evenly. II, **18.**

aequinoctium, -tī, *n.* [**aequus,** equal+**nox,** night], the equinox. IV, **36.**

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [**aequus,** equal], equality; fairness, equity; **animī aequitās,** contentment. I, **40.**

aequō, 1, *tr.* [**aequus,** equal], make even *or* equal, equalize. I, **25.**

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.,* even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; favorable; **aequus animus,** equanimity, composure. I, **43**; III, **17.**

aerāria, -ae, *f.* [**aes,** copper], copper mine. III, **21.**

aes, aeris, *n.* copper, bronze; *anything made of copper or bronze,* coin, money; **aes aliēnum,** *another's money,* debt. IV, **31.**

aestās, -tātis, *f.,* summer. I, **54**; II, **2.**

aestimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**aestimō,** value], valuation.

aestimō, 1, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider.

aestīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aestus,** heat; **aestās,** summer], of summer, summer.

aestuārium, -rī, *n.* [**aestus,** tide], low marshland, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, **28.**

aestus, -ūs, *m.,* heat; boiling, surging; tide; **minuente aestū,** at ebb tide. III, **12.**

aetās, aetātis, *f.,* period of life, age. II, **16.**

aeternus, -a, -um, *adj.,* everlasting.

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* [**ad**+**ferō**, carry. App. 81], bring, take, *or* carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. I, **43**; II, **1.**

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ad**+**faciō**, do], do to, treat, affect; **magnō dolōre afficere,** annoy greatly. I, **2.**

affīgō, -fīgere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [**ad**+**fīgō**, fix], fasten to. III, **14.**

affingō, -fingere, -finxī, -fictum, *tr.* [**ad**+**fingō**, invent], invent in addition.

affīnitās, -tātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. I, **18.**

affirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**affirmō**, affirm; **ad**+**firmus**, strong], declaration, assertion.

affīxus, *see* **affīgō.**

afflictō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **afflīgō**, strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. III, **12.**

afflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flictum, *tr.*, strike against; overthrow; damage, injure. IV, **31.**

affore, *fut. inf. of* **adsum.**

Āfricus, -ī, *m.*, Africus (ăf′rĭ-kŭs), the southwest wind.

āfuī, *see* **absum.**

Agedincum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Agedincum (ăj′ē-dĭng′kŭm), *now* Sens.

ager, agrī, *m.*, land; farm; district, territory. I, **2.**

agger, aggeris, *m.*, material for earthworks, earth; causeway, agger (Int. 61); rampart. II, **12.**

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *tr.* [**ad**+**gradior**, step], advance to *or* against; attack. I, **12.**

aggregō, 1, *tr.* [**ad**+**grex**, flock], *unite in a flock;* assemble; join, attach. IV, **26.**

agitō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **agō**, move; discuss], discuss.

agmen, -inis, *n.* [**agō**, move], *a moving body;* a marching column; army; **in agmine,** on the march; **prīmum agmen,** the van; **novissimum** *or* **extrēmum agmen,** the rear. I, **15.**

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (**conventum**); give, render (**grātiās**); plead (**causam** *or* **rem**). I, **13.**

agricultūra, -ae, *f.* [**ager**, land + **colō**, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. III, **17.**

alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, lively, quick, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, **19.**

alacritās, -tātis, *f.* [**alacer**, lively], liveliness, ardor. I, **41**; IV, **24.**

ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āla**, wing], on the wing; *m. pl. as noun,* auxiliaries. I, **51.**

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.

alcēs, -is, *f.*, elk.

Alesia, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Alesia (ă-lē′zhyă), *now* Alise Ste. Reine.

aliās, *adv.* [**alius**, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; **aliās . . . aliās,** at one time . . . at another. II, **29.**

aliēnō, 1, *tr.* [**aliēnus**, of another], make another's *or* foreign; estrange, alienate; **aliēnātā mente,** maddened.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alius**, other], of *or* belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; **aes aliēnum,** debt; **aliēnissimī,** entire strangers. I, **15.**

aliō, *adv.* [**alius**, other], to another place, person, *or* thing; elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, *adv.* [**aliquis**, some + **diū**, long], for some time. I, **40.**

aliquandō, *adv.* [**aliquis**, some], at some time, at length, finally.

aliquantō, *adv.* [**aliquantus**, some], somewhat, a little. III, **13.**

aliquantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, considerable; *neut. as noun with partitive gen.*, a good deal, not a little.

aliquis, -quid, *and* **aliquī, -qua, -quod,** *indef. pron.* [**quis**, who. App. 62, *a*], someone, something, some; anyone, anything, any. I, **14.**

aliquot, *indecl. num. adj.* [**quot**, how many], some, a few, several. III, **1.**

aliter, *adv.* [**alius,** other], otherwise; **aliter . . . ac,** otherwise . . . than. II, **19.**

alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* **alterīus** (App. 32), another, other; **alius . . . alius,** one . . . another; *pl.*, some . . . others. I, **1.**

allātus, *see* **afferō.**

alliciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectum, *tr.*, attract, allure, entice.

Allobrogēs, -um, *m.* (Dfg), the Allobroges (ă-lŏb′rō-jēz), *a powerful Gallic people in the Province.* I, **6.**

alō, alere, aluī, altum, *tr.*, nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. I, **18.**

Alpēs, -ium, *f.* (Cghi), the Alps. I, **10.**

alter, -era, -erum, *gen.* **alterīus** (App. 32), the other (*of two*); second; **alter . . . alter,** the one . . . the other; **alterī . . . alterī,** the one party . . . the other. I, **2.**

alternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alter,** the other], one after another, in turn.

altitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**altus,** high, deep], height; depth; thickness (*of timber*). I, **8.**

altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, lofty; deep; *neut. as noun,* the deep, the sea. I, **2.**

alūta, -ae, *f.*, soft leather. III, **13.**

ambactus, -ī, *m.*, paid retainer.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Ambarri (ăm-băr′ī), *clients of the Haedui.* I, **11.**

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABde), the Ambiani (ăm′bĭ-ā′nī). II, **4.**

Ambibariī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bbc), the Ambibarii (ăm′bĭ-bā′rĭ-ī).

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiliati (ăm′bĭ-lĭ′ă-tī). III, **9.**

Ambiorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Ambiorix (ăm-bī′-ō-rĭks), *king of the Eburones.*

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Ambivareti (ăm′bĭ-văr′ē-tī), *clients of the Haedui.*

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Ambivariti (ăm′bĭ-văr′ĭ-tī). IV, **9.**

ambō, -ae, -ō, both.

āmentia, -ae, *f.* [**mēns,** mind], lack of mind, folly, insanity. I, **40.**

amīcitia, -ae, *f.* [**amīcus,** friend], friendship. I, **3.**

amīcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**amō,** love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; *m. as noun,* friend, ally. I, **3.**

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. I, **28.**

ammentum, -ī, *n.*, strap *or* thong, *fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.*

amor, -ōris, *m.* [**amō,** love], love. I, **20.**

amplē, *adv.* [**amplus,** large], largely; *comp.*, **amplius,** more, farther. I, **35;** II, **16.**

amplificō, 1, *tr.* [**amplus,** large+**faciō,** make], extend, enlarge, increase, expand. II, **14.**

amplitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**amplus,** large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. IV, **3.**

amplius, *see* **amplē** *and* **amplus.**

amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; **amplius,** *comp. as noun,* more, a greater number, a greater distance. I, **15.**

an, *conj., used to introduce the second member of a double question,* or, or rather. I, **40;** IV, **14.**

Anartēs, -ium, *m.*, the Anartes (ă-när′-tēz), *a German tribe on the lower Danube.*

Ancalitēs, -um, *m.* (Ac), the Ancalites (ăn-kăl′ĭ-tēz).

anceps, ancipitis, *adj.* [**ambō,** both+**caput,** head], two-headed, with two sides *or* fronts, double. I, **26.**

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor; **in ancorīs,** at anchor. III, **13.**

Andebrogius, -gī, *m.*, Andebrogius (ăn′dē-brō′jyŭs). II, **3.**

Andēs, -ium, *m.* (Cc), the Andes (ăn′-dēz). II, **35.**

ānfrāctus, -ūs, *m.*, circuitous route.

angulus, -ī, *m.*, corner.

angustē, *adv.* [**angustus,** narrow], narrowly, closely; in close quarters. IV, **23.**

angustiae, -ārum, *f.* [**angustus,** narrow], narrowness; a narrow place *or* pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. I. **9.**

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**angō,** squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; **in angustō,** in a critical condition. I, 2.

anima, -ae, *f.*, breath, life, soul.

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [**animus,** mind+**ad** +**vertō,** turn], turn the mind to; notice; **animadvertere in,** punish. I, 19.

animal, -ālis, *n.* [**anima,** breath of life], a living creature, animal.

animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; **animī causā,** for amusement; **in animō habēre,** intend. I, 1.

annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**annus,** year], of last year.

annus, -ī, *m.*, year. I, 3.

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**annus,** year], yearly. I, 16.

ānser, -eris, *m.*, goose.

ante: (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously; (2) *prep. with acc.*, before, in advance of. I, 3.

anteā, *adv.* [**ante,** before], formerly, before, previously, once. I, 17.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, 8.

antecursor, -ōris, *m.* [**currō,** run], forerunner; *pl.*, vanguard.

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear. App. 81], bear *or* carry before; prefer.

antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. III, 14.

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place before; prefer. IV, 22.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [**vertō,** turn], put before, prefer.

antīquitus, *adv.* [**antīquus,** ancient], from early *or* ancient times; long ago, anciently. II, 4.

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ante,** before], former, old, ancient. I, 18.

Antistius, -tī, *m.*, Gaius Antistius Reginus (gā'yŭs ăn-tĭs'tĭ-ŭs rē-jī'nŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.*

Antōnius, -nī, *m.*, Marcus Antonius (mär'kŭs ăn-tō'nĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's legates, afterwards triumvir.*

Ap., *abbr. for* **Appius** (ăp'ĭ-ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.*

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertum, *tr.* open, expose.

apertē, *adv.* [**apertus,** open], openly, manifestly.

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **aperiō**], open, exposed; **ab latere apertō,** on the unprotected (*or* right) flank. I, 25.

Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apollo (ă-pŏl'ō).

apparō, 1, *tr.* [**ad**+**parō,** prepare], prepare, make ready.

appellō, 1, *tr.*, accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, 1.

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**ad**+**pellō,** drive], bring to land. III, 12.

appetō, -petere, -petīvī (-petiī), -petītum, *tr. and intr.* [**ad**+**petō,** seek], seek for, aim at; encroach upon; approach, be near. I, 40.

applicō, 1, *tr.* [**ad**+**plicō,** fold], apply; **sē applicāre,** lean.

apportō, 1, *tr.* [**ad**+**portō,** carry], bring.

approbō, 1, *tr.* [**ad**+**probō,** approve], favor, approve.

appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [**ad**+**propinquus,** near], come near *or* close, approach. II, 10.

appulsus, *see* **appellō.**

Apr., *abbr. for* **Aprīlis, -e,** *adj.*, of April, April. I, 6.

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. III, 13.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. I, 2.

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. IV, 17.

aquātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**aqua,** water], getting water. IV, 11.

aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard *of the legion.* IV, 25.

Aquileia, -ae, *f.* (Cj), Aquileia (ăk'wĭ-lē'yà), *a city of Cisalpine Gaul.* I, 10.

aquilifer, -erī, *m.* [**aquila,** eagle+**ferō,** bear], standard bearer.

Aquītānia, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (ăk′wĭ-tā′nĭ-á), *southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees.* I, **1.**

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *m. pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (ăk′wĭ-tā′nī), *possibly* Aquitanians, *inhabiting southwestern Gaul.* I, **1.**

Arar, Araris (*acc.* **-im**), *m.* (CDfg), the Arar (ā′rär), the *modern* Saone. I, **12.**

arbiter, -trī, *m.*, umpire, arbitrator.

arbitrium, -rī, *n.* [**arbiter**, umpire], decision *or* judgment (*of the arbiter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, **36.**

arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**arbiter**, umpire], decide; think, believe. I, **2.**

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. II, **17.**

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, summon, send for, invite. I, **31**; II, **20.**

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *intr.*, burn, blaze; be inflamed, be eager.

Arduenna, -ae, *f.* (ABfg), Arduenna (är′dū-ĕn′á), *better* the Ardennes, *a vast forest of northeastern Gaul.*

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep; difficult. II, **33.**

Arecomicī, *see* **Volcae.**

Aremoricae, -ārum, *f.* (Bbcd), *adj.*, *maritime*, Aremorican.

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver; silver plate *or* coin.

argilla, -ae, *f.*, white clay.

āridus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āreō**, be dry], dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. IV, **24.**

ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram (Int. 62, *c*); brace, buttress. II, **32.**

Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus (ā′rĭ-ō-vĭs′tŭs), *a king of the Germans.* I, **31**; IV, **16.**

Aristius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Aristius (mär′kŭs ȧ-rĭs′tĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune.*

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms; equipment; battle, war. I, **4.**

armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [**armō**, arm], implements, gear; tackle *or* rigging *of a ship.* III, **14.**

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [**armō**, arm], armor, equipment; **levis armātūrae**, light-armed. II, **10.**

armō, 1, *tr.* [**arma**, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm oneself; **armātus,** *pf. part., as adj.*, armed; **armātī,** *as noun*, armed men. I, **40**; II, **4.**

Arpīneius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Arpineius (gā′-yŭs är′pĭ-nē′yŭs), *a knight in Caesar's army.*

arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**ad**+**rapiō**, seize] take *or* seize hurriedly.

arroganter, *adv.* [**arrogāns**, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. I, **40.**

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [**arrogāns**, arrogant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. I, **33.**

ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art; *pl.*, the arts.

artē, *adv.* [**artus**, close], closely, firmly. IV, **17.**

articulus, -ī, *m.*, joint.

artificium, -cī, *n.* [**ars**, art + **faciō**, make], a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.

artus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, dense, thick.

Arvernus, -ī, *m.* (CDe), an Arvernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (är-vēr′nī). I, **31.**

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, **38.**

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr. and intr.* [**ad**+**scandō**, climb], climb, ascend, mount, scale. I, **21.**

ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ascendō**, climb], a climbing; ascent, approach. I, **21.**

ascīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**ad**+**scīscō**, approve], approve; admit *or* receive (*as allies*). I, **5.**

aspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**aspiciō**, look at], look; appearance, mien, aspect.

asper, -era, -erum, *adj.*, rough, violent.

assiduus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ad**+**sedeō**, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant.

assistō, assistere, astitī, ——, *intr.* [**ad**+**sistō**, stand], stand by *or* near, stand.

assuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. IV, **1.**

assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [**suēscō**, become accustomed], become accustomed.

at, *conj.*, but, at least. I, **43**; II, **23.**

atque, ac (**ac** *only before consonants*, **atque** *before vowels and consonants*), *conj.*, and also, and even, and; *after words denoting a comparison or difference*, than, as, from. I, **1.**

Atrebās, -bātis, *m.* (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (ăt'rē-bā'tēz). II, **4.**

Ātrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Atrius (kwĭn'tŭs ā'trĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's officers.*

attexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [**ad**+**texō**, weave], weave.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [**ad**+**tangō**, touch], touch *or* border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, **1.**

attribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, *tr.* [**ad**+**tribuō**, assign], assign, allot. III, **1.**

attulī, *see* **afferō.**

Atuatuca, -ae, *f.* (Af), Atuatuca (ăt'ū-ăt'ū-ka), *a stronghold of the Eburones.*

Atuatucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Atuatuci (ăt'ū-ăt'ū-sī). II, **4.**

auctor, -ōris, *m.* [**augeō**, increase], producer, originator; promoter, instigator, adviser, authority. III, **17.**

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.* [**auctor**, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. I, **3.**

auctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **augeō**, increase], increased, advanced. I, **43.**

audācia, -ae, *f.* [**audāx**, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I, **18.**

audācter, *adv.* [**audāx**, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. I, **15.**

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, dare, risk, venture. I, **18.**

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; listen to; **dictō audiēns,** obedient. I, **39**; II, **12.**

audītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**audiō**, hear], hearing; hearsay, rumor. IV, **5.**

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *tr.*, increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, **18.**

Aulercī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aulerci (awlĕr'sī), *a Gallic people divided into four branches:* (1) Aulerci Eburovices (ĕb'ū-rō-vī'sēz), (Bd). III, **17.** (2) Aulerci Cenomani (sē-nŏm'ā-nī), (Bd). (3) Aulerci Brannovices (brăn'ō-vī'sēz), *location unknown.* (4) Aulerci Diablintes (dī'ā-blĭn'tēz), (Bc). II, **34.**

aureus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aurum**, gold], of gold, gold.

aurīga, -ae, *m.*, chariot driver, charioteer. IV, **33.**

auris, -is, *f.*, ear.

Aurunculeius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyŭs aw-rŭng'kūlē'yŭs cŏt'ā), *one of Caesar's legates.* II, **11.**

Auscī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Ausci (aw'sī). III, **27.**

ausus, *see* **audeō.**

aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or. I, **1.**

autem, *postpositive conj.*, but; however, on the other hand; now; moreover. I, **2.**

autumnus, -ī, *m.*, autumn.

auxī, *see* **augeō.**

auxiliāris, -e, *adj.* [**auxilium**, aid], auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliary troops. III, **25.**

auxilior, 1, *intr.* [**auxilium**, aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, **29.**

auxilium, -lī, *n.*, help, assistance, aid; *pl.*, auxiliary troops, reënforcements. I, **11.**

Avaricēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of Avaricum.

Avaricum, -ī, *n.* (Ce), Avaricum (ă-văr'ĭ-kŭm), *the stronghold of the Bituriges, now* Bourges.

avāritia, -ae, *f.* [**avārus**, greedy], greed, covetousness. I, **40.**

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō**, carry], carry away, take away.

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [**vertō**, turn], turn away from *or* away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; *pf. part. as adj.*, with back turned. I, **16.**

avis, -is, *f.*, bird. IV, **10.**

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather. I, **12.**

Axona, -ae, *m.* (Bf), the Axona (ăk'sō-nà), *a river, now* the Aisne. II, **5.**

B.

Bacēnis, -is, *f.* (Ahi), Bacenis (bā-sē'-nĭs), the forest Bacenis, *between the Cherusci and the Suebi.*

Baculus, -ī, *m.*, Publius Sextius Baculus (pŭb'lĭ-ŭs sĕks'tĭ-ŭs băk'ū-lŭs). II, **25.**

Baliāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (băl'ē-ā'-rĭk), (i.e., *coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca*). II, **7.**

balteus, -ī, *m.*, sword belt.

Balventius, -tī, *m.*, Titus Balventius (tī'tŭs băl-vĕn'shyŭs), *one of Caesar's centurions.*

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*), uncivilized, barbarous; *m. pl. as noun*, barbarians. I, **31**; II, **35.**

Basilus, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū'shyŭs mĭ-nū'shyŭs bās'ĭ-lŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.*

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā'vī). IV, **10.**

Belgae, -ārum, *m.* (ABdefg), the Belgae (bĕl'jē), *or* Belgians. I, **1.**

Belgium, -gī, *n.* (ABdefg), Belgium (bĕl'jyŭm), *the country of the Belgae.*

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**bellum,** war], of *or* full of war, warlike. I, **10.**

bellicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**bellum,** war], of *or* in war, military.

bellō, 1, *intr.* [**bellum,** war], make *or* carry on war, fight. I, **2.**

Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bde), the Bellovaci (bĕ-lŏv'ā-sī). II, **4.**

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. I, **1.**

bene, *adv.* [**bonus,** good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, **melius**; *sup.*, **optimē.** I, **45**; III, **18.**

beneficium, -cī, *n.* [**bene,** well + **faciō,** do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. I, **9.**

benevolentia, -ae, *f.* [**bene,** well + **volō,** wish], good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, *n.* (Cef), Bibracte (bī-brăk'tē), *the chief town of the Haedui.* I, **23.**

Bibrax, -ctis, *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī'-brăks), *a town of the Remi.* II, **6.**

Bibrocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Bibroci (bĭb'rō-sī).

bīduum, -ī, *n.* [**bis,** twice + **diēs,** day], period of two days, two days. I, **23.**

biennium, -nī, *n.* [**bis,** twice + **annus,** year], two years. I, **3.**

Bigerriōnēs, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the Bigerriones (bī-jĕr'ĭ-ō'nēz). III, **27.**

bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**bis,** twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. III, **15.**

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [**bis,** twice + **pēs,** foot], of two feet, two feet thick. IV, **17.**

bipertītō, *adv.* [**bis,** twice + **partior,** divide], in two parts *or* divisions, in two ways. I, **25.**

bis, *num. adv.* [*for* **duis,** *from* **duo,** two], twice.

Biturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bĭt'ū-rī'jēz). I, **18.**

Boduognātus, -ī, *m.*, Boduognatus (bŏd'ū-ŏg-nā'tŭs). II, **23.**

Boī, Boiōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Boi (bō'ī), *a Gallic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map.* I, **5.**

bonitās, -tātis, *f.* [**bonus,** good], goodness; fertility. I, **28.**

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (*with* **animō**) friendly; *as noun*, **bonum, -ī,** profit, advantage; **bona, -ōrum,** goods, property, estate; **bonī, -ōrum,** the good, good men *or* citizens. *Comp.*, **melior**; *sup.*, **optimus** (App. 42). I, **6.**

bōs, bovis, *m.*, *f.*, ox; cow; *pl.* cattle.

bracchium, -chī, *n.*, the arm, forearm. I, **25.**

Brannovīcēs, *see* **Aulercī.**

Bratuspantium, -tī, *n.* (Be), Bratuspantium (brăt'ŭs-păn'shyŭm). II, **13.**

brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; **brevī,** in a short time. I, **40**; III, **4.**

brevitās, -tātis, *f.* [**brevis,** short], shortness, brevity. II, **20.**

breviter, *adv.* [**brevis,** short], briefly.

Britannia, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brĭ-tăn'ĭ-ă), *better* Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*), *never Brittany.* II, **4.**

Britannicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Britannia,** Britain], of Britain, British.

Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Britain, British; *m. pl. as noun,* the Britanni (brĭ-tăn'ī), *better,* the Britons. IV, **21.**

brūma, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice.

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius Brutus (dĕs'ĭ-mŭs jū'nĭ-ŭs brōō'tŭs), *one of Caesar's officers, probably a legate.* III, **11.**

C.

C., *abbr. for praenomen* **Gāius** (gā'yŭs). I, **40**; III, **5.**

C, *sign for* **centum,** a hundred.

Cabūrus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yŭs vá-lē'rĭ-ŭs ká-bū'rŭs), *a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus.* I, **47.**

cacūmen, -inis, *n.*, top.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [**cadō,** fall], a fallen *or* dead body, corpse. II, **27.**

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. I, **15.**

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Dd), Cadurcan; *m. pl. as noun,* the Cadurci (kă-dĕr'sī).

caedēs, -is, *f.* [**caedō,** cut], a cutting; (*of persons*) slaughter, massacre, murder.

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, *tr.*, cut, kill, slay. III, **29.**

caelestis, -e, *adj.* [**caelum,** heaven], heavenly; *m. pl. as noun,* the gods.

Caemānī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā'nī). II, **4.**

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, a sacred rite.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō'sī). II, **4.**

caeruleus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark blue.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*: (1) Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yŭs jū'lĭ-ŭs sē'zär), *conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries.* I, **7.** (2) Lucius Julius Caesar (lū'shyŭs jū'lĭ-ŭs sē'zär), *a kinsman and legate of the former.*

caespes, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. III, **25.**

caesus, *see* **caedō.**

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, calamity. I, **12.**

Caletī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kăl'ē-tī). II, **4.**

callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd. III, **18.**

cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter *or* follower. II, **24.**

campester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**campus,** a plain], of a plain, flat, level; **campestria loca,** level country.

campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, open space *or* country. III, **26.**

Camulogenus, -ī, *m.*, Camulogenus (kăm'ū-lŏj'ē-nŭs), *a chief of the Aulerci.*

Canīnius, -nī, *m.*, Gaius Caninius Rebilus (gā'yŭs ká-nĭn'ĭ-ŭs rĕb'ĭ-lŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.*

canō, canere, cecinī, ——, *intr.*, sing; sound.

Cantabrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kăn'tă-brī). III, **26.**

Cantium, -tī, *n.* (Ad), Cantium (kăn'-shyŭm), *or* Kent.

caper, caprī, *m.*, goat.

capillus, -ī, *m.*, the hair.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *tr.*, take, capture, seize, catch; take in, beguile, induce; take up (*arms*); choose, select (*a place*); form, adopt (*a plan*); reach, arrive at (*a place*); make (*a beginning*); **collem capere,** take position on a hill; **fugam capere,** take to flight. I, **1.**

captīvus, -ī, *m.* [**capiō,** take], captive, prisoner. I, **22.**

captus, -ūs, *m.* [**capiō,** take], comprehension, ideas. IV, **3.**

captus, *see* **capiō.**

caput, capitis, *n.*, the head (*of men and animals*); person, individual; mouth (*of a river*); **capitis poena,** capital punishment. I, **29.**

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kär'-kă-sō). III, **20.**

careō, 2, *intr.*, be without, be free from; miss, want.

carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel. III, **13.**

Carnutēs, -um, *m.* (BCde), the Carnutes (kär'nū-tēz). II, **35.**

carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh, meat.

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, *tr.*, pluck, pick; censure, jeer at. III, **17.**

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. I, **3.**

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, valuable.

Carvilius, -lī, *m.*, Carvilius (kär-vĭl'ĭ-ŭs), *a British king.*

casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut.

cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese.

Cassī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Cassi (kăs'ī).

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius; *see* **Cassius.** I, **13.**

cassis, -idis, *f.*, *a metal* helmet.

Cassius, -sī, *m.*, Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyŭs kăsh'yŭs lŏn-jī'nŭs), *consul 107 B. C., slain in battle by the Tigurini.* I, **7.**

Cassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, Cassivellaunus (kăs'ĭ-vĕ-law'nŭs), *the commander in chief of the Britons against Caesar.*

castellum, -ī, *n.* [**castrum,** fort], fortress, redoubt. I, **8.**

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus (kăs'tĭ-kŭs). I, **3.**

castrum, -ī, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, **castra,** castrōrum, fortified camp, camp; **castra facere** *or* **pōnere,** pitch camp. I, **12.**

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cadō,** fall], *what befalls;* accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; **cāsū,** by chance. I, **12.**

Catamantaloedis, -is, *m.*, Catamantaloedis (kăt'ă-măn'tă-lē'dĭs). I, **3.**

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain; fetter. I, **47;** III, **13.**

Caturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Caturiges (kăt'ū-rī'jēz). I, **10.**

Catuvolcus, -ī, *m.*, Catuvolcus (kăt'ū-vŏl'kŭs), *a chief of the Eburones.*

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (*legal*) case, cause; **causam dīcere,** to plead a case; **causā,** *following a gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. I, **1.**

cautē, *adv.* [**cautus,** *from* **caveō,** be cautious], cautiously.

cautēs, -is, *f.*, reef. III, **13.**

Cavarillus, -ī *m.*, Cavarillus (kăv'ă-rĭl'ŭs), *a Haeduan noble.*

Cavarīnus, -ī, *m.*, Cavarinus (kăv'ă-rī'nŭs), *a king of the Senones.*

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *intr.*, be cautious, be on one's guard; **obsidibus cavēre,** exchange hostages as security. I, **14.**

Cavillōnum, -ī, *n.* (Cf), Cavillonum (kăv'ĭ-lō'nŭm).

Cebenna, -ae, *f.* (De), the Cebenna (sē-bĕn'ă), *or* the Cevennes *mountains.*

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. II, **19.**

celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick; precipitate. IV, **23.**

celeritās, -tātis, *f.* [**celer,** swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. I, **48;** II, **12.**

celeriter, *adv.* [**celer,** swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. I, **18.**

cēlō, 1, *tr.*, keep covered *or* hidden, secrete, conceal; *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. II, **32.**

Celtae, -ārum, *m.*, the Celtae (sĕl'tē), *better* the Celts. I, **1.**

Celtillus, -ī, *m.*, Celtillus (sĕl-tĭl'ŭs), *an Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.*

Cēnabēnsis, -e, *adj.* [**Cēnabum**], of Cenabum; *m. pl. as noun,* the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum, -ī, *n.* (Cd), Cenabum (sĕn'ă-bŭm), *now* Orleans.

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ad), the Cenimagni (sĕn'ĭ-măg'nī).

Cēnomanī, *see* **Aulercī.**

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, *tr.*, think, decide (*acc. and inf.*); propose, advise, vote (**ut** *and subj.*); propose, vote for (*acc.*). I, **35.**

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, enumeration. I, **29.**

centum (C), *indecl. card. num.*, a hundred. I, **2.**

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**centum,** a hundred,] centurion, *the commander of a century, the sixtieth part of a legion.* I, **39;** II, **17.**

cēpī, *see* **capiō.**

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, separate; see, perceive.

certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, **14.**

certē, *adv.* [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, **25.**

certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, certain, sure, fixed; **certiōrem facere,** to inform (*acc. and inf.*); order (**ut** *or* **nē** *and subj.*); **certior fierī,** be informed. I, **7.**

cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag.

cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of, the other, the remaining; *as noun,* the rest, the others. I, **32;** II, **3.**

Ceutronēs, -um, *m.*, the Ceutrones (sū'trō-nēz): (1) (Dg). I, **10.** (2) (Af).

Chēruscī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ahi), the Cherusci (kē-rŭs'ī), *a German tribe.*

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus, food], pertaining to food; *neut. pl. as noun,* provisions; **molita cibāria,** meal, flour. I, **5.**

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. IV, **1.**

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Quintus Tullius Cicero (kwĭn'tŭs tŭl'ĭ-ŭs sĭs'ē-rō), *one of Caesar's legates, brother of the famous orator.*

Cimberius, -rī, *m.*, Cimberius (sĭm-bē'rĭ-ŭs), a Sueban chief. I, **37.**

Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sĭm'-brī). I, **33;** II, **4.**

Cingetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Cingetorix (sĭn-jĕt'ō-rĭks): (1) *a chief of the Treveri;* (2) *a British king.*

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *tr.*, encircle, surround; man (*a wall*). I, **38.**

cippus, -ī, *m.*, tombstone.

circinus, -ī, *m.* [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. I, **38.**

circiter, *adv.* [circus, circle], about, near. I, **15.**

circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [circumeō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. I, **21.**

circum, *prep. with acc.* [circus, a circle], around, about, near. I, **10.**

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut around *or* off, cut; isolate.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], encircle.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. I, **38;** IV, **32.**

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead *or* draw around. I, **38;** III, **26.**

circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go *or* march around; traverse, visit. III, **25.**

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [fundō, pour], surround; *pass.*, gather round.

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set, *or* place around. II, **6.**

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send around.

circummūniō, 4, *tr.* [mūniō,[fortify], wall around, inclose. II, **30.**

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plectō, fold], infold, inclose.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, ——, *tr.* [sistō, stand], stand, flock, *or* rally around, surround, hem in. I, **48;** III, **15.**

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look (*around*) for *or* at, consider, examine.

circumvāllō, 1, *tr.* [vāllum, rampart], surround with a rampart, beleaguer, invest.

circumvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry around; *pass.*, ride around.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come *or* get around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. I, **25.**

cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. II, **3.**

Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Alpēs], Cisalpine, *lying on the south side of the Alps.*

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rhēnus], on this (*the western*) side of the Rhine.

Cita, -ae, *m.*, Gaius Fufius Cita (gā′yŭs fū′fĭ-ŭs sī′tà), *a Roman knight.*

citātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **citō,** put in motion], swift. IV, **10.**

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither; **Gallia Citerior** (= **Cisalpīna**), Cisalpine Gaul, *on the nearer* (*Italian*) *side of the Alps.* I, **10.**

citō, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, **citius**; *sup.*, **citissimē.** IV, **33.**

citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. I, **12.**

citrō, *adv.*, hither; **ultrō citrōque,** back and forth. I, **42.**

cīvis, -is, *m.*, *f.*, citizen.

cīvitās, -tātis, *f.* [**cīvis,** citizen], citizenship; the citizens (*as forming a community*), state, city. I, **2.**

clam, *adv.*, secretly. III, **18.**

clāmitō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **clāmō,** cry out], cry out repeatedly, exclaim.

clāmor, -ōris, *m.* [**clāmō,** cry out], outcry, noise, clamor. II, **11.**

clandestīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**clam,** secretly], hidden, secret.

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, loud.

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet. III, **11.**

Claudius, -dī, *m.*, Appius Claudius Pulcher (ăp′ĭ-ŭs klaw′dĭ-ŭs pŭl′kĕr), *consul 54 B.C.*

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere,** close the line, bring up the rear. I, **25.**

clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. III, **13.**

clēmentia, -ae, *f.* [**clēmēns,** gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, **14.**

cliēns, -entis, *m. and f.*, client, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, **4.**

clientēla, -ae, *f.* [**cliēns,** a client], *the relation of client and patron;* patronage, vassalage; clients.

clīvus, -ī, *m.*, slope, ascent.

Clōdius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Clodius Pulcher (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs klō′dĭ-ŭs pŭl′kĕr), *murdered by Milo in 52 B.C.*

Cn., *abbr.* for **Gnaeus** (nē′ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* IV, **1.**

co-, *see* **con-.**

coacervō, 1, *tr.* [**acervō,** heap up; **acervus,** heap], heap *or* mass together, pile one upon another. II, **27.**

coāctus, *see* **cōgō.**

coāctus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōgō,** compel], compulsion.

coagmentō, 1, *tr.*, join, connect.

coartō, 1, *tr.*, crowd together.

Cocosātēs, -um, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kŏk′ō-sā′tēz). III, **27.**

coēgī, *see* **cōgō.**

coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō,** buy], buy, buy up. I, **3.**

coĕō, -īre, -iī, ——, *intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], assemble.

coepī, coepisse (App. 86 and 86, *a*), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; **coeptus,** *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. I, **15.**

coërceō, 2, *tr.* [**arceō,** shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. I, **17.**

cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**co**+**agitō,** consider], consider thoroughly *or* carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. I, **33**; III, **24.**

cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**co**+(g)**nātus,** born], blood relationship; family, clan.

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *tr.* [**co**+(g)**nōscō,** learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf., I have learned,* I know (App. 193, I, *a*). I, **19.**

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [**co**+**agō,** lead], lead *or* bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. I, **4.**

cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort (Int. 33). I, **40**; II, **5.**

cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cohortor,** encourage], encouragement, cheering. II, **25.**

cohortor, 1, *tr.* [**co**+**hortor,** encourage], encourage, cheer, animate. I, **25.**

collātus, *see* **cōnferō.**

collaudō, 1, *tr.* [**con**+**laudō,** praise], praise highly.

colligō, 1, *tr.* [**con**+**ligō,** bind], bind *or* fasten together. I, **25.**

colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [con+legō, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; **sē colligere,** *collect oneself*, rally. III, **6.**

collis, -is, *m.*, hill. I, **22.**

collocō, 1, *tr.* [con+locō, place], place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre,** give in marriage. I, **18.**

colloquium, -quī, *n.* [colloquor, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. I, **34.**

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [con+loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. I, **19.**

colō, colere, coluī, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. IV, **1.**

colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony, settlement.

color, -ōris, *m.*, color.

com-, *see* **con-.**

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [com(b)+ūrō, burn], burn up. I, **5.**

comes, -itis, *m., f.*, companion.

comitium, -tī, *n.* [com+eō, go], place of assembly *or* meeting; *pl.*, an election.

comitor, 1, *tr.* [comes, companion], accompany, follow.

commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. I, **34**; II, **5.**

commemorō, 1, *tr.* [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. I, **14.**

commendō, 1, *tr.* [mandō, intrust], intrust; surrender. IV, **27.**

commeō, 1, *intr.* [meō, go], go back and forth; *with* **ad,** resort to, visit. I, **1.**

commīlitō, -ōnis, *m.* [mīles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. IV, **25.**

comminus, *adv.* [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, **52.**

commissūra, -ae, *f.* [committō, join], uniting, joint, juncture.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], join, splice; commit (*a crime*), do; allow, permit; intrust; **proelium committere,** join *or* begin battle. I, **13.**

Commius, -mī, *m.*, Commius (kŏm′ĭ-ŭs), *a chief of the Atrebates.* IV, **21.**

commodē, *adv.* [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; **satis commodē,** to much advantage, very easily. I, **25.**

commodum, -ī, *n.* [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. I, **35**; III, **22.**

commodus, -a, -um, *adj.* [modus, measure], *in full measure;* convenient, suitable, satisfactory. I, **42.**

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, remind forcibly. I, **19.**

commoror, 1, *intr.* [moror, tarry], wait, stop.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move *or* excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. I, **13.**

commūnicō, 1, *tr.* [commūnis, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, **13.**

commūniō, 4, *tr.* [mūniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. I, **8.**

commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general; **rēs commūnis,** the common interest. I, **30**; II, **4.**

commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [commūtō, change], a changing, change. I, **14.**

commūtō, 1, *tr.* [mūtō, change], change *or* alter completely, change, exchange. I, **23.**

comparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure, prepare for. I, **3.**

comparō, 1, *tr.* [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. I, **31.**

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. II, **23.**

compendium, -dī, *n.*, gain, profit.

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, *tr.* [pariō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, **22.**

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plectō, fold], embrace, clasp, inclose. I, **20.**

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [pleō, fill], fill up *or* completely; complete; cover. I, **24.**

complexus, *see* **complector.**

complūrēs, -a, *adj.* [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. I, **8.**

comportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry together, collect, bring. I, **16.**

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [prehendō (=prēndō), seize], grasp, lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (*fire*). III, **14.**

comprobō, 1, *tr.* [probō, approve], approve, sanction, justify.

compulsus, *see* **compellō.**

con-, com-, co- [*the forms taken by* **cum** *in composition*], together; completely; *or mere emphasis.*

cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, **3.**

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, **8.**

cōnātus, *see* **cōnor.**

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. I, **7.**

concessus, -ūs, *m.* [concēdō, permit], concession, permission.

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. I, **12.**

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall down, fall. III, **14.**

conciliō, 1, *tr.* [concilium, assembly], bring together; gain *or* win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. I, **3.**

concilium, -lī, *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. I, **18.**

concīsus, *see* **concīdō.**

concitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, put in motion], stir up, rouse, instigate, incite.

conclāmō, 1, *intr.* [clāmō, cry out], shout *or* cry out, call aloud. I, **47**; III, **18.**

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, close], shut up; **conclūsum mare,** an inland sea. III, **9.**

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, *m.*, Conconnetodumnus (kŏn-kŏn'ē-tō-dŭm'nŭs), *a chief of the Carnutes.*

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitum, *intr.*, clash.

concurrō, -currere, -currī, cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run *or* rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. I, **48**; II, **20.**

concursō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* **concurrō,** run], run about.

concursus, -ūs, *m.* [concurrō, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. I, **8.**

concursus, *see* **concurrō.**

condemnō, 1, *tr.* [damnō, condemn], convict.

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. I, **28.**

condōnō, 1, *tr.* [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. I, **20.**

Condrūsi, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Condrusi (kŏn-drōō'sī). II, **4.**

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead *or* bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, **4.**

cōnfectus, *see* **cōnficiō.**

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, *tr.* [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring *or* get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; **sē cōnferre,** betake oneself, take refuge. I, **16.**

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dense, thick, compact; in close order. I, **24.**

cōnfestim, *adv.*, hastily, at once, immediately. IV, **32.**

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make *or* do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (*leather*). I, **3.**

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [fīdō, trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; **cōnfīsus,** *pf. part. with present meaning,* relying on. I, **23.**

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [fīgō, fix], fasten. III, **13.**

cōnfīnis, -e, *adj.* [fīnis, boundary], adjoining, contiguous.

cōnfīnium, -nī, *n.* [fīnis, boundary], common boundary, neighborhood.

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōnfirmō, assert], assurance. III, **18.**

cōnfirmō, 1, *tr.* [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. I, **3.**

cōnfīsus, *see* **cōnfīdō.**

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, *tr.* [**fateor,** confess], acknowledge, confess.

cōnfīxus, *see* **cōnfigō.**

cōnflagrō, 1, *intr.* [**flagrō,** burn], burn, be on fire.

cōnflīctō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **cōnflīgō**], strike together; *pass.*, be distressed.

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *intr.* [**flīgō,** strike], strike against; contend, fight. II, **5.**

cōnfluēns, -entis, *f.* [**cōnfluō,** flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, **15.**

cōnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——, *intr.* [**fluō,** flow], flow together.

cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, ——, *intr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee, take refuge.

cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [**fundō,** pour], pour together, bring together.

congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (*peacefully*). I, **36**; II, **23.**

congressus, -ūs, *m.* [**congredior,** meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. III, **13.**

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast; put; put together *logically*, conjecture; **in fugam conicere,** put to flight. I, **26.**

coniectūra, -ae, *f.* [**coniciō,** conjecture], inference, conjecture.

coniectus, *see* **coniciō.**

coniūnctim, *adv.* [**coniungō,** join], jointly.

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō,** join], join with *or* together, connect, unite, bind. I, **37**; II, **3.**

coniūnx, -iugis, *f.* [**coniungō,** join], wife.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**coniūrō,** swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. I, **2.**

coniūrō, 1, *intr.* [**iūrō,** swear], swear *or* take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, **1.**

cōnor, 1, *intr.*, attempt, endeavor, try. I, **3.**

conquiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvī, ——, *intr.* [**quiēscō,** to rest; **quiēs,** rest] lie down to rest.

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō,** search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, **27.**

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sanguis,** blood], of the same blood; *m. as noun*, kinsman, relative. I, **11.**

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr.* [**scandō,** climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, **23.**

cōnscientia, -ae, *f.* [**cōnscius,** conscious], consciousness, knowledge, sense.

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.* [**scīscō,** resolve], resolve upon; **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** commit suicide. I, **4.**

cōnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sciō,** know], conscious; aware. I, **14.**

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō,** write], *write together in a list;* levy, enroll, enlist; write. I, **10.**

cōnsecrō, 1, *tr.* [**sacrō,** dedicate], dedicate, consecrate.

cōnsector, 1, *tr.* [**sector,** *freq. of* **sequor,** follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. III, **15.**

cōnsecūtus, *see* **cōnsequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cōnsentiō,** agree], agreement.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnsentiō,** agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. I, **30**; II, **28.**

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *intr.* [**sentiō,** feel], *think together;* agree, combine. II, **3.**

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. I, **13.**

cōnservō, 1, *tr.* [**servō,** save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. II, **12.**

Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs kŏn-sĭd′ĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's officers.* I, **21.**

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [sīdō, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. I, 21.

cōnsilium, -lī, *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; council of war *of Roman officers;* **commūnī cōnsiliō,** by, *or* in accordance with, general action; **pūblicō cōnsiliō,** by action of the state; **cōnsilium capere** *or* **inīre,** form *or* adopt a plan; **cōnsilium habēre,** think, consider. I, 5.

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], very like, similar. II, 11.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [sistō, stand], take a stand *or* position, keep one's position, stand; (*of soldiers*) form; stop, halt, remain, stay; (*of ships*) ride at anchor; consist in, depend *or* rest on. I, 13.

cōnsobrīnus, -ī, *m.*, cousin.

cōnsōlor, 1, *tr.*, cheer, comfort. I, 20.

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnspiciō, look at], sight, view; presence. I, 11.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. I, 47; II, 21.

cōnspicor, 1, *tr.*, observe, descry, perceive. I, 25.

cōnspīrō, 1, *intr.* [spīrō, breathe], combine, conspire. III, 10.

cōnstanter, *adv.* [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, 2.

cōnstantia, -ae, *f.* [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. I, 40.

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [sternō, strew], strew over, cover over. IV, 17.

cōnsternō, 1, *tr.* [cōnsternō, -ere, strew over], confound, perplex, dismay.

cōnstīpō, 1, *tr.*, press *or* crowd closely.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, set; decide, decree, determine, establish, settle; (*of troops*) draw up, station; (*of ships*) anchor, station; raise (*a legion*). I, 3.

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; *impersonal*, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. III, 6.

cōnstrātus, *see* **cōnsternō.**

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, *a*), be accustomed, be wont; **cōnsuētus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. I, 14.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. I, 31; II, 17.

cōnsuētus, *see* **cōnsuēscō.**

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, *one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people.* I, 2.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsul, consul], consulship. I, 35.

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr.* and *intr.*: *tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. I, 53.

cōnsultō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* cōnsulō, take counsel], reflect, consider, take counsel.

cōnsultō, *adv.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], deliberately, designedly, on purpose.

cōnsultum, -ī, *n.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], *result of deliberation;* decree, enactment, decision. I, 43.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *tr.* [sūmō, take], *take together* or *all at once;* devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11.

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *intr.* [surgō, rise], arise together *or* in a body; arise.

contabulō, 1, *tr.* [tabula, board], floor over, build in stories, build up.

contāgiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contingō, touch], contact.

contāminō, 1, *tr.*, corrupt, contaminate.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover up, cover. IV, **17.**

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, *tr.* [temnō, scorn], despise, disdain.

contemptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contemnō, despise], disdain, contempt. III, **17.**

contemptus, -ūs, *m.* [contemnō, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. II, **30.**

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [tendō, stretch], strive; push forward, hasten; march; contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. I, **1.**

contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contendō, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. I, **44.**

contentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* contineō, restrain], satisfied, contented.

contigī, *see* **contingō.**

continēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* contineō, hold together], continuous, unbroken; neighboring; *f. as noun,* mainland, continent. III, **28.**

continenter, *adv.* [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. I, **1.**

continentia, -ae, *f.* [contineō, hold], self-restraint, moderation.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; **sē continēre,** *with abl.*, remain in, on, *or* within. I, **1.**

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. I, **38.**

continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. III, **29.**

continuō, *adv.* [continuus, continuous], immediately, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineō, hold together], unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous; consecutive. I, **48**; IV, **34.**

cōntio, -ōnis, *f.* [*for* conventiō; conveniō, come together], assembly, mass meeting; speech (*before such a meeting*).

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.:* (1) *as adv.*, against him *or* them; on the other hand; **contrā atque,** contrary to what: (2) *as prep.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing. I, **18.**

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw *or* bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, **34**; IV, **22.**

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; **ex contrāriō,** on the contrary. II, **18.**

contrōversia, -ae, *f.* [contrā, against + versus, turned], dispute, quarrel, controversy.

contulī, *see* **cōnferō.**

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult. I, **14.**

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, ——, *intr.* [valēscō, *incept. of* valeō, be well], gain health *or* strength, recover.

convallis, -is, *f.* [vallis, valley], inclosed valley, defile. III, **20.**

convehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry *or* bring together, collect.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr. and intr.* [veniō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; be agreed upon; *impersonal*, be convenient, suitable, necessary. I, **6.**

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. I, **18.**

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [vertō, turn], turn completely, wheel around; turn, change; **signa convertere,** face about. I, **23.**

Convictolitāvis, -is, *m.*, Convictolitavis (kŏn-vĭk'tō-lĭ-tā'vĭs), *a Haeduan chief.*

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. I, **40.**

convocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō**, call], call together, summon, assemble. I, **16.**

coorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *intr.* [**co-**+ **orior**, rise], arise, spring up, break out. III, **7.**

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance, number; *pl.*, resources; forces, troops. I, **2.**

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cōpia**, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. I, **23.**

cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. III, **13.**

cor, cordis, *n.*, heart; **cordī esse**, be dear.

cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person. I, **32.**

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.* (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō'rĭ-ō-sŏl'ĭ-tēz). II, **34.**

corium, -rī, *n.*, skin, hide, leather.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing. I, **52**; II, **23.**

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; **sub corōnā vēndere**, sell at auction. III, **16.**

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body; person; a (*dead*) body. I, **25.**

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**con**+**rumpō**, break], destroy, ruin.

cortex, -icis, *m.*, bark. II, **33.**

Cōrus, -ī, *m.*, the northwest wind.

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cotīdiē**, daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. I, **1.**

cotīdiē, *adv.* [**quot**, how many+**diēs**, day], daily, every day. I, **16.**

Cotta, *see* **Aurunculeius.**

Cotuātus, -ī, *m.*, Cotuatus (kŏt'ū-ā'-tŭs), *a chief of the Carnutes.*

Cotus, -ī, *m.*, Cotus (kō'tŭs), *a Haeduan noble.*

crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**crassus**, thick], thickness. III, **13.**

Crassus, -ī, *m.*: (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus (măr'kŭs lĭ-sĭn'ĭ-ŭs krăs'-ŭs), *triumvir with Caesar and Pompey.* I, **21.** (2) *his son*, Marcus Licinius Crassus, *one of Caesar's quaestors.* (3) *a second son*, Publius Licinius Crassus, *one of Caesar's officers, perhaps a legate.* I, **52**; II, **34.**

crātēs, -is, *f.*, wicker work; fascine (*bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.*). IV, **17.**

crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short invervals. II, **1.**

crēbrō, *adv.* [**crēber**, repeated], repeatedly, often.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr. and intr.*, believe, suppose; intrust. II, **33.**

cremō, 1, *tr.*, burn. I, **4.**

creō, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose, appoint. I, **16.**

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, grow *or* increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*), swell. I, **20.**

Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krē'tēz), *better*, Cretans, *natives of the island of Crete.* II, **7.**

Critognātus, -ī, *m.*, Critognatus (krĭt'ŏg-nā'tŭs), *a chief of the Arverni.*

cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cruciō**, torture; **crux**, cross], torture, torment. I, **31**; II, **31.**

crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.* [**crūdēlis**, cruel], cruelty, harshness. I, **32.**

crūdēliter, *adv.* [**crūdēlis**, cruel], cruelly. I, **31.**

crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg.

cubīle, -is, *n.* [**cubō**, lie down], bed, resting-place.

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. III, **2.**

culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. IV, **27.**

cultus, -ūs, *m.* [**colō**, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. I, **1.**

cum, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; **cum prīmum**, as soon as (App. 238-242). I, **1.**

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. I, **1.**

cumulus, -ī, *m.*, heap, pile.

cūnctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cūnctor**, delay], delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, **18.**

cūnctor, 1, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, **23.**

cūnctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **coniūnctus,** joined together], all together, all. II, **29.**

cuneātim, *adv.* [**cuneus,** wedge], in wedge-shaped masses.

cuneus, -ī, *m.*, wedge; wedge-shaped mass.

cunīculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. III, **21.**

cupidē, *adv.* [**cupidus,** desirous], desirously, eagerly. I, **15.**

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* [**cupidus,** eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, **2.**

cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cupiō,** desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. I, **2.**

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, *tr. and intr.*, long *or* be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, **18.**

cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why? for what reason? for which reason, wherefore. I, **40**; IV, **16.**

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention. I, **33.**

cūrō, 1, *tr.* [**cūra,** care], care for, take care of, provide for; *with gerundive* (App. 285, II, *b*), have, order. I, **13.**

currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. IV, **33.**

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [**currō,** run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. I, **48**; II, **23.**

custōdia, -ae, *f.* [**custōs,** guard], custody, guard (*state of being guarded*); *pl.*, guard, keepers. II, **29.**

custōdiō, 4, *tr.* [**custōs,** guard], guard.

custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. I, **20.**

D.

D., *abbr. for praenomen* **Decimus** (dĕs′ĭ-mŭs). III, **11.**

D, *sign for* **quīngentī,** five hundred. III, **22.**

d., = **diem,** *in abbr. for dates.* I, **6.**

Dācī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Daci (dā′sī) *or* Dacians, *the inhabitants of Dacia, now Rumania.*

damnō, 1, *tr.* [**damnum,** damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. I, **4.**

damnum, -ī, *n.*, loss, damage.

Dānuvius, -vī, *m.* (Bhi), the Danuvius (dā-nū′vĭ-ŭs), *better,* the Danube.

dē, *prep. with abl.:* (1) *of place,* from, out of; *especially* down from; (2) *of time,* just after, about; (3) *variously translated in other relations,* about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. I, **1.**

dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [**dē**+**habeō,** have], *have* or *keep from someone;* owe; *with inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. I, **11.**

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go from *or* away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. I, **31.**

decem (X), *card. num. adj.*, ten. I, **4.**

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [**cernō,** separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. II, **35.**

dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [**certō,** contend], fight to the end, fight it out, struggle fiercely *or* earnestly, vie, contend. I, **44**; II, **10.**

dēcessus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēcēdō,** depart], departure; ebb, fall (*of the tide*). III, **13.**

Decetia, -ae, *f.* (Ce), Decetia (dē-sē′-shyă), *a town of the Haedui, now* Decize.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, ——, *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall from *or* off. I, **48.**

decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**decem,** ten], tenth. I, **40**; II, **21.**

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], entrap; deceive. I, **14.**

dēclārō, 1, *tr.* [**clārus,** clear], make plain, declare. I, **50.**

dēclīvis, -e, *adj.* [**clīvus,** a slope], sloping downward; declining; *neut. pl. as noun,* slopes. II, **18.**

dēclīvitās, -tātis, *f.* [**dēclīvis,** sloping downward], descent.

dēcrētum, -ī, *n.* [**dēcernō,** decide], decision, decree, order.

dēcrētus, *see* **dēcernō.**

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**decimus,** tenth], of *or* belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta,** the rear gate (*of the camp*). II, **24.**

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [**decem,** ten], decurion, *a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten.* I, **23.**

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run down, hurry down. II, **19.**

dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [**decus,** honor], dishonor, disgrace. IV, **25.**

dedī, *see* **dō.**

dēdidī, *see* **dēdō.**

dēditicius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dēdō,** surrender], surrendered; *m. as noun,* one who has surrendered, prisoner. I, **27.**

dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēdō,** surrender], surrender, capitulation. I, **27.**

dēditus, *see* **dēdō.**

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give up *or* over, yield, surrender; devote; **sē dēdere,** submit, surrender. II, **15.**

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead down *or* away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. I, **44;** II, **2.**

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēfatīgō,** weary], fatigue, weariness. III, **19.**

dēfatīgō, 1, *tr.* [**fatīgō,** weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. I, **40.**

dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēficiō,** fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. III, **10.**

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [**fendō,** strike], keep *or* ward off, repel; defend, protect. I, **11.**

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēfendō,** defend], a defending, defense. II, **7.**

dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [**dēfendō,** defend], defender, protector; (*means of*) defense. II, **6.**

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** carry. App. 81], bring from *or* down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring before, refer; bestow, confer; **dēlātus** (*sometimes*), falling; coming by chance. II, **4.**

dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.* wearied, exhausted, faint. I, **25.**

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**faciō,** make], fail, desert, fall away, revolt. II, **10.**

dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [**figō,** fix], fix *or* fasten down, drive in, plant. IV, **17.**

dēfīniō, 4, *tr.* [**fīniō,** limit; **fīnis,** end], mark off; define, determine.

dēfīxus, *see* **dēfigō.**

dēfore, *fut. inf. of* **dēsum.**

dēformis, -e, *adj.* [**fōrma,** form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. IV, **2.**

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, ——, *tr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee from, shun.

dēfuī, *see* **dēsum.**

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], hurl *or* cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I, **8.**

dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēiciō,** cast down], slope, descent. II, 8.

deinceps, *adv.,* one after the other, in turn, successively, in succession. III, **29.**

deinde, *adv.* [**dē**+**inde,** thence], thereupon, then, next. I, **25.**

dēlātus, *see* **dēferō.**

dēlectō, 1, *tr.,* delight; *pass.,* delight in, take pleasure in. IV, **2.**

dēlēctus, *see* **dēligō.**

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *tr.,* wipe out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II, **27.**

dēlīberō, 1, *tr.* [**lībra,** balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. I, **7.**

dēlibrō, 1, *tr.* [**liber,** bark], peel.

dēlictum, -ī, *n.,* fault, offense.

dēligō, 1, *tr.* [**ligō,** bind], bind *or* tie down, fasten, moor. I, **53;** IV, **29.**

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**legō,** choose], pick out, select, choose. I, **3.**

dēlītēscō, -lītēscere, -lituī, ——, *intr.* [**latēscō,** *incept. of* **lateō,** lie hidden], hide oneself, lurk. IV, **32.**

dēmentia, -ae, *f.* [**mēns,** mind], madness, folly. IV, **13.**

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messum, *tr.* [**metō,** reap], mow, reap. IV, **32.**

dēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [**migrō,** move, migrate], move from *or* away, emigrate, remove. IV, **4.**

dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum, *tr.* [**minuō,** lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. I, **18.**

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send, thrust, *or* let down; sink; bow; **sē dēmittere,** come *or* get down, descend; **sē animō dēmittere,** lose courage; **dēmissus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, low. I, **32.**

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, *tr.* [**dē**+**emō,** take], take down, remove.

dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.* [**mōnstrō,** show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. I, **11.**

dēmoror, 1, *tr.* [**moror,** delay], hinder, delay. III, **6.**

dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally. I, **17.**

dēnegō, 1, *tr.* [**negō,** deny], refuse. I, **42.**

dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**decem,** ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I, **43.**

dēnique, *adv.*, and then, thereupon, finally, at last; at least. I, **22.**

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set *or* packed, thick, dense. II, **22.**

dēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], announce, give *or* send notice, declare, threaten. I, **36.**

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive from *or* away, ward off. III, **25.**

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [**perdō,** destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. I, **43**; III, **28.**

dēpereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**pereō,** perish; **eō,** App. 84], go to ruin, perish; be lost *or* undone.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], lay down *or* aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. I, **14.**

dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* [**populor,** lay waste], lay waste, ravage. I, **11.**

dēportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry], carry off *or* away. III, **12.**

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, ——, *tr.* [**poscō,** demand], demand; call for.

dēpositus, *see* **dēpōnō.**

dēprecātor, *m.* [**dēprecor,** plead for], mediator, intercessor. I, **9.**

dēprecor, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**precor,** pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. II, **31.**

dēprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [**prehendō** (=**prēndō**), seize], seize, capture, catch.

dēpugnō, 1, *intr.* [**pugnō,** fight], fight decisively; contend.

dēpulsus, *see* **dēpellō.**

dērēctē, *adv.* [**dērēctus,** straight], straight. IV, **17.**

dērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dērigō,** put in line], straight. IV, **17.**

dērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**regō,** direct], *put in line;* arrange, draw up, put in order.

dērīvō, 1, *tr.* [**rīvus,** stream], draw off.

dērogō, 1, *tr.* [**rogō,** ask], take away, withdraw.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *intr.* [**scandō,** climb], climb *or* go down, descend; have recourse (*to*), resort.

dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectum, *tr.* [**secō,** cut], cut away *or* off.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [**serō,** entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; **dēsertus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. I, **45**; II, **25.**

dēsertor, -ōris, *m.* [**dēserō,** desert], deserter.

dēsīderō, 1, *tr.*, feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. IV, **2.**

dēsidia, -ae, *f.*, inactivity, idleness.

dēsignō, 1, *tr.* [**signō,** mark], mark out; mean, indicate. I, **18.**

dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, ——, *intr.* [**saliō,** leap], leap from *or* down, alight, dismount. IV, **2.**

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], abandon, cease, give up. I, **8.**

dēspectus, *see* **dēspiciō.**

dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**dēspiciō,** look down upon], *a looking down,* view. III, **14.**

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēspērō,** despair], despair, hopelessness.

dēspērō, 1, *intr.* [**spērō,** hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; **dēspērātus,** *as part., from transitive meaning,* despaired of; *as adj.*, desperate. I, **18.**

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. I, **13.**

dēspoliō, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], deprive. II, **31.**

dēstinō, 1, *tr.*, fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. III, **14.**

dēstitī, *see* **dēsistō.**

dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set *or* place aside, forsake, desert. I, **16.**

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.* [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (*a sword*). I, **25.**

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be lacking, be absent from, fail. I, **40**; II, **21.**

dēsuper, *adv.* [super, above], from above. I, **52.**

dēterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), worse, less. I, **36.**

dēterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten away *or* off, hinder, deter, prevent. I, **17.**

dētestor, 1, *tr.*, execrate, curse.

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold off *or* back; hinder, detain. III, **12.**

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw off *or* away, take away, take off, remove. I, **42**; II, **21.**

dētrectō, 1, *tr.*, refuse, avoid.

dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dētrīmentum, harm], hurtful, harmful.

dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.* [dē+terō, rub *or* wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. I, **44.**

dētulī, *see* **dēferō.**

dēturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], drive off, dislodge.

deūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn up, destroy.

deus, -ī (*nom. pl.*, **dī**; *dat. pl.*, **dīs**), *m.*, god, deity. I, **12.**

deustus, *see* **deūrō.**

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry away, bring. I, **43.**

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come down, go, come. II, **21.**

dēvexus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēvehō, carry away *or* down], sloping; *neut. pl. as noun*, slopes, hillsides.

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], conquer completely, subdue.

dēvocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call off *or* away; bring.

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *tr.* [voveō, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; **dēvōtus,** *pf. part. as noun*, a sworn follower. III, **22.**

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. I, **52**; II, **23.**

dextra, -ae, *f.* [dexter, right; *sc.* manus], the right hand. I, **20.**

dī, *see* **deus.**

dī-, *see* **dis-.**

Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Bc), the Diablintes (dī'ă-blĭn'tēz). III, **9.**

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. I, **31**; II, **34.**

dicō, 1, *tr.* [dīcō, say], proclaim; give over, surrender.

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *tr.*, say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; **causam dīcere,** plead a case; **iūs dīcere,** administer justice. I, **1.**

dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dīcō, say], speaking, pleading. I, **4.**

dictum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* dīcō, say], word; statement; command; **dictō audiēns,** obedient. I, **39.**

dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead *or* draw apart; separate, divide. III, **23.**

diēs, -ēī, *m.*, *f.*, day; time; **in diēs,** from day to day; **diem ex diē,** day after day. I, **4.**

dif-, *see* **dis.**

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, *tr. and intr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. I, **1.**

difficilis, -e, *adj.* [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, **6.**

difficultās, -tātis, *f.* [difficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. II, **20.**

difficulter, *adv.*, with difficulty.

diffīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [fīdō, trust. App. 74], distrust; lack confidence, despair.

diffluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. IV, **10.**

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [fundō, pour], pour *or* spread out.

digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger; *as measure of length*, a finger's breadth, *the sixteenth part of a Roman foot;* **digitus pollex,** the thumb. III, **13.**

dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, position, rank. I, **43**; III, **16.**

dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy, deserving.

diiūdicō, 1, *tr.* [iūdicō, judge], decide.

dīlēctus, *see* **dīligō.**

dīlēctus, -ūs, *m.* [dīligō, choose], choice; levy.

dīligenter, *adv.* [dīligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains, *or* care. II, **5.**

dīligentia, -ae, *f.* [dīligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, **40**; III, **20.**

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], single *or* choose out, esteem highly, love.

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, *tr.* [mētior, measure], measure out *or* off. II, **19.**

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dīmicō, fight], fight, contest.

dīmicō, 1, *intr.* [micō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. II, **21.**

dīmidius, -a, -um, *adj.* [medius, middle], *divided in the middle*, half; *neut. as noun*, a half.

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send in different directions, send away *or* off, dismiss; break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. I, **18.**

dir-, *see* **dis-.**

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. I, **46.**

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], rend *or* tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II, **17.**

Dīs, Dītis, *m.*, Dis (dĭs), Pluto (plū'tō), *the god of the lower world.*

dīs, *see* **deus.**

dis- (dī-, dif-, dir-), *insep. prefix*, apart, asunder, in different directions; *negative*, = *Eng.* un-, not.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (*especially with* **ab** *or* **ex**). I, **14.**

disceptātor, -ōris, *m.*, judge, umpire.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate], separate, keep apart.

discessus, -ūs, *m.* [discēdō, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. II, **14.**

disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. I, **40**; IV, **1.**

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut off, hold *or* keep apart, separate. IV, **17.**

discō, discere, didicī, ——, *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught. I, **13.**

discrīmen, -minis, *n.*, danger, critical condition.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, *tr.*, clear away.

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, break, disperse. I, **25.**

dispār, -paris, *adj.* [pār, equal], unequal, ill-matched.

disparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], separate.

dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, *tr.* [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. I, **40**; III, **28.**

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], *place apart;* distribute, arrange, station. I, **8.**

disputātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [disputō, discuss], argument, discussion.

disputō, 1, *intr.* [putō, reckon], discuss, debate about.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dissentiō,** think differently], disagreement, dissension.

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *intr.* [**sentiō,** feel], differ, disagree.

disserō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, *tr.* [**serō,** sow], sow *or* set at intervals.

dissimulō, 1, *tr.* [**simulō,** make like], disguise, conceal. IV, **6.**

dissipō, 1, *tr.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, **24.**

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *intr.* [**suādeō,** advise], advise against.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold *or* keep apart; divide, isolate. II, **5.**

distō, -stāre, ——, ——, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand apart; be apart, removed, *or* separated. IV, **17.**

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** drag], pull asunder, remove.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, *tr.* [**tribuō,** assign], assign, divide, distribute. III, **10.**

distulī, *see* **differō.**

dītissimus, *sup. of* **dīves.**

diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long; **quam diū,** as long as; *comp.*, **diūtius,** longer, too long, any longer; *sup.*, **diūtissimē,** for the longest time. I, **14.**

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diēs,** day], of the day, by day, day. I, **38.**

diūtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diū,** long], of long duration, long.

diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**diūturnus,** long], long duration. I, **40**; III, **4.**

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diū,** long], long. I, **14.**

dīversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, different; separate, remote. II, **22.**

dīves, dīvitis, wealthy, rich; *sup.*, **dītissimus.** I, **2.**

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*, Diviciacus (dĭv′ĭ-shĭ-ā′kŭs): (1) *a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans.* I, **3.** (2) *a chief of the Suessiones.* II, **4.**

Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divico (dĭv′ĭ-kō), *an Helvetian chieftain.* **I, 13.**

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *tr.*, divide, separate; **dīvīsus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, divided. I, **1.**

dīvīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dīvus,** divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. II, **31.**

dō, dare, dedī, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; **in fugam dare,** put to flight; **dare manūs,** yield; **dare negōtium,** *with dat.*, employ, engage, direct. (*Some compounds of* **dō** *are derived from an obsolete verb,* **dŏ,** put.) **I, 3.**

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. I, **43**; II, **5.**

documentum, -ī, *n.* [**doceō,** teach], example; warning.

doleō, 2, *intr.*, feel pain, be distressed *or* annoyed, grieve. **I, 14.**

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [**doleō,** grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. **I, 2.**

dolus, -ī, *m.*, craft, trick, treachery. **I, 13.**

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**domus,** house], belonging to the home, domestic; in *or* of one's own land. **II, 10.**

domicilium, -ī, *n.* [**domus,** house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. **I, 30**; II, **29.**

dominor, 1, *intr.* [**dominus,** master], be master, rule. II, **31.**

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master.

Domitius, -tī, *m.*, Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus (lū′shyŭs dō-mĭsh′-yŭs ā-hĕn′ō-bär′bŭs), *consul 54 B.C.*

Domnotaurus, *see* **Valerius.**

domus, -ūs (App. 29, *d*), *f.*, house; home; native country. I, **5.**

dōnō, 1, *tr.* [**dōnum,** gift], give, present; endow with. I, **47.**

dōnum, -ī, *n.* [**dō,** give], present, gift.

dorsum, -ī, *n.*, back; ridge.

dōs, dōtis, *f.* [**dō,** give], a marriage portion, dowry.

Druidēs, -um, *m.*, the Druids, *an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.*

Dūbis, -is, *m.* (Cfg), the *river* Dubis (dū′bĭs), *now* the Doubs. I, **38.**

dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dubitō,** doubt, hesitate], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. I, **14.**

dubitō, 1, *intr.* [**dubius,** doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. I, **17.**

dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, doubtful. I, **3.**

ducentī, -ae, -a (CC), *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two + **centum,** hundred], two hundred. I, **2.**

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *tr.*, lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, **3.**

ductus, -ūs, *m.* [**dūcō,** lead], leading, command.

dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till, until. I, **7.**

Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix (dŭm′nō-rĭks), *a Haeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus.* I, **3.**

duo, duae, duo (App. 49), *card. num. adj.*, two. I, **6.**

duodecim, *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two + **decem,** ten], twelve. I, **5.**

duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**duodecim,** twelve], twelfth. II, **23.**

duodēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**duodecim,** twelve], twelve each, twelve at a time.

duodēvīgintī, *card. num. adj.* [**duo,** two + **dē,** from + **vīgintī,** twenty], eighteen. I, **23.**

duplex, -plicis, *adj.* [**duo,** two + **plicō,** fold], twofold, double. II, **29.**

duplicō, 1, *tr.* [**duplex,** double], double, increase. IV, **36.**

dūritia, -ae, *f.* [**dūrus,** hard], hardness, hardship.

dūrō, 1, *tr.* [**dūrus,** hard], make hardy, harden.

Dūrocortorum, -ī, *n.* (Bf), Durocortorum (dū′rō-côr′tō-rŭm), *the capital of the Remi, now* Rheims.

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. I, **48.**

Dūrus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Laberius Durus (kwĭn′tŭs lȧ-bē′rĭ-ŭs dū′rŭs), *a tribune.*

dux, ducis, *m.* [**dūcō,** lead], leader, guide, commander. I, **21.**

E.

ē (*only before consonants*), **ex** (*before vowels and some consonants*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of:* (1) *of place,* out of, from, away from; *denoting position, in some phrases,* on; **ūnā ex parte,** on one side; (2) *of time,* from, after, since; **ex itinere,** immediately after the march; (3) *variously translated in other relations,* from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with. I, **2.**

eā, *adv.* [= **eā viā**], by that way, there.

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ĕb′ū-rō′nēz). II, **4.**

Eburovīcēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Eburovices (aw-lĕr′sī ĕb′ū-rō-vī′sēz). III, **17.**

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, ——, *tr.* [**discō,** learn], learn thoroughly, get by heart.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **ēdō,** give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. II, **8.**

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give out; inflict. I, **31.**

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctum, *tr.* [**doceō,** teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, **18.**

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead out *or* forth; draw (*a sword*). I, **10.**

effēminō, 1, *tr.* [**ex** + **fēmina,** woman], make effeminate, enfeeble. I, **1.**

efferciō, -fercīre, ——, **-fertum,** *tr.*, fill completely, stop up.

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [**ex** + **ferō,** carry. App. 81], bring *or* carry out, carry *or* take away; raise; spread *or* publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. I, **5.**

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**ex** + **faciō,** make], make *or* do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. I, **38**; II, **5.**

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [**ex** + **fodiō,** dig], dig out.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, ——, *tr. and intr.* [**ex** + **fugiō,** flee], flee from *or* away, escape. IV, **35.**

egēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **egeō,** want], in want, needy, destitute.

egeō, egēre, eguī, ——, *intr.*, need, want, lack, be without *or* destitute.

egestās, -tātis, *f.* [**egeō,** want], poverty.

ēgī, *pf. of* **agō.**

ego, meī (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, I; *pl.*, **nōs,** we. I, **40**; II, **9.**

egomet, *emphatic for* **ego,** I myself, I for my part.

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. I, **27.**

ēgregiē, *adv.* [**ēgregius,** excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, **29.**

ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ē**+**grex,** herd], *out of the common herd;* excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. I, **19.**

ēgressus, *see* **ēgredior.**

ēgressus, -ūs, *m.* [**ēgredior,** step out], a landing, landing-place.

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], cast *or* drive out, expel; cast up; **sē ēicere,** rush out, make a sortie. IV, **7.**

eius modī, of such a sort *or* kind, such. III, **3.**

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, *intr.* [**lābor,** slip], slip away, escape.

ēlātus, *see* **efferō.**

Elaver, -eris, *n.* (Ce), the *river* Elaver (ĕl′ā-vĕr), *now* the Allier.

ēlēctus, *see* **ēligō.**

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, *m.* (Dd), the Eleuteti (ē-lū′tē-tī).

ēliciō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, draw *or* entice out, lure forth.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**legō,** choose], choose, pick out, select; **ēlēctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (*men, etc.*). II, **4.**

Elusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ĕl′ū-sā′tēz). III, **27.**

ēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [**migrō,** migrate], depart, migrate. I, **31.**

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, project.

ēminus, *adv.* [**manus,** hand], aloof, at a distance, at long range.

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], let go, send out *or* forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. I, **25.**

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. I, **16.**

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.* [**nāscor,** be born], be born from; grow out. II, **17.**

enim, *conj.*, for; **sed enim,** but in fact. I, **14.**

ēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], report, declare, disclose. I, **4.**

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. I, **6.**

eō, *adv.* [*old dative of* **is**], thither, there (*in sense of* thither), to the place (*where, etc.*), to them (it, him, etc.). I, **25.**

eō, *abl. of* **is.**

eōdem, *adv.* [*old dative of* **īdem**], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). I, **4.**

ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ephippium,** saddle], using a saddle. IV, **2.**

ephippium, -pī, *n.*, saddle. IV, **2.**

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle.

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Eporedorix (ĕp′-ō-rĕd′ō-rĭks), *the name of two Haeduan leaders.*

epulae, -ārum, *f.*, feast, banquet.

eques, -itis, *m.* [**equus,** horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry; *then* (*as originally serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*); *also*, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*). I, **15.**

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**eques,** horseman], of *or* belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. I, **18.**

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [**equitō,** ride; **equus,** horse], cavalry, horsemen. I, **15.**

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. I, **22.**

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, Eratosthenes (ĕr′ā-tŏs′thē-nēz), *a Greek geographer, born 276 B.C.*

ērēctus, *see* **ērigō.**

ēreptus, *see* **ēripiō.**

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**regō,** direct], lift *or* raise; **ērēctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high. III, **13.**

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [**rapiō,** seize], wrest *or* take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, **4.**

errō, 1, *intr.*, wander; err, be mistaken.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *intr.* [**rumpō,** break], break forth, make a sortie. III, **5.**

ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ērumpō,** break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie. II, **33.**

essedārius, -rī, *m.* [**essedum,** a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, **24.**

essedum, -ī, *n., a two-wheeled* war chariot *of the Britons.* IV, **32.**

Esuviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bcd), the Esuvii (ē-sū′vĭ-ī). II, **34.**

et, *conj.*, and; also, too; even; **et . . . et,** both . . . and. I, **1.**

etiam, *conj.* and also, also, even, yet. I, **1.**

etsī, *conj.* [et+sī, if], even if, although. I, **46;** III, **24.**

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.* [**vādō,** go], escape. III, **19.**

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [**vellō,** pluck], pluck out, pull out. I, **25.**

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], turn out, result. IV, **25.**

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [**ēveniō,** turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. II, **22.**

ēvocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō,** call], call forth *or* out, summon; **ēvocātus,** *pf. part. as noun,* reënlisted veteran. III, **20.**

ēvolō, 1, *intr.* [**volō,** fly], fly *or* rush forth. III, **28.**

ex, *see* **ē.**

exāctus, *see* **exigō.**

exagitō, 1, *tr.* [**agitō,** *freq. of* **agō,** drive], drive out *or* away; disturb, harass. II, **29.**

exāminō, 1, *tr.*, weigh.

exanimō, 1, *tr.* [**anima,** breath], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. II, **23.**

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsum, *intr.* [**ārdēscō,** *incept. of* **ārdeō,** blaze], take fire; be inflamed *or* enraged.

exaudiō, 4, *tr.* [**audiō,** hear], hear (*from a distance*). II, **11.**

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go out *or* away, withdraw, retire. II, **25.**

excellō, -cellere, -celluī, ——, *intr.*, excel, surpass.

excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**excellō,** surpass], high.

exceptō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **excipiō,** catch], take hold of, catch.

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō,** cut], hew away *or* down.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [**capiō,** take]: *tr.*, take up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. I, **52;** III, **5.**

excitō, 1, *tr.* [**citō,** rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). III, **10.**

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō,** shut], shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent.

excōgitō, 1, *tr.* [**cōgitō,** think], think out, contrive, devise, invent.

excruciō, 1, *tr.* [**cruciō,** torture; **crux,** cross], torture greatly, torment, rack.

excubitor, -ōris, *m.* [**excubō,** keep guard], watchman, sentinel.

excubō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *intr.* [**cubō,** lie], lie outside; keep guard.

exculcō, 1, *tr.*, trample, tread down.

excursiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**excurrō,** run forth], a running out, sortie. II, **30.**

excūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**excūsō,** excuse], excuse, apology.

excūsō, 1, *tr.* [**causa,** reason], give reason for; excuse. IV, **22.**

exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, precedent. I, **8.**

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go out, depart, leave. I, 2.

exerceō, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise. I, 48.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exerceō, train], exercise, training; practice, experience. I, 39; III, 19.

exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [exerceō, train], well trained, skilled, versed. I, 36; II, 20.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [exerceō, train], *a trained or disciplined body of men*, an army. I, 3.

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustum, *tr.* [hauriō, draw], draw out, empty.

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, drive], finish, end. III, 28.

exiguē, *adv.* [exiguus, scanty], meagerly, scarcely.

exiguitās, -tātis, *f.* [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. II, 21.

exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, short, small, meager, limited. IV, 20.

eximius, -a, -um, *adj.* [eximō, take out], *taken from the mass; hence* choice, eminent. II, 8.

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exīstimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. I, 20.

exīstimō, 1, *tr.* [aestimō, estimate], estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, 6.

exitus, -ūs, *m.* [exeō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. III, 8.

expediō, 4, *tr.* [pēs, foot], set free; arrange, prepare.

expedītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [expedītus, unimpeded], march *or* expedition without baggage.

expedītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part of* expediō, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light-armed; *m. as noun*, a light-armed soldier. I, 6.

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive out, expel. II, 4.

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, *tr.*, try, test, experience. I, 31; II, 16.

expiō, 1, *tr.*, atone for, expiate; avenge.

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [pleō, fill], fill out *or* up; finish, complete.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [explōrō, search out], explorer, scout, spy. I, 12.

explōrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. III, 18.

explōrō, 1, *tr.*, search *or* find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. II, 4.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], put *or* set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. IV, 23.

portō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry out *or* away. IV, 18.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, ——, *tr.* [poscō, demand], entreat, demand.

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. I, 32.

expugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [expugnō, take by storm], a taking by assault, storming.

expugnō, 1, *tr.* [pugnō, fight], take *or* carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I, 11.

exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek *or* search out, inquire, investigate. I, 41; III, 3.

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. I, 4.

exserō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr.*, thrust *or* put out; uncover.

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [sistō, stand], stand *or* come forth, appear, arise; ensue. III, 15.

exspectō, 1, *tr.* [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. I, 11.

exspoliō, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], rob.

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, *tr.*, put out, quench; destroy.

exstō, -stāre, ——, ——, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand out, extend above.

exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build *or* pile up, rear, construct, build. II, 30.

exsul, -sulis, *m.*, *f.*, an exile.

exterior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **exterus.** App. 44], outer, exterior.

exterreō, 2, *tr.* [**terreō,** frighten], frighten outright, strike with terror.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, ——, *tr.* [**timeō,** fear], dread. III, **13.**

extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum, *tr.* [**torqueō,** twist], wrest *or* force from, extort.

extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. I, **10.**

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw out; waste.

extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **exterus.** App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme; the farthest part of; **extrēmī,** *as noun,* the rear; **ad extrēmum,** at last, at the end. I, **1.**

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *tr.* [**trūdō,** thrust], thrust *or* shut out. III, **12.**

extulī, *see* **efferō.**

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, strip; rob, deprive. III, **6.**

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [**ūrō,** burn], burn up. I, **5.**

F.

faber, -brī, *m.*, workman, mechanic; carpenter.

Fabius, -bī, *m.:* (1) Gaius Fabius (gā′yŭs fā′bĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's legates;* (2) Lucius Fabius (lū′shyŭs fā′bĭ-ŭs), *a centurion of the 8th legion;* (3) Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwĭn′tŭs fā′bĭ-ŭs măk′sĭ-mŭs), *victor over the Gauls 121 B.C.* I, **45.**

facile, *adv.* [**facilis,** easy], easily, readily. *Comp.,* **facilius;** *sup.,* **facillimē** (App. 41). I, **2.**

facilis, -e, *adj.* [**faciō,** do], easy. I, **6.**

facinus, -noris, *n.* [**faciō,** do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. I, **40;** III, **9.**

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *tr. and intr.: tr.*, make, construct, form, do, execute (*commands, etc.*); give (*opportunity, etc.*); *with* **ut,** bring about, cause; *intr.*, do, act. *Pass.,* **fīō, fierī, factus sum** (App. 83), *with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally,* it results, it happens, it comes to pass. I, **2.**

factiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**faciō,** make], party, faction. I, **31.**

factum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* **faciō,** do], act, exploit, deed. III, **14.**

factus, *see* **faciō.**

facultās, -tātis, *f.*, power; opportunity, chance; resources, means, supply. I, **7.**

fāgus, -ī, *f.*, beech tree.

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, **10.**

falsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **fallō,** deceive], false.

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle, pruning-hook; hook. III, **14.**

fāma, -ae, *f.* [**fārī,** to speak], common talk, rumor, report; reputation, fame.

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. I, **28.**

familia, -ae, *f.*, household (*including slaves*); retinue (*including all dependents*); family. I, **4.**

familiāris, -e, *adj.* [**familia,** household], personal, private; *m. as noun,* intimate friend; **rēs familiāris,** personal property, estate. I, **18.**

familiāritās, -tātis, *f.* [**familiāris,** intimate], intimacy.

fās, *n., indecl.*, right, divine right, will of Heaven. I, **50.**

fastīgātē, *adv.* [**fastīgātus,** sloping], sloping. IV, **17.**

fastīgātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sloping. II, **8.**

fastīgium, -gī, *n., the top of a gable;* elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope.

fātum, -ī, *n.* [**fārī,** to speak], fate, lot. I, **39.**

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *intr.*, favor. I, **18.**

fax, facis, *f.*, firebrand, torch.

fēlīcitās, -tātis, *f.* [**fēlīx,** happy], happiness, success, good fortune. I, **40.**

fēlīciter, *adv.* [**fēlīx,** happy], happily, fortunately. IV, **25.**

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, female, woman.

femur, -inis, *n.*, the thigh.

fera, -ae, *f.* [**ferus,** wild], wild animal.

ferāx, -ācis, *adj.* [**ferō,** bear], productive, fertile. II, **4.**

ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, **1.**

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (App. 81), *tr. and intr.*: *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*); offer, propose (*terms*); **graviter** *or* **molestē ferre,** be annoyed *or* angry at; *pass.* (*sometimes*) rush; *intr.*, *almost*=*verb* to be. I, **13.**

ferrāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**ferrum,** iron], an iron tool *or* implement.

ferrāria, -ae, *f.* [**ferrum,** iron], an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ferrum,** iron], of iron, iron. III, **13.**

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron; *anything made of iron*, sword, spear point. I, **25.**

fertilis, -e, *adj.* [**ferō,** bear], fruitful, fertile, productive.

fertilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**fertilis,** fertile], fertility. II, **4.**

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. I, **31**; II, **4.**

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**ferveō,** be red hot+**faciō,** make), heat, melt.

fervēns, -entis, *adj.* [**ferveō,** be red hot], heated, glowing, hot.

fībula, -ae, *f.*, clasp; fastening. IV, **17.**

fictus, *see* **fingō.**

fidēlis, -e, *adj.* [**fidēs,** faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, **21.**

fidēs, -eī, *f.* [**fīdō,** confide], faith, confidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; good faith, protection; pledge, assurance; **fidem facere,** convince, give a pledge. I, **3.**

fīdūcia, -ae, *f.* [**fīdō,** confide], confidence, trust, reliance.

figūra, -ae, *f.* [**fingō,** form], form, shape, figure. IV, **25.**

fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter. I, **3.**

fīlius, -lī, *m.*, son. I, **3.**

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictum, *tr.*, form, fashion; imagine, invent. I, **39**; IV, **5.**

fīniō, 4, *tr.* [**fīnis,** end], limit, bound; determine, measure. IV, **16.**

fīnis, -is, *m.*, end; boundary, limit, border; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. I, **1.**

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fīnis,** limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *m. pl. as noun*, neighbors. I, **2.**

fīō, fierī, factus sum, *pass. of* **faciō.**

firmiter, *adv.* [**firmus,** strong], firmly. IV, **26.**

firmitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**firmus,** strong], strength, firmness, solidity. III, **13.**

firmō, 1, *tr.* [**firmus,** strong], strengthen, fortify.

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, **3.**

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver. IV, **17.**

Flaccus, *see* **Valerius.**

flāgitō, 1, *tr.*, demand. I, **16.**

flamma, -ae, *f.*, fire, blaze.

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. IV, **33.**

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. I, **20.**

flētus, -ūs, *m.* [**fleō,** weep], weeping, lamentation. I, **32.**

flō, 1, *intr.*, blow.

flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [**flōreō,** flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. I, **30**; IV, **3.**

flōs, flōris, *m.*, blossom, flower.

flūctus, -ūs, *m.* [**fluō,** flow], flood, billow, wave. III, **13.**

flūmen, -inis, *n.* [**fluō,** flow], river, stream. I, **1.**

fluō, fluere, flūxī, ——, *intr.*, flow, run. I, **6.**

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, dig.

foedus, -eris, *n.*, compact, treaty, alliance.

fore = **futūrus esse;** *see* **sum.**

forem = **essem;** *see* **sum.**

forīs, *adv.*, out of doors, without.

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. III, **14.**

fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; **forte,** *abl. as adv.*, by chance; perchance. II, **21.**

fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, valiant, brave. I, **1.**

fortiter, *adv.* [**fortis,** brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, **11.**

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**fortis,** brave], bravery, courage. I, **2.**

fortuitō, *adv.* [**fors,** chance], by chance.

fortūna, -ae, *f.* [**fors,** chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, **11.**

fortūnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fortūna,** fortune], prosperous, fortunate.

forum, -ī, *n.*, public square, market place.

fossa, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part. of* **fodiō,** dig], trench, ditch. I, **8.**

fovea, -ae, *f.*, pitfall.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. I, **31**; IV, **29.**

frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. I, **3.**

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frāter,** brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, **20.**

fraus, -dis, *f.*, cheating, deception.

fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. II, **24.**

frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, in great numbers, in crowds. IV, **11.**

frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. III, **21.**

frīgidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. IV, **1.**

frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, cold seasons. I, **16.**

frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead; front. II, **8.**

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frūctus,** fruit], fruitful, productive. I, **30.**

frūctus, -ūs, *m.* [**fruor,** enjoy], fruit; profit, reward.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frūmentum,** grain], of *or* pertaining to grain; *of places*, fruitful, productive of grain; **rēs frūmentāria,** supply of grain, provisions. I, **10.**

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**frūmentor,** get grain], getting grain, foraging expedition.

frūmentor, 1, *intr.* [**frūmentum,** grain], get grain, forage. IV, **9.**

frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.* grain crops. I, **3.**

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *intr.*, enjoy. III, **22.**

frūstrā, *adv.*, without effect, in vain, to no purpose. III, **4.**

frūx, -gis, *f.* [**fruor,** enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. I, **28.**

Fūfius, *see* **Cita.**

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam conicere** *or* **dare,** put to flight. I, **11.**

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *tr. and intr.* [**fuga,** flight]: *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. I, **53**; II, **11.**

fugitīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fugiō,** flee], fleeing; *m. as noun*, deserter. I, **23.**

fugō, 1, *tr.* [**fuga,** flight], put to flight, rout.

fūmō, 1, *intr.* [**fūmus,** smoke], smoke.

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke. II, **7.**

funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. IV, **25.**

funditor, -ōris, *m.* [**funda,** sling], slinger. II, **7.**

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. III, **6.**

fūnebris, -e, *adj.* [**fūnus,** funeral], of a funeral; *n. pl. as noun*, funeral rites.

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, *intr.*, perform, execute, discharge.

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. III, **13.**

fūnus, -eris, *n.*, funeral.

furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. I, **40**; II, **3.**

fūrtum, -ī, *n.*, theft.

fūsilis, -e, *adj.* [**fundō,** pour], liquid, molten.

futūrus, *see* **sum.**

G.

Gabalī, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Gabali (găb'ā-lī).

Gabīnius, -nī, *m.*, Aulus Gabinius (aw'lŭs gā-bĭn'ĭ-ŭs), *consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C.* I, **6.**

gaesum, -ī, *n., a heavy iron* javelin (*of the Gauls*). III, **4.**

Galba, -ae, *m.:* (1) Galba (găl'bā), *a king of the Sucssiones.* II, **4.** (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vĭ-ŭs sŭl-pĭsh'yŭs găl'bā), *one of Caesar's legates.* III, **1.**

galea, -ae, *f., a leather* helmet. II, 21.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gallia (găl'ĭ-ā), *better*, Gaul, *including either* (1) *Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or* (2) *only Celtica.* I, **1.**

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Gallia,** Gaul], pertaining to Gaul *or* the Gauls, Gallic. I, **22.**

gallīna, -ae, *f.*, hen.

Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic; *m. pl. as noun,* the Gauls, *inhabiting central Gaul, northern Italy, etc.* I, **1.**

Gallus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mär′kŭs trē′bĭ-ŭs găl′ŭs), *an officer in Caesar's army.* III, **7.**

Garumna, -ae, *m.* (DEcd), the Garumna (gȧ-rŭm′nȧ), *or* Garonne, *a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul.* I, **1.**

Garumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (gȧ-rŭm′nī). III, **27.**

Gatēs, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā′tēz). III, **27.**

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. IV, **13.**

Geidumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Geidumni (jē′ĭ-dŭm′nī).

Genava, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (jĕn′ȧ-vȧ), *a city of the Allobroges, now* Geneva. I, **6.**

gener, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law.

generātim, *adv.* [**genus,** tribe], by tribes. I, **51.**

gēns, gentis, *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. II, **28.**

genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. I, **48**; III, **14.**

Gergovia, -ae, *f.* (De), Gergovia (jĕr-gō′vĭ-ȧ), *the chief town of the Arverni.*

Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germani (jĕr-mā′nī), *better* Germans. I, **1.**

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germania (jĕr-mā′nĭ-ȧ), *better,* Germany, *the country east of the Rhine.* IV, **4.**

Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Germānus,** German], of *or* pertaining to the Germans, German. IV, **16.**

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *tr.*, bear, carry, wield; (*of war*) carry on, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur. I, **1.**

gladius, -dī, *m.*, sword. I, **25.**

glāns, glandis, *f.*, acorn; ball, slug *of lead.*

glēba, -ae, *f.*, clod of earth; lump.

glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. I, **2.**

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [**glōria,** glory], glory, glory in, boast of. I, **14.**

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Gobannitio (gŏb′ȧ-nĭsh′yō), *an Arvernian chief.*

Gorgobina, -ae, *f.* (Ce), Gorgobina (gôr-gŏb′ĭ-nȧ), *a city of the Boi after they had settled in the territory of the Haedui.*

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *m. pl. as noun,* the Greeks. I, **29.**

Graiocelī, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graioceli (grā-yŏs′ē-lī). I, **10.**

grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large, bulky. I, **43.**

grātia, -ae, *f.* [**grātus,** pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; **grātiās agere,** thank; **grātiam habēre,** feel grateful; **grātiam referre,** return a favor; **grātiam inīre,** gain favor; **grātiā** *following a gen.*, for the purpose of, in order to. I, **9.**

grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**grātulor,** express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I, **53.**

grātulor, 1, *intr.* [**grātus,** pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. I, **30.**

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. I, **44.**

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (*in years*). I, **20.**

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [**gravis,** heavy], heaviness, weight; power. IV, **3.**

graviter, *adv.* [**gravis,** heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; **graviter ferre,** take to heart, be annoyed *or* vexed (*at*); **graviter premere,** press hard. I, **14.**

gravor, 1, *intr.* [**gravis,** heavy], be unwilling. I, **35.**

Grudiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Grudii (grōō′dĭ-ī).

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*, navigator, captain. III, **9.**

gustō, 1, *tr.*, taste, eat.

H.

habeō, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (*with* **ōrātiōnem**); **in animō habēre,** intend; **ratiōnem habēre,** have regard for; take care *or* see that (*followed by an* **ut** *clause*); **cōnsilium habēre,** form a plan; **aliter sē habēre,** be otherwise *or* different. I, **2.**

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hĕd′ū-ī), Haeduan; *m. as noun,* a Haeduan; *pl.,* the Haedui, *one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes.* I, **3.**

haesitō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* **haereō**, stick], stick *or* cling fast, remain fixed.

hāmus, -ī, *m.*, hook, barb.

harpagō, -ōnis, *m.*, grappling hook.

Harūdēs, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (hă-rōō′dēz), *a German tribe.* I, **31.**

haud, *adv.*, not, by no means, not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Helvētius**], of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hĕl-vē′shyī), Helvetian; *m. as noun,* one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.* the Helvetii. I, **1.**

Helviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Helvii (hĕl′vĭ-ī).

Hercynia, -ae, *f.* (Bhi), Hercynia (hĕr-sĭn′ĭ-ă), the Hercynian forest.

hērēditās, -tātis, *f.* [**hērēs,** heir], inheritance.

hīberna, -ōrum, *n.* [*sc.* **castra,** camp], winter camp, winter quarters. I, **10.**

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Hibernia (hī-bĕr′nĭ-ă), *better,* Ireland.

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.* (App. 54), *used for what is near in space, time, or thought, with more emphasis than* **is**; this, this man, woman, *or* thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing.* **hōc,** on this account; in this respect; the (*with comparatives*); **hic . . . ille,** the latter . . . the former (App. 170, *a*). I, **1.**

hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*) there, in that place; (*of an incident just mentioned*) then, at this *or* that time. IV, **19.**

hiemō, 1, *intr.* [**hiems,** winter], pass the winter, winter. I, **10.**

hiems, -mis, *f.*, winter. III, **7.**

hinc, *adv.* [**hic,** this], from this *or* that point *or* place, hence.

Hispānia, -ae, *f.* (Eabcd), Hispania (hĭs-pā′nĭ-ă), *better,* Spain. I, **1.**

Hispānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Spanish.

homō, -inis, *m.*, human being, man, *as distinguished from the lower animals; in pl.,* mankind, humanity, men. I, **2.**

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**honōs,** honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, **53.**

honōrificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**honōs,** honor + **faciō,** make], conferring honor, honorable. I, **43.**

honōs, -ōris, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. I, **18.**

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour, *the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varying in length according to the season.* I, **26.**

horreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. I, **32.**

horribilis, -e, *adj.* [**horreō,** dread], dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.

hortor, 1, *tr.*, urge, encourage, incite. I, **19.**

hospes, -itis, *m., f.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. I, **53.**

hospitium, -tī, *n.* [**hospes,** host *or* guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, **31.**

hostis, -is, *m. and f.*, (*public*) enemy, *in distinction from* **inimīcus,** *a personal enemy; pl.,* the enemy. I, **11.**

hūc, *adv.* [**hic,** this], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. I, **38.**

hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.* [**hūmānus,** human], humanity, refinement, culture. I, **1.**

hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**homō**, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. IV, **3.**

humilis, -e, *adj.* [**humus**, the ground], *on the ground;* low, humble, abject, weak. IV, **3.**

humilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**humilis**, low], humility, lowness; weakness.

I.

I, *sign for* **ūnus**, one.

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, ——, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. II, **27.**

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; (*of an agger*) throw up, construct. II, **6.**

iactō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **iaciō**, throw], throw *or* hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. I, **18.**

iactūra, -ae, *f.* [**iaciō**, throw], loss, sacrifice.

iaculum, -ī, *n.* [**iaciō**, throw], javelin, dart.

iam, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; **neque iam** *or* **iam nōn,** no longer; **ubi iam,** as soon as. I, **5.**

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place. I, **10.**

Iccius, -cī, *m.*, Iccius (ĭk-shyŭs), *a chief of the Remi.* II, **3.**

ictus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow. I, **25.**

Īd., *abbr. for* **Īdūs.**

idcircō, *adv.*, therefore.

īdem, eadem, idem (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [**is**, this, that], the same; this very; **īdem atque,** the same as. I, **3.**

identidem, *adv.* [**idem**, the same], repeatedly. II, **19.**

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. I, **49**; II, **8.**

Īdūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides: *the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of other months.* I, **7.**

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. I, **4.**

ignōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**in-**+(g)**nōbilis**, well known], ignoble, unknown.

ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, dishonor.

ignōrō, 1, *tr.* [**ignārus**, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. I, **27.**

ignōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, *intr.* [**in-**+(g)**nōscō**, learn, know], forgive, pardon. I, **45**; IV, **27.**

ignōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+(g)**nōtus**, known; **nōscō**, learn, know], unknown, unfamiliar. IV, **24.**

illātus, *see* **īnferō.**

ille, illa, illud, *gen.* **illīus,** *dat.* **illī** (App. 56), *dem. pron.* (*of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc.; cf.* **hic**), that, that man, woman, *or* thing; he, she, it; **hic . . . ille,** the latter . . . the former (App. 170, *a*). I, **3.**

illīc, *adv.* [**ille**, that], in that place, there. I, **18.**

illigō, 1, *tr.* [**ligō**, bind], attach, hold *or* bind together. IV, **17.**

illō, *adv.* [**ille**, that], thither, to that place, there (= thither). IV, **11.**

illūstris, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, illustrious.

Īllyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyricum (ĭ-lĭr'ĭ-kŭm), Illyria, *which lay northeast of the Adriatic, and formed a part of Caesar's province.* II, **35.**

imbēcillitās, -tātis, *f.*, weakness.

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. III, **29.**

imitor, 1, *tr.*, imitate, copy after.

immānis, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. IV, **1.**

immineō, -minēre, ——, ——, *intr.*, project, hang over; threaten, menace.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**in**+**mittō**, send], send *or* let into, insert; send against, direct toward *or* against. IV, **17.**

immolō, 1, *tr.*, sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, *adj.* [**in-**+**mortālis**, mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, **12.**

immūnis, -e, *adj.* [**in-**+**mūnus**, burden], unburdened, *by taxes, requirements of service, etc.*

imparātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**parātus**, prepared; **parō**, prepare], unprepared, not ready.

impedīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**impediō**, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (*of an army*), baggage-train. I, **24.**

impediō, 4, *tr.* [in+pēs, foot], *entangle the feet;* hamper, obstruct, hinder, impede, delay.

impedītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* impediō, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered *or* burdened by baggage; occupied *or* engaged in; at a disadvantage; (*of places*), difficult of passage. I, **12.**

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [in+pellō, drive], drive *or* urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, **40**; II, **14.**

impendeō, -pendēre, ——, ——, *intr.* [in+pendeō, hang], overhang, impend. I, **6.**

impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive; *with* pretium, great. IV, **2.**

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [imperō, command], commander in chief, general. I, **40**; II, **25.**

imperātum, -ī, *n.* [imperō, command], command, order. II, **3.**

imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+perītus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, **40**; IV, **22.**

imperium, -rī, *n.* [imperō, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, **2.**

imperō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [in+parō, procure], command, order, instruct, rule; demand from, enjoin *or* levy upon. I, **7.**

impetrō, 1, *tr.* [in+patrō, accomplish], obtain (*by request, entreaty, exertion*), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (*one's request*). I, **9.**

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, **22.**

impius, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+pius, pious], wicked.

implicō, 1, *tr.* [in+plicō, fold], interlace, interweave.

implōrō, 1, *tr.* [in+plōrō, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. I, **31.**

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [in+pōnō, place], place upon, set on, put *or* impose on; mount. I, **42.**

importō, 1, *tr.* [in+portō, carry], carry *or* bring in, import. I, **1.**

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+probus, good], unprincipled. I, **17.**

improvīsō, *adv.* [improvīsus, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. I, **13.**

improvīsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+prōvīsus, foreseen], unforeseen, unexpected; **dē improvīsō**, unexpectedly, suddenly. II, **3.**

imprūdēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+prūdēns, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. III, **29.**

imprūdentia, -ae, *f.* [imprūdēns, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight *or* forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV, **27.**

impugnō, 1, *tr.* [in+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. I, **44**; III, **26.**

impulsus, *see* **impellō.**

impulsus, -ūs, *m.* [impellō, impel], impulse, instigation.

impūne, *adv.* [in-+poena, punishment], without punishment. I, **14.**

impūnitās, -tātis, *f.* [in-+poena, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. I, **14.**

īmus, *sup. of* **īnferus.**

in-, *negative prefix.*

in, *prep. with acc. and abl.* *With acc.:* (1) *of motion, from one place into or toward another place*, into, to; in, among; toward, for, against; at; upon; (2) *of time*, till, into; for; on, at; (3) *other uses*, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on. *With abl.:* (1) *of rest or motion within a place*, in, among, over, within, throughout; on, upon; (2) *of time*, in, during, in the course of; on; (3) *other uses*, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon. I, **1.**

inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, vain, idle.

incautē, *adv.* [incautus, incautious], incautiously, unwarily.

incautus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+cautus, cautious; caveō, be cautious], incautious, unwary.

incendium, -dī, *n.* [incendō, burn], fire, burning, conflagration.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *tr.*, set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. I, **5.**

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+certus, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. IV, **5.**

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall into *or* upon; fall in with, meet; happen, occur. I, **53**; II, **14.**

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut into. II, **17.**

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], undertake; begin, commence. II, **2.**

incitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; **cursū incitātō,** at full speed. I, **4.**

incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+cognitus, known; cognōscō, learn], unknown. IV, **20.**

incolō, -colere, -coluī, ——, *tr. and intr.* [colō, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. I, **1.**

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe, unharmed, unimpaired. I, **53**; III, **6.**

incommodē, *adv.* [incommodus, inconvenient], inconveniently, unseasonably.

incommodum, -ī, *n.* [incommodus, inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. I, **13.**

incrēdibilis, -e, *adj.* [in-+crēdibilis, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. I, **12.**

increpitō, 1, *tr.*, chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. II, **15.**

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *intr.* [-cumbō, lie down], recline upon; devote oneself to.

incursiō, -ōnis, *f.* [incurrō, rush into *or* upon], invasion, raid.

incursus, -ūs, *m.* [incurrō, rush into *or* upon], attack. II, **20.**

incūsō, 1, *tr.* [causa, cause *or* case], bring a case *or* charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. I, **40**; II, **15.**

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, thereupon. I, **10.**

indicium, -cī, *n.*, disclosure, information. I, **4.**

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.* [dīcō, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. I, **30.**

indictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+dictus, *pf. part. of* dīcō, say], unsaid; **causā indictā,** without a trial.

indignē, *adv.* [indignus, unworthy], unworthily, dishonorably.

indignitās, -tātis, *f.* [indignus, unworthy], indignity; outrage, disgrace. II, **14.**

indignor, 1, *intr.* [indignus, unworthy], deem unworthy; be indignant.

indignus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+dignus, worthy], unworthy, disgraceful.

indīligēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+dīligēns, careful], not careful; negligent, lax.

indīligenter, *adv.* [indīligēns, careless], carelessly. II, **33.**

indīligentia, -ae, *f.* [indīligēns, careless], negligence.

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead *or* draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. I, **2.**

indulgentia, -ae, *f.* [indulgeō, indulge], forbearance, clemency.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, ——, *intr.*, be indulgent to, favor. I, **40.**

induō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, put on; **sē induere,** be impaled *or* pierced. II, **21.**

industriē, *adv.* [industrius, diligent], diligently.

indūtiae, -ārum, *f.*, truce. IV, **12.**

Indutiomārus, -ī, *m.*, Indutiomarus (ĭn-dū′shyō-mā′rŭs), *a chief of the Treveri.*

ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; **inīre cōnsilium,** form a plan; **inīre ratiōnem,** make an estimate, decide; **inīre grātiam,** gain favor; **inīre numerum,** enumerate. II, **2.**

inermis, -e, *adj.* [in-+arma, arms], without arms *or* weapons, unarmed. I, **40**; II, **27.**

iners, -ertis, *adj.* [in-+**ars,** skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. IV, **2.**

īnfāmia, -ae, *f.* [in-+**fāma,** renown], dishonor, ill repute.

īnfāns, -antis, *adj.* [in-+**fāns,** speaking], not speaking; *m. as noun,* infant.

īnfectus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+**factus,** done; **faciō,** do], not done, unaccomplished, unfinished.

īnferior, -ius, *comp. of* **īnferus.**

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; **bellum īnferre,** make war upon; **in equum īnferre,** mount on a horse; **causā illātā,** making an excuse; **signa īnferre,** advance the standards, attack. **I, 2.**

īnferus, -a, -um, *adj.,* low, below; *comp.,* **īnferior,** lower; inferior; **ab īnferiōre parte,** below, down stream; *sup.,* **īnfimus** *or* **īmus,** lowest, last; *with* **collis,** the base of; **ad īnfimum, ab īnfimō,** at the bottom, **I, 1.**

īnfestus, -a, -um, *adj.,* hostile; **īnfestīs signīs,** with standards in battle array.

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], stain.

īnfidēlis, -e, *adj.* [in-+**fidēlis,** faithful], faithless, untrustworthy.

īnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**fīgō,** fix] fasten in.

īnfimus, *sup. of* **īnferus.**

īnfīnītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+**fīnītus,** limited; **fīniō,** limit], endless, boundless, vast, countless.

īnfirmitās, -tātis, *f.* [**īnfirmus,** not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. IV, **5.**

īnfirmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+**firmus,** strong], not strong, weak, feeble. III, **24.**

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.* [**flectō,** bend], bend down; *with reflex.,* become bent. **I, 25.**

īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——, *intr.* [**fluō,** flow], flow into, empty into. **I, 8.**

īnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [**fodiō,** dig], dig *or* drive into.

īnfrā, *adv.* [**īnferus,** below], below; *prep. with acc.,* below, smaller than. IV, **36.**

ingēns, -entis, *adj.,* enormous, huge, vast. **I, 39;** IV, **10.**

ingrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+**grātus,** pleasing], displeasing, disagreeable.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** go], go *or* come into, enter. II, **4.**

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], throw into *or* upon, put *or* place on; inspire, infuse. **I; 46;** IV, **17.**

inimīcitia, -ae, *f.* [**inimīcus,** unfriendly], enmity.

inimīcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+**amīcus,** friendly], unfriendly, hostile; *m. as noun,* an enemy (*personal*), rival, *to be distinguished from* **hostis,** a public enemy. **I, 7.**

inīquitās, -tātis, *f.* [**inīquus,** unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. II, **22.**

inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+**aequus,** even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. **I, 44;** II, **10.**

initium, -tī, *n.* [**ineō,** go into], beginning, commencement, origin; *of a country,* borders. **I, 1.**

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [**iungō,** join], join to; impose.

iniūria, -ae, *f.* [in-+**iūs,** right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. **I, 7.**

iniussū, *abl. m., as if from* **iniussus, -ūs** [**iubeō,** order], without command *or* order. **I, 19.**

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.* [**nāscor,** be born], be born in, be engendered; **innātus,** *pf. part. as adj.,* inborn, natural.

innītor, -nītī, -nīxus sum, *intr.* [**nītor,** rest on], lean upon. II, **27.**

innocēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+**nocēns,** injurious], not injurious; innocent.

innocentia, -ae, *f.* [**innocēns,** innocent], integrity. **I, 40.**

inopia, -ae, *f.* [**inops,** needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. **I, 27.**

inopīnāns, -antis, *adj.* [in-+opīnāns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unaware, off one's guard. I, **12.**

inquam, -is, -it, *def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations, and following one or more words of the quotation,* say. IV, **25.**

īnsciēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. I, **19.**

īnscientia, -ae, *f.* [īnsciēns, ignorant], ignorance. III, **9.**

īnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. IV, **4.**

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow up *or* after, follow close upon, pursue. I, **15.**

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.*, insert, thrust in. III, **14.**

īnsidiae, -ārum, *f.* [sedeō, sit], a sitting *or* lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. I, **13.**

īnsidior, 1, *intr.* [īnsidiae, ambush], lie in ambush.

īnsignis, -e, *adj.* [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; *neut. as noun,* mark, sign; ornament, trapping, decoration. I, **12.**

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, ——, *tr.* [saliō, leap], leap upon. I, **52.**

īnsimulō, 1, *tr.*, charge, blame, accuse.

īnsinuō, 1, *tr.* [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. IV, **33.**

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *tr. and intr.* [sistō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; *with* **ratiōnem,** adopt, use. II, **27.**

īnsolenter, *adv.*, unusually; arrogantly, insolently. I, **14.**

īnspectō, 1, *tr.* [spectō, look], look at, view.

īnstabilis, -e, *adj.* [in-+stabilis, firm], not firm, unsteady. IV, **23.**

īnstar, *n., indecl.*, likeness; *with gen.*, like. II, **17.**

īnstīgō, 1, *tr.*, urge on, incite.

īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up *or* put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; **īnstitūtus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, usual, customary; finished, *in addition to definitions above.* I, **14.**

īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.* [īnstituō, set up, establish], a fixed course *or* principle; habit, institution, custom. I, **1.**

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand upon *or* near, be at hand; press on; threaten. I, **16.**

īnstrūmentum, -ī, *n.* [īnstruō, build], tool; apparatus, equipment.

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up *in battle array;* equip, furnish. I, **22.**

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.* [suēscō, become accustomed, faciō, make], accustomed, trained. IV, **24.**

īnsuētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, not used to.

īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island. III, **9.**

īnsuper, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. IV, **17.**

integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, whole, unimpaired; fresh; **rē integrā,** before anything was done. III, **4.**

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover over; protect.

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [inter+legō, choose, select], select *or* distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. I, **10.**

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [tendō, stretch], stretch out *or* to; **intentus,** *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. III, **22.**

inter, *prep. with acc.* (*sometimes following its noun*): (1) *of place,* among, between; (2) *of time,* during, within, for; (3) *in other relations,* among, between, in; in among *or* between; to; over; along with; (4) *with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action* (App. 166), with, to, *or* from each other *or* one another; each other, one another. I, **1.**

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go *or* come between, be *or* lie between, intervene; pass. I, **7.**

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take *or* catch between (*one point and another*); interrupt; intercept, cut off. II, **27.**

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**claudō,** shut], shut *or* cut off, separate, hinder; *with* **itinera,** block. I, **23.**

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, *intr.* [**dīcō,** say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; **aquā atque ignī interdīcere,** *forbid the use of water and fire,* banish. I, **46.**

interdiū, *adv.* [**diēs,** day], during the day, by day. I, **8.**

interdum, *adv.* [**dum,** while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I, **14.**

intereā, *adv.* [**inter,** between], in the meantime, meanwhile. I, **8.**

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], perish, die.

interesse, *see* **intersum.**

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], make away with, kill, destroy. I, **12.**

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], throw *or* hurl between; put *or* place between; **interiectus,** *pf. part. as adj.,* lying between, intervening, interspersed. II, **17.**

interim, *adv.,* meanwhile, in the meantime. I, **16.**

interior, -ius, *adj.* (App. 43), interior, inner; *as noun,* **interiōrēs,** inhabitants of the interior; occupants of a town.

interitus, -ūs, *m.* [**intereō,** die], destruction, death.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [**mittō,** send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, let up, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass; **intermissīs magistrātibus,** when magistrates were not in office. I, **26.**

interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [**necō,** destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I, **13.**

interpellō, 1, *tr.,* interrupt, hinder. I, **44.**

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; **fidem interpōnere,** pledge. I, **42;** IV, **9.**

interpres, -etis, *m. and f.,* interpreter; mediator. I, **19.**

interpretor, 1, *tr.* [**interpres,** interpreter], interpret, explain.

interrogō, 1, *tr.* [**rogō,** ask], ask, question.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**rumpō,** break], break off *or* through; destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.* [**scindō,** cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. II, **9.**

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 66], be *or* lie between, intervene; be present *at,* take part *in; impers.,* **interest,** it concerns, it is important; there is a difference *or* an interval; **magnī interest,** it is of great importance. I, **15.**

intervāllum, -ī, *n.,* interval (*of space or time*); distance. I, **22.**

interveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come between, come up; arrive.

interventus, -ūs, *m.* [**interveniō,** come between], intervention, help. III, **15.**

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [**texō,** weave], weave in *or* together. II, **33.**

intoleranter, *adv.,* intolerably; impatiently, eagerly.

intrā, *prep. with acc.,* within, inside; into. I, **32;** II, **4.**

intrītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-**+**trītus,** worn], unwearied. III, **26.**

intrō, 1, *tr.,* go *or* walk into, enter, penetrate. II, **17.**

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**intrō,** within+**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* bring into. II, **5.**

introeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [intrō, within+eō, go. App. 84], go *or* come in, enter.

introitus, -ūs, *m.* [introeō, go in], entrance, approach.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [intrō, within+mittō, send], send *or* let in. II, **33.**

intrōrsus, *adv.* [intrō, within+versus, *pf. part. of* vertō, turn], within, on the inside. II, **18.**

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [intrō, within + rumpō, break], break in *or* through.

intueor, 2, *tr.* [tueor, look], look at. I, **32.**

intus, *adv.*, within, on the inside.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+ūsitātus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II, **31.**

inūtilis, -e, *adj.* [in-+ūtilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. II, **16.**

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. I, **53**; II, **16.**

inventor, -ōris, *m.* [inveniō, find], inventor, author.

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, ——, *intr.*, grow old; become established. II, **1.**

invictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. I, **36.**

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *intr.* [videō, see], look askance at; envy. II, **31.**

invidia, -ae, *f.* [invideō, envy], envy, hatred.

inviolātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+violātus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. III, **9.**

invītō, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon; allure, persuade. I, **35**; IV, **6.**

invītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, against one's wish *or* will, unwilling, reluctant. I, **8.**

Iovis, *see* **Iuppiter.**

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen.* **ipsīus** (App. 59), *intensive pron.*, self (*as opposed to someone else; not to be confused with the reflexive* **sē**, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; *as adj.*, very. I, **1.**

īrācundia, -ae, *f.* [īrācundus, irritable], irritability, anger.

īrācundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [īra, anger], irritable. I, **31.**

irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *intr.* [in-+rīdeō, laugh], laugh, jeer. II, **30.**

irrīdiculē, *adv.* [in-+rīdiculus, witty], without wit, unwittily. I, **42.**

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [in+rumpō, break], break into, rush into; force a way into, storm. IV, **14.**

irruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [irrumpō, break into], a breaking into, attack.

is, ea, id, *gen.* **eius** (App. 57), *weak dem. pron., referring to some person or thing named in the context*, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the; **a; eō,** *with comp.*, the; **eō magis,** all the more; **eō . . . quō,** *with comparatives*, the . . . the. I, **1.**

iste, -a, -ud, *gen.* **istīus** (App. 55), *dem. pron. used of something near the person addressed*, that, this.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ut . . . ita,** as . . . so; **nōn ita,** not so very, not very; **ita . . . ut,** just . . . as; so . . . that. I, **11.**

Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, *sometimes including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula.* I, **10.**

itaque, *conj.* [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, **9.**

item, *adv.*, also, likewise. I, **3.**

iter, itineris, *n.* [eō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; **facere iter,** march, travel; **magnīs itineribus,** by forced marches. I, **3.**

iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time; **semel atque iterum,** again and again. I, **31.**

Itius, -tī, *m.* (Ad), Itius (ĭsh'yŭs), *a harbor.*

itūrus, *see* **eō.**

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane. I, **48.**

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *tr.*, order, bid, command, enjoin. I, **5.**

iūdicium, -cī, *n.* [**iūdex,** judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; **iūdicium facere,** express an opinion; **iūdiciō,** by design, purposely. I, **4.**

iūdicō, 1, *tr.* [**iūdex,** a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. I, **12.**

iugum, -ī, *n.* [**iungō,** join], yoke; ridge, crest. I, **7.**

iūmentum, -ī, *n.* [**iungō,** join, yoke], yoke *or* draft animal. I, **3.**

iūnctūra, -ae, *f.* [**iungō,** join], joining. IV, **17.**

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *tr.*, join *or* unite together, attach, connect. I, **8.**

iūnior, *see* **iuvenis.**

Iūnius, -nī, *m.:* (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, *see* **Brūtus;** (2) Quintus Junius (kwĭn′tŭs jū′nĭ-ŭs), *a Spaniard in Caesar's service.*

Iuppiter, Iovis (App. 27), *m.*, Jupiter (jū′pĭ-tĕr), *or* Jove, *god of the heavens, the chief god of the Romans.*

Iūra, -ae, *m.* (Cg), the Jura (jū′rà) *mountains.* I, **2.**

iūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**iūs,** right], take oath; swear. I, **31.**

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. I, **4.**

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.* [**iūs,** right + **iūrō,** swear], an oath. I, **3.**

iussū, *m., abl. of* **iussus, -ūs** [**iubeō,** order], by command, by order.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [**iūstus,** just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. I, **19.**

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**iūs,** right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; *with* **fūnera,** appropriate. I, **43;** IV, **16.**

iuvenis, -e, *adj.*, young; *comp.*, **iūnior; iūniōrēs,** *as noun*, men of military age.

iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**iuvenis,** young], period of youth; the youth, the young men. III, **16.**

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, aid, assist, help. I, **26.**

iūxtā, *adv.*, next, near. II, **26.**

K.

Kal., *abbr. for* **Kalendae, -ārum,** *f.*, the Calends, *the first day of the Roman month.* I, **6.**

L.

L., *abbr. for* **Lūcius,** Lucius (lū′shyŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, **6.**

L, *sign for* **quīnquāgintā,** fifty.

Laberius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Laberius Durus (kwĭn′tŭs là-bē′rĭ-ŭs dū′rŭs), *a tribune.*

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus (tĭ′tŭs ā′shyŭs lā′bĭ-ē′nŭs), *Caesar's most trusted legate in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he deserted Caesar, and was slain at Munda, 45 B.C.* I, **10.**

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, *intr.*, slip; go wrong; **hāc spē lāpsus,** disappointed in this hope.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, labor, toil, effort, striving; hardship. I, **44;** III, **5.**

labōrō, 1, *intr.* [**labor,** toil], labor, toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, *or* perplexed; suffer, be hard pressed. I, **31;** IV, **26.**

labrum, -ī, *n.*, lip; edge.

lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk. IV, **1.**

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.*, arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, **15.**

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. I, **20.**

lacrimō, 1, *intr.* [**lacrima,** tear], weep.

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake. I, **2.**

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, *tr.*, hurt, damage; **laedere fidem,** break faith.

laetitia, -ae, *f.* [**laetus,** joyful], joy, rejoicing.

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful. III, **18.**

languidē, *adv.* [**languidus,** faint], faintly, sluggishly.

languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, faint, sluggish. III, **5.**

languor, -ōris, *m.*, weakness, faintness, lassitude.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. I, **46;** II, **6.**

laqueus, -ī, *m.*, noose, snare.

largior, 4, *tr.* [**largus,** large], give largely *or* freely; bribe. I, **18.**

largiter, *adv.* [**largus,** large], largely, freely, much; **largiter posse,** to have great influence. I, **18.**

largītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**largior,** bribe], bribery. I, **9.**

lassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**lassus,** weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, **23.**

lātē, *adv.* [**lātus,** wide], widely, extensively; **longē lātēque,** far and wide. I, **2.**

latebra, -ae, *f.* [**lateō,** lie hidden], hiding place.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, escape notice, lurk, lie concealed *or* hidden. II, **19.**

lātitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**lātus,** wide], width, extent, breadth. I, **2.**

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Latobrigi (lăt'ō-brī'jī), *a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine.* I, **5.**

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, bandit, robber. III, **17.**

latrōcinium, -nī, *n.* [**latrō,** robber], robbery, brigandage.

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, wide, extensive. I, **2.**

lātus, *see* **ferō.**

latus, -eris, *n.*, side; wing *or* flank *of an army.* I, **25.**

laudō, 1, *tr.* [**laus,** praise], praise.

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. I, **40;** IV, **3.**

lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum, *tr.*, wash; *pass.*, bathe. IV, **1.**

laxō, 1, *tr.*, stretch out, extend, open. II, **25.**

lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**lēgō,** delegate], embassy, legation; commission. I, **3.**

lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [**lēgō,** delegate], *one with delegated powers;* ambassador, envoy; legate, lieutenant general. I, **7.**

legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**legō,** choose], a legion. I, **7.**

legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**legiō,** legion], of a legion, legionary. I, **42;** II, **27.**

Lemannus, -ī, *m.* (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-măn'ŭs), *better,* the Lake of Geneva. I, **2.**

Lemovīcēs, -um, *m.* (CDd), the Lemovices (lĕm'ō-vī'sēz).

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, gentle, mild. IV, **28.**

lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**lēnis,** gentle], smoothness, gentleness. I, **12.**

lēniter, *adv.* [**lēnis,** gentle], softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. II, **8.**

Lepontiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pŏn'shyī). IV, **10.**

lepus, -oris, *m.*, hare.

Leucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Leuci (lū'sī). I, **40.**

Levācī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Levaci (lē-vā'sī).

levis, -e, *adj.*, light (*in weight*), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II, **10.**

levitās, -tātis, *f.* [**levis,** light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. II, **1.**

levō, 1, *tr.* [**levis,** light], lighten, ease, relieve.

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law, statute, enactment. I, **1.**

Lexoviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Lexovii (lĕk-sō'vĭ-ī). III, **9.**

libenter, *adv.* [**libēns,** willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. I, **44;** III, **18.**

līber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free, unrestrained, undisputed. I, **44.**

līberālitās, -tātis, *f.* [**līber,** free], *freedom in giving, etc.*, generosity. I, **18.**

līberāliter, *adv.* [**līber,** free], graciously, generously, kindly. II, **5.**

līberē, *adv.* [**līber,** free], freely, without restraint, boldly. I, **18.**

līberī, -ōrum, *m.* [**līber,** free], *the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves);* children. I, **11.**

līberō, 1, *tr.* [**līber,** free], make or set free, release, deliver. IV, **19.**

lībertās, -tātis, *f.* [**līber,** free], freedom, liberty, independence. I, **17.**

lībrīlis, -e, *adj.* [**lībra,** a pound], of a pound in weight; **funda lībrīlis,** a sling for throwing heavy missiles.

licēns, *see* **liceor.**

licentia, -ae, *f.* [**licet,** it is permitted], lawlessness, presumption.

liceor, 2, *intr.*, bid (*at an auction*). I, **18.**

licet, licēre, licuit *and* **licitum est,** *intr., impers.*, it is lawful, permitted, *or* allowed; **licet mihi,** I may; **petere ut liceat,** to ask permission. I, **7.**

Liger, -eris, *m.* (Cce), the *river* Liger, (lī'jĕr), *better*, the Loire. III, **9.**

lignātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**lignum,** wood], the procuring of wood.

lignātor, -ōris, *m.* [**lignum,** wood], one sent to get wood, wood-forager.

līlium, -lī, *n.*, lily.

līnea, -ae, *f.* [**līnum,** flax], linen thread; line.

Lingonēs, -um, *m.* (Bf), the Lingones (lĭng'gō-nēz). I, **26.**

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue; language. I, **1.**

lingula, -ae, *f.* [**lingua,** tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. III, **12.**

linter, -tris, *f.*, skiff, rowboat, canoe. I, **12.**

līnum, -ī, *n.*, flax; linen, canvas. III, **13.**

līs, lītis, *f.*, strife; lawsuit; damages.

Liscus, -ī, *m.*, Liscus (lĭs'kŭs), *a chief magistrate of the Haedui.* I, **16.**

Litaviccus, -ī, *m.*, Litaviccus (lĭt'ă-vĭk'ŭs), *a Haeduan nobleman.*

littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter *of the alphabet, a written* sign, mark, *or* character; *pl.*, letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. I, **26.**

lītus, -oris, *n.*, seashore, beach, shore. IV, **23.**

locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.* **loca, -ōrum,** *n.*), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; **obsidum locō,** as hostages. I, **2.**

locūtus, *see* **loquor.**

longē, *adv.* [**longus,** long], far, far away, distant; **longē lātēque,** far and wide. I, **1.**

longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**longus,** long], far off, distant, remote; long, long-continued. I, **47;** IV, **27.**

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**longus,** long], length, extent; long duration. I, **2.**

longurius, -rī, *m.* [**longus,** long], a long pole. III, **14.**

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. I, **40;** II, **21.**

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. I, **20.**

lōrīca, -ae, *f.*, coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.

Lūcānius, -nī, *m.*, Quintus Lucanius (kwĭn'tŭs lū-kā'nĭ-ŭs) *a centurion.*

Lucterius, -rī, *m.*, Lucterius (lŭk-tē'rĭ-ŭs), *a chief of the Cadurci.*

Lugotorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Lugotorix (lū-gŏt'ō-rĭks), *a British chief.*

lūna, -ae, *f.*, the moon. I, **50;** IV, **29.**

Lutecia, -ae, *f.* (Be), Lutecia (lū-tē'shyă), *the capital of the Parisii, now* Paris.

lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak. I, **22.**

lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. II, **15.**

M.

M., *abbr. for* **Mārcus** (mär'kŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, **2.**

M, *sign for* **mīlle,** thousand.

māceria, -ae, *f.*, wall.

māchinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, machine, engine, derrick. II, **30.**

maestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**maereō,** be sad], dejected, sad.

Magetobriga, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (măj'ē-tŏb'rĭ-gă), *a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls.* I, **31.**

magis, *adv., comp.* [**magnus,** great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.*, **maximē,** especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. I, **3.**

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [**magister,** master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. I, **4.**

magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**magnus,** great + **faciō,** make], magnificent, splendid.

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**magnus,** great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (**corporum**); violence (**ventī**); severity (**poenae**); **magnitūdō animī,** courage. I, **39;** II, **12.**

magnopere, *adv.* [**magnus,** great+**opus,** work], *with great labor;* especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. I, **13.**

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (*in size, quantity, or degree*), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (*voice*); high (*tide*); **magnī** (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance. *Comp.*, **maior**; *sup.*, **maximus.** I, **2.**

maiestās, -tātis, *f.* [**maior,** greater], greatness, honor, majesty.

maior, maius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **magnus,** great], greater (*in degree, size, time, etc.*); older, elder; *as noun,* **maiōrēs nātū,** elders, old men; **maiōrēs,** ancestors. I, **13.**

malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm *at sea.* III, **15.**

male, *adv.* [**malus,** bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, **peius**; *sup.*, **pessimē.** I, **40.**

maleficium, -cī, *n.* [**malum,** evil+**faciō,** do], evil-doing, mischief, harm, injury. I, **7.**

mālō, mālle, māluī, —— (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [**magis,** more+**volō,** wish], wish more *or* rather, prefer. III, **8.**

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast; pole, beam (*upright*). III, **14.**

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious. *Comp.*, **peior, peius**; *sup.*, **pessimus.** I, **31.**

mandātum, -ī, *n.* [**mandō,** command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. I, **35**; II, **5.**

mandō, 1, *tr.* [**manus,** hand+**dō,** give], *give into one's hands;* intrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. I, **12.**

Mandubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Mandubii (măn-dū′bĭ-ī).

Mandubracius, -cī, *m.*, Mandubracius (măn′dū-brā′shyŭs), *a British chief.*

māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early. IV, **13.**

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. I, **36**; IV, **1.**

manipulāris, -e, *adj.* [**manipulus,** maniple], of a maniple; *m. as noun,* common soldier; **suus manipulāris,** a soldier of his own company.

manipulus, -ī, *m.*, a company (*of two centuries, the third of a cohort*), maniple. II, **25.**

Manlius, -lī, *m.*, Lucius Manlius (lū′shyŭs măn′lĭ-ŭs), *proconsul in 78 B.C.* III, **20.**

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (*pass.*, **mānsuēfīō**), *tr.* [**mānsuētus,** tame+**faciō,** make], tame.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**mānsuētus,** tame], gentleness, mercy, compassion. II, **14.**

manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; an armed force, troop, band, company; **in manibus,** near at hand; **manū,** by hand, by art; **ferrea manus,** a grappling-hook; **dare manūs,** yield. I, **25.**

Marcomannī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bj), the Marcomanni (mär′kō-măn′ī). I, **51.**

mare, -is, *n.*, sea; **mare Ōceanum,** the ocean. III, **7.**

maritimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mare,** sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; **maritima ōra,** the seashore. II, **34.**

Marius, -rī, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā′yŭs mā′rĭ-ŭs), *the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni.* I, **40.**

Mārs, -tis, *m.*, Mars (märz), *god of war;* war; **aequō Mārte,** with equal advantage.

mās, maris, *adj.*, male; *as noun,* a male.

matara, -ae, *f.*, *Celtic* javelin. I, **26.**

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother; **mātrēs familiae,** matrons. I, **18.**

māteria, -ae, *f.*, material; wood, timber. III, **29.**

māterior, 1, *intr.* [**māteria,** material, wood], procure wood.

Matiscō, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Matisco (mă-tĭs′kō), *a city of the Haedui, now* Macon.

mātrimōnium, -nī, *n.* [**māter,** mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; **in mātrimōnium dare,** to give in marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** to marry (*said of the man*). I, **3.**

Matrona, -ae, *m.* (Bef), the *river* Matrona (măt′rō-ná), *now* the Marne. I, **1.**

mātūrē, *adv.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], early, speedily, soon. I, **33**; IV, **6.**

mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūruī, ——, *intr.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], become ripe, ripen.

mātūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**mātūrus,** ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. I, **7.**

mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe; early. I, **16.**

maximē, *see* **magis.**

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **magnus,** great. App. 42], greatest, largest. I, **3.**

Maximus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Fabius Maximus (quĭn'tŭs fā'bĭ-ŭs măk'sĭ-mŭs), *victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C.* I, **45.**

Meclosēdum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Meclosedum (mē'klō-sē'dŭm), *a town of the Senones, now* Melun.

medeor, medērī, ——, *intr.*, remedy, cure.

mediocris, -cre, *adj.* [**medius,** middle], middling, ordinary, moderate. III, **20.**

mediocriter, *adv.* [**mediocris,** moderate], moderately; **nōn mediocriter,** in no small degree. I, **39.**

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē'dĭ-ō-măt'rĭ-sī). IV, **10.**

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**medius,** middle+**terra,** land], midland, inland.

medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; **locus medius utrīusque,** a place midway between the two. I, **24.**

Meldī, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Meldi (měl'-dī).

melior, *comp. of* **bonus.**

membrum, -ī, *n.*, member of the body, limb. IV, **24.**

meminī, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember, bear in mind. III, **6.**

memoria, -ae, *f.* [**memor,** mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; **memoriā tenēre,** remember; **patrum memoriā,** in the time of our fathers. I, **7.**

Menapiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pĭ-ī). II, **4.**

mendācium, -cī, *n.*, lie, falsehood.

mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; **mentēs animōsque,** minds and hearts. I, **39**; III, **19.**

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month. I, **5.**

mēnsūra, -ae, *f.* [**mētior,** measure], measure.

mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, naming, mention.

mercātor, -ōris, *m.* [**mercor,** trade], merchant, trader. I, **1.**

mercātūra, -ae, *f.* [**mercor,** trade], a commercial enterprise, trade.

mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. I, **31.**

Mercurius, -rī, *m.*, Mercurius (mĕr-kū'rĭ-ŭs), *the god* Mercury.

mereō, *and* **mereor,** 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn; incur (**odium**); serve *as a soldier* (*i.e., earn pay*). I, **11.**

meridiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**meridiēs,** midday], of midday *or* noon.

meridiēs, -ēī, *m.* [*for* **medidiēs,** *from* **medius,** middle+**diēs,** day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I, **50.**

meritō, *adv.* [**meritum,** merit], justly, deservedly.

meritum, -ī, *n.* [**mereor,** deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. I, **14.**

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala (mär'kŭs vă-lē'rĭ-ŭs mĕ-sā'lă), *consul, 61 B.C.* I, **2.**

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *tr.*, deal *or* measure out, distribute. I, **16.**

Mētius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Metius (mär'-kŭs mē'shyŭs). I, **47.**

metō, metere, messuī, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. IV, **32.**

metus, -ūs, *m.* [**metuō,** fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension. IV, **4.**

meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron.*, my, mine, my own. IV, **25.**

mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, private soldier; infantry (*opposed to* **equitēs**). I, **7.**

mīlia, *see* **mīlle.**

mīlitāris, -e, *adj.* [**mīles,** soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; **rēs mīlitāris,** military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. I, **21.**

mīlitia, -ae, *f.* [**mīles,** soldier], military service, warfare.

mīlle, *indecl. num. adj.*, a thousand; *n. pl. as noun,* **mīlia, -ium,** thousands (*usually followed by part. gen.*); **mīlia passuum,** thousands of paces, miles. I, **2.**

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva (mĭ-nĕr'vȧ), *goddess of wisdom and the arts.*

minimē, *adv.* [**minimus,** least], least, very little; by no means, not at all. I, **1.**

minimus, -a, -um, *sup. of* **parvus.**

minor, *comp. of* **parvus.**

Minucius, -cī, *m.*, Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū'shyŭs mĭ-nū'shyŭs bȧs'ĭ-lŭs), *a commander of cavalry.*

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, *tr. and intr.* [**minus,** less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (**contrōversiās**); **minuente aestū,** the tide ebbing. I, **20.**

minus, *comp. adv.* [**parvus,** little], less; not, not at all; too little. I, **2.**

mīror, 1, *tr. and intr.*, wonder *or* marvel at; wonder, be astonished. I, **32.**

mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mīror,** wonder at], strange, astonishing; **mīrum in modum,** surprisingly. I, **34.**

miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. I, **32;** II, **28.**

misericordia, -ae, *f.* [**misereō,** pity+ **cor,** the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. II, **28.**

miseror, 1, *tr.* [**miser,** wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. I, **39.**

mīsī, *see* **mittō.**

missus, -ūs, *m.* [**mittō,** send], a sending, dispatching; **missū Caesaris,** sent by Caesar.

missus, *see* **mittō.**

mītissimē, *sup. adv.* [**mītis,** mild], very mildly *or* gently.

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. I, **7.**

mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**moveō,** move], changeable. IV, **5.**

mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**mōbilis,** movable], movableness, activity, speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, **1.**

mōbiliter, *adv.* [**mōbilis,** movable], readily, easily. III, **10.**

moderor, 1, *tr.* [**modus,** limit], manage, govern, control, guide. IV, **33.**

modestia, -ae, *f.* [**modus,** limit], moderation, self-control, sobriety of behavior.

modo, *adv.* [**modus,** measure], *with measure or limit;* only, merely; even, just, at least, but; *of time,* just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** not only. . . . but also. I, **16.**

modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; **eius modī,** of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modō,** *with gen.*, in the character of, like. I, **41;** II, **31.**

moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. II, **6.**

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. III, **12.**

molestē, *adv.*, with annoyance; **molestē ferre,** be annoyed. II, **1.**

mōlīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**mōlior,** exert oneself], effort, difficulty. I, **34.**

molitus, -a, -um, *see* **molō.**

molliō, 4, *tr.* [**mollis,** soft], soften, make easy.

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; smooth; weak. III, **19.**

mollitia, -ae, *f.* [**mollis,** soft], softness, weakness.

mollitiēs, -ēī, *f.* [**mollis,** soft], softness, weakness.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, grind. I, **5.**

mōmentum, -ī, *n.*, weight, influence, importance.

Mona, -ae, *f.*, Mona (mō'nȧ), *an island off the coast of Britain, probably the* Isle of Man.

moneō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise. I, **20.**

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain; mountain range; hill, height. I, **1.**

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. II, **15.**

morbus, -ī, *m.*, illness, sickness, disease.

Morinī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mŏr'ĭ-nī). II, **4.**

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *intr.* [**mors,** death], die. I, **4.**

Moritasgus, -ī, *m.*, Moritasgus (mŏr'ĭ-tăs'gŭs), *a chief of the Senones.*

moror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**mora,** a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. I, **26.**

mors, -tis, *f.*, death. I, **4.**

mortuus, *see* **morior.**

mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, practice; *pl.*, customs, habits; character. I, **4.**

Mosa, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the *river* Mosa (mō'sà), *now* the Meuse. IV, **9.**

mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [**moveō,** move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. IV, **23.**

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, set in motion, move; affect, influence; *with* **castra,** move camp *from one place to another, or* break camp. I, **15.**

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman; wife. I, **29.**

mūliō, -ōnis, *m.* [**mūlus,** mule], mule driver, muleteer.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**multus,** much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. I, **2.**

multō, 1, *tr.*, fine, deprive *one of something as a fine.*

multō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **multus,** much. App. 148], by far, much.

multum, *adv.* [*acc.* of **multus,** much. App. 128, *b*], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* **plūs,** more; **plūs posse,** be more able *or* powerful, have more influence; *sup.* **plūrimum,** most, very; **plūrimum posse,** be most powerful; be very powerful *or* influential. I, **3.**

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, great; *pl.* many; *with abl. denoting time when,* late; **multā nocte,** late at night; *as noun,* many *persons or things; comp.* **plūs, plūris,** more; *as noun,* more; *pl.* more, several, many; *sup.*, **plūrimus, -a, -um,** most; *pl.*, very many. I, **3.**

mūlus, -ī, *m.*, a mule.

Munātius, -tī, *m.*, Lucius Munatius Plancus (lū'shyŭs mū-nā'shyŭs plăng'kŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.*

mundus, -ī, *m.*, universe, world.

mūnīmentum, -ī, *n.* [**mūniō,** fortify], defense, fortification. II, **17.**

mūniō, 4, *tr.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnītus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, fortified, defended, protected. I, **24.**

mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**mūniō,** fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. I, **8.**

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, service, task; present. I, **43.**

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [**mūrus,** wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrāle pīlum,** mural javelin, *a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall.* III, **14.**

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall. I, **8.**

musculus, -ī, *m.*, shed. *See* Int. 62, *b.*

mutilus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mutilated, broken.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, *see* **nancīscor.**

nam, *conj.*, for. I, **12.**

Nammeius, -ī, *m.*, Nammeius (nă-mē'yŭs). I, **7.**

Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Cc), the Namnetes (năm'nē-tēz). III, **9.**

namque, *conj.* [**nam,** for], for. I, **38;** III, **13.**

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. I, **53;** IV, **23.**

Nantuātes, -ium, *m.* (CDg), the Nantuates (năn'tū-ā'tēz). III, **1.**

Narbō, -ōnis, *m.* (Ee), Narbo (năr'bō), *now* Narbonne. III, **20.**

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born *or* produced; rise, spring up, be reared. II, **18.**

Nasua, -ae, *m.*, Nasua (năsh'ū-à), *a leader of the Suebi.* I, **37.**

nātālis, -e, *adj.* [**nāscor,** be born], pertaining to birth; **diēs nātālis,** birthday.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāscor,** be born], race, tribe, people, nation. I, **53;** II, **35.**

nātīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nāscor,** be born], native; natural.

nātūra, -ae, *f.* [**nāscor,** be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. I, **2.**

nātus, -ūs, *m.* [**nāscor,** be born], birth; **maiōrēs nātū,** *greater by birth,* elders. II, **13.**

nātus, -a, -um, *see* **nāscor.**

nauta, -ae, *m.* [*for* **nāvita; nāvis,** ship], sailor. III, **9.**

nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nauta,** sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. III, **8.**

nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [**nāvis,** ship], pertaining to ships, naval. III, **19.**

nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* **nāvis,** ship], small boat, skiff. I, **53.**

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**nāvigō,** sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. III, **9.**

nāvigium, -gī, *n.* [**nāvigō,** sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. III, **14.**

nāvigō, 1, *intr.* [**nāvis,** ship], set sail, sail. III, **8.**

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat; **nāvis longa,** galley, ship of war; **nāvis onerāria,** transport, freight ship. I, **8.**

nāvō, 1, *tr.*, do zealously *or* well. II, **25.**

nē (App. 188, *b*): (1) *conj. with subj.*, that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; *after verbs of fearing,* that; (2) *adv.*, not, *only with subj. of desire, or in* **nē . . . quidem** (*inclosing the emphatic word*), not even. I, **4.**

ne-, nec-, neg-, *inseparable negative prefixes.*

-ne, *interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, not translated* (App. 213, *a*); *in indirect questions,* whether; **-ne . . . -ne, -ne . . . an, utrum . . . -ne,** whether . . . or. I, **50;** IV, **14.**

nec, *see* **neque.**

necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl.* of **necessārius,** necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. I, **17.**

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**necesse,** necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; *with* **tempus,** critical; *m. as noun,* kinsman, friend. I, **11.**

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. IV, **5.**

necessitās, -tātis, *f.* [**necesse,** necessary], necessity, constraint, need. II, **11.**

necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**necesse;** *cf.* **necessārius,** friend], friendship, alliance. I, **43.**

necne, *conj.* [**nec,** nor+**-ne**], or not. I, **50.**

necō, 1, *tr.* [**nex,** death], put to death, kill, murder. I, **53;** III, **16.**

nēcubi, *conj.+adv.* [**nē,** not+(c)**ubi,** where], that nowhere, lest anywhere.

nefārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nefās,** sin], wicked, impious.

nefās, *n., indecl.* [**ne-+fās,** divine right], contrary to divine right; sin, crime.

neg-, *see* **ne-.**

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [**neg-+legō,** choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. I, **35;** III, **10.**

negō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say . . . not. I, **8.**

negōtior, 1, *intr.* [**negōtium,** business], carry on business, traffic, trade.

negōtium, -tī, *n.* [**neg-+ōtium,** leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; **negōtium dare,** employ, direct. I, **34;** II, **2.**

Nemetēs, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nĕm′ē-tēz). I, **51.**

nēmō, *acc.* **nēminem,** *m. and f.* [**ne-+homō,** man], no man, no one, nobody. I, **18.**

nēquāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, **23.**

neque (nec), *conj.* [ne-+**-que,** and], and not, not, nor; but not; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor. I, **4.**

nēquīquam, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose. II, **27.**

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Nervius**], of *or* with the Nervii. III, **5.**

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun,* one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun,* the Nervii (nĕr′vĭ-ī). II, **4.**

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew; *pl.*, vigor, strength, power. I, **20.**

neu, *see* **nēve.**

neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* **-trīus**, *dat.* **-trī**), *adj. used as noun* [**ne-**+**uter**, which *of two*], neither; *m. pl.*, neither side, neither party. II, **9.**

nēve (**neu**) (App. 188, *b*), *conj.* [**nē**+**-ve**, or], and not, nor. I, **26.**

nex, necis, *f.*, violent death, death, execution. I, **16.**

nihil, *noun, n., nom. and acc. sing.*, nothing; *with gen.*, no, none of; *acc. as adv.*, not, not at all, by no means; **nōn nihil**, somewhat. I, **11.**

nihilō [*abl. of* **nihil**, nothing], by no means; **nihilō minus** *or* **sētius**, none the less, nevertheless. I, **5.**

nimius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nimis**, too much], beyond measure, too great, excessive.

nisi, *conj.* [**ne-**+**sī**, if], if not, except, unless. I, **22.**

Nitiobrogēs, -um, *m.* (Dd), the Nitiobroges (nĭsh′ĭ-ŏb′rō-jēz).

nītor, nītī, nīxus sum, *intr.*, rest *or* rely upon; exert oneself, strive, endeavor. I, **13.**

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**nōscō**, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *m. as noun*, a noble. I, **2.**

nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**nōbilis**, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. I, **2.**

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, *intr.*, injure, hurt; **nocēns**, *pres. part. as noun*, guilty person. III, **13.**

noctū, *adv.* [**nox**, night], by night. I, **8.**

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nox**, night], at night, nocturnal, night. I, **38.**

nōdus, -ī, *m.*, knot; joint.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [**ne-**+**volō**, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; *imperative*, **nōlī** *or* **nōlīte**, *with inf.* (App. 219), do not. I, **16.**

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; reputation, prestige; **nōmine** *with gen.*, in the name of, as; **suō nōmine**, on his *or* their own account, personally. I, **13.**

nōminātim, *adv.* [**nōminō**, name], by name; expressly; in detail. I, **29.**

nōminō, 1, *tr.* [**nōmen**, name], call by name, name, mention. II, **18.**

nōn, *adv.*, not; no. I, **3.**

nōnāgintā, *card. num. adj.*, ninety. I, **29.**

nōndum, *adv.* [**nōn**, not+**dum**], not yet. I, **6.**

nōnus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. II, **23.**

Nōreia, -ae, *f.* (Ck) Noreia (nō-rē′yȧ), *a town in Noricum, now* Neumarkt. I, **5.**

Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (*a country between the Danube and the Alps*), Norican. I, **5.**

nōs, *see* **ego.**

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, *tr.*, learn, become acquainted *or* familiar with; **nōvī**, *pf.*, have learned, *hence*, know; **nōtus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. III, **9.**

nōsmet, *see* **egomet.**

noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.* [**nōs**, we], our, ours, our own; *m. pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. I, **1.**

nōtitia, -ae, *f.* [**nōscō**, know], knowledge, acquaintance.

nōtus, -a, -um, *see* **nōscō.**

novem, *card. num. adj.*, nine.

Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*, Noviodunum (nō′vĭ-ō-dū′nŭm): (1) *the capital of the Suessiones, near Soissons* (Be); (2) *a city of the Bituriges* (Ce); (3) *a city of the Haedui* (Ce). II, **12.**

novitās, -tātis, *f.* [**novus**, new], newness; strangeness, novelty.

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; **rēs novae**, a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, **novissimus, -a, -um**, latest, last; *as noun* (*m.*) *or with* **agmen**, those in the rear, the rear. I, **9.**

nox, noctis, *f.*, night; **media nox**, middle of the night, midnight; **ad multam noctem**, till late at night. I, **26.**

noxia, -ae, *f.*, crime, offense.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*, veil oneself *for the marriage ceremony*, marry. I, **18.**

nūdō, 1, *tr.* [**nūdus**, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. II, **6.**

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. I, **25.**

nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **nūllīus**, *adj.* [**ne-**+**ūllus**, any], not any, no; *as noun*, no one, none; **nōn nūllus**, some; *m. as noun*, some, some persons. I, **7.**

num, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* I, **14.**

nūmen, -inis, *n.*, divinity; divine will.

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; **in numerō**, *with gen.*, among, as. I, **3.**

Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidae (nū'mĭ-dē), *better*, the Numidians, *a people of North Africa, in modern Algeria.* II, **7.**

nummus, -ī, *m.*, coin.

numquam, *adv.* [**ne-**+**umquam**, ever], not ever, never; **nōn numquam**, sometimes. I, **8.**

nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. I, **31**; II, **4.**

nūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntius**, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. I, **7.**

nūntius, -tī, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report. I, **26.**

nūper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. I, **6.**

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [**nuō**, nod], nod; sign, command; **ad nūtum**, at one's nod *or* command. I, **31**; IV, **23.**

O.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in compounds*, opposed to, to, toward, against; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, why. I, **4.**

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aes**, money], in debt; *m. as noun*, debtor. I, **4.**

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead toward; extend, dig. II, **8.**

obeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], go to *or* toward; perform, attend to.

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō**, throw. App. 7], throw against *or* in the way; place in front *or* opposite, present; expose; **obiectus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying in the way *or* opposite, in the way. I, **26.**

obitus, -ūs, *m.* [**obeō**, go to death], destruction. II, **29.**

oblātus, *see* **offerō.**

oblīquē, *adv.* [**oblīquus**, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. IV, **17.**

oblīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, running obliquely, slanting.

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *intr.*, forget. I, **14.**

obsecrō, 1, *tr.* [**sacer**, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. I, **20.**

obsequentia, -ae, *f.* [**obsequor**, comply], complaisance, compliance.

observō, 1, *tr.* [**servō**, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. I, **45.**

obses, -idis, *m.*, *f.*, hostage; pledge, security. I, **9.**

obsessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**obsideō**, blockade], blocking up, blockade, siege.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō**, sit], *sit in the way of*, obstruct; besiege, blockade. III, **23.**

obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**obsideō**, blockade], siege; peril, oppression. IV, **19.**

obsignō, 1, *tr.* [**signō**, mark], seal, sign and seal. I, **39.**

obsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [**sistō**, stand], oppose, resist, withstand.

obstinātē, *adv.*, firmly, resolutely.

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.* [**stringō**, tie], bind, hold *under obligations*, pledge. I, **9.**

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [**struō**, pile up], block up, barricade, obstruct.

obtemperō, 1, *intr.* [**temperō**, control oneself], comply with, obey. IV, **21.**

obtestor, 1, *tr.* [**testor**, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. IV, **25.**

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō**, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. I, **1.**

obtulī, *see* **offerō**.

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō**, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to *by lot*. II, **23**.

obviam, *adv.* [**via**, way], in the way; to meet, toward, against.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**occidō**, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. III, **18**.

occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**occidō**, fall, set], falling down, setting; *with* **sōlis**, sunset; the west. I, **1**.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, *intr.* [**ob**+**cadō**, fall], fall down, set; happen; be slain, perish; **occidēns sōl**, the west.

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**ob**+**caedō**, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. I, **7**.

occultātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**occultō**, hide], concealment.

occultē, *adv.* [**occultus**, secret], secretly.

occultō, 1, *tr.* [**occultus**, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. I, **27**.

occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *neut. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. I, **32**; II, **18**.

occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**occupō**, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. IV, **16**.

occupō, 1, *tr.* [**ob**+**capiō**, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. I, **3**.

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**ob**+**currō**, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon, find; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. I, **33**; II, **21**.

Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean; *as adj.*, *with* **mare**, the ocean. I, **1**.

Ocelum, -ī, *n.* (Dg), Ocelum (ŏs'ē-lŭm). I, **10**.

octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**octō**, eight], eighth. II, **23**.

octingentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [**octō**, eight], eight hundred. IV, **12**.

octō (**VIII**), *card. num. adj.*, eight. I, **21**.

Octodūrus, -ī, *m.* (Cg), Octodurus (ŏk'tō-dū'rŭs). III, **1**.

octōgēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**octōgintā**, eighty], eighty each, eighty.

octōgintā (**LXXX**), *card. num. adj.*, [**octō**, eight], eighty. I, **2**.

octōnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**octō**, eight], eight at a time, eight.

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. I, **12**.

ōdī, ōdisse (App. 86), *tr.*, *pf. with meaning of pres.*, hate, detest. I, **18**.

odium, -dī, *n.* [**ōdī**, hate], hatred.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [**ob**+**fendō**, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; **animum offendere**, hurt the feelings, offend. I, **19**.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**offendō**, hurt], offense. I, **19**.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *tr.* [**ob**+**ferō**, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; *with* **sē**, expose oneself *to*, charge *upon*, encounter. II, **21**.

officium, -cī, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse, manēre**, *or* **permanēre in officiō**, to remain faithful. I, **40**; III, **11**.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Ollovico (ŏ-lŏv'ĭ-kō), *a king of the Nitiobroges*.

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**ob**+**mittō**, send], let go *or* fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. II, **17**.

omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis**, all], altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only; at all. I, **6**.

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *m. pl. as noun*, all, every one; *neut. pl. as noun*, all possessions *or* goods. I, **1**.

onerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**onus**, burden], fitted for burdens; *with* **nāvis**, transport, freight ship. IV, **22**.

onerō, 1, *tr.* [**onus**, load], load.

onus, -eris, *n.*, load, burden; weight. II, **30**.

opera, -ae, *f.* [**opus,** work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; **dare operam,** give attention, take pains. II, **25.**

opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* [**opīnor,** think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opīniō timōris,** impression of cowardice. II, **3.**

oportet, -ēre, -uit, ——, *intr., impers.,* it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; *when translated as personal verb,* must, ought. I, **4.**

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**oppidum,** town], of *or* pertaining to a town; *m. pl. as noun,* townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, **7.**

oppidum, -ī, *n.,* fortified town, town, stronghold. I, **5.**

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**ob**+**pōnō,** place], place against *or* opposite, oppose; **oppositus,** *pf. part. as adj.,* in front, opposite.

opportūnē, *adv.* [**opportūnus,** fit], opportunely, seasonably. IV, **22.**

opportūnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**opportūnus,** fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage. III, **12.**

opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.,* fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. I, **30;** II, **8.**

oppositus, *see* **oppōnō.**

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**ob**+**premō,** press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. I, **44;** III, **2.**

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**oppugnō,** storm], a storming, assault, attack; plan *or* method of storming. II, **6.**

oppugnō, 1, *tr.* [**ob**+**pugnō,** fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. I, **5.**

ops, opis, *f.,* help, aid; *pl.,* wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. I, **20.**

optātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**optō,** wish], wished for, desired, welcome.

optimē, *sup. of* **bene.**

optimus, *sup. of* **bonus.**

opus, operis, *n.,* work, labor; military work *or* works, fortifications, defenses; a work *of engineering or architecture;* **nātūrā et opere,** by nature and art; **opera,** crafts. I, **8.**

opus, *indecl. noun, n.,* need, necessity; **opus est,** it is necessary, there is need, *the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl.* (App. 146). I, **34;** II, **8.**

ōra, -ae, *f.,* border, margin; coast, shore. III, **8.**

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ōrō,** speak], a speaking, speech, language, words, address, argument. I, **3.**

ōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [**ōrō,** speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. IV, **27.**

orbis, -is, *m.,* orb, ring, circle; **orbis terrārum,** the world. IV, **37.**

Orcynia, -ae, *f.,* Orcynia (ôr-sĭn'ĭ-ȧ), *same as* **Hercynia.**

ōrdō, -inis, *m.,* row, tier, layer; rank, line *of soldiers;* arrangement, order; degree, rank; **prīmī ōrdinēs,** centurions of the first rank. I, **40;** II, **11.**

Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.,* Orgetorix (ôr-jĕt'-ō-rĭks), *a chief of the Helvetii.* I, **2.**

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *intr.,* arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; **oriēns sōl,** the rising sun, sunrise; the east. I, **1.**

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**ōrnō,** adorn], ornament; mark of honor. I, **44.**

ōrnō, 1, *tr.,* adorn; furnish, supply; **ōrnātus,** *pf. part. as adj.,* equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, **14.**

ōrō, 1, *tr.* [**ōs,** mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. I, **20.**

ortus, -ūs, *m.* [**orior,** rise], rising.

ōs, ōris, *n.,* mouth; face, countenance.

Osismī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sĭs'mī), *a Gallic people living in what is now Brittany.* II, **34.**

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [**obs**+**tendō,** stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. I, **8.**

ostentātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ostentō,** show], show, display; pretense; pride.

ostentō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **ostendō,** show], show frequently; show, exhibit.

ōtium, -tī, *n.,* leisure, inactivity, quiet.

ōvum, -ī, *n.,* egg. IV, **10.**

P.

P., *abbr. for* **Pūblius**, *a Roman praenomen.* I, **21.**

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**pābulor,** forage], getting fodder, foraging. I, **15.**

pābulātor, -ōris, *m.* [**pābulor,** forage], forager.

pābulor, 1, *intr.* [**pābulum,** fodder], forage.

pābulum, -ī, *n.*, fodder; pasturage. I, **16.**

pācō, 1, *tr.* [**pāx,** peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; **pācātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, **6.**

pactum, -ī, *n.* [**pacīscor,** agree to], agreement; manner.

Padus, -ī, *m.* (Dh), the Padus (pā′dŭs), *better*, the Po, *the largest river of northern Italy.*

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. I, **11.**

paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, ——, *tr., impers.*, it causes regret, makes one repent; *when translated as pers. verb*, repent (App. 109). IV, **5.**

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton. I, **12.**

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

palma, -ae, *f.*, palm *of the hand.*

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. I, **40**; II, **9.**

palūster, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**palūs,** swamp], swampy, marshy.

pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, *tr.*, spread *or* stretch out, extend; **passīs capillīs,** with disheveled hair. I, **51**; II, **13.**

pār, paris, *adj.*, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; *with words of number and quantity*, the same; **pār atque,** the same as. I, **28.**

parcē, *adv.* [**parcus,** frugal], frugally, sparingly.

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsum, *intr.* [**parcus,** frugal], be frugal *or* economical; spare, not injure.

parēns, -entis, *m., f.* [**pariō,** give birth to], parent.

parentō, 1, *intr.* [**parēns,** parent], make funeral offerings *especially for parents;* avenge.

pāreō, 2, *intr.*, appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. I, **27.**

pariō, parere, peperī, partum, *tr.*, give birth to; gain, acquire, win, procure.

Parīsiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Parisii (pă-rĭzh′yī), *a Gallic tribe living in the region where Paris now is.*

parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for; **parātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. I, **5.**

pars, partis, *f.*, part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. I, **1.**

partim, *adv.* [**pars,** part], partly, in part. II, **1.**

partior, 4, *tr.* [**pars,** part], part, share, divide. III, **10.**

partus, *see* **pariō.**

parum, *adv.* [**parvus,** little], little, too little, not sufficiently. III, **18.**

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of* **parvus,** little], small, insignificant, slight; **parvula proelia,** skirmishes; *m. pl. as noun*, children. II, **30.**

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little, small, insignificant; *comp.*, **minor, minus,** lesser, smaller; shorter; **minus,** *as noun*, less; *sup.*, **minimus, -a, -um,** least, very small. I, **8.**

passim, *adv.*, in all directions. IV, **14.**

passus, -ūs, *m.* [**pandō,** extend], a pace, *the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10¼ inches (five Roman feet);* **mīlle passūs** *or* **passuum,** a *Roman* mile, *4851 feet. Thirteen Roman miles = about twelve of ours.* I, **2.**

passus, *see* **pandō** *and* **patior.**

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**pateō,** be open + **faciō,** make], make *or* throw open, open. II, **32.**

patefīō, -fierī, -factus sum, *pass. of* **patefaciō.**

patēns, -entis, *adj.* [**pateō,** be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. I, **10.**

pateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, lie *or* be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. I, **2.**

pater, -tris, *m.*, father; *pl.*, forefathers, ancestors; **pater familiae,** father *or* head of a family. I, 3.

patienter, *adv.* [**patiēns**; **patior,** endure], patiently.

patientia, -ae, *f.* [**patiēns**; **patior,** endure], endurance, patience.

patior, patī, passus sum, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. I, 6.

patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**pater,** father], fatherly; ancestral. II, 15.

patrōnus, -ī, *m.* [**pater,** father], protector, patron.

patruus, -ī, *m.* [**pater,** father], a father's brother, uncle.

paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, few; *as noun*, few, a few, *persons or things*. I, 15.

paucitās, -tātis, *f.* [**paucī,** few], fewness, small number. III, 2.

paulātim, *adv.* [**paulus,** little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. I, 33; II, 8.

paulisper, *adv.* [**paulus,** little], for a short time, for a little while. II, 7.

paulō, *adv.* [*abl. of* **paulus,** little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 54; II, 20.

paululum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **paululus,** very little], a very little. II, 8.

paulum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **paulus,** little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 50; II, 25.

paulus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little; **paulum,** *as noun*, a little; **post paulum,** soon after.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace; favor. I, 3.

peccō, 1, *intr.*, sin, transgress, do wrong. I, 47.

pectus, -oris, *n.*, the breast.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, property, wealth; money.

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd; *usually* sheep; meat, flesh. III, 29.

pedālis, -e, *adj.* [**pēs,** foot], of a foot *in thickness or diameter*. III, 13.

pedes, peditis, *m.* [**pēs,** foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry. I, 42; II, 24.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [**pēs,** foot], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpiae,** infantry. II, 17.

peditātus, -ūs, *m.* [**pedes,** foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. IV, 34.

Pedius, -dī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwĭn'-tŭs pē'dĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's legates*. II, 2.

peius, *comp. of* **malus.**

pellis, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*); tent *made of hides*. II, 33.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *tr.*, beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. I, 7.

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, *tr.*, weigh, weigh out; *weigh out money*, pay, pay out; *with* **poenās,** suffer. I, 36.

penitus, *adv.*, deeply; far within.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts *or* influence of; **per sē,** of their own accord, on their own responsibility, *sometimes with intensive force*, in itself, themselves; *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly, completely. I, 3.

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**agō,** lead], lead through; complete, finish; hold (*a council*).

perangustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**angustus,** narrow], very narrow.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take completely, obtain; learn of, hear.

percontātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiry, questioning. I, 39.

percurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run along *or* over. IV, 33.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, *tr.*, strike *or* thrust through, slay.

perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, ——, *tr.* [**discō,** learn], learn thoroughly, learn by heart.

perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], ruin; **perditus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. III, 17.

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead through *or* along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. I, 8.

perendinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, after tomorrow.

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed *or* killed, perish. I, 53; IV, 15.

perequitō, 1, *intr.* [equitō, ride], ride about, ride through *or* around. IV, 33.

perexiguus, -a, -um, *adj.* [exiguus, little], very little.

perfacilis, -e, *adj.* [facilis, easy], very easy. I, 2.

perfectus, *see* **perficiō.**

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear *or* carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. I, 17.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make, do], make *or* do thoroughly *or* completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. I, 3.

perfidia, -ae, *f.* [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. IV, 13.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [frangō, break], break through, break up. I, 25.

perfuga, -ae, *m.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. I, 28.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, ——, *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. I, 27.

perfugium, -gī, *n.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. IV, 38.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* [per+regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. III, 18.

perīclitor, 1, *tr. and intr.* [perīculum, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger *or* peril. II, 8.

perīculōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [perīculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33.

perīculum, -ī, *n.*, trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. I, 5.

perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. I, 21.

perlātus, *see* **perferō.**

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, read], read through, read.

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtum, *tr.* [luō, wash], wash completely, bathe; *pass.*, bathe oneself.

permagnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [magnus, large], very large, very great.

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay through *or* to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. I, 32; III, 8.

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtum, *tr.* [misceō, mix], mix thoroughly, mingle.

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], give up *or* over, surrender; intrust, commit; permit, allow. I, 30; II, 3.

permixtus, *see* **permisceō.**

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. I, 3.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *tr.*, soothe completely, appease. IV, 6.

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*, ruin, destruction. I, 20.

perpaucī, -ae, -a, *adj.* [paucī, few], very few, but very few. I, 6.

perpendiculum, -ī, *n.*, plummet, plumb-line. IV, 17.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus sum, *tr.* [patior, suffer], suffer, bear patiently.

perpetuō, *adv.* [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. I, 31.

perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; **in perpetuum,** forever. I, 35; III, 2.

perquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [quaerō, ask], ask about, make careful inquiry.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. I, 8.

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [scrībō, write], write out, report, describe.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. I, **13.**

persevērō, 1, *intr.*, persist, persevere. I, **13.**

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, *tr.* [**solvō,** pay], pay in full; suffer (*punishment*). I, **12.**

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**-spiciō,** look], look *or* see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. I, **40**; II, **11.**

perstō, -stāre, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**stō,** stand], stand firm, persist.

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *tr. and intr.* [**suādeō,** advise], *advise prevailingly;* convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; **sibi persuādērī,** be convinced. I, **2.**

perterreō, 2, *tr.* [**terreō,** frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify. I, **18.**

pertinācia, -ae, *f.* [**pertineō,** hold through *or* fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. I, **42.**

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, ——, *intr.* [**teneō,** hold], hold *or* reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; **eōdem pertinēre,** tend to the same purpose *or* result. I, **1.**

pertulī, *see* **perferō.**

perturbātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**perturbō,** disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. IV, **29.**

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [**turbō,** disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass; alarm, terrify. I, **39**; II, **11.**

pervagor, 1, *intr.* [**vagor,** wander], wander about, scatter.

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; *of property,* fall, revert. I, **7.**

pēs, pedis, *m.*, the foot; a foot, *11.65 inches in length;* **pedibus,** on foot; **pedem referre,** retreat. I, **8.**

petō, -ere, -īvī *or* **-iī, -ītum,** *tr. and intr.*, seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to *or* toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. I, **19.**

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, *m.* (Dcd), the Petrocorii (pĕt′rō-kō′rĭ-ī).

Petrōnius, -nī, *m.*, Marcus Petronius [mär′kŭs pē-trō′nĭ-ŭs), *a centurion of the eighth legion.*

Petrosidius, -dī, *m.*, Lucius Petrosidius (lū′shyŭs pĕt′rō-sĭd′ĭ-ŭs), *a standard bearer.*

phalanx, -ngis, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. I, **24.**

Pictonēs, -um, *m.* (Ccd), the Pictones (pĭk′tō-nēz). III, **11.**

pietās, -tātis, *f.* [**pius,** dutiful], devotion, loyalty.

pīlum, -ī, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. I, **25.**

pīlus, -ī, *m.*, century *of soldiers;* **prīmus pīlus,** first century *of a legion;* **prīmī pīlī centuriō,** *or* **prīmipīlus,** the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. III, **5.**

pinna, -ae, *f.*, feather; battlement, parapet.

Pīrūstae, -ārum, *m.*, Pirustae (pī-rŭs′tē), *a tribe of Illyricum.*

piscis, -is, *m.*, fish. IV, **10.**

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.:* (1) Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mär′kŭs pū′pĭ-ŭs pī′sō kăl-pēr′nĭ-ā′nŭs), *consul with Messala, 61 B.C.* I, **2.** (2) Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū′shyŭs kăl-pēr′nĭ-ŭs pī′sō), *killed in the defeat of Cassius's army by the Tigurini, 107 B.C.* I, **12.** (3) Lucius Calpurnius Piso, *Caesar's father-in-law; consul 58 B.C.* I, **6.** (4) Piso, *an Aquitanian.* IV, **12.**

pix, picis, *f.*, pitch.

placeō, 2, *intr.*, please, satisfy; *often impers.*, it seems good *to one, hence,* he decides, resolves, determines. I, **34**; III, **3.**

placidē, *adv.*, calmly.

plācō, 1, *tr.*, appease.

Plancus, *see* **Munātius.**

plānē, *adv.* [**plānus,** plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. III, **26.**

plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.* [**plānus,** level], level ground, plain. I, **43**; II, **8.**

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, flat, plain. III, **13.**

plēbs, plēbis, *or* **plēbēs, -eī,** *f.*, populace, common people. I, **3.**

plēnē, *adv.* [**plēnus**, full], fully. III, **3.**

plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**pleō**, fill], full, whole, complete. III, **2.**

plērīque, -aeque, -aque, *adj.*, very many, the most of; *as noun*, a great many, very many. II, **4.**

plērumque, *adv.* [**plērusque**, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. I, **40**; II, **30.**

Pleumoxiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Pleumoxii (plū-mŏk'sĭ-ī).

plumbum, -ī, *n.*, lead; **plumbum album**, tin.

plūrimum, *see* **multum.**

plūrimus, *see* **multus.**

plūs, *see* **multus** *and* **multum.**

pluteus, -ī, *m.*, *wooden* breastwork; pluteus; *see* Int. 62, *a.*

pōculum, -ī, *n.*, cup.

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty. I, **4.**

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb. III, **13.**

polliceor, 2, *tr. and intr.*, hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. I, **14.**

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**polliceor**, promise], promise, offer. III, **18.**

pollicitus, *see* **polliceor.**

Pompeius, -ī, *m.:* (1) Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ŭs pŏm-pē'yŭs), *better*, Pompey, *triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C.* IV, **1.** (2) Gnaeus Pompeius, *an interpreter of Quintus Titurius.*

pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight. II, **29.**

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *tr.*, place, put; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; *with* **castra**, pitch; *pass.*, be situated; *with* **in** *and abl.*, depend on, *in addition to above meanings.* I, **16.**

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge. I, **6.**

poposcī, *see* **poscō.**

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**populor**, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. I, **15.**

populor, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, **11.**

populus, -ī, *m.*, the people, the mass, the crowd, *as opposed to individuals;* a people *or* nation. I, **3.**

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**regō**, keep straight], extend; **porrēctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, extended, in extent. II, **19.**

porrō, *adv.*, farther on; furthermore, then.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. II, **6.**

portō, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. I, **5.**

portōrium, -rī, *n.*, toll, *import and export* duty. I, **18.**

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, haven, port. III, **8.**

poscō, poscere, poposcī, ——, *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. I, **27.**

positus, *see* **pōnō.**

possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**possideō**, possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. I, **11.**

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō**, sit], occupy, hold, possess; take possession of, seize. I, **34**; II, **4.**

possum, posse, potuī, —— (App. 80), *intr.* [**potis**, able+**sum**, be], be able, can; to have power *or* influence, have strength, be strong; *with* **quam** *and sup.*, as . . . as possible, *e.g.*, **quam plūrimās possunt**, as many as possible; **multum posse, plūs posse,** *and* **plūrimum posse,** *see* **multum.** I, **2.**

post, *adv., and prep. with acc.:* (1) *as adv.*, later, afterwards; (2) *as prep.*, behind, after; **post tergum** *or* **post sē**, in the rear. I, **5.**

posteā, *adv.* [**post**, after], after this, afterwards. I, **21.**

posteāquam *or* **posteā . . . quam,** *conj.* [**posteā**, afterwards+**quam**, than], after, when. I, **31**; IV, **19.**

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**post**, after], after, following, next; *m. pl. as noun*, posterity; *sup.*, **postrēmus** *or* **postumus**, last. I, **15.**

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**post**, after+**pōnō**, place], place after, postpone; disregard.

postquam, *conj.* [**post,** afterwards+ **quam,** than], after, when. I, **24.**

postrēmō, *adv.* [**postrēmus,** last], finally, at last.

postrīdiē, *adv.* [**posterus,** following+ **diēs,** day], on the day following, the next day; **postrīdiē eius diēī,** on the next *or* following day. I, **23.**

postulātum, -ī, *n.* [**postulō,** demand], demand, claim, request. I, **40;** IV, **11.**

postulō, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. I, **31;** II, **4.**

potēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **possum,** be able], powerful, influential. I, **3.**

potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [**potēns,** powerful], chief power, supremacy. I, **31.**

potentia, -ae, *f.* [**potēns,** powerful], power, authority, influence. I, **18.**

potestās, -tātis, *f.* [**potēns,** powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; **potestātem facere,** grant permission, give a chance. I, **16.**

potior, 4, *intr.* [**potis,** powerful], become master of, get control *or* possession of, obtain, capture. I, **2.**

potius, *adv.*, rather. I, **45;** II, **10.**

potītus, *see* **potior.**

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; *in composition,* before, at the head of, in front; very. II, **30.**

praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**acūtus,** sharpened], sharp in front *or* at the end, sharpened, pointed. II, **29.**

praebeō, 2, *tr.* [**prae**+**habeō,** hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. II, **17.**

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.* [**caveō,** guard against], guard against beforehand, take precautions. I, **38.**

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* [**cēdō,** go], go before; surpass, excel. I, **1.**

praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [**caput,** head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. II, **24.**

praeceptum, -ī, *n.* [**praecipiō,** instruct], instruction, injunction, command.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take *or* obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. I, **22.**

praecipitō, 1, *tr.* [**praeceps,** headlong], throw *or* hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, **15.**

praecipuē, *adv.* [**praecipuus,** especial], especially, particularly. I, **40.**

praecipuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, especial.

praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [**prae**+**claudō,** shut], close *or* shut in front, block up, close.

praecō, -ōnis, *m.*, herald.

Praecōnīnus, *see* **Valerius.**

praecurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run before, hasten on before, precede; outstrip, surpass.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil. IV, **34.**

praedicō, 1, *tr.* [**dicō,** proclaim], proclaim publicly *or* before others; declare, report, tell of. I, **39;** IV, **34.**

praedor, 1, *tr.* [**praeda,** booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. II, **17.**

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead before, construct before *or* in front.

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [**praficiō,** place over], prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). I, **39;** III, **7.**

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above; prefer to, *with* **quam; praeferre sē alicui,** surpass. II, **27.**

praficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. I, **10.**

praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [**figō,** fix], fix *or* set in front.

praefuī, *see* **praesum.**

praemetuō, -metuere, -metuī, ——, *intr.* [**metuō,** fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive.

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send before *or* in advance. I, 15.

praemium, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. I, 43; III, 18.

praeoccupō, 1, *tr.* [occupō, seize], seize upon beforehand, preoccupy.

praeoptō, 1, *tr.* [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. I, 25.

praeparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. III, 14.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before *or* over, put in command of, put in charge of. I, 54.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; **praeruptus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, steep, precipitous. III, 14.

praesaepiō, -saepīre, -saepsī, -saeptum, *tr.* [saepēs, a hedge], hedge *or* block up.

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [scrībō, write], order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. I, 36; II, 20.

praescrīptum, -ī, *n.* [praescrībō, order], order, dictation, command. I, 36.

praesēns, -entis, *pres. part. of* **praesum.**

praesentia, -ae, *f.* [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; **in praesentiā,** for the present; then. I, 15.

praesentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *tr.* [sentiō, feel], feel beforehand, foresee.

praesertim, *adv.*, particularly, especially. I, 16.

praesidium, -dī, *n.* [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. I, 8.

praestō, *adv.*, at hand, ready; *with* sum *and the dative*, meet.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *tr. and intr.* [stō, stand], stand *or* place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; *impers.*, **praestat,** it is better *or* more advisable. I, 2.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be before *or* over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; **praesēns,** *pres. part. as adj.*, present, in person; for the present. I, 16.

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, besides; except. I, 11.

praetereā, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, 34; III, 17.

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by, omit; **praeteritus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *n. pl. as noun*, the past. I, 20.

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. IV, 13.

praeterquam, *adv.*, besides, except. I, 5.

praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor, *a Roman magistrate next in rank below the consul.* I, 21.

praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. I, 40.

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn in front *or* at the end.

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [vertō, turn], forestall, anticipate.

prāvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, perverse, wrong.

precēs, precum, *f.*, prayers, entreaties; curses, imprecations. I, 16.

premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *tr.*, press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. I, 52; II, 24.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum, *tr.*, seize, grasp. I, 20.

pretium, -tī, *n.*, price. I, 18.

prīdiē, *adv.* [diēs, day], on the day before. I, 23.

prīmipīlus, -ī, *m.* [prīmus, first + pīlus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. II, 25.

prīmō, *adv.* [prīmus, first], at first, in the first place. I, 31; II, 8.

prīmum, *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; **cum prīmum,** *or* **ubi prīmum,** as soon as; **quam prīmum,** as soon as possible, very soon. I, **25.**

prīmus, -a, -um, *adj., sup.* (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun,* the first, the front rank *or* ranks; leaders, chiefs; **in prīmīs,** especially. I, **10.**

prīnceps, -ipis, *adj.* [**prīmus,** first + **capiō,** take], *taking the first place;* chief, most prominent, first; *m. as noun,* chief *or* principal person, leader, chief. I, **7.**

prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.* [**prīnceps,** chief], chief place *or* position; chief authority, leadership. I, **3.**

prior, prius, *adj., comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *m. pl. as noun,* those in front. II, **11.**

prīstinus, -a, -um, *adj.,* former, original; previous, preceding. I, **13.**

prius, *adv.* [**prior,** former], before, sooner, previously; **prius quam,** *see* **priusquam.**

priusquam *or* **prius . . . quam,** *conj.,* sooner than, before; *after negatives, often,* until. I, **19.**

prīvātim, *adv.* [**prīvātus,** private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, **17.**

prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.,* private, personal, individual; *m. as noun,* person, individual. I, **5.**

prō, *prep. with abl.,* before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; *in compounds* (*written* **prō, pro,** *and* **prōd**), for, before, forward, forth. I, **2.**

probō, 1, *tr.* [**probus,** good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. I, **3.**

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go forth *or* forward, proceed, advance. I, **38;** II, **20.**

Procillus, *see* **Valerius.**

prōclīnō, 1, *tr.* [**clīnō,** incline], bend forward, incline; **prōclīnātus,** *pf. part. as adj.,* tottering, critical.

prōcōnsul, -is, *m.,* a proconsul, *one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province.* III, **20.**

procul, *adv.,* afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. II, **30.**

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, ——, *intr.* [**-cumbō,** lie down], lean forward, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. II, **27.**

prōcūrō, 1, *tr.* [**cūrō,** care], care for, attend to.

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō,** run], run *or* rush forward, rush out, charge. I, **52.**

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**prō** + **eō,** go. App. 84], go *or* come forth, go forward, advance. I, **48.**

prōdesse, *see* **prōsum.**

prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**prōdō,** betray], betrayal, treason.

prōditor, -ōris, *m.* [**prōdō,** betray], betrayer, traitor.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down; **memoriā prōditum,** told in tradition, handed down. I, **13.**

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead out *or* forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce. I, **48;** III, **17.**

proelior, 1, *intr.* [**proelium,** battle], join *or* engage in battle, fight. II, **23.**

proelium, -iī, *n.,* battle, contest, engagement; **proelium committere,** join *or* begin battle. I, **1.**

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**proficīscor,** set out], a setting out, start, departure. I, **3.**

prōfectus, *see* **prōficiō.**

profectus, *see* **proficīscor.**

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bring. App. 81], bring forth *or* out, produce.

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**faciō,** make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. III, **21.**

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *intr.*, set out, start, depart; go, proceed. I, **3.**

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, *tr.* [**fateor,** confess], admit, acknowledge, declare, offer.

prōflīgō, 1, *tr.* [**flīgō,** strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. II, **23.**

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, ——, *intr.* [**fluō,** flow], flow forth, rise. IV, **10.**

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, ——, *intr.* [**fugiō,** flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. I, **31**; II, **14.**

prōfuī, *see* **prōsum.**

prōgnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [(g)**nāscor,** be born], born; descended, sprung. II, **29.**

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *intr.* [**gradior,** step], step *or* go forward, advance, proceed, go. I, **50**; II, **10.**

prohibeō, 2, *tr.* [**habeō,** have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out *or* away from; protect, guard. I, **1.**

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** throw. App. 7], throw forward *or* away; throw, cast; reject, give up; **sē prōicere,** cast oneself; jump. I, **27.**

proinde, *adv.*, hence, accordingly, therefore.

prōlātus, *see* **prōferō.**

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, ——, *intr.*, project, lean out.

prōmiscuē, *adv.*, promiscuously, in common.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send forward; let grow.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move forward, advance, push forward. I, **48**; II, **31.**

prōmptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. III, **19.**

prōmunturium, -rī, *n.* [**prōmineō,** project], promontory, headland. III, **12.**

prōnē, *adv.*, sloping *or* slanting downward. IV, **17.**

prōnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; *with* **sententiam,** pronounce. IV, **5.**

prope, *adv., and prep. with acc.:* (1) *as prep.*, near, close to; (2) *as adv.*, almost, nearly; recently. I, **22.**

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. I, **15.**

properō, 1, *intr.*, hasten, hurry. II, **11.**

propinquitās, -tātis, *f.* [**propinquus,** neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. II, **4.**

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**prope,** near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *m. pl. as noun,* relatives. I, **16.**

propius, *adv., and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, *b*) [*comp. of* **prope,** near], nearer. I, **42**; IV, **9.**

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**pōnō,** place], place *or* put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. I, **17.**

proprius, -a, -um, *adj.*, one's own, characteristic, indicative.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of, in consequence of. I, **9.**

propterea, *adv.* [**propter,** because of], on this account; **propterea quod,** because. I, **1.**

prōpugnātor, -ōris, *m.* [**prōpugnō,** fight for], defender.

prōpugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. II, **7.**

prōpulī, *see* **prōpellō.**

prōpulsō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **prōpellō,** drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. I, **49.**

prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow. III, **13.**

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [**ruō,** fall], overthrow. III, **26.**

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow, accompany; pursue; *with* **ōrātiōne,** address. II, **5.**

prōspectus, -ūs, *m.* [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. II, 22.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *intr.* [-spiciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. I, 23.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [sternō, stretch out], prostrate, destroy.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 79], be useful, benefit.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover, protect.

prōterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], terrify, frighten off.

prōtinus, *adv.*, continuously; forthwith, immediately. II, 9.

prōturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. II, 19.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry forward; *pass.*, be carried forward, sail. IV, 28.

prōveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come forth, grow; be produced, yield (*of grain*).

prōventus, -ūs, *m.* [prōveniō, come forth], *a coming forth*, result.

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *tr.* [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. II, 2.

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, office *of governor of a province;* province, *a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially* the Province, *the southern part of France.* I, 1.

prōvinciālis, -e, *adj.* [prōvincia, province], of a province; of the Province.

prōvīsus, *see* prōvideō.

prōvolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly *or* rush forth. II, 19.

proximē, *adv.* [proximus, last], last; lately. I, 24.

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; *with acc.* (App. 122, *b*), next to. I, 1.

prūdentia, -ae, *f.* [prūdēns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. II, 4.

Ptianiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptianii (tī-ā′nĭ-ī). III, 27.

pūbēs, -eris, *adj.*, grown up, adult; *m. pl. as noun*, grown men, adults.

pūblicē, *adv.* [pūblicus, public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. I, 16.

pūblicō, 1, *tr.* [pūblicus, public], adjudge to public use; confiscate.

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the state *or* people, common, public; *neut. as noun*, public, public view; **rēs pūblica,** common weal; state. I, 12.

pudet, -ēre, -uit *or* **-itum est,** *tr., impers.*, it shames; *translated as personal*, be ashamed, feel shame.

pudor, -ōris, *m.* [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. I, 39.

puer, -erī, *m.*, boy, child, son; *pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); **ā puerīs,** from childhood. I, 29.

puerīlis, -e, *adj.* [puer, child], childish.

pugna, -ae, *f.* [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest. I, 25.

pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight, give battle, contend; strive; *often impers., as* **pugnātur,** it is fought, *i. e.*, they fight. I, 25.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful; noble, glorious.

Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*, Titus Pullo (tī′tŭs pŭl′ō), *a centurion of Cicero's legion.*

pulsus, *see* **pellō.**

pulsus, -ūs, *m.* [pellō, strike], stroke. III, 13.

pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. IV, 32.

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern *of a ship.* III, 13.

pūrgō, 1, *tr.* [pūrus, clean+agō, do, make], clean, clear; excuse, exonerate; **pūrgātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. I, 28.

putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. I, 7.

Pÿrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; **Pÿrēnaeī montēs** (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pĭr′ē-nē′ī), *better*, Pyrenees Mountains. I, 1.

Q.

Q., *abbr. for* **Quīntus**, Quintus (kwĭn'tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, **45**; II, **2.**

quā, *adv.* [= **quā viā**], by which way *or* road; where. I, **6.**

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [**quadrāgintā**, forty], forty each. IV, **17.**

quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, forty. I, **2.**

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. I, **5.**

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *tr. and intr.*, seek *or* look for; inquire, ask, ask *or* inquire about. I, **18.**

quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**quaerō**, inquire], inquiry; examination, investigation.

quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [**quaerō**, seek], a quaestor (kwĕs'tôr), *a treasury officer in charge of the finances of the army.* I, **52**; IV, **13.**

quaestus, -ūs, *m.* [**quaerō**, seek], gain, acquisition.

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind, *or* nature? I, **21.**

quam, (1) *adv.*: (*a*) *interrog.*, how? (*b*) *rel.*, as; *with sup. and with or without* **posse**, as . . . as possible; **quam diū**, as long as; (2) *conj. with comparatives*, than; **prius . . . quam**, before; **posteā . . . quam**, after. I, **3.**

quamquam, *conj.*, although. IV, **3.**

quamvīs, *adv.* [**quam**, as+**vīs**, you wish], however; although. IV, **2.**

quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. III, **12.**

quantopere, *adv.* [**quantus**, how much +**opus**, work]: (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as. II, **5.**

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*: (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? **quantum**, *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; **quantum**, *as adv.*, as much as, as; **quantō . . . tantō** (*with comparatives*), the . . . the. I, **17.**

quantusvīs, -avīs, -umvīs, *adj.* [**quantus**, as great as+**vīs**, you wish], as great as you wish, however great.

quārē, *adv.* [**quī**+**rēs**, thing]: (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; on this account, therefore. I, **13.**

quārtus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**quattuor**, four], fourth. I, **12.**

quasi, *conj.* [**qua(m)**, as+**sī**, if], as if, just as if.

quattuor (IV), *card. num. adj.*, four. I, **12.**

quattuordecim (XIV), *card. num. adj.*, fourteen. I, **29.**

-que, *enclitic conj.* (*always translated before the word to which it is attached*), and; **-que . . . -que**, *or* **-que . . . et**, both . . . and. I, **1.**

queror, querī, questus sum, *tr. and intr.*, complain, bewail, lament. I, **16.**

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.* (*and see* **quis**), who, which, what; *often implying an antecedent*, he who, those who; *at beginning of sentence, often with force of dem.*, this, that; **quam ob rem**, wherefore; **quem ad modum**, in what manner, how, as; **quō**, *with comparatives*, the; **quō . . . eō**, the . . . the. I, **1.**

quicquam, *see* **quisquam.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. I, **31**; III, **4.**

quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with* **posse**, how? (App. 128, *b*). I, **36**; II, **4.**

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *and* **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62 *and b*), a certain one, someone; a certain, some, a; a kind of. I, **30**; II, **17.**

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate, at least, truly; on the other hand; **nē . . . quidem**, not even. I, **16.**

quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, quiet, rest, repose.

quiētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, in repose, undisturbed, peaceful, calm, quiet.

quīn, *conj.* [**quī,** who *or* how+**ne,** *negative*], that not, but that; *after negative words of doubt or hindrance,* but that, that, from, to; **quīn etiam,** nay even, moreover. I, **3.**

quīnam, *see* **quisnam.**

quīncūnx, -uncis, *m.*, quincunx, *an arrangement like the five spots on dice.*

quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj.* [**quīnque,** five+**decem,** ten], fifteen. I, **15.**

quīngentī, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [**quīnque,** five+**centum,** hundred], five hundred. I, **15.**

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**quīnque,** five], five each, five at a time, five. I, **15.**

quīnquāgintā (L), *card. num. adj.*, fifty. I, **41**; II, **4.**

quīnque (V), *card. num. adj.*, five. I, **10.**

quīntus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**quīnque,** five], fifth. I, **6.**

quis, quid, *and* **quī, quae, quod** (App. 61 and 62): (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **quam ob rem,** why? **quem ad modum,** how? (2) *indef. pron., especially after* **sī, nisi, nē, num,** anyone, anything, any; somebody, something, some. I, **7.**

quisnam, quidnam, *and* **quīnam, quaenam, quodnam,** *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 and 61, *a*), who? which? what? who then? what, pray? II, **30.**

quispiam, quidpiam, *and* **quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam,** *indef. pron.* (App. 62), anyone, any.

quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron. used after all negatives but* **nē** (App. 62), any; any person *or* thing. I, **19.**

quisque, quidque, *and* **quisque, quaeque, quodque,** *indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; everyone, all. I, **5.**

quisquis, quicquid, *indef.* (*or generalizing*) *rel. pron.* (App. 60, *a*), whoever, whatever. II, **17.**

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs, *and* **quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs,** *indef. pron.* (App. 62) [**quī,** who+**vīs,** you wish], whom *or* what you wish; anyone, anything, any whatever, any. II, **31.**

quō, *adv.*: (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. I, **48**; II, **8.**

quō, *conj.* [*abl. case form of* **quī,** who, which], in order that, that; because. I, **8.**

quoad, *conj.* [**quō,** whither+**ad,** to], as long as, as far as; till, until. IV, **11.**

quod, *conj.* [*adv. acc. of the neuter of* **quī,** who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, in so much as; because; **quod sī,** but if. I, **1.**

quōminus, *conj.* [**quō,** so that+**minus,** not], so that not, that not; from; to (*with* **recūsō**). I, **31**; IV, **22.**

quoniam, *conj.* [**quom** = **cum,** since+**iam,** now], since now, since, in as much as, because, whereas. I, **35.**

quoque, *conj., following the word emphasized,* also, too, likewise. I, **1.**

quōqueversus, *adv.*, in every direction, all around. III, **23.**

quot, *adj., indecl.*: (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. I, **29.**

quotannīs, *adv.* [**quot,** as many as+**annus,** year], every year, yearly. I, **36**; IV, **1.**

quotiēns, *adv.* [**quot,** how many]: (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. I, **43.**

R.

rādīx, -īcis, *f.*, root; *pl. with* **montis** *or* **collis,** foot, base. I, **38.**

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsum, *tr.*, scrape, shave.

raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon *with four wheels.* I, **26.**

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. II, **17.**

rapiditās, -tātis, *f.* [**rapidus,** swift], swiftness. IV, **17.**

rapīna, -ae, *f.* [**rapiō,** seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. I, **15.**

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few at a time; few. III, **12.**

rāsus, *see* **rādō.**

ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms. I, 28.

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft. I, 8.

Rauracī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw'rā-sī). I, 5.

re- *and* **red-,** *inseparable prefixes*, again, back, un-, re-.

rebelliō, -ōnis, *f.* [**bellum,** war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. III, 10.

Rebilus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Canīnius.**

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō,** go], go back, retire.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. I, 14.

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, *tr.*, inspect, review.

receptāculum, -ī, *n.* [**recipiō,** receive], retreat, refuge.

receptus, *see* **recipiō.**

receptus, -ūs, *m.* [**recipiō,** receive], retreat; refuge, shelter. IV, 33.

recessus, -ūs, *m.* [**recēdō,** go back], going back, retreat; chance to retreat.

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, *intr.* [**cadō,** fall], fall back; fall upon; be reduced.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō,** take], take *or* get back, recover; admit, receive; receive in surrender *or* submission; admit of, allow; *with* **sē,** withdraw oneself, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover oneself. I, 5.

recitō, 1, *tr.*, read aloud.

reclīnō, 1, *tr.* [**clīnō,** incline], lean back, recline, lean.

rēctē, *adv.* [**rēctus,** straight], properly, rightly.

rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**regō,** keep straight], straight.

recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. III, 8.

recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; *with* **perīculum,** shrink from. I, 31; III, 22.

red-, *see* **re-.**

redāctus, *see* **redigō.**

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō,** give], give back, return, restore; give *something due;* make *or* cause to be, render. I, 35; II, 5.

redēmptus, *see* **redimō.**

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], go *or* turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. I, 29.

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**agō,** put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. I, 45; II, 14.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *tr.* [**emō,** buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. I, 18.

redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [**integer,** whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, 25.

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**redeō,** return], return. I, 5.

reditus, -ūs, *m.* [**redeō,** return], returning, return. IV, 30.

Redonēs, -um, *m.* (BCc), the Redones (rĕd'ō-nēz). II, 34.

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], lead *or* bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. I, 28.

refectus, *see* **reficiō.**

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *tr.* [**ferō,** bear. App. 81], bear, carry *or* bring back, report; **pedem referre,** go back, retreat; **grātiam referre,** show one's gratitude, make a requital. I, 25.

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [**faciō,** make], remake, repair; allow to rest; *with* **sē,** refresh oneself, rest. III, 5.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [**frangō,** break], break in *or* open; break, diminish. II, 33.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, ——, *intr.* [**fugiō**], flee back, retreat; escape.

Rēgīnus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Antistius.**

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**regō,** keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; **ē regiōne** *with gen.*, opposite. I, 44; II, 4.

rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**rēx,** king], of a king, royal.

rēgnō, 1, *intr.* [**rēgnum,** royal power], reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [**rēx,** king], kingly *or* royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. I, **2.**

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *tr.*, keep straight; guide, direct, control. III, **13.**

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], hurl *or* drive back, repel; throw down *or* off; drive off *or* out. I, **24.**

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, ——, *intr.*, become weak *or* enfeebled. II, **15.**

relātus, *see* **referō.**

relēgō, 1, *tr.* [**lēgō,** depute], send away; remove.

relictus, -a, -um, *see* **relinquō.**

religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, religion; *pl.*, religious observances, rites; superstitions.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, *tr.*, leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. I, **9.**

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**relinquō,** leave], remaining, the rest of; future, subsequent; *neut. as noun,* remainder, rest. I, **1.**

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [**maneō,** remain], stay behind, remain. I, **39**; IV, **1.**

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [**rēmus,** oar], oarsman, rower. III, **9.**

rēmigō, 1, *intr.* [**rēmex,** rower], row.

remigrō, 1, *intr.* [**migrō,** move], move back, return. IV, **4.**

reminīscor, -ī, *intr.* [**mēns,** mind], call to mind, remember. I, **13.**

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send *or* dispatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; **remissus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. I, **43**; II, **15.**

remollēscō, -mollēscere, ——, ——, *intr.*, become weak, become enervated. IV, **2.**

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move back *or* away, remove, withdraw; **remōtus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, remote, far away. I, **19.**

remūneror, 1, *tr.*, repay, reward. I, **44.**

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar. III, **13.**

Rēmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the Remi, *or to one of them; m. pl. as noun,* **Rēmī** (Bef), the Remi (rē'mī). II, **3.**

rēnō, -ōnis, *m.*, deerskin.

renovō, 1, *tr.* [**novus,** new], renew. III, **2.**

renūntiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūntiō,** announce], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. I, **10.**

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.* [**pellō,** beat, drive], beat *or* drive back, repel, repulse. I, **8.**

repente, *adv.* [**repēns,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, **52**; II, **33.**

repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**repēns,** sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. I, **13.**

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, *tr.* [**pariō,** procure], procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. I, **18.**

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, *tr.* [**petō,** seek], seek *or* ask again, demand back; *with* **poenās,** exact, inflict. I, **30.**

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [**pleō,** fill], fill again, replenish, supply.

reportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō,** carry] carry *or* bring back, convey. IV, **29.**

reposcō, -poscere, ——, ——, *tr.* [**poscō,** demand], demand back, exact, ask for.

reppulī, *see* **repellō.**

repraesentō, 1, *tr.* [**praesēns,** present], make present; do at once. I, **40.**

reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [**prehendō** (= **prēndō**), seize], hold back; criticise, blame, censure. I, **20.**

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [**premō,** press], press *or* keep back, check, restrain. III, **14.**

repudiō, 1, *tr.*, reject. I, **40.**

repugnō, 1, *intr.* [**pugnō**, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. I, **19.**

repulsus, *see* **repellō.**

requīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō**, seek], seek again; require, demand; miss, desire, long for.

rēs, reī, *f., of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context*, thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; **rēs familiāris**, property; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies; **rēs mīlitāris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs pūblica**, state; **rēs āctae**, deeds, achievements; **quam ob rem**, *see* **quī** *and* **quis.** I, **2.**

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.* [**scindō**, cleave], cut away *or* down, break down, destroy. I, **7.**

rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.*, find out, learn. I, **28.**

rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō**, write], write again; enroll, transfer. I, **42.**

reservō, 1, *tr.* [**servō**, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. I, **53**; III, **3.**

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, ——, *intr.* [**sedeō**, sit], sit back; remain.

resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, ——, *intr.* [**sīdō**, sit down], settle, become calm.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**sistō**, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. I, **25.**

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [**-spiciō**, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. II, **24.**

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *tr. and intr.*, reply, answer. I, **7.**

respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [**respondeō**, answer], reply, answer. I, **14.**

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, ——, *tr.*, reject, spurn. I, **42.**

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, *tr.*, extinguish.

restitī, *see* **resistō.**

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [**statuō**, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. I, **18.**

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [**teneō**, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. I, **18.**

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō**, drag], drag back; bring back.

rettulī, *see* **referō.**

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [**re-**+**vellō**, pluck], pull *or* tear up, pull out. I, **52.**

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *intr., used in the perfect tenses, and* **revertor, -vertī, -versus sum**, *intr., used in the tenses formed on the present stem* [**vertō**, turn], turn back, come back, return. I, **7.**

revinciō, -vincīre, -vīnxī, -vīnctum, *tr.* [**vinciō**, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. III, **13.**

revocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō**, call], call back, recall; withdraw. II, **20.**

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. I, **31**; II, **4.**

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.* (ABCfgh), the *river* Rhine. I, **1.**

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.* (CDfg), the *river* Rhodanus (rŏd'ă-nŭs), *better*, the Rhone. I, **1.**

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank (*of a stream*). I, **6.**

rīvus, -ī, *m.*, small stream, brook.

rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak. III, **13.**

rogō, 1, *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. I, **7.**

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. I, **31.**

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Rōma**, Rome], Roman; *m. as noun*, a Roman. I, **3.**

Rōscius, -cī, *m.*, Lucius Roscius (lū'-shyŭs rŏsh'yŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.*

rōstrum, -ī, *n.*, beak *of a bird;* beak *or* prow *of a ship.* III, **13.**

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. IV, **33.**

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. II, **17.**

Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Sulpicius.**

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. II, **1.**

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. II, **29.**

rūrsus, *adv.* [*for* **reversus,** *from* **revertō,** turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. I, **25.**

Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni (rōō-tē′nī). I, **45.**

Rutilus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Sempronius Rutilus (mär′kŭs sĕm-prō′nĭ-ŭs rōō′tĭ-lŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.*

S.

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwĭn′tŭs tĭ-tū′rĭ-ŭs sā-bī′nŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.* II, **5.**

Sabis, -is, *m.* (Af), the *river* Sabis (sā′bĭs), *now* the Sambre. II, **16.**

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.* [**sacer,** sacred], priest.

sacrāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**sacer,** sacred], oath.

sacrificium, -cī, *n.* [**sacer,** sacred+**faciō,** make], sacrifice.

saepe, often, frequently; many times, again and again; **saepe numerō,** often, time and again, frequently; *comp.* **saepius,** oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. I, **1.**

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. II, **17.**

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. IV, **25.**

sagittārius, -rī, *m.* [**sagitta,** an arrow], bowman, archer. II, **7.**

sagulum, -ī, *n.*, a military cloak.

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, pass, wooded ravine, glade.

salūs, salūtis, *f.*, welfare, security, safety; preservation, deliverance; place of safety; life (*when in danger*). I, **27.**

Samarobrīva, -ae, *f.* (Be), Samarobriva (săm′ä-rō-brī′vä).

sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum, *tr.*, make sacred, sanction; bind; **sānctus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable; established. I, **30**; III, **9.**

sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood.

sānitās, -tātis, *f.* [**sānus,** sound], soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, **42.**

sānō, 1, *tr.* [**sānus,** sound], make sound; make good, repair.

Santonī, -ōrum, *or* **Santonēs, -um,** *m.* (Dcd), the Santoni (săn′tō-nī), *or* Santones (săn′tō-nēz). I, **10.**

sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound; sensible, sane.

sānxī, *see* **sanciō.**

sapiō, -ere, -īvī, ——, *intr.*, taste; be wise, understand.

sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage; *pl.*, baggage, packs (*carried by individual soldiers*). I, **24.**

sarciō, sarcīre, sarsī, sartum, *tr.*, make good, repair, compensate for.

sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, small branches. III, **18.**

satis, *adv., and indecl. adj. and noun:* (1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, sufficient; (3) *as noun*, enough. I, **3.**

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.* [**satis,** enough+**faciō,** make], make *or* do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. I, **14.**

satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**satisfaciō,** give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. I, **41.**

saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded. III, **4.**

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, large stone. II, **29.**

scālae, -ārum, *f.* [**scandō,** climb], stairs; scaling ladder.

Scaldis, -is, *m.* (Aef), the *river* Scaldis (skăl′dĭs), *or* Scheldt.

scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. IV, **26.**

scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**scelerō,** pollute], accursed, infamous; *m. as noun*, criminal.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. I, **14.**

scienter, *adv.* [**sciō,** know], knowingly, skillfully.

scientia, -ae, *f.* [**sciō,** know], knowledge, science, skill. I, **47**; II, **20.**

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy. III, **5.**

sciō, 4, *tr.*, distinguish; know, understand. I, **20.**

scorpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, scorpion, *a military engine for shooting arrows.*

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *tr.*, write, record *or* make mention *in writing.* II, **29.**

scrobis, -is, *m.*, pit.

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield; *see* Int. 35, *c.* I, **25.**

sē- *and* **sēd-,** *inseparable prefix*, apart, away.

sē, *see* **suī.**

sēbum, -ī, *n.*, tallow.

secō, secāre, secuī, sectum, *tr.*, cut, reap.

sēcrētō, *adv.*, separately, privately, secretly. I, **18.**

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**secō**, cut], dividing *of captured goods;* booty. II, **33.**

sector, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **sequor,** follow], follow eagerly, chase after.

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [**secō**, cut], cutting; shaft, mine. III, **21.**

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [**sequor,** follow], along; in the direction of; in accordance with. I, **33**; II, **18.**

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sequor,** follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; **secundō flūmine,** down the river. I, **14.**

secūris, -is, *f.*, ax; Roman authority, *because the ax and fasces of the lictor were symbols of authority.*

secūtus, *see* **sequor.**

sēd-, *see* **sē-.**

sed, *conj.*, but, but yet. I, **12.**

sēdecim (XVI), *card. num. adj.*, sixteen. I, **8.**

sēdēs, -is, *f.* [**sedeō**, sit], seat, chair; residence, settlement, home. I, **31**; IV, **4.**

sēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**eō**, go], insurrection, sedition.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sēditiō**, sedition], seditious, mutinous. I, **17.**

Sedulius, -lī, *m.*, Sedulius (sē-dū′lĭ-ŭs), *a chief of the Lemovices.*

Sedūnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū′nī). III, **1.**

Sedusiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusii (sē-dū′shyī). I, **51.**

seges, -etis, *f.*, growing grain, field *of grain.*

Segnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Segni (sĕg′nī).

Segontiācī, -ōrum, *m.* (Acd), the Segontiaci (sē-gŏn′shĭ-ā′sī).

Segovax, -actis, *m.*, Segovax (sĕg′ō-văks), *a king of Kent.*

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Def), the Segusiavi (sĕg′ū-shĭ-ā′vī). I, **10.**

semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; **semel atque iterum,** repeatedly. I, **31.**

sēmentis, -is, *f.*, sowing. I, **3.**

sēmita, -ae, *f.*, narrow path, byway, footpath.

semper, *adv.*, always, ever, continually. I, **18.**

Semprōnius, -nī, *m.*, *see* **Rutilus.**

senātor, -ōris, *m.* [**senex,** old], senator. II, **28.**

senātus, -ūs, *m.* [**senex,** old], *a body of old men;* senate; *esp., the administrative council of Rome.* I, **3.**

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; *m. as noun,* old man. I, **29.**

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six. I, **15.**

Senonēs, -um, *m.* (Bef), the Senones (sĕn′ō-nēz). II, **2.**

sententia, -ae, *f.* [**sentiō**, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. I, **45**; II, **10.**

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *tr.*, perceive, notice, see; experience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. I, **18.**

sentis, -is, *m.*, brier. II, **17.**

sēparātim, *adv.* [**sēparō**, separate], separately, privately. I, **19.**

sēparō, 1, *tr.* [**parō**, prepare], separate; **sēparātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. IV, **1.**

septem (VII), *card. num. adj.*, seven. II, **4.**

septentriōnēs, -um, *m.* [**septem,** seven + **triōnēs,** plow oxen], *the seven plow oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence* the North. I, **1.**

septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**septem,** seven], seventh. I, **10.**

septingentī, -ae, -a (DCC), *card. num. adj.* [**septem**, seven], seven hundred.

septuāgintā (LXX), *card. num. adj.* [**septem**, seven], seventy. IV, **12.**

sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial. I, **26.**

Sēquana, -ae, *m.* (BCdef), the *river* Sequana (sĕk′wȧ-nȧ), *better*, Seine. I, **1.**

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* belonging to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*, **Sēquanī** (Cfg), the Sequani (sĕk′wȧ-nī). I, **1.**

sequor, secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow *in point of time; with* **poena**, be inflicted; **fidem sequī**, seek the protection. I, **4.**

sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, interview, speech.

sērō, *adv.*, late, too late.

serō, serere, sēvī, satum, *tr.*, sow, plant.

Sertōrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Sertorius (kwĭn′tŭs sĕr-tō′rĭ-ŭs), *a partisan of Marius; after the death of Marius, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party until murdered in 72 B.C.* III, **23.**

servīlis, -e, *adj.* [**servus**, slave], of *or* like a slave, servile. I, **40.**

serviō, 4, *intr.* [**servus**, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote oneself to, follow. IV, **5.**

servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**servus**, slave], slavery, servitude. I, **11.**

Servius, -vī, *m.*, Servius (sĕr′vĭ-ŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* III, **1.**

servō, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; maintain, keep; guard, watch; reserve. II, **33.**

servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant. I, **27.**

sescentī, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num. adj.*, [**sex**, six], six hundred. I, **38**; II, **15.**

sēsē, see **suī.**

sēsquipedālis, -e, *adj.* [**sēsqui-**, one and a half+**pēs**, foot], a foot and a half thick. IV, **17.**

sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; **nihilō sētius**, none the less, nevertheless. I, **49**; IV, **17.**

seu, *see* **sīve.**

sevēritās, -tātis, *f.*, sternness, severity.

sēvocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō**, call], call aside *or* apart.

sex (VI), *card. num. adj.*, six. I, **27.**

sexāgintā (LX), *card. num. adj.*, [**sex**, six], sixty. II, **4.**

Sextius, -tī, *m.*: (1) Publius Sextius Baculus (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs sĕks′tĭ-ŭs băk′ū-lŭs), *a centurion in Caesar's army.* II, **25.** (2) Titus Sextius (tĭ′tŭs sĕks′tĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.*

sī, *conj.*, if, if perchance; to see whether *or* if; whether; **quod sī**, but if, now if. I, **7.**

sibi, *see* **suī.**

Sibusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sĭb′ū-sā′tez). III, **27.**

sīc, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; **sīc . . . ut**, so . . . that; so . . . as. I, **38**; II, **4.**

siccitās, -tātis, *f.*, drought, dryness. IV, **38.**

sīcut *or* **sīcutī**, *adv.* [**sīc**, so+**ut** (ī), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. I, **44.**

sīdus, -eris, *n.*, star; constellation.

signifer, -erī, *m.* [**signum**, standard+**ferō**, bear], standard-bearer. II, **25.**

significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**significō**, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. II, **33.**

significō, 1, *tr.* [**signum**, sign+**faciō**, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. II, **7.**

signum, -ī, *n.*, mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle; standard, ensign; **ab signīs discēdere**, withdraw from the ranks; **signa īnferre**, advance to the attack; **signa conversa īnferre**, face about and advance to the attack; **signa ferre**, advance *on the march;* direct the attack; **signa convertere**, face *or* wheel about; **ad signa convenīre**, join the army. I, **25.**

Sīlānus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Silanus (mär′kŭs sī-lā′nŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.*

silentium, -tī, *n.*, silence, stillness.

Sīlius, -lī, *m.*, Titus Silius (tĭ′tŭs sĭl′ĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* III, **7.**

silva, -ae, *f.*, a wood, woods, forest. I, **12.**

silvestris, -e, *adj.* [**silva,** forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood *or* forest. II, **18.**

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. III, **13.**

similitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**similis,** like], likeness, resemblance.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time, at once; **simul . . . simul,** both . . . and, partly . . . partly; **simul atque,** as soon as. I, **19.**

simulācrum, -ī, *n.* [**simulō,** make like], image, statue.

simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**simulō,** make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. I, **40;** IV, **13.**

simulō, 1, *tr.* [**similis,** like], make like; pretend. I, **44;** IV, **4.**

simultās, -tātis, *f.*, jealousy, rivalry.

sīn, *conj.*, if however, but if. I, **13.**

sincērē, *adv.* [**sincērus,** sincere], sincerely, truthfully.

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. I, **7.**

singillātim, *adv.* [**singulī,** one each], singly, one by one; individually. III, **2.**

singulāris, -e, *adj.* [**singulī,** one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, **24.**

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; **in annōs singulōs,** annually. I, **6.**

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *fem. sing. as noun* (*sc.* **manus**), the left hand; **sub sinistrā,** on the left. I, **25.**

sinistrōrsus, *adv.* [**sinister,** left + **versus,** *from* **vertō,** turn], to the left.

situs, -ūs, *m.*, situation, site, position. III, **12.**

sīve *and* **seu,** *conj.* [**sī,** if + **-ve,** or], or if, if; or; whether; **sīve . . . sīve,** whether . . . or, to see if . . . or; either . . . or. I, **12.**

socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. I, **12.**

societās, -tātis, *f.* [**socius,** ally], alliance.

socius, -cī, *m.*, companion; confederate, ally. I, **5.**

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem,** toward the setting sun *or* west; **ad orientem sōlem,** toward the rising sun *or* east. I, **1.**

sōlācium, -cī, *n.* [**sōlor,** console], comfort, solace.

soldurius, -rī, *m.*, vassal. III, **22.**

soleō, solēre, solitus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, be wont, be accustomed.

sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**sōlus,** alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. IV, **18.**

sollertia, -ae, *f.* [**sollers,** skillful], skill, expertness; ingenuity.

sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate, urge. II, **1.**

sollicitūdō, -inis, *f.*, anxiety, worry, apprehension.

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom; ground, soil, earth. I, **11.**

sōlum, *adv.* [**sōlus,** alone], only, merely. I, **12.**

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* **sōlīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. I, **18.**

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, untie; *with or without* **nāvēs,** weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV, **23.**

sonitus, -ūs, *m.*, sound, din.

sonus, -ī, *m.*, sound.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. I, **18.**

sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance; casting *or* drawing of lots; fate. I, **50.**

Sotiātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō′shĭ-ā′tēz). III, **20.**

spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, length *of space;* period *or* length *of time, hence* time, opportunity. I, **7.**

speciēs, -ēī, *f.* [**-spiciō,** see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. I, **51;** II, **31.**

spectō, 1, *tr.* [**-spiciō,** see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. I, **1.**

speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [**speculor,** spy], spy, scout. II, **11.**

speculātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**speculātor,** spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. IV, **26.**

speculor, 1, *intr.* [**-spiciō,** see], spy. I, **47.**

spērō, 1, *tr.* [**spēs,** hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. I, **3.**

spēs, -eī, *f.*, hope, anticipation, expectation. I, **5.**

spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [**spīrō,** breathe], breath, air; *pl.*, haughtiness, pride. I, **33**; II, **4.**

spoliō, 1, *tr.*, strip, despoil.

sponte, *abl.* (*obsolete nom.*, **spōns**), *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's own efforts. I, **9.**

stabiliō, 4, *tr.* [**stabilis,** firm], make firm, fix.

stabilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**stabilis,** firm], firmness, steadiness. IV, **33.**

statim, *adv.* [**stō,** stand], *as one stands, hence*, forthwith, immediately, at once. I, **53**; II, **11.**

statiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**stō,** stand], standing *or* stationing; a military post *or* station; sentries, pickets, outposts; **in statiōne esse,** be on guard. II, **18.**

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, *tr.* [**status,** position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. I, **11.**

statūra, -ae, *f.* [**status; stō,** stand], a standing upright; size *or* height of the body, stature. II, **30.**

status, -ūs, *m.* [**stō,** stand], standing, condition, status; position.

stimulus, -ī, *m.*, goad, spur.

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**stīpendium,** tribute], paying tribute, tributary; *m. pl. as noun*, tributaries. I, **30.**

stīpendium, -dī, *n.*, tax, tribute. I, **36.**

stīpes, -itis, *m.*, log, trunk; stake.

stirps, -pis, *m.*, stem, stock; race.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, *intr.*, stand; abide by.

strāmentum, -ī, *n.*, covering; straw, thatch; pack-saddle.

strepitus, -ūs, *m.* [**strepō,** make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. II, **11.**

studeō, ēre, -uī, ——, *intr.*, be eager *or* zealous; desire, strive after, devote oneself to; pay attention to; accustom oneself to. I, **9.**

studiōsē, *adv.* [**studiōsus,** eager], eagerly, zealously.

studium, -dī, *n.* [**studeō,** be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. I, **19.**

stultitia, -ae, *f.* [**stultus,** foolish], foolishness, folly.

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.* (1) *With acc.*, (a) *with verbs of motion*, under, beneath; up to; (b) *of time*, just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.*, (a) *of position*, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot *or* base of; (b) *of time*, during, within; *in compounds*, **sub** *or* **subs,** under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. I, **7.**

subāctus, *see* **subigō.**

subdolus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dolus,** deceit], subtle, crafty.

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō,** lead], draw *or* lead up; lead *or* draw off, withdraw; *with* **nāvēs,** haul up, beach. I, **22.**

subductiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**subdūcō,** beach], beaching.

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [**eō,** go. App. 84], come *or* go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. I, **5.**

subesse, *see* **subsum.**

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō,** hurl. App. 7], hurl *or* put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. I, **26.**

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [**agō,** lead, drive], subdue, reduce.

subitō, *adv.* [**subitus,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. I, **39**; II, **19.**

subitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unexpected, sudden. III, **7.**

sublātus, *see* **tollō.**

sublevō, 1, *tr.* [**levō,** lift], lift from beneath, lift *or* raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. I, **16.**

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile. IV, **17.**

subluō, -luere, ——, **-lūtum,** *tr.*, wash, flow around the base.

subministrō, 1, *tr.* [**ministrō,** wait upon], furnish, supply, give. I, **40**; III, **25.**

submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō,** send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. II, **6.**

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō,** move], move away, drive away, dislodge. I, **25.**

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [**ruō,** fall], cause to fall *from beneath,* overthrow; dig under, undermine. II, **6.**

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**sequor,** follow], follow closely, follow up *or* on, follow. II, **11.**

subsidium, -dī, *n.* [**subsideō,** sit near *or* in reserve], reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I, **52**; II, **6.**

subsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.*, sit down, remain.

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *intr.* [**sistō,** stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. I, **15.**

subsum, -esse, ——, ——, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be under *or* below; be near *or* close at hand. I, **25.**

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [**trahō,** draw], draw *or* carry off *from beneath;* take away, withdraw. I, **44.**

subvectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**subvehō,** convey], conveying; transportation.

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [**vehō,** carry], bring *or* carry up; convey. I, **16.**

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō,** come], come *or* go to help, aid, succor.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**sub**+**cēdō,** go], go *or* come under; come up to, come up, advance; be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I, **24.**

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *tr.*, set on fire below, kindle, burn. II, **6.**

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**sub**+**caedō,** cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. IV, **19.**

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, ——, *intr.* [**-cumbō,** lie down], sink under; yield.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [**sub**+**currō,** run], run to help, aid, assist.

sudis, -is, *f.*, pile, stake.

Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of *or* pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun,* **Suēbī** (Bhi), the Suebi (swē′bī), *a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes.* I, **37**; IV, **1.**

Suessiōnēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Suessiones (swĕs′ĭ-ō′nēz). II, **3.**

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *intr.* [**sub**+**faciō,** make], be sufficient.

suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [**sub**+**fodiō,** dig], dig under; stab underneath. IV, **12.**

suffrāgium, -gī, *n.*, vote, ballot.

Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-găm′brī). IV, **16.**

suggestus, -ūs, *m.*, platform, stage, tribunal.

suī, sibi, sē *or* **sēsē,** *reflex. pron. of 3d person* (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; **inter sē,** *see* **inter** *and* App. 166. I, **1.**

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū′shyŭs sŭl′ä), *the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C.* I, **21.**

Sulpicius, -cī, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pŭb′lĭ-ŭs sŭl-pĭsh′yŭs rōō′fŭs), *one of Caesar's legates.* IV, **22.**

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (App. 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; *with gen. in predicate,* be the mark *or* sign of; belong to; be the duty of; *with dat. of possessor,* have. I, **1.**

summa, -ae, *f.* [**summus,** highest], the main thing *or* point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; **summa imperī,** the chief command. I, **29.**

summus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of* **superus,** high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; preëminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. I, **16.**

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *tr.*, [sub+emō, take], take away, take; assume; *with* **supplicium,** inflict; *with* **labor,** spend. I, **7.**

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sūmptus,** expense], expensive.

sūmptus, -ūs, *m.* [**sūmō,** spend], expense. I, **18.**

sūmptus, *see* **sūmō.**

super, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, above, over, on.

superbē, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. I, **31.**

superior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **superus,** high. App. 44]: (1) *of place,* upper, higher, superior; (2) *of time,* previous, earlier, former. I, **10.**

superō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**super,** over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vītā superāre,** survive. I, **17.**

supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō,** sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. II, **8.**

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.* [**sum,** be. App. 77], be over *or* above; be left, remain, survive. I, **23.**

superus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**super,** above], over, above. *Comp., see* **superior;** *sup., see* **summus.**

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, *intr.* [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near *or* at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. I, **3.**

supplēmentum, -ī, *n.* [**suppleō,** fill up], *a filling up;* supplies, reënforcements.

supplex, -icis, *m., f.*, suppliant. II, **28.**

supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**supplex,** suppliant], public prayer *to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence* thanksgiving. II, **35.**

suppliciter, *adv.* [**supplex,** suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. I, **27.**

supplicium, -cī, *n.*, punishment. I, **19.**

supportō, 1, *tr.* [sub+portō, carry], carry *or* bring up; bring, convey; supply, furnish. I, **39;** III, **3.**

suprā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*: (1) *as adv.*, above, before, previously; (2) *as prep. with acc.*, above; before. I, **24.**

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [su(b)s+capiō, take], take *or* lift up; undertake, assume, take on oneself; begin, engage in. I, **3.**

suspectus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suspected, distrusted.

suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. I, **4.**

suspicor, 1, *tr.*, suspect, distrust; surmise. I, **44;** IV, **6.**

sustentō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of* **sustineō,** hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. II, **6.**

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [su(b)s+teneō, hold], hold up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. I, **24.**

sustulī, *see* **tollō.**

suus, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject* (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, *a*) [**suī,** himself, etc.], of *or* belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; **sua,** *n. pl. as noun,* one's property; **suī,** *m. pl. as noun,* their men (*friends or countrymen*). I, **1.**

T.

T. *abbr. for* **Titus** (tī'tŭs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, **10.**

tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, tent. I, **39.**

tabula, -ae, *f.*, board; tablet; list. I, **29.**

tabulātum, -ī, *n.* [**tabula,** board], flooring *of boards;* story.

taceō, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent, keep silent; pass over in silence; **tacitus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, silent. I, **17.**

tālea, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar; piece of wood, stake.

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, such a; such a great; so great a.

tam, *adv.*, so, so very. I, **14.**

tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. I, **7.**

Tamesis, -is, *m.* (Acd), the *river* Tamesis (tăm′ē-sĭs), *better*, the Thames.

tametsī, *conj.* [**tamen,** however+**etsī,** even if], although, though. I, **30.**

tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as* **quid tandem,** what, pray? what then? I, **25.**

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, *tr.*, touch, border on.

tantopere, *adv.* [**tantus,** so great+**opus,** work], so greatly, so earnestly. I, **31.**

tantulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of* **tantus,** so great], so small *or* little, so diminutive; trifling. II, **30.**

tantum, *adv.* [**tantus,** so great], so much, so, so far; only, merely.

tantummodo, *adv.*, only. III, **5.**

tantundem, *adv.* [**tantus,** so great], so much *or* so far.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so much, so great, so powerful, such; **quantō . . . tantō,** *with comparatives*, the . . . the. I, **15.**

Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tär-bĕl′ī). III, **27.**

tardē, *adv.* [**tardus,** slow], slowly. IV, **23.**

tardō, 1, *tr.* [**tardus,** slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. II, **25.**

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. II, **25.**

Tarusātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEc), the Tarusates (tăr′ū-sā′tēz). III, **23.**

Tasgetius, -tī, *m.*, Tasgetius (tăs-jē′-shyŭs), *a chief of the Carnutes.*

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull.

Taximagulus, -ī, *m.*, Taximagulus (tăk′sĭ-măg′ū-lŭs), *a king of Kent.*

taxus, -ī, *f.*, yew tree, yew.

Tectosagēs, -um, *m.* (Ede), the Tectosages (tĕk-tŏs′ă-jēz).

tēctum, -ī, *n.* [**tegō,** cover], covering, roof; house. I, **36.**

tēctus, *see* **tegō.**

tegimentum, -ī, *n.* [**tegō,** cover], a covering, cover. II, **21.**

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, *tr.*, cover, hide; protect, defend.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, *a weapon for fighting at a distance*, missile, dart, javelin. I, **8.**

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**temerē,** rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, **31.**

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. I, **40**; IV, **20.**

temeritās, -tātis, *f.* [**temerē,** rashly], rashness, indiscretion.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (*of a wagon*). IV, **33.**

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [**temperō,** control oneself], prudence, self-control. I, **19.**

temperō, 1, *intr.*, control oneself, refrain; **temperātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. I, **7.**

tempestās, -tātis, *f.* [**tempus,** time], time, season; weather; *usually* bad weather, storm, tempest. III, **12.**

temptō, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. I, **14.**

tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division *or* section of time, a time, time (*in general*); occasion, crisis; **omnī tempore,** always; **in reliquum tempus,** for the future; **ūnō tempore,** at the same time, at once. I, **3.**

Tēncterī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tencteri (tĕngk′tē-rī). IV, **1.**

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; *stretch a tent*, pitch; encamp. II, **13.**

tenebrae, -ārum, *f.*, darkness.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, ——, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; **sē tenēre,** remain; **memoriā tenēre,** remember. I, **7.**

tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. II, **17.**

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, slim, thin; slight, insignificant; delicate.

tenuitās, -tātis, *f.* [**tenuis,** thin], thinness; poverty.

tenuiter, *adv.* [**tenuis,** thin], thinly. III, **13.**

ter, *num. adv.* [*cf.* **trēs,** three], three times. I, **53.**

teres, -etis, rounded; tapering.

tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back; **terga vertere,** to flee; **post tergum** *or* **ab tergō,** in the rear. I, **53**; III, **19.**

ternī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**ter,** thrice], three each, three apiece. III, **15.**

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; **terrae** (*pl.*) *or* **orbis terrārum,** the world. I, **32**; III, **15.**

Terrasidius, -dī, *m.*, Titus Terrasidius (tī′tŭs tĕr′ā-sĭd′ĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* III, **7.**

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**terra,** earth], of earth. I, **43.**

terreō, 2, *tr.*, frighten, terrify.

territō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* **terreō,** frighten], frighten, terrify, alarm.

terror, -ōris, *m.* [**terreō,** frighten], fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, **12.**

tertius, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [**ter,** thrice], third. I, **1.**

testāmentum, -ī, *n.* [**testor,** be a witness], will. I, **39.**

testimōnium, -nī, *n.* [**testor,** be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. I, **44.**

testis, -is, *m.*, *f.*, witness. I, **14.**

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; shed; a testudo, *a column of men, holding their shields overlapped above their heads.* II, **6.**

Teutomatus, -ī, *m.*, Teutomatus (tū-tŏm′ā-tŭs), *a king of the Nitiobroges.*

Teutonī, -ōrum *or* **Teutonēs, -um,** *m.*, the Teutoni (tū′tō-nī), *or* Teutones (tū′tō-nēz). I, **33**; II, **4.**

tēxī, *see* **tegō.**

tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, timber, beam, pile. IV, **17.**

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun,* **Tigurīnī** (Cg), the Tigurini (tĭg′ū-rī′nī). I, **12.**

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for; **nihil timēre,** have no fear. I, **14.**

timidē, *adv.* [**timidus,** fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, **25.**

timidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**timeō,** fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. I, **39.**

timor, -ōris, *m.* [**timeō,** fear], fear, alarm, dread. I, **22.**

Titūrius, -rī, *m.*, *see* **Sabīnus.**

tolerō, 1, *tr.*, bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; *with* **famem,** appease, alleviate. I, **28.**

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; **sublātus,** *pf. part. as adj.*, elated. I, **5.**

Tolōsa, -ae, *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō′sà), *now* Toulouse. III, **20.**

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the Tolosates (tŏl′ō-sā′tēz), *the people of Tolosa.* I, **10.**

tormentum, -ī, *n.* [**torqueō,** twist], means of twisting; an engine, artillery, *for hurling missiles, e.g.*, **catapulta** *and* **ballista;** windlass, hoist; device for torturing, *hence,* torment, torture. II, **8.**

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, *tr.*, scorch, burn.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. III, **10.**

totidem, *indecl. adj.* [**tot,** so many], just as many, the same number. I, **48**; II, **4.**

tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* **tōtīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, the whole, the whole of; entire, all; *with force of adv.*, wholly, entirely. I, **2.**

trabs, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber, pile. II, **29.**

tractus, *see* **trahō.**

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**trāns** +**dō,** give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. I, **27.**

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**trāns**+**dūcō,** lead], lead across, lead over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. I, **11.**

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, a javelin *or* dart *used by the Gauls.* I, **26.**

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. I, **53.**

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**trāns** + **iaciō**, hurl. App. 7], hurl across; pierce, transfix.

trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [**trāiciō**, hurl across], crossing, passage. IV, **21.**

trānō, 1, *intr.* [**trāns**+**nō**, swim], swim across. I, **53.**

tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. III, **15.**

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over; *in compounds*, **trāns** *or* **trā**, across, over, through. I, **1.**

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Alpēs**, the Alps], across the Alps, Transalpine.

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, scēnsum, *tr. and intr.* [**scandō**, climb], climb across; board. III, **15.**

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], go across *or* over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; *of time*, pass by. I, **5.**

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō**, carry. App. 81], carry *or* bring over, transfer.

trānsfīgō, -figere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [**fīgō**, fix], pierce through, transfix. I, **25.**

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [**fodiō**, dig], dig through; pierce through, impale.

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *tr.* [**gradior**, step], step over, cross. II, **19.**

trānsitus, -ūs, *m.* [**trānseō**, go across], crossing, passage.

trānslātus, *see* **trānsferō.**

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**mare**, sea], across the sea, foreign.

trānsmissus, -ūs, *m.* [**trānsmittō**, send across], sending across; passage.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], send across.

trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō**, carry], carry across *or* over, bring over, convey, transport. I, **37**; IV, **16.**

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond *or* across the Rhine; *pl. as noun*, **Trānsrhēnānī**, the people across the Rhine. IV, **16.**

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, crossbeam, thwart. III, **13.**

trānsversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**trānsvertō**, turn across], turned across, cross. II, **8.**

Trebius, -bī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mär′kŭs trē′bĭ-ŭs găl′ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* III, **7.**

Trebōnius, -nī, *m.*: (1) Gaius Trebonius (gā′yŭs trē-bō′nĭ-ŭs), *one of Caesar's legates;* (2) Gaius Trebonius, *a Roman knight.*

trecentī, -ae, -a (CCC), *card. num. adj.* [**trēs**, three+**centum**, hundred], three hundred. IV, **37.**

trepidō, 1, *intr.*, hurry about in alarm; *pass.*, be disturbed *or* in confusion.

trēs, tria, *gen.* **trium** (III), *card. num. adj.*, three. I, **1.**

Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* **Trēverī** (Bfgh), the Treveri (trĕv′ē-rī). I, **37**; II, **24.**

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trĭb′ō-sī). I, **51**; IV, **10.**

tribūnus, -ī, *m.*, tribune; **tribūnus mīlitum** *or* **mīlitāris**, a military tribune. *See* Int. 41. I, **39**; II, **26.**

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *tr.*, divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. I, **13.**

tribūtum, -ī, *n.* [**tribuō**, render, pay], tribute, tax.

trīduum, -ī, *n.* [**trēs**, three+**diēs**, day], three days. I, **26.**

triennium, -nī, *n.* [**trēs**, three+**annus**, year], three years. IV, **4.**

trīgintā (XXX), *card. num. adj.* [**trēs**, three], thirty. I, **26.**

trīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. I, **53.**

Trinovantēs, -um, *m.* (Ad), the Trinovantes (trĭn′ō-văn′tēz).

tripertītō, *adv.* [**trēs**, three+**partior**, divide], in three parts *or* divisions.

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [**trēs**, three+**plicō**, fold], threefold, triple. I, **24.**

triquetrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, triangular.

trīstis, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. I, **32.**

trīstitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness. I, **32.**

Troucillus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Valerius.**

truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk *of a tree.* IV, **17.**
tū, tuī (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, you.
tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. II, **20.**
tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, *tr.*, watch, guard, protect. IV, **8.**
tulī, *see* **ferō.**
Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-lĭn'jī), *a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine.* I, **5.**
Tullius, -lī, *m.*, *see* **Cicerō.**
Tullus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Volcācius.**
tum, *adv.*, then, at this *or* that time; then, secondly; then, also; **cum . . . tum,** both . . . and, not only . . . but also. I, **17.**
tumultuor, 1, *intr.* [**tumultus,** disorder], make a disturbance; *impers.*, there is a disturbance.
tumultuōsē, *adv.* [**tumultus,** disorder], with confusion *or* noise.
tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [**tumeō,** swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. I, **40**; II, **11.**
tumulus, -ī, *m.*, mound, hill. I, **43**; II, **27.**
turma, -ae, *f.*, troop *or* squadron, *of about thirty cavalrymen.* IV, **33.**
Turonī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Turoni (tū'rō-nī). II, **35.**
turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. I, **33**; IV, **2.**
turpiter, *adv.* [**turpis,** disgraceful], disgracefully, cowardly, basely.
turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**turpis,** disgraceful], disgrace. II, **27.**
turris, -is, *f.*, tower. II, **12.**
tūtō, *adv.* [**tūtus,** safe], safely, securely. III, **13.**
tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**tueor,** protect], protected, safe, secure. II, **5.**
tuus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.* [**tū,** you], your, yours.

U.

ubi, *adv. and conj.*: (1) *of place* (*adv.*), in which place, where; (2) *of time* (*conj.*), when, whenever; **as soon as; ubi prīmum,** as soon as. I, **5.**
Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū'bĭ-ī). I, **54**; IV, **3.**
ubīque, *adv.* [**ubi,** where], anywhere, everywhere. III, **16.**
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *tr.*, avenge; punish, take vengeance on. I, **12.**
ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **ūllīus** (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; *m. as noun*, anyone, anybody. I, **7.**
ulterior, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.* [**ultrā,** beyond. App. 43), farther, more remote, ulterior. I, **7.**
ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* [**ultrā,** beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant *or* remote; *m. pl. as noun*, those in the rear. III, **27.**
ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of. I, **48.**
ultrō, *adv.*, to *or* on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque,** back and forth. I, **42**; III, **27.**
ultus, *see* **ulcīscor.**
ululātus, -ūs, *m.*, yell, shriek.
umerus, -ī, *m.*, the shoulder.
umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; **neque . . . umquam,** and never, never. I, **41**; III, **28.**
ūnā, *adv.* [**ūnus,** one]: (1) *of place*, together, along with, in one place; (2) *of time*, together, along with, at the same time, also. I, **5.**
unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. I, **28.**
ūndecim (XI), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [**ūnus,** one + **decem,** ten], eleven.
ūndecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* **ūndecim,** eleven], eleventh. II, **23.**
ūndēvīgintī, *card. num. adj.* [**ūnus,** one + **dē,** from + **vīgintī,** twenty], nineteen. I, **8.**
undique, *adv.* [**unde,** whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. I, **2.**
ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ūnus,** one + **versus,** *from* **vertō,** turn], *turned into one;* all together, whole, universal, all *as a mass.* II, **33.**
ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *gen.* **ūnīus** (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one; single, alone; the sole, the only one. I, **1.**
urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**urbs,** city], of *or* in the city.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city; *especially*, the city, *Rome.* I, **7.**

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, ——, *tr.*, press, press hard. II, **25.**

ūrus, -ī, *m.*, wild ox.

Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, the Usipetes [ū-sĭp′-ē-tēz]. IV, **1.**

ūsitātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ordinary, familiar.

usque, *adv.*: (1) *of place*, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) *of time*, up to, till; *with* **ad**, until. I, **50**; III, **15.**

ūsus, *see* **ūtor.**

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [**ūtor**, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; **ūsus est**, there is need; **ūsuī esse** *or* **ex ūsū esse**, be of advantage *or* service; **ūsū venīre**, come by necessity; happen. I, **30**; II, **9.**

ut *and* **utī,** *adv. and conj. With indicative:* (1) as, just as; insomuch as; (2) when, after. *With subjunctive:* (1) that, so that; (2) that, in order that, to; (3) *after verbs of fearing*, that not; (4) although; (5) how? I, 2.

uter, utra, utrum, *gen.* **utrius** (App. 32) *adj.*: (1) *as interrog.*, which one *or* which *of two*? (2) *as rel.*, the one who, *of two*, whichever. I, **12.**

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.* [**uter**, which *of two*], each *of two*, either *of two*; both. I, **34**; II, **8.**

utī, *see* **ut.**

ūtī, *see* **ūtor.**

ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [**ūtor**, use], useful, serviceable. IV, **7.**

ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.* [**ūtilis**, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. IV, **19.**

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, make use of, employ, use, avail oneself of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess; show; adopt, accept; **ūsus,** *pf. part., often translated* with. I, **5.**

utrimque, *adv.* [**uterque**, each *of two*], on each side, on both sides. I, **50**; IV, **17.**

utrum, *conj.* [**uter**, which *of two*], whether; **utrum . . . an,** whether . . . or; **utrum . . . necne,** whether . . . or not. I, **40.**

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. I, **18.**

V.

V, *sign for* **quīnque,** five.

Vacalus, -ī, *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (văk′-ă-lŭs) *river, now* the Waal. IV, **10.**

vacō, 1, *intr.*, be empty *or* unoccupied; lie waste. I, **28.**

vacuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vacō**, be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, destitute of. II, **12.**

vadum, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow place. I, **6.**

vāgīna, -ae, *f.*, sheath, scabbard.

vagor, 1, *intr.* [**vagus**, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. I, **2.**

valeō, 2, *intr.*, be strong *or* vigorous, have weight, influence, *or* strength; **plūrimum valēre,** be very powerful. I, **17.**

Valerius, -rī, *m.*: (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā′yŭs vă-lē′rĭ-ŭs trōō-sĭl′ŭs), *a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar.* I, **19.** (2) Gaius Valerius Flaccus (flăk′ŭs), *Governor of Gaul, 83 B.C.* I, **47.** (3) Gaius Valerius Caburus (kă-bū′-rŭs), *a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship.* I, **47.** (4) Gaius Valerius Procillus (prō-sĭl′ŭs), *son of* (*3*). I, **47.** (5) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū′shyŭs vă-lē′rĭ-ŭs prĕk′ō-nī′nŭs). III, **20.** (6) Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus (dŏm′nō-taw′rŭs), *son of* (*3*).

Valetiācus, -ī, *m.*, Valetiacus (văl′ē-shĭ-ā′kŭs), *a nobleman of the Haedui.*

valētūdō, -inis, *f.* [**valeō**, be strong], health; poor health.

vallēs, -is, *f.*, valley. III, **1.**

vāllum, -ī, *n.* [**vāllus**, palisade], wall *or* rampart *of earth set with palisades;* entrenchments, earthworks. I, **26.**

vāllus, -ī, *m.*, stake; palisade.

Vangionēs, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vangiones (văn-jī′ō-nēz). I, **51.**

varietās, -tātis, *f.* [**varius**, diverse], diversity, variety.

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, changing, various. II, **22.**

vāstō, 1, *tr.* [**vāstus**, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. I, **11.**

vāstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. III, **8.**

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, divination. I, 50.

-ve, *conj., enclitic,* = **vel,** or.

vectīgal, -ālis, *n.* [**vectīgālis,** tributary], tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. I, 18.

vectīgālis, -e, *adj.* [**vehō,** carry], paying revenue *or* tribute; tributary. III, 8.

vectōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vehō,** carry], for carrying; **vectōria nāvis,** a transport, freight ship.

vehementer, *adv.* [**vehemēns,** violent], violently, fiercely, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. I, 37; III, 22.

vel, *conj. and adv.:* (1) *as conj.*, or; **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or; (2) *as adv.*, even. I, 6.

Velānius, -nī, *m.*, Quintus Velanius (kwĭn'tŭs vē-lā'nĭ-ŭs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army.* III, 7.

Veliocassēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Veliocasses (vē'lĭ-ō-kăs'ēz). II, 4.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Vellaunodunum (vĕ-law'nō-dū'nŭm), *a town of the Senones.*

Vellāviī, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Vellavii (vĕ-lā'vĭ-ī).

vēlōcitās, -tātis, *f.* [**vēlōx,** swift], swiftness, speed.

vēlōciter, *adv.* [**vēlōx,** swift], swiftly, speedily.

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. I, 48.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. III, 13.

velut, *adv.*, as, just as. I, 32.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**vēnor,** hunt], hunting, the chase. IV, 1.

vēnātor, -ōris, *m.* [**vēnor,** hunt], hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**vēnum,** sale + **dō,** give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. II, 33.

Venellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bc), the Venelli (vē-nĕl'ī). II, 34.

Venetī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cb), the Veneti (vĕn'ē-tī). II, 34.

Venetia, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē'shyà), *the country of the Veneti.* III, 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti, Venetan. III, 18.

venia, -ae, *f.*, indulgence, favor; pardon.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come, arrive, go, advance; **in spem venīre,** have hopes; *pass. often impers., as* **ventum est,** *it was come* = they came, it came, etc. I, 8.

ventitō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* **veniō,** come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. IV, 3.

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind. III, 13.

vēr, vēris, *n.*, the spring.

Veragrī, -ōrum, *m.* (CDg), the Veragri (vĕr'à-grī). III, 1.

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.* (Cgh), Verbigenus (vĕr-bĭj'ē-nŭs), *a canton of the Helvetii.* I, 27.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; entreaty; **verba facere,** plead. I, 20.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, Vercassivellaunus (vĕr-kăs'ĭ-vĕ-law'nŭs).

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (vĕr'sĭn-jĕt'ō-rĭks), *an Arvernian, the greatest leader produced by the Gauls. See Book VII.*

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. I, 19.

vergō, -ere, ——, ——, *intr.*, look *or* lie toward, be situated; slope. I, 1.

vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, vergobret (vĕr'gō-brĕt), *the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui.* I, 16.

veritus, *see* **vereor.**

vērō, *adv.* [**vērus,** true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. I, 32; II, 2.

versō, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent,* turn oneself; be, remain; engage in; fight. I, 48; II, 1.

versus, *adv.* [**vertō,** turn], turned to; toward.

versus, -ūs, *m.* [**vertō,** turn], turning; verse.

Verticō, -ōnis, *m.*, Vertico (vĕr'tĭ-kō), *one of the Nervii.*

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *tr.*, turn, turn around; **terga vertere,** flee. I, 53; III, 19.

Verucloetius, -tī, *m.*, Verucloetius (vĕr'ū-klē'shyŭs). I, 7.

vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; *neut. as noun*, the truth; **vērī similis,** likely, probable. I, **18.**

verūtum, -ī, *n.*, dart, javelin.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Vesontio (vē-sŏn'shyō), *the chief town of the Sequani, modern* Besançon. I, **38.**

vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening; **sub vesperum,** toward evening. I, **26.**

vester, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron.* [**vōs,** you], your, yours.

vēstīgium, -gī, *n.*, trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. IV, **2.**

vestiō, 4, *tr.*, clothe, cover.

vestis, -is, *f.*, clothing.

vestītus, -ūs, *m.* [**vestiō,** clothe], clothing. IV, **1.**

veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**vetus,** old], old, veteran; *m. pl. as noun*, veterans. I, **24.**

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, forbid. II, **20.**

vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient, former; *with* **mīlitēs,** veteran. I, **13.**

vexillum, -ī, *n.*, banner, flag. II, **20.**

vexō, 1, *tr.*, harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, **14.**

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route; journey, march. I, **9.**

viātor, -ōris, *m.* [**via,** road], traveler. IV, **5.**

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, twenty each, twenty.

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, twentieth.

vīciēs, *num. adv.*, twenty times.

vīcīnitās, -tātis, *f.* [**vīcīnus,** near], neighborhood; *pl.*, neighbors.

vicis, *gen.* (*no nom.*), change; **in vicem,** alternately, in turn. IV, **1.**

victima, -ae, *f.*, victim; a sacrificial animal.

victor, -ōris, *m.* [**vincō,** conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.* victorious. I, **31**; II, **24.**

victōria, -ae, *f.* [**victor,** victor], victory. I, **14.**

victus, *see* **vincō.**

victus, -ūs, *m.* [**vīvō,** live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. I, **31.**

vīcus, -ī, *m.*, hamlet, village. I, **5.**

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr.*, see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; *in pass.*, be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. I, **6.**

Vienna, -ae, *f.* (Df), Vienna (vĭ-ĕn'ȧ), *modern* Vienne.

vigilia, -ae, *f.* [**vigil,** awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, *one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time.* I, **12.**

vīgintī (**XX**), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, twenty. I, **13.**

vīmen, -inis, *n.*, a pliant twig, switch, osier. II, **33.**

vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *tr.*, bind. I, **53.**

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *tr.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way *or* desire. I, **25.**

vīnctus, *see* **vinciō.**

vinculum, -ī, *n.* [**vinciō,** bind], bond, fetter, chain. I, **4.**

vindicō, 1, *tr.*, assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. III, **16.**

vīnea, -ae, *f.*, vinea, *a shed for the defense of a besieging party.* II, **12.**

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine. II, **15.**

violō, 1, *tr.*, harm, injure; devastate.

vir, virī, *m.*, man; husband; a man of distinction *or* honor; *cf.* **homō,** a human being *as distinguished from the lower animals.* II, **25.**

vīrēs, *see* **vīs.**

virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin.

virgultum, -ī, *n.*, thicket, bushes, brushwood. III, **18.**

Viridomārus, -ī, *m.*, Viridomarus (vĭr'ĭ-dō-mā'rŭs), *a chief of the Haedui.*

Viridovīx, -īcis, *m.*, Viridovix (vĭ-rĭd'-ō-vĭks), *a chief of the Venelli.* III, **17.**

virītim, *adv.* [**vir,** man], man by man, to each one, individually.

Viromanduī, -ōrum, *m.* [Be], the Viromandui (vīr'ō-măn'dū-ī). II, **4.**

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [**vir,** man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; *pl.*, good qualities, virtues, merits. I, **1.**

vīs, vīs (App. 27), *f.*, force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; *pl.*, **vīrēs,** strength, force; **vim facere,** use violence. I, **6.**

vīsus, *see* **videō.**

vīta, -ae, *f.* [*cf.* **vīvō,** live], life; manner of living, living. I, **16.**

vītō, 1, *tr.*, avoid, shun, evade, escape. I, **20.**

vitrum, -ī, *n.*, woad, *a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.*

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, *intr.*, live; subsist on. IV, **1.**

vīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* **vīvō,** live], alive, living.

vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. I, **6.**

Vocātēs, -ium, *m.* (Dcd), the Vocates (vō-kā′tēz). III, **23.**

Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, Voccio (vŏk′shyō), *a king of Noricum.* I, **53.**

vocō, 1, *tr.* [**vōx,** voice], call, summon; invite. I, **19.**

Vocontiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Vocontii (vō-kŏn′shyī). I, **10.**

Volcācius, -cī, *m.*, Gaius Volcacius Tullus (gā′yŭs vŏl-kā′shyŭs tŭl′ŭs), *a young man in Caesar's army.*

Volcae, -ārum, *m.:* (1) **Volcae Arecomicī** (Eef), the Volcae Arecomici (vŏl′sē ăr′ē-kŏm′ĭ-sī); (2) **Volcae Tectosagēs** (Ede) (vŏl′sē tĕk-tŏs′ă-jēz).

volō, velle, voluī, —— (App. 82), *tr. and intr.*, wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; **quid sibi vellet,** what did he intend *or* mean? I, **7.**

voluntārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**voluntās,** will], willing; *m. pl. as noun,* volunteers.

voluntās, -tātis, *f.* [**volō,** wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. I, **7.**

voluptās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure, delight, enjoyment. I, **53.**

Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (gā′yŭs vŏl′ū-sē′nŭs kwă-drā′tŭs), *a tribune of Caesar's army, afterwards commander of cavalry.* III, **5.**

Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Vorenus (lū′-shyŭs vō-rē′nŭs), *a centurion in Caesar's army.*

vōs, *see* **tū.**

Vosegus, -ī, *m.* (BCg), the Vosegus (vŏs′ē-gŭs), *better,* the Vosges (vōzh) Mountains. IV, **10.**

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, *tr.*, vow.

vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language, *variously translated according to context, as* entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. I, **32;** II, **13.**

Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcanus (vŭl-kā′-nŭs), *better* Vulcan, *the god of fire.*

vulgō, *adv.* [**vulgus,** the crowd], commonly; everywhere. I, **39;** II, **1.**

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. I, **20.**

vulnerō, 1, *tr.* [**vulnus,** a wound], wound. I, **26.**

vulnus, -eris, *n.*, a wound. I, **25.**

vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, looks. I, **39.**

X.

X, *sign for* **decem,** ten.

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

This index includes only the Grammatical Appendix and such notes as either supplement the information given by the Appendix or call attention to the less usual forms and constructions. References to the Appendix are by sections. References to the notes are in the style elsewhere used for references to the text.

ABLATIVE:
absolute, 150; I, **3**, 21
of accompaniment, 140
of accordance, 142, *a*
of agent, 137
of attendant circumstance, 142, *b*
of cause, 138
of comparison, 139
of degree of difference, 148
with the deponent verbs **ūtor**, etc., 145
descriptive, 141
with **dignus** and **indignus**, 149, *a*
of duration of time, 152, *a*
of manner, 142
of material, 136
of means, 143
with **opus est** and **ūsus est**, 146
for partitive genitive, 101, *b*
of penalty, 108
of place from which, 134, *a*
of place in which, 151
with preposition, 153
of price, 147
of separation, 134
of source, 135
with special verbs and adjectives, 143, *a*
of specification, 149
of time, 152
of the way, 144
absum, conjugation of, 78
ACCENT, 10-12: in genitive of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, 16, *c*
Accomplishing, clauses with verbs of, 228, *a*; 229, *a*
ACCUSATIVE:
adverbial, 128, *b*
cognate, 128
of direct object, 124
of duration of time, 130
in exclamations, 129
of extent, 128, *b*; 130
inner, 125, *b*; 128, *a*, *b*
with passive verbs, 125, *c*; 127, *a*; II, **4**, 3
of place to which, 131
with prepositions, 155
with **propior**, etc., 122, *b*
as subject of infinitive, 123
two, with verbs of *asking*, etc., 125, *a*
ACCUSATIVE—*Continued:*
two, with compound verbs, 127; I, **12**, 5
two, with verbs of *making*, etc., 126
two, with **moneō, volō**, etc., 125, *b*; I, **34**, 6
Accusing, genitive with verbs of, 108
Acquitting, genitive with verbs of, 108
ac sī, with subjunctive, 261
ACTIVE VOICE, 181
ADJECTIVES:
for adverbs, 159
agreement of, 157
attributive, 156
comparison of, 39-45: occasional meaning of comparative and superlative, 161; I, **14**, 15
declensions of, 1st and 2d, 31: with genitive in **-īus**, 32: 3d, 33-38: numeral, 48; 49
governing the ablative, 134, *b*; 149, *a*: the accusative, 122, *b*: the dative, 122: the genitive, 106
as nouns, 158
with partitive meaning, 160
predicate, 156
as predicate accusative, 126
ADVERBS, formation and comparison of, 46
ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES, 239; 246; 247
AGENT, see Dative of and Ablative of
AGREEMENT, of adjectives, 157: of relatives, 173 and *b*: of substantives, 95: of verbs, 179; 180
according to sense, I, **14**, 4; **27**, 9
aliquis, declension of, 62: use of, 175
alterīus, for **alīus**, 32; I, **36**, 3
amplius, construction with, see **plūs**
an, 214; I, **47**, 18
And, use of in series, I, **1**, 3; **5**, 3
annōn, 214
ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS, 215
ANTECEDENT, in relative clause, I, **6**, 1; **12**, 16; II, **19**, 11
antequam, mood with, 236: as two words, 236, *c*
APPOSITIVES, 95, *b*
Asking, cases with verbs of, 125, *a*; I, **18**, 4
assuēfactus and **assuētus**, with ablative, 143, *a*
at, **ab** and **ex** translated by, I, **1**, 15

ATTRACTION, subjunctive by, 274; II, **27**, 2
audiēns sum, dative with, 115, *a*
Avoiding, clauses with verbs of, 228, *c*
BASE, of nouns, 14, *a*: of verbs, 63
bōs, declension of, 27
Buying, ablative with verbs of, 147
Calling, two accusatives with verbs of, 126
CARDINAL NUMERALS, 47-50
CASES, uses of, 92-94. And see Ablative, Accusative, Dative, Genitive, Locative, Nominative, Vocative
causā, with genitive, 99, *a*: with gerund or gerundive, to express purpose, 291: position of, 99, *a*
CAUSAL CLAUSES, 239; 243-245
cavē, in prohibitions, 219
cēlō, two objects with, 125, *a*
CHARACTERISTIC, clauses of, see Relative clauses
Choosing, two accusatives with verbs of, 126
CLAUSES, coördinate, 90; 222: subordinate or dependent, 91; 223. For subordinate, see Adversative, Causal, Comparison, Conditions, Indirect discourse, Indirect questions, Infinitive, Proviso, Purpose, Relative, Result, Substantive, Temporal
coepī, conjugation of, 86: passive with passive infinitives, 86, *a*
cognōvī, meaning of tenses of, 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*
COMMANDS, 216-220: in indirect discourse, 267; I, **35**, 9. For negative commands, see Prohibitions
COMPARATIVES, declension of, 34: occasional meaning of, 161: with ablative, 139; 148
COMPARISON, of adjectives, 39-45: of adverbs, 46
COMPARISON, clauses of, 261
COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE, 275
CONCESSIVE CLAUSES, see Adversative clauses
Condemning, genitive with verbs of, 108
CONDITIONAL RELATIVE CLAUSES, 250
CONDITIONS, 249-259:
  classes of: contrary to fact, 251, *b*; 252; 254; VII, **77**, 17: more vivid future, 251, *c*; 255; 256: less vivid future, 251, *d*; 255; 257: neutral, 251, *a*; 252; 253: mixed, 258
  connectives in, 250
  indicative in conclusion of contrary to fact conditions, 254, *a*
CONDITIONS—*Continued*
  in indirect discourse, 272; I, **31**, 7; **34**, 5; **44**, 25
  omitted or implied, 259
cōnfidō, with ablative, 143, *a*
CONJUGATIONS, how distinguished, 63. And see Verbs.
CONJUNCTIONS, coördinating, 90; 222: subordinating, 91; 223
CONSONANTS, sounds of, 6: division of, into syllables, 8
cōnsuēvī, meaning of tenses of, 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*
cōnsulō, cases with, 114, *b*
CONTRACTED VERB FORMS, 72
Convicting, genitive with verbs of, 108
COÖRDINATE, clauses, 90; 222: relative clauses, see Relative clauses
cum, as conjunction, 238-242:
  adversative (*although*), 239; 247
  causal (*since*), 239; 245
  temporal (*when*), easy rules for, 240: date clauses, 241, *a*: inverted clauses, 241, *c*: narrative clauses, 242, *a*: of repeated action, 241, *b*; 242, *b*; III, **14**, 15; **15**, 1: situation clauses, 242, *a*
cum, as preposition, enclitic, 153, *b*
cum prīmum, 237
cūrō, etc., with future passive participle, 285, *b*
DATE **cum** CLAUSES, 241, *a*
DATIVE:
  with adjectives, 106, *b*; 122
  of agent, 118
  with **audiēns sum** and **fidem habēre**, 115, *a*
  double, see purpose and predicative
  ethical, 121
  of indirect object, 113-116: with compound verbs, 116: with intransitive verbs, 115: with transitive verbs, 114
  of possession, 117
  predicative, 119, *a*
  of purpose, 119
  of reference, 120
  of separation, 116, I
DECLENSION, of adjectives, 31-38: of nouns, 14-30: of numerals, 48; 49: of pronouns, 51-62.
DEFECTIVE VERBS, 86
dēlectō, accusative with, 115, *c*
DELIBERATIVE QUESTIONS, 210
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, declension of, 54-58: uses of, 168-171
DEPENDENT CLAUSES, see Clauses
DEPONENT VERBS, 73: with ablative, 145
Depriving, verbs and adjectives of, with ablative, 134, *b*

DESIRE, SUBJUNCTIVE OF, see Subjunctive
Desiring, clauses with verbs implying, 228, *a*
DETERMINING CLAUSES, 231
deus, declension of, 16
diēs, gender of, 30, *a*
dignus, with ablative, 149, *a*
Diphthongs, sounds of, 5
DIRECT DISCOURSE, 265
DIRECT REFLEXIVE, 164
DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS, 47: used in multiplying, V, **13**, 18: with nouns used only in plural, V, **53**, 10
dō, conjugation of, 85
domus, gender of, 29, *a*: declension of, 29, *d*; used without prepositions, 131; 134, *a*; 151, *a*
dōnec, with indicative, 234, *b*; 235, *a*: with subjunctive, 235, *b*
dōnō, cases with, 114, *a*
Doubting, clauses with expressions of, 229, *d*
dubitō, constructions with, 229, *d*
dum, meaning *as long as*, 234, *b*; VII, **82**, 1: *if only*, 260: *until*, 235: *while*, 234, *a*
dummodo, with subjunctive, 260
duo, declension of, 49
ego, declension of, 51: use of, 162
EMOTION, verbs of, with genitive, 109
ENCLITICS, effect on accent, 12: **cum**, with some pronouns, 153, *b*: **-nam**, 61, *a*
eō, conjugation of, 84
eō . . . quō, 148, *a*
etsī, indicative with, 246
EXHORTATIONS, 217; VII, **77**, 19
FACT, SUBJUNCTIVE OF, see Subjunctive
FEARING, clauses with expressions of, 228, *b*
ferō, conjugation of, 81
fidem habēre, dative with, 115, *a*
fīdō, with ablative, 143, *a*
Filling, verbs and adjectives of, with ablative, 143, *a*
fīō, conjugation of, 83
fore (futūrum esse) ut, for future infinitive, 205, *b*; I, **20**, 11; **31**, 36
Forgetting, cases with verbs of, 107
Freeing, vérbs and adjectives of, with ablative, 134, *b*
frētus, with ablative, 143, *a*
fruor, with ablative, 145: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*
fungor, with ablative, 145: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*
FUTURE INDICATIVE, use of, 192; 199
FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE, use of, 195; 199: equivalent to future, 195, *a*
GENDER, general rules, 13: of 1st declension, 15 and *a*: of 2d declension, 16 and *a*: of 3d declension, 28: of 4th declension, 29 and *a*: of 5th declension, 30 and *a*
GENERALIZING RELATIVES, 60, *a*
GENITIVE:
with adjectives, 106
appositional, 97, *a*
with **causā** and **grātiā**, 99, *a*
descriptive, 100; 104
of material, 102
of measure, 100
with nouns, general rule for, 97
objective, 98; I, **30**, 3
partitive, 101; I, **11**, 12
possessive, 99; 103
subjective, 98; I, **30**, 3
of value, 105
with verbs: of emotion, 109: **interest** and **rēfert**, 110: of judicial action, 108: of *remembering* and *forgetting*, 107
of the whole, see Partitive
GERUND, 287; 289-294
GERUNDIVE, 288-294; I, **3**, 6
and gerund, choice between, 289
and gerund, use of cases, 290-294
of **ūtor**, etc. 289, I, *a*; III, **6**, 4
grātiā, with genitive, 99, *a*
habeō, with perfect participle, 286, *b*
Happening, etc., clauses with verbs of, 229, *b*
hic, declension of, 54: use of, 168
Hindering, clauses with verbs of, 228, *c*
HISTORICAL INFINITIVE, 281; I, **16**, 2
HISTORICAL PRESENT, 190, *a*; I, **3**, 7
HISTORICAL TENSES, 203
Hoping, future infinitive with verbs of, 280, *c*
i, as consonant, 5, *a*; 7
iaciō, in compounds, 7
iam diū, etc., with present, 190, *b*: with imperfect, 191, *b*
īdem, declension of, 58
ille, declension of, 56: use of, 170
IMPERATIVE, use of, 185; 218: in indirect discourse, 267; I, **7**, 19
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, uses of, 191: descriptive, 197; II, **24**, 4; III, **1**, 5: with **iam diū**, etc., 191, *b*; I, **31**, 10: in narration, 197; 198; III, **1**, 1, 3, 5, 7; **6**, 1: of repeated action, 191, *a*; I, **26**, 8; III, **3**, 10
imperō, with accusative (rare), 115, *b*: with dative, 115: with passive infinitive (rare), V, **1**, 11: with subjunctive, 228, *a*
IMPERSONAL USE of passive intransitive verbs, 115, *d*; 285, *a*; 289, I; I, **22**, 8; **33**, 18

IMPERSONAL VERBS, 87: with genitive, 109: with infinitive, 278: with substantive clauses of result, 229, *b*
IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 273; I, **16**, 1; I, **30**, 15
in, cases governed by, 154
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, declension of, 62: uses of, 174-178
INDICATIVE MOOD, uses of, 183: in questions, 209: in statements, 206: and see Adversative clauses, Causal clauses, Conditions, Relative clauses, Substantive **quod** clauses, **antequam** and **priusquam, cum, dum, postquam**
indignus, with ablative, 149
INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 265-272
commands and prohibitions in, 267; I, **7**, 19
conditions in, 272; I, **31**, 7; **34**, 5; **44**, 25
coördinate relative clauses in, 269, *a*; II, **17**, 11
declarative sentences in, 266; I, **2**, 5
general explanation of, 265; I, **13**, 7
imperative in, see Commands in
indicative for explanations inserted by the writer, II, **4**, 28; **9**, 10; III, **2**, 3
principal clauses in, 265; 266-268
pronouns in, 271; I, **30**, 3
questions in, 268; I, **40**, 6
subordinate clauses in, 269; I, **3**, 17
tenses of infinitive in, 266, *a*; 272, II; I, **31**, 11
tenses of subjunctive in, 270
INDIRECT QUESTIONS, 262-264
INFINITIVE, uses of, 186; 275-281:
clauses, 277-280
complementary, 275
historical, 281
in indirect discourse, 266; 268, II; 269, *a*
as object, 279; 280
subject of, 123; 276; 278; 281
as subject, 276; 278
INTENSIVE PRONOUN, see **ipse**
interest, cases with, 110
INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES, see Questions
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, declension of, 61: uses, see Questions, direct and indirect
INTRANSITIVE VERBS, in passive, see Impersonal use
INVERTED **cum** CLAUSES, 241, *c*
ipse, declension of, 59: use of, 163; 172
Irregular verbs, conjugation of, 66; 77-85
is, declension of, 57: use of, 171
iste, declension of, 55: use of, 169
iubeō, with accusative, 115, *c*: with infinitive, 228, *a*; II, **28**, 11
Iuppiter, declension of, 27
iuvō, with accusative, 115, *c*
JUDICIAL ACTION, genitive with verbs of, 108
lacessō, with ablative, 143, *a*
LOCATIVE, forms of, 15, *b*; 16, *b*; 29, *d*: use of, 151, *a*
locō, locīs, without preposition, 151, *b*
longius, construction with, see **plūs**
magis, comparison with, 45
Making, two accusatives with verbs of, 126
mālō, conjugation of, 82
maximē, comparison with, 45
meminī, conjugation of, 86: cases with, 107
minus, construction with, see **plūs**
misereor and **miseret,** cases with, 109
modo, with subjunctive, 260
moneō, two objects with, 125, *b*
MOODS, uses of, 182-185. And see Imperative, Indicative, Subjunctive
-nam, 61, *a*
NARRATIVE **cum** CLAUSES, 242, *a*
nātus, with ablative, 135
-ne, in direct questions, 213, *a*; 214: in indirect questions, 264, *b*
nē, 188, *b*
in indirect discourse, 267; I, **35**, 7
in prohibitions, 216; 217; 219; 220
in clauses of proviso, 260
in purpose clauses, 225, *b*
in substantive clauses of desire, 228
with verbs of *fearing,* 228, *b*
with verbs of *hindering,* 228, *c*
nē . . . quidem, 188, *b*
necne, 264, *c*
NEGATIVES, 188
neque, 188, *a*
nesciō quis, 178
nēve, neu, 188, *b*; VI, **20**, 4
nisi, 250
nītor, with ablative, 143, *a*
noceō, with dative, 115
nōlī, in prohibitions, 219
nōlō, conjugation of, 82
NOMINATIVE, in predicate, 95, *a*: as subject, 96: as subject of historical infinitive, 281
nōn, 188, *a*
nōn modo (nōn), III, **4**, 10
nōnne, 213, *b*
NOUNS, 1st declension, 15: 2d declension, 16: 3d declension, 17-28: 4th declension, 29: 5th declension, 30: appositive, 95, *b*: predicate, 95, *a*. And see Gender

nōvī, meaning of tenses of, 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*
num, 213, *c*: in indirect questions, 264, *b*
NUMERALS, 47-50: combinations of, 50: declension of, 48; 49: forms of, 47
OBJECT, direct, see Accusative: indirect, see Dative
oblīviscor, cases with, 107
ōdī, conjugation of, 86
OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, 184, *a*; 221; 228
opus est, constructions with, 146
ORDINAL NUMERALS, 47
ortus, with ablative, 135
os, declension of, 27
paenitet, cases with, 109
PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES, 232
parte, partibus, without preposition, 151, *b*
PARTICIPLES, uses of, 282-286:
agreement of, 157
instead of clauses, 283
as nouns, 158; 146, *b*
tenses of, 205
future active, 285, I
future passive, in passive periphrastic conjugation, 285, II, *a*: with **cūrō, dō, suscipiō**, etc., 285, II, *b*: and see Gerundive
perfect, 286: of deponent verbs, usually with active meaning, 286, *a*; II, **7**, 6: sometimes with passive meaning, I, **11**, 9; II, **19**, 13: with **habeō**, 286, *b*
present, 284: substitutes for, 284, *a*; II, **29**, 15
PASSIVE VOICE, 181: dative retained with, 114, *c*; 115, *d*; 116, *c*: intransitive verbs in, 115, *d*; 285, *a*; 289, I; I, **22**, 8; **33**, 18: construction with passive verbs of *saying*, 279, *a*
PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE, 194: equivalent to imperfect, 194, *a*: in narration, 197-198: with **ubi** (rare), IV, **26**, 5
PERFECT INDICATIVE, 193: equivalent to present, 193, I, *a*: in narration, 197; 198; III, **1**, 1, 3, 5, 7; **6**, 1: with **dum**, 235, *a*: with **postquam**, etc., 237: with **priusquam**, etc., 236, *a*
PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION:
active, 75; 285, I: tenses of, 196; 201, *b*
passive, 76; 285, II, *a*: with ablative of agent, 118, *a*: with dative of agent, 118
PERSONAL PRONOUNS, declension of, 51: use of, 162: with gerund or gerundive, 291, *a*
persuādeō, dative with, 115
piget, cases with, 109
PLACE, from which, 134, *a*: in which, 151: to which, 131
plēnus, with genitive, 106, *a*
PLUPERFECT, see Past perfect
plūs, declension of, 34, *a*
plūs, minus, amplius, longius, construction with, 139, *b*; I, **38**, 10; **41**, 11; II, **7**, 10
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, 53: with **causā** and **grātiā**, 99, *a*: instead of genitive of possession, 99: with **interest**, 110: omission of, 167
possum, conjugation of, 80
postquam, etc., indicative with, 237: as two words, IV, **28**, 1
POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE, see Subjunctive
potior, with ablative, 145: with genitive, 111: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*
praesertim, in causal clauses, 245
PREDICATE, 88: accusative, 126: adjective, 156; 157, *a*, 2; 275, *a*; 276, *a*: noun, 95, *a*; 275, *a*; 276, *a*
PREDICATIVE DATIVE, 119, *a*
PREPOSITIONS, cases governed by, 153: verbs compounded with, 116, I; 124, *c*; 127
PRESENT INDICATIVE, 190: with **dum**, 234, *a*: with **iam diū**, etc., 190, *b*: historical, 190, *a*; III, **5**, 8
Preventing, clauses with verbs of, 228, *c*
PRINCIPAL PARTS, 65
PRINCIPAL TENSES, 203
priusquam, mood with, 236: as two words, 236, *c*
prohibeō, with infinitive, 228, *c*; II, **4**, 6
PROHIBITIONS, 216-220: in indirect discourse, 267; I, **35**, 7: negative in, 216: with **nōlī**, 219; VII, **77**, 23
Promising, future infinitive with verbs of, 280, *c*: present infinitive (rare), IV, **21**, 10
PRONOUNS, declension of, 51-62: uses of, 162-178. And see Demonstrative, Generalizing relative, Indefinite, Intensive, Interrogative, Personal, Possessive, Reflexive, Relative
PRONUNCIATION, 1-12: of proper names, p. 68, 3
propior, propius, cases with, 122 and *b*
prōsum, conjugation of, 79
PROVISO, clauses of, 260
proximus, proximē, cases with, 122 and *b*
pudet, cases with, 109

PURPOSE, expressed by:
future passive participle with **cūrō**, etc., 285, *b*
gerund and gerundive, 291; 293
purpose clauses, 224; 225
supine, 295
quam, with comparatives, 139, *a*: omitted with **plūs**, etc., see **plūs**: with superlatives, 161, *a*
quam diū, with indicative, 234, *b*
quamquam, with indicative, 246
quamvīs, with subjunctive, 247
quandō, in causal clauses, 244
QUANTITY, of syllables, 9: of vowels, 1-3
quasi, **quam sī**, with subjunctive, 261
QUESTIONS, 209-214:
deliberative, 210
double, 214: indirect, 264, *c*
indirect, 262-264
in indirect discourse, 268; I, **40**, 6
introductory words, 212; 213
real and rhetorical, 211
quī, declension of, 60; 62, *a*: for **quis**, I, **48**, 15: for uses, see Indefinite, Interrogative, Relative pronouns
quia, in causal clauses, 244
quīcumque, 60, *a*
quīdam, 62, *b*
quīlibet and **quīvīs**, 62
quīn, with expressions of *doubting*, 229, *d*: with verbs of *hindering*, 228, *c*
quis, indefinite, declension of, 61: use of, 174
interrogative, declension of, 61: use of, see Questions
quispiam, 62: use of, 176
quisquam, 62: use of, 177
quisque, 62: with superlatives, I, **31**, 42
quisquis, 60, *a*
quō, in purpose clauses, 225, *a*, 2
quod, in causal clauses, 244: in substantive clauses, 248
quod sī, I, **20**, 9
quōminus, with verbs of *hindering*, etc., 228, *c*
quoniam, in causal clauses, 244
RECIPROCAL EXPRESSION, 166
recordor, case with, 107
rēfert, case with, 110
REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS, 52: uses of, 163-166: direct, 164: indirect, 165: substitutes for indirect, I, **37**, 4; **40**, 11: in indirect discourse, 271: in reciprocal expressions, 166
Regarding, two acc. with verbs of, 126
RELATIVE CLAUSES:
adversative, 247; V, **4**, 13
causal, 245; V, **47**, 11
of characteristic, 230; I, **6**, 1; **6**, 4; **28**, 7; IV, **34**, 9: with indicative, IV, **10**, 10; VI, **27**, 1
RELATIVE CLAUSES—*Continued*
conditional, 250; 253; 256; 257
coördinate, 173, *a*; I, **1**, 11: in indirect discourse, 269, *a*; II, **17**, 11
determining, 231
parenthetical, 232
of purpose, 225, *a*
of result, 230, *a*
RELATIVE PRONOUN, 60: agreement of, 173: agrees with predicate noun, 173, *b*; I, **38**, 3; II, **1**, 3. And see Relative clauses
Remembering, cases with verbs of, 107
reminiscor, cases with, 107
REPEATED ACTION, see **cum**, and Imperfect indicative
Repraesentātiō, 270, *a*; I, **14**, 14; **31**, 26
resistō, dative with, 115
RESULT CLAUSES, 224; 226: sequence of tenses in, 204, *a*; II, **21**, 12; V, **15**, 3: substantive, 227; 229
RHETORICAL QUESTIONS, 211
rūs, without preposition, 131; 134, *a*; 151, *a*
Selling, ablative with verbs of, 147
SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS, 74
senex, declension of, 27
SENTENCES, defined, 88: complex, 91: compound, 90: simple, 89
SEPARATION, see Ablative and Dative
SEQUENCE OF TENSES, 202-204:
exceptions to, 204; 272, I; I, **26**, 4; II, **21**, 12; V, **15**, 3
depending on historical present, 204, *b*; III, **5**, 8; **11**, 2
depending on perfect infinitive, 270, *b*
rule of, 202; I, **12**, 2
sī, in conditions, 250; and see Conditions: in indirect questions, 264, *b*
similis, cases with, 106, *b*; 122
simul ac, with indicative, 237
sīn, 250
SITUATION **cum** CLAUSES, 242, *a*
STATEMENTS, 206-208
studeō, dative with, 115
sub, cases governed by, 154
SUBJECT, defined, 88: of finite verb, 96: of infinitive, 123: of historical infinitive, 281
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD:
of desire, 184, *a*: in commands and prohibitions, 216; 217; 219; 220: in clauses of proviso, 260: in purpose clauses, 224; 225: in substantive clauses of desire, 227; 228: in wishes, 221
of fact, 184, *c*: in clauses of characteristic, 230: in result clauses, 224; 226: in substantive clauses of result, 227; 229

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*Continued*
potential, 184, *b*: in conclusions of conditional sentences, 207; 254; 257: in questions, 209: in statements, 207; 208.
and see Adversative clauses, Attraction, Causal clauses, Comparison, clauses of, Conditions, Implied indirect discourse, Indirect discourse, Indirect questions, Proviso clauses, **antequam** and **priusquam, cum, dum** meaning *until*
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES, see Clauses
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES:
of desire (also called optative, volitive, purpose), with **ut, nē, quīn, quōminus,** 227; 228
with **quod,** 248
of result or fact, with **ut, ut nōn, quīn,** 227; 229
SUBSTANTIVES, agreement of, 95
sum, conjugation of, 66: compounds of, 77-80
SUPERLATIVES, occasional meaning of, 161
SUPINE, ablative of, 296: accusative of, 295
suus, 53: uses of, 167, *a*
SYLLABLES, division of, 8: quantity of, 9
taedet, cases with, 109
tametsī, indicative with, 246
tamquam, subjunctive with, 261
Teaching, two objects with verbs of, 125, *a*
TEMPORAL CLAUSES, 233-242. See **cum, dum, postquam, priusquam**
TENSES:
of indicative, 190-199: in narration, 197, 198: and see Present, Imperfect, etc.
of infinitive, 205: in indirect discourse, 266, *a*; 272, II; I, **31**, 11: future passive (rare), V, **36**, 6: substitutes for future, 205, *b*; I, **20**, 11; **31**, 36; IV, **6**, 6: in **-ūrus fuisse,** 272, II
of participles, 205
periphrastic, 196; 201, *b*
of subjunctive, 200-204: in indirect discourse, 270: sequence of tenses, 202-204. For details, see Sequence of tenses
Than, expressed by ablative or **quam,** 139
TIME, at which, 152: duration of, 130; 152, *a*. And see Temporal clauses
tōtus, ablative modified by, without preposition, 151, *b*
TOWNS, names of, without prepositions, 131; 134, *a*; 151, *a*
trēs, declension of, 49
tū, declension of, 51: use of, 162
ubi, with indicative, 237
ūllus, declension of, 32: use of, 177
ūnus, declension of, 32; 49
-ūrus fuisse, 272, II; I, **34**, 5
ūsus est, constructions with, 146
ut:
in adversative clauses (*although*), 247
with verbs of *fearing* (*that not*), 228, *b*
in indirect questions (*how*), I, **46**, 11
in purpose clauses (*in order that*), 225, *a*, 3
in result clauses (*so that*), 226
in substantive clauses of desire (*to*), 228, *a*, *b*: sometimes omitted, 228, *a*
in substantive clauses of result (*that*), 229, *a*, *b*, *c*
in temporal clauses (*when*), 237
utinam, in wishes, 221
ūtor, with ablative, 145: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*
utrum, in double questions, 214
Valuing, genitive with verbs of, 105
VERBS, inflection of: conjugations, regular: 1st, 67; 2d, 68; 3d, 69; 3d in **-iō,** 71; 4th, 70
contracted forms of, 72
defective, 86
deponent, 73
impersonal, 87
irregular, 66; 77-85
periphrastic, 75; 76
principal parts of, 65
semi-deponent, 74
three stems (bases) of, 64
VERBS, uses of:
agreement of, 179; 180
moods, 182-185
tenses, 189-205
voices, 181
and see Gerund, Gerundive, Indicative, Infinitive, Participles, Subjunctive, Supine
VERBAL ADJECTIVES, 187
VERBAL NOUNS, 187
vēscor, with ablative, 145: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*
vetō, accusative with, 115, *c*
vīs, declension of, 27
VOCATIVE, form of, 16; 132: use of, 132
VOICES, 181
VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, 184, *a*; 228
volō, conjugation of, 82
VOWELS, quantity of, 1-3: sounds of, 4
WISHES, 221

INDEX OF PERSONS, PLACES, AND THINGS

This index includes the Introduction, text, notes, and illustrations. Numbers without prefix refer to sections of the Introduction. Such references as I, **2**, 4 refer to passages in the text. Other references are clearly indicated by "Fig." for illustrations, "note on" for notes, "p." for page.

The purpose of this index is to group the information contained in the Introduction, text, notes, and illustrations; and particularly to present summaries of the activities of persons, tribes, legions, etc.

The index is not exhaustive. (1) Except for special reasons, persons, etc., mentioned only once are not included. If they are mentioned in Books I-IV, they may be located by the Vocabulary. (2) In general, persons, etc. who are mentioned only in the unannotated portions of the text are not included. (3) The index is not a complete list of the occurrences of words in the text. But it is hoped that the summary of activities given under each name is complete for the entire seven books; and references are given for each statement. Therefore, in comparing the activities of the several legions or legates, it is to be understood that the differences are not due to any incompleteness of this index.

Acco, leader of revolt among the Senones, VI, **4**, 1: executed by Caesar, VI, **44**, 4: his death alarms other Gallic chiefs and leads to general revolt, VII, **1**, 10-13

aciēs triplex, 56; Fig. 32

Agger, 61; note on VII, **27**, 8; Figs. 34, 35, 120, 189: inflammable, VII, **22**, 10; **24**, 8-19: passages in, note on VII, **22**, 13: undermined, III, **21**, 9; VII, **22**, 5

Agriculture, German, IV, **1**, 9; VI, **22**

Alesia, description of, VII, **69**, 1-9; p. 466, introductory note; plan, p. 467; Figs. 193, 196: Caesar's fortifications at, VII, **69**, **72-74**; plan, p. 467; Fig. 194: siege of, VII, **68-89**

Allobroges, conquered in 121 B.C. and made part of Province, notes on I, **28**, 13; **45**, 5: revolt and subdued, note on I, **6**, 7: damaged by Helvetii, I, **11**, 10: ordered to supply food to Helvetii, I, **28**, 7: defend themselves against threatened attack, VII, **64**, 12; **65**, 6

Alps, Caesar fights his way across, I, **10**, 10-15: Galba's operations in, III, **1-6**; map, p. 261; Fig. 124

Ambiani, II, **4**, 24: submit to Caesar, II, **15**, 6: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 12: coin of, Fig. 109: and see Samarobriva, their capital

Ambiorix, benefited by Caesar, V, **27**, 3-9: leads revolt and destroys a legion and a half, V, **26-37**: instigates attack on Cicero, V, **38**: is hunted persistently, but escapes, VI, **29-35**, **43**

amīcus, as title, notes on I, **3**, 11; **33**, 3

ammentum, Fig. 176

Andes, winter quarters among, II, **35**, 6; III, **7**, 7: joined Vercingetorix quickly, VII, **4**, 16: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 12

Animals, in Hercynian Forest, VI, **26-28**

Antonius, Marcus (Mark Antony), at Alesia, VII, **81**, 14: coins of, Figs. 42, 199, 200

aquila, standard of the legion, 43; Figs. 23, 154, 172

aquilifer, 43; IV, **25**, 10; V, **37**, 11; Fig. 172

Aquitania, 28; I, **1**, 20-23: subjugation of, III, **20-27**

Archers, used by Caesar, II, **7**, 2; **10**, 2; **19**, 8; IV, **25**, 4

Arduenna (silva), V, **3**, 10-12; VI, **29**, 13-15: Caesar searched for Ambiorix in, VI, **33**, 6

Aremorican states, note on III, **7**, 9: V, **53**, 21

Ariovistus, pp. 143, 144; I, **30-54**; Plate facing p. 175
before Caesar entered Gaul—invited by Arverni and Sequani, I, **31**, 10; VI, **12**, 2: defeated Haedui, I, **31**, 16-19; VI, **12**, 6: defeated combined Gallic forces, I, **31**, 40; **40**, 23-28; **44**, 8-10: asked for and

ARIOVISTUS—*Continued*
received recognition by Rome, I, **35**, 4; **40**, 5; **43**, 8-10; **44**, 13-15
negotiations with Caesar—refuses to come for conference, I, **34**: exchanges communications with Caesar, I, **35, 36**: holds a conference with Caesar, I, **42-46**: asks for second conference, I, **47**
movements before battle—falsely reported marching on Vesontio, I, **38**, 1: probably marches north, note on I, **37**, 7: marches toward Caesar, I, **48**, 1: then past him, I, **48**, 2
battle with Caesar, I, **51-53**: location of, p. 145: plan of, p. 187; Figs. 96, 97
escapes from battle, I, **53**, 5: but dies soon after, V, **29**, 9; note on I, **53**, 5
ARMOR, Roman, 35; Fig. 20; Plate facing p. 111
ARTILLERY, 63: and see **ballista**, Catapult, **onager, scorpiō**
ARVERNI, conquered in 121 B.C. but set free, I, **45**, 5: head of confederation of states, I, **31**, 10; note on VI, **12**, 2: make Vercingetorix king, and thus head revolt, VII, **4**: raided by Caesar, VII, **8-9**, 6: invaded unsuccessfully by Caesar, VII, **34-53**: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 8: get back captives taken by Caesar, VII, **90**, 4
coin of, Fig. 79
ASSAULT ON TOWNS, 60
ATREBATES, II, **4**, 24: defeated by Caesar, II, **16-23**: Commius appointed king over, IV, **21**, 13: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 14: coin of, Fig. 114
ATUATUCI, II, **4**, 26: expected by Nervii, II, **16**, 6: take refuge in a town, II, **29**, 4: submit to Caesar, II, **29-32**: their treachery, II, **33**, 1-16: sold into slavery, II, **33**, 16-20: revolt, V, **38**, 2-4; **56**, 3; VI, **2**, 8
their town, description of, II, **29**, 5-8: location of, p. 197; note on II, **29**, 4; plan, p. 247
coin of, Fig. 121
AUGUSTUS, see Octavianus
AULERCI EBUROVICES, revolt and are defeated, III, **17-19**: winter quarters established among them, III, **29**, 11: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 15: coin of, Fig. 61
AUXILIARY TROOPS, 47; Figs. 27, 28: use in battle, I, **24**, 4-8; **51**, 2-5; III, **24**, 2, and note; **25**, 2-5
AVARICUM, approached by Caesar, VII, **13**, 8-12: Gauls decide to defend, VII, **15**: taken and sacked, VII, **17, 21-28**: plan of, p. 436
AXONA, camp on, II, **8**, 5-14: location of, p. 197; note on II, **5**, 14; plan, p. 214; Fig. 31
BACULUS, the centurion, II, **25**, 7; III, **5**, 5: saves Cicero's camp, VI, **38**
BAGGAGE, individual, 37; Figs. 20, 57: of the legion, 46
ballista, 63, *a*; Fig. 40; Plate facing p. 47
balteus, 36, *b*; note on V, **44**, 16; Fig. 17
BASILUS, L. MINUCIUS, tries to catch Ambiorix, VI, **29**,16-**30**: quartered among Remi, VII, **90**, 7
BATTERING-RAM, 62, *c*; note on II, **32**, 3; Fig. 38; Plate facing p. 47
BATTLE, general description of, 55: line of, 56; Fig. 32: hand-to-hand, Fig. 118
for the chief battles of Books I-IV, see Aquitani, Ariovistus, Helvetii, Nervii, Northwestern states, Tigurini, Usipetes and Tencteri, Veneti
BELGAE, I, **1**, 5-10: conquest of, II, **1-33**: confederated army marches on Caesar, II, **4-10**: but disperses, II, **10, 11**: for details of the conquest, and for their later activities, see the individual tribes
BELGIUM, 28
BELLOVACI, II, **4**, 13: their land menaced by Diviciacus, II, **10**, 17: submit to Caesar, II, **13-15**: revolt, VII, **59**, 5: but refuse to obey orders of Gallic council, saying they will fight when they like, VII, **75**, 19-22
coin of, Fig. 58
BIBRACTE, location of, note on I, **23**, 2: Caesar starts for, I, **23**, 5: council of Gauls held in, VII, **63**, 8: Caesar's winter quarters, VII, **90**, 14
BIBRAX, relief of, II, **6, 7**
BITS, Gallic, Figs. 63, 92
BITURIGES, join Vercingetorix, VII, **5**: Caesar takes Noviodunum, a town of, VII, **12, 13**: and their chief town (see Avaricum): in rebel army, VII, **75**, 10: coin of, Fig. 65
BLOCKADE OF TOWNS, 59: best account of, VII, **68-89**

Boi, join the Helvetii, I, **5**, 11: attack the Romans, I, **25**, 13: are given land by the Haedui, I, **28**, 13; VII, **9**, 16: furnish supplies to Caesar, VII, **17**, 4-8: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 16
Boulogne, p. 301; note on IV, **21**, 6; Figs. 151, 158
Bracelets, Gallic, Fig. 182; Plate facing p. 479
Bridge, building of, Fig. 102: pontoon, notes on I, **8**, 11; **13**, 2; Fig. 57
across the Rhine (first), IV, **17**; **19**, 16: Fig. 147: location of, p. 301; note on IV, **17**, 5; Fig. 150
across the Rhine (second), VI, **9**, 4-9; **29**, 4-11
Britain, Caesar's description of, V, **12-14**; map on p. 61: Gallic knowledge of, IV, **20**, 8-15, and note on 8: helps Gaul against Caesar, IV, **20**, 4 and note: not held by Rome, note on V, **22**, 14: origin of inhabitants, notes on V, **12**, 1, 2
Caesar's first invasion of, IV, **20-36**: date of arrival, note on IV, **28**, 1: date of leaving, note on IV, **36**, 4: sailing point for, p. 301; note on IV, **21**, 6; Fig. 151, 158: landing, IV, **23-26**; p. 301; notes on IV, **23**, 5, 18; Figs. 152, 153; Plate facing p. 334: wrecking of ships, IV, **29**
Caesar's second invasion, V, **1-23**: date of arrival, note on V, **8**, 6: date of leaving, note on V, **23**, 12: sailing point for, p. 347; note on V, **2**, 8: landing, p. 347; V, **8**, 14-20; note on V, **9**, 5: wrecking of ships, V, **10**: and see Cassivellaunus
Brooches, Gallic, Fig. 186
Brutus, Decimus, commands fleet, III, **11**, 10: defeats Venetan fleet, III, **14**, **15**: commands troops, VII, **9**, 3: at Alesia, VII, **87**, 1: coin of, Fig. 129
Burial, Gallic methods of, VI, **19**, 12; Fig. 184
Caesar, Gaius Julius
characteristics of—as author, 22-24: as general, 19-21: as statesman, 16: humane or cruel? notes on I, **28**, 3; II, **33**, 2, 18; III, **16**, 10; IV, **13**, 17; **15**, 12; VII, **78**, 6-10; Fig. 8; (cf. cruelty of Gallic leader, VII, **4**, 21-26; **78**, 6-10): portraits of, Frontispiece, Figs. 2, 10, 11, 12, 123
Caesar, Gaius Julius—*Continued*
events in his life—chronological table, 18: early life, 5: marries Cornelia, 5: first military experience, 9: offices held, 9-11: governor in Spain, 10: forms First Triumvirate, 11: his consulship, 11: marries Calpurnia, note on I, **12**, 19: proconsul in Gaul, 11, 12: meets Pompey in Civil War, 13-15: victor at Pharsalus, Thapsus, Munda, 15: dictator four times, Fig. 9: assassinated, 17: avenged and deified by Octavianus, Fig. 10
for his actions in Gaul, see stories prefixed to each book
Caesar, L., guards the Province, VII, **65**, 2
Calendar, Roman, App. 297-300: years designated by consuls, note on I, **2**, 2
Camp, Roman, 49-52: form and plan of, 50; Figs. 29, 31; Plate facing p. 287: fortifications of, 51; Fig. 30: gates of, 52; Fig. 145: gates blocked in emergency, V, **50**, 10; VII, **41**, 11; note on V, **51**, 8
Carnutes, legions quartered among, II, **35**, 6: murder their king, V, **25**: apologize to Caesar, VI, **4**, 9-11: investigated by Caesar, VI, **44**, 3: massacre Roman citizens at Cenabum, VII, **2**, **3**: Cenabum is sacked by Caesar, VII, **11**, 6-23: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 10
coin of, Fig. 168
Cart, ancient, Fig. 77
cassis, Fig. 146
Cassivellaunus, commander in chief of Britons, V, **11**, 15: defeated near Canterbury, V, **15**, **17**: defeated at the Thames, V, **18**: harasses Caesar's marches, V, **19**: his town taken, V, **21**: instigates attack on Caesar's camp, V, **22**, 1-8: submits to Caesar, V, **22**, 8-17
Catapult, 63, *b*; Fig. 41
Cavalry
Gallic, Fig. 116
German, I, **48**, 10-19; IV, **2**, 3-12; **12**: employed by Caesar, VII, **13**, 2, 3; **65**, 8-16; **67**, 10-13; **70**; **80**, 17
Roman (really either Gallic or German), 48; note on I, **24**, 2; Figs. 28, 60, 116
Celtic Gaul, 28
Cenabum, see Carnutes

Centurion, 42; Figs. 21, 117
Century, 33
Chariots, British, Figs. 157, 197: use in battle, IV, **33**; V, **16**, 7
Chief of engineers, 40
Cicero, Quintus Tullius, in command of camp, V, **24**, 6: location of camp, note on V, **39**, 4: attacked by Gauls, V, **38-45**: rescued by Caesar, V, **46-52**: complimented by Caesar, V, **52**, 3-10: in command of camp, VI, **32**, 16: surprised by German attack, suffers loss, VI, **35-41**: stationed among Haedui, VII, **90**, 11
Cimbri and Teutoni, 5, 27; I, **33**, 16; **40**, 13; II, **4**, 6; **29**, 10; VII, **77**, 34, 40
Cingetorix, rival of Indutiomarus, favored by Caesar and loyal to him, V, **3**, **4**; **56**, 8-11; **57**, 4; VI, **8**, 25
cippī, VII, **73**, 7-13; Fig. 194
Cisalpine Gaul, 26, 28
Civic crown, 9; Figs. 4, 21
Civil War, between Caesar and Pompey, 13-15
Clocks, Roman, note on V, **13**, 12
Clothing of soldier, 34; Fig. 20
Cohort, 33
Coins, crudeness of some Gallic, p. 8
Comb, Gallic, Fig. 183
Commentaries, Caesar's purpose in writing, 23
Commius, made king of Atrebates, IV, **21**, 13: sent to Britain, IV, **21**, 13-18: arrested, but returned to Caesar, IV, **27**, 3-10: left to guard Menapii, VI, **6**, 7: made king of Morini, VII, **76**, 4: a chief general in the great rebellion, VII, **76**, 1-12; **79**, 1: is believed to have taken refuge in Britain, Figs. 114, 142
Communication, method of, among Gauls, V, **53**, 1-6; VII, **3**, 6-12
Confederation of Gallic states, 29, 30: headed by Arverni, I, **31**, 10; note on VI, **12**, 2: headed by Haedui, I, **31**, 10; VI, **12**: headed by Remi, VI, **12**, 20: headed by Sequani, VI, **12**; note on VI, **12**, 2
Coriosolites, submit to Crassus, II, **34**: arrest Roman envoys, III, **7**, 11; **8**, 11: Sabinus sent against them, III, **11**, 9: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 18: coin of, Fig. 81
cornū, Figs. 26, 165
Cotta, L. Aurunculeius, pursues the Belgae, II, **11**, 10: sent against the Menapii, IV, **22**, 18; **38**, 6: with Sabinus, commands camp among the Eburones, V, **24**, 14: location of camp, note on V, **26**, 1: camp attacked, V, **26**: advises against abandoning camp, but yields, V, **28**, **30**, **31**: wounded and killed, V, **35**, 16; **37**, 8
Council, armed, of the Gauls, V, **56**, 5-8: of the Gauls, called by Caesar, note on V, **2**, 13
Council of war, 42; note on I, **40**, 1: for instance, see V, **28**, 6-**31**, 7
Crassus, Marcus Licinius, the father, 11, 13; I, **21**, 11; IV, **1**, 2
Crassus, Marcus Licinius, the son, commands a winter camp, V, **24**, 9: left in command at Samarobriva, V, **46**, 2; **47**, 3: leads a division against the Menapii, VI, **6**, 1
Crassus, Publius Licinius, sends third line into battle, I, **52**, 13: sent against northwestern states, II, **34**: reports revolt to Caesar, III, **9**, 1: is sent against Aquitania, III, **11**, 5: subdues Aquitania, III, **20-27**: coin of, Fig. 136
Crucible, Gallic, Fig. 185, *b*
Dates, method of expressing day of month, App. 298-300: year, note on I, **2**, 2
Deal, pp. 301, 347; note on IV, **23**, 18; Fig. 153
Decorations, of cohorts, 44; Fig. 24: of individuals, Figs. 21, 22: of helmets, note on II, **21**, 10
Diviciacus, a Druid, notes on VI, **13**, 7; **14**, 1: most influential of Haedui, I, **18**, 20; **20**, 4: visited Rome, I, **31**, 25-30: VI, **12**, 12: pleads for Dumnorix, I, **20**: is spokesman for Gallic delegation, I, **31**, 8: advises Caesar as to route, I, **41**, 10: in command of Haeduan auxiliaries, II, **5**, 4; **10**, 17: pleads for the Bellovaci, II, **14**: nothing further said about him
Dover, note on IV, **23**, 5; Figs. 152, 155
Druids, VI, **13**, **14**; note on VI, **13**, 7
Dumnorix, conspires with Orgetorix, I, **3**, 13: negotiates for Helvetii, I, **9**: is treacherous to Caesar, I, **18**, 24: pardoned by Caesar, I, **20**: death, V, **6**, **7**: Fig. 64
Eagle, see **aquila**

EBURONES, promise troops against Caesar, II, **4**, 26: evidently submit in that year, V, **27**, 2-9: treacherously destroy a legion and a half, V, **26-37**: join in attack on Cicero, V, **39**, 8: are completely ravaged, VI, **31**, **33-35**, **43**: coin of, Fig. 170
ESUVII, submit to Crassus, II, **34**: arrest Roman envoys, III, **7**, 10; **8**, 11: legion quartered among them, V, **24**, 6: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 15
ēvocātus, notes on III, **20**, 8; V, **35**, 13

FABIUS, GAIUS, in command of camp, V, **24**, 5: joins Caesar against Nervii, V, **46**, 5; **47**, 6: returns to winter quarters, V, **53**, 9: commands division against Menapii, VI, **6**, 1: left in charge of camp, VII, **40**, 5; **41**, 4-13: at Alesia, VII, **87**, 2; **90**, 7
FACTIONS IN GAUL, 29, 30; VI, **11**, **12**: and see Confederations
falx, III, **14**, 14; VII, **22**, 4; Fig. 131
fibulae, brooches, Fig. 186: in bridge building, note on IV, **17**, 17
FLEET, 64: and see Ships
FOOD SUPPLY, notes on I, **39**, 1; II, **10**, 10: VII, **17**, 8-23
FORAGING, Fig. 165
FORTIFICATIONS OF CAMP, 51; Fig. 30: and see Alesia
fossa, 51; Fig. 30
FUNERAL CUSTOMS, of Gauls, VI, **19**, 11-15; Fig. 184

GALBA, SERVIUS, defeats three Alpine tribes, III, **1-6**; map, p. 261; Fig. 124
galea, 35, *a*; Fig. 16
GAUL, benefited by Caesar's conquest, 3: conquest of, important to Caesar, 4: to Rome, 2; map, p. 19
  geographical divisions of; I. **1**
GAULS, 25-31; Fig. 13; Plate facing p. 479
  arms of, Fig. 13; Plate facing p. 479: and see Helmets, Swords, etc.
  customs and civilization of, 31; VI, **11-20**
  origin of, 25; notes on VI, **18**, 1; **24**, 3
  quick to act on rumor, IV, **5**; VI, **20**
GEOGRAPHICAL MISTAKES OF CAESAR, 74-76; notes on I, **1**, 17; III, **9**, 27; V, **13**, 5
GERGOVIA, attacked unsuccessfully by Caesar, VII, **36-53**
GERMANS
  arms and dress, Plates facing pp. 175, 415: and see Swords, etc.
  battle formation of, note on I, **51**, 7: and see Phalanx
  customs of, IV, **1-3**; VI, **21-25**
  danger from, 3; I, **28**, 9-13; **33**, 11; IV, **3**, 1-4; VI, **23**, 1-5; **24**, 9-14; notes on I, **2**, 8; **33**, 18
  destroyed by Caesar, see Ariovistus, Usipetes
  invaded by Caesar, IV, **16-19**; VI, **9**, **10**, **29**
  refuse to enter Gaul again, V, **55**, 1-8
GODS, Gallic, VI, **17**: German, VI, **21**, 3-5
GRAVE OF GALLIC CHIEF, Fig. 184
GREAVES, Fig. 117
GREEK LETTERS, used by Helvetii, I, **29**, 1: and by Druids, VI, **14**, 7: apparently not understood by Belgae, V, **48**, 7
gubernātor, 64; note on III, **9**, 4

HAEDUI, "friends and brothers" of the Roman people, I, **33**, 7; **35**, 17; **36**, 13: head of confederation of states, I, **31**, 10; VI, **12**, 1: defeated by Ariovistus, I, **31**, 16, 40: appealed to Rome for help, I, **31**, 27; VI, **12**, 12: governor instructed to defend them, I, **35**, 15: but did nothing, I, **44**, 29; VI, **12**, 14: complain of damage by Helvetii, I, **11**, 3: fail to send supplies to Caesar, I, **16**, 1-9: send supplies to Caesar, I, **48**, 5: send troops to aid Caesar, II, **5**, 4-9; **10**, 17: are made the leading state of Gaul, VI, **12**, 25: show increasing disaffection, VII, **5**, 13-16; **9**, 11; **17**, 4-10; **32**, 6-**34**, 6; **37-40**, **42**, **43**: revolt, **54**, **55**: ask general command of war, but are refused, VII, **63**: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 6: submit to Caesar and pardoned, VII, **90**, 1-5
  coins of, Figs. 46, 59, 64
HEDGES, Belgian, II, **17**, 16-20
HELMETS:
  British, Fig. 159
  Gallic, Figs. 13, 14, 62; Plate facing p. 479
  Roman, 35, *a*; Figs. 16, 146
HELVETII, defeated Roman army in 107, I, **7**, 12: coin of, Fig. 45
  prepare to leave Switzerland for a new home, I, **2-9**: reasons for leaving, I, **2**; **31**, 46-50: length of baggage train, note on I, **5**, 7:

HELVETII—*Continued*
fail to cross Rhone, I, **8**; map, p. 87; Figs. 48, 51, 54: get right of way through Pas de l'Écluse, I, **9**; Fig. 50
march to neighborhood of Bibracte, I, **11-22**; notes on **11**, 2; **15**, 1: damage Allobroges, Ambarri, Haedui, I, **11**: one-fourth destroyed at the Arar, I, **12**: location, note on I, **12**, 4; Fig. 56: turn from the Arar, I, **16**, 7
defeated by Caesar, I, **23-26**: location of field, p. 67; notes on I, **23**, 5; **24**, 8, 10; plans, pp. 131, 135; Figs. 70, 71
flee, submit, and return to Switzerland, I, **26**, 12-**28**; note on I, **26**, 13: 6000 try to escape, I, **27**, 7-**28**, 3: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 12
number of, I, **29**; notes on I, **2**, 15; **26**, 12
HERCYNIAN FOREST, VI, **25**
HORSESHOE, Gallic, Fig. 190
hospitium, note on I, **47**, 15
HOSTAGES, note on I, **9**, 10
HUMAN SACRIFICES, in Gaul, VI, **16**; note on V, **56**, 8
ILLYRICUM, visited by Caesar, III, **7**, 3; V, **1**, 13
impedimenta, 46
INDUTIOMARUS, stirs up revolt among Treveri, but submits to Caesar, V, **3**, **4**: stirs up revolt among Eburones, V, **26**, 5: plans to attack Labienus, V, **53**, 7: tries to head a general revolt, V, **55**, **56**: attacks Labienus and is killed, V, **57**, **58**
Itius, see Wissant
JANUS, the god, Fig. 90
JAVELIN, see **pīlum**
KINGS, in Gaul, 29
KNIFE, Gallic, Fig. 187
KNIGHTS, Gallic, VI, **15**
LABIENUS, T., rank of, note on I, **21**, 5: left in command of Rhone fortifications, I, **10**, 7: sent to occupy hill above Helvetii, I, **21**, 5: in command of winter quarters, I, **54**, 6: pursues Belgae, II, **11**, 10: sent to Treveri, III, **11**, 1: sent against Morini, IV, **38**, 1-5: left on continent during second invasion of Britain, V, **8**, 1: commands camp near Treveri, V, **24**, 7: threatened by Treveri, V, **47**, 8, 14; **53**, 6: defeats Treveri, V, **57**, **58**: again, VI, **7**, **8**: commands division against
LABIENUS—*Continued*
Eburones, VI, **33**, 1: successfully invades the Parisii and rejoins Caesar, VII, **57-62**: sent to command the critical point at Alesia, VII, **86**, 1. With this record, the only higher officer who deserted Caesar in the Civil War
LATOBRIGI, in Helvetii, I, **5**, 9: return home, I, **28**, 5
lēgātī, 38; note on I, **10**, 7: those mentioned by Caesar are:
certain—(in I-IV) Cotta, Galba, Labienus, Pedius, Rufus, Sabinus: (only in V-VII) Antonius, L. Caesar, Cicero, Plancus, Rebilus, Reginus, Sextius, Silanus, Trebonius
too young, but treated as—(in I-IV) Brutus, P. Crassus
possible—(only in V-VII) Basilus, Rutilus, Tullus
LEGIONARY SOLDIER, equipment of, 34-37; Fig. 20; Plate facing p. 111
LEGIONS, size and organization of, 32, 33; note on V, **49**, 16
number of, under Caesar's command—four originally, I, **7**, 5; **10**, 9: two new ones, I, **10**, 8: two more, II, **2**, 1: one and a half lost, V, **26-37**: two more levied and one borrowed, VI, **1**: had ten in VI, **44**; VII, **34**, 7, 8; one-half legion not accounted for
LEGIONS, mentioned individually:
seventh, suffers in battle with the Nervii, II, **23**, 13; **26**, 1: sent against the northwestern states, II, **34**: surprised while foraging, IV, **32**: storms a British stronghold, V, **9**, 15: routs the Parisii, VII, **62**, 6, 12-15
eighth, in battle with Nervii, II, **23**, 9: a centurion mentioned at Gergovia, VII, **47**, 18
ninth, in battle with Nervii, II, **23**, 1
tenth, on the Rhone, note on I, **7**, 6: complimented by Caesar, I, **40**, 44-48: thanks Caesar, I, **41**, 3: used as mounted bodyguard, I, **42**, 13-23: in battle with Nervii, II, **21**, 2; **23**, 1; **26**, 11: its standard bearer first to land in Britain, IV, **25**, 8-14: checks the victorious Gauls at Gergovia, VII, **51**, 2
eleventh, in battle with Nervii, II, **23**, 9

LEGIONS—*Continued*
twelfth, suffers in battle with Nervii, II, **23**, 12; **25**: fights in Alps, III, **1-6**: fights against Parisii, VII, **62**, 8
thirteenth (it and the fourteenth were behind the baggage on the Sabis, II, **26**, 6-9), winters among the Esuvii, V, **53**, 20: supports the tenth at Gergovia, VII, **51**, 4
fourteenth, apparently the one destroyed by Eburones: newly levied, VI, **32**, 15
LEUCI, send supplies to Caesar, I, **40**, 34: coin of, Fig. 88
LEXOVII, revolt and are defeated, III, **17-19**: winter quarters established among, III, **29**, 11: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 19: coin of, Fig. 135
LICTORS, Plate facing p. 111
LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER, 47; Fig. 27
lilium, VII, **73**, 13-22; Fig. 194
LINGONES, Helvetii flee to, I, **26**, 14: supply grain to Caesar, I, **40**, 34: take no part in great rebellion, VII, **63**, 11: coin of, Fig. 75
lōrica, *cuirass*, 35, *b*; Figs. 17, 98: *breastworks*, V, **40**, 13; note on VII, **72**, 13
LOSSES IN BATTLE, chief, of the Romans:
legion and a half among Eburones, V, **26-37**: effect on Caesar, note on V, **37**, 14: replaced by three legions, VI, **1**
two cohorts under Cicero's command, VI, **39, 40, 44**, 1
46 centurions and 700 soldiers at Gergovia, VII, **51**, 1, 9
LOTS, German use of, note on I, **50**, 11
MAGETOBRIGA, battle of, I, **31**, 41; notes on I, **40**, 23; **44**, 8-10
MANIPLE, 33
MARCH, order of, 53: length of, 54; note on II, **12**, 3: longest, VII, **39**, 9; **40**, 1-4, 8-10; **41**, 3, 14
MARIUS, 5, 27
MENAPII, II, **4**, 25: send aid to Veneti, III, **9**, 26: invaded by Suebi, IV, **4**, 4-20: invaded by Sabinus and Cotta, IV, **22**, 18; **38**, 5-9: subdued by Caesar, VI, **5, 6**
MILL, Gallic, Fig. 49
MOLDS, Gallic, Figs. 73, 94, 185, *c*
MONEY, iron bars used as, V, **12**, 8; Fig. 163: coins, p. 8
MONTHS, names of, App. 297: number of days in, App. 297
MORINI, II, **4**, 25: send aid to Veneti, III, **9**, 26: Caesar invades them unsuccessfully, III, **28, 29**: submit to Caesar, IV, **22**, 2: revolt, IV, **37**: subdued, IV, **38**, 1-5: given Commius as king, VII, **76**, 4: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 13: coin of, Fig. 139
MOSA, description of, IV, **10**, 1-4
MUNDA, battle of, 15
musculus, 62, *b*; Fig. 37
MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS, 45; Figs. 25, 26, 165; Plate facing p. 111
MUTINY, note on I, **40**, 3
NAMNETES, join Veneti, III, **9**, 25: coin of, Fig. 128
nāvis longa, 64: and see Ships
NERVII, II, **4**, 23: description of, II, **15**, 8-15: fight desperately with Caesar, II, **15-28**: description of battlefield, II, **18**: plan of battle, p. 231: attack Cicero's camp, V, **38-45**: defeated by Caesar, V, **46-52**: ravaged by Caesar, VI, **3**, 1-6: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 13
coin of, Fig. 110
NOBLES, Gallic, 29; notes on I, **18**, 6; VI, **12**, 7: dissatisfaction with Caesar's rule, notes on V, **7**, 20; VII, **1**, 10-13
NORTHWESTERN STATES, submit to Crassus, II, **34**: arrest Roman envoys, III, **8**: defeated in naval battle, see Veneti: in land battle, III, **17-19**: threaten Roscius, V, **53**, 19
NOVIODUNUM, of the Suessiones, site of, note on II, **12**, 4
OCTAVIANUS (later, Augustus), 17; Fig. 10
OFFICERS, Roman, 38-42; Plate facing p. 111
onager, 63, *d*; Plate facing p. 47
oppugnātiō, 61; Plate facing p. 47: best account of, VII, **15-28**
orbis, 57; note on IV, **37**, 5: V, **33**, 12-16
ORGETORIX, conspiracy and death of, I, **2-5**: Fig. 46
OSISMI, submit to Crassus, II, **34**: join the Veneti, III, **9**, 25: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 18
PARIS (**Lutecia Parīsiōrum**), council held in, VI, **3**, 10: captured by Labienus, VII, **57-62**: Parisii in rebel army, VII, **75**, 12
PARTIES, POLITICAL, in Gaul, see Confederation, Factions: in Rome, 5
PARTY STRIFE, in Rome, 5-8, 13, 14

PEDIUS, Q., takes legions to Gaul, II, **2**, 3: pursues the Belgae, II, **11**, 9
PHALANX, note on I, **24**, 11: methods of breaking, I, **25**, 4-10; **52**, 9
PHARSALUS, battle of, 15
PICTONES, furnish ships, III, **11**, 11: join Vercingetorix quickly, VII, **4**, 15: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 11: coin of, Fig. 127
PILE DRIVER, Fig. 148
pīlum, 36, *a*; I, **25**, 5-10; note on I, **52**, 7; Fig. 18
pinnae, V, **40**, 13; note on VII, **72**, 13
PLANCUS, L. MUNATIUS, commands a winter camp, V, **24**, 9: sent against Carnutes, V, **25**, 8
pluteus, 62, *a*; Fig. 36; notes on VII, **25**, 3; **72**, 14
POMPEIUS, CN. (Pompey), 8, 10, 11, 13-15; Fig. 7: consul, IV, **1**, 1: lends Caesar a legion, VI, **1**, 3: quells disorder in Italy, VII, **6**, 2
praefectus fabrum, 40
PREFECT, 47, 48
prīmipīlus, 42; note on II, **25**, 7
PROCILLUS, C. VALERIUS, arrested by Ariovistus, I, **47**, 9-19: recovered by Caesar, I, **53**, 11-21
PROVINCE, the, 26, 28
QUAESTOR, 39
RAURACI, join Helvetii, I, **5**, 9: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 15
REBILUS, C. CANINIUS, at Alesia, VII, **83**, 6: quartered among Ruteni, VII, **90**, 10
REDONES, submit to Crassus, II, **34**: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 18: coin of, Fig. 91
REGINUS, C. ANTISTIUS, levies troops, VI, **1**, 2: at Alesia, VII, **83**, 6: quartered among Ambivareti, VII, **90**, 9
REMI, welcome Caesar, II, **3**; note on II, **3**, 2: defended by Caesar, II, **6**, **7**: plead for Suessiones, II, **12**, 13: made head of confederation, in place of Sequani, VI, **12**, 20-26: Labienus sent to them, III, **11**, 2, and note: Labienus stationed among them, V, **24**, 7: one of two states not suspected by Caesar, V, **54**, 14; note on V, **54**, 16: Indutiomarus plans to ravage, V, **56**, 14: plead for Carnutes, VI, **4**, 10: Caesar holds council at their capital, VI, **44**, 2: loyal in great rebellion, VII, **63**, 11
coin of, Fig. 100
RHEIMS (**Durocortorum Rēmōrum**), note on II, **2**, 10: council held in, VI, **44**, 2
RHINE, description of, IV, **10**: crossed by Caesar, IV, **16-19**; VI, **9**, **10**, **29**
RHONE, fortifications on, I, **8**, 1-5; note on I, **8**, 4; map, p. 87; Fig. 53
ROSCIUS, LUCIUS, V, **24**, 7: threatened with attack, V, **53**, 19
rōstrum, 64; Figs. 42, 132, 133
RUFUS, P. SULPICIUS, commands harbor, IV, **22**, 20: quartered among Haedui, VII, **90**, 12
RUTENI, defeated by Romans in 121 B.C., I, **45**, 5: join Vercingetorix, VII, **7**, 1: ordered to invade the Province, VII, **64**, 14: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 10
RUTILUS, M. SEMPRONIUS, quartered among Sequani, VII, **90**, 6
SABINUS, Q. TITURIUS, commands guard at Axona River, II, **5**, 18; **10**, 1: is sent against three northwestern states, III, **11**, 8: defeats them, III, **17-19**: sent against Menapii, IV, **22**, 18; **38**, 5: with Cotta, commands camp among Eburones, V, **24**, 13: location of camp, note on V, **26**, 1: camp attacked, V, **26**: insists on abandoning camp, V, **29**, **30**: killed in conference with enemy, V, **36**, **37**
SADDLES, note on IV, **2**, 10
SAMAROBRIVA (Amiens), council held in, V, **24**, 1: Crassus left in command of, V, **47**, 3: Caesar's winter quarters, V, **53**, 9-12
SANTONI, their land desired by Helvetii, I, **10**, 2; **11**, 14: furnish ships, III, **11**, 12: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 10
sarcina, 37; Figs. 20, 57
SCABBARDS, see Swords
scorpiō, 63, *c*; VII, **25**, 10; Fig. 192
SEGUSIAVI, I, **10**, 17: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 6: coin of, Fig. 55
SENONES, instructed to report on Belgae, II, **2**, 5: attempt to kill their king, V, **54**, 4-11: Caesar marches on them, VI, **3**, 14: they apologize, VI, **4**, 1-8: investigated, leader of plot executed, VI, **44**, 3-6: join Vercingetorix early, VII, **4**, 15: Caesar takes a town of, VII, **11**, 1-5: Labienus takes another, VII, **58**, 4-9: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 10
coin of, Fig. 178
SEQUANI:
before Caesar entered Gaul—employed Ariovistus, I, **31**, 12: who settled in their country, I, **31**, 32: by his help they became leaders

SEQUANI—*Continued*
of a confederation, note on VI, **12**, 2: and nominally masters of all Gaul, VI, **12**, 12: but cruelly ruled by Ariovistus, I, **32**, 8-15
after Caesar entered Gaul—permit passage of Helvetii, I, **9**: sanction appeal to Caesar, I, **32**: send supplies to Caesar, I, **40**, 34; **48**, 5: lose to the Remi the leadership of the confederation, VI, **12**, 19, 20: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 9
coin of, Fig. 82
SERTORIUS, note on III, **23**, 10
SEXTIUS, T., levies troops, VI, **1**, 2: at Gergovia, VII, **49**, 2; **51**, 5
SHEARS, Gallic, Fig. 188
SHIELDS, British, Figs. 164, 169, 174, 175: Gallic, Figs. 13, 14, 74; Plate facing p. 479: Roman, 35, *c*; Fig. 99
SHIPS, Roman, 64; Figs. 132, 133, 161: beaching of, notes on V, **1**, 5; **11**, 5, 7; **24**, 1: of Veneti, III, **13**
SHOE, of Roman soldier, 34, *c*; Fig. 15
SIEGE OF TOWNS, see Blockade of towns, **oppugnātiō**
signifer, 44; Fig. 24
signum, 44; note on II, **25**, 2; Figs. 24, 57; Plate facing p. 111
SLING, Fig. 104: red-hot clay balls thrown by, note on V, **43**, 1: slug thrown by, Fig. 105
SLINGERS, 47; Fig. 103: used by Caesar, II, **7**, 2; **10**, 2; **19**, 7; IV, **25**, 4; VII, **81**, 11
SOTIATES, subdued by Crassus, III, **20**,10-**21**: coin of, Fig. 137
SPARTACUS, note on I, **40**, 15
SPEARS, Gallic, Figs. 13, 14, 44, 66, 72
SPUR, Gallic, Fig. 198
STANDARD BEARER, of cavalry, Fig. 28: Gallic, Fig. 13; Plate facing p. 479: and see **aquilifer, signifer**
STANDARDS:
of auxiliaries, see **vexillum**
of cavalry, see **vexillum**
of the cohort, see **signum**
of the legion, see **aquila**
Gallic, Figs. 13, 14; Plate facing p. 479
German, Plate facing p. 111
stimulus, VII, **73**, 22-25; Fig. 195
SUEBI, description of, IV, **1-3**: try to cross Rhine, I, **37**, 5; **54**: some with Ariovistus, I, **51**, 9: drive Usipetes and Tencteri from homes, IV, **4**, 1-3: harass Ubii, IV, **3**, 5-13; **8**, 7: prepare to meet Caesar, IV, **19**, 4-11: send aid to Treveri, VI, **9**, 2, 15: prepare to meet Caesar, VI, **10**
SUESSIONES, II, **3**, 10-14; **4**, 16: submit to Caesar, II, **12-13**, 3: coin of, Fig. 108
SUGAMBRI, refuse to surrender Usipetes and Tencteri, IV, **16**, 6-15: raided by Caesar, IV, **18-19**, 2: their cavalry attack Cicero, VI, **35**, 8-**41**, 3
SUICIDE, note on V, **37**, 14
SULLA, 6, 8
supplicātiō, II, **35**, 10; IV, **38**, 12: VII, **90**, 15
SWORD BELT, 36, *b*; Fig. 17
SWORDS, Gallic, Figs. 67, 68, 122, 141: German, Fig. 84: Roman, 36, *b*; Fig. 19

TASGETIUS, murder of, V, **25**; Fig. 168
TENCTERI, see Usipetes
testūdō, a shed, 62, *c*; note on V, **42**, 10; Plate facing p. 47: of shields, 60; Plate facing p. 47
THAMES, location of ford in, note on V, **18**, 2
THAPSUS, battle of, 15
TIDE, at Deal, note on IV, **29**, 2
TIGURINI, destruction of, I, **12**
TITURIUS, see Sabinus
TIN, in Britain, note on V, **12**, 9
TONGS, Gallic, Fig. 185, *a*
TORQUES, Gallic, Fig. 181; Plate facing p. 479
TOWERS:
on camp walls, 51; V, **40**, 4; VII, **72**, 15
movable, 61; note on VII, **22**, 12; Plate facing p. 47; Figs. 119, 189
on ships, III, **14**, 10; Figs. 132, 133
TOWNS, capture of, 58-63: and see Blockade of towns, **oppugnātiō**
trāgula, Fig. 176
TRAJAN, p. 8
TRAJAN'S COLUMN, p. 8; Fig. 1
TREBONIUS, C., sent to forage, V, **17**, 5: commands winter camp, V, **24**, 9: commands division against Eburones, VI, **33**, 3: in charge of captured city, VII, **11**, 6: at Alesia, VII, **81**, 14
TREVERI, ask help against the Suebi, I, **37**, 5: their cavalry flee, II, **24**, 10-18: fail to obey Caesar, V, **2**, 14: are visited by Caesar, V, **2**, 12-**4**: threaten Labienus, V, **47**, 8, 14; **53**, 6: fail to get German aid, V, **55**, 1-8: defeated by Labienus, V, **57**, **58**: attack Labienus and are defeated, VI, **7**, **8**: take no part in great rebellion, VII, **63**, 12-15
coin of, Fig. 85
tribūnal, Fig. 78

TRIBUNE, military, 41; note on IV, **21**, 2
TRIBUTE, paid by Gallic states, note on VII, **76**, 3
TRIUMVIRATE, formed by Caesar, 11: renewed, provinces secured by members, note on IV, **1**, 1: broken, 13
TROPHY OF ARMS, Figs. 6, 14
TRUMPETS, British, Fig. 167: Gallic, Figs. 14, 129: Roman, see **tuba**
tuba, 45; Fig. 25
TULINGI, join Helvetii, I, **5**, 9: attack the Romans, I, **25**, 13: return home, I, **28**, 5
TULLUS, C. VOLCACIUS, commands guard at bridge, VI, **29**, 11
TURONI, winter quarters among, II, **35**, 7: join Vercingetorix quickly, VII, **4**, 15: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 12

UBII, description of, IV, **3**, 5-10: pursue Suebi, I, **54**, 1-4: send hostages to Caesar, IV, **16**, 15; note on II, **35**, 5: harassed by Suebi, IV, **3**, 10-13: ask help from Caesar, IV, **8**, 6; **16**, 15-26: Caesar helps, IV, **19**: prove they have not sent help to Gauls, VI, **9**, 9-17
USIPETES AND TENCTERI, driven from home by Suebi, invade Menapii, IV, **4**: exchange communications with Caesar, IV, **7-9**, **11**: their cavalry attack Caesar's during a truce, IV, **11**,14 - **12**: slaughtered by Caesar, IV, **14**, **15**: location of battle, p. 301: their cavalry received by Sugambri, IV, **16**, 6

vāllum, 51; Fig. 30
VENELLI, submit to Crassus, II, **34**: Sabinus sent against, III, **11**, 9: and defeats them, III, **17-19**: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 19: coin of, Fig. 134
VENETI, submit to Crassus, II, **34**: arrest Roman envoys, III, **8**, 7: collect fleet from many states, III, **9**, 22-27: escape Caesar by sailing from town to town, III, **12**: defeated in naval battle, III, **14**, **15**: sold into slavery, III, **15**: in rebel army, VII, **75**, 19
  country of, III, **9**, 13-21; map, p. 272; Fig. 126
  ships of, III, **13**
  towns of, III, **12**, 1; plan, p. 276; Fig. 130: Caesar's method of taking, note on III, **12**, 7
VENUS, reputed ancestor of Caesar, 5; Fig. 3
VERCINGETORIX, pp. 425-428: makes himself king of the Arverni, VII, **4**, 1-13: becomes leader of several western states, VII, **4**, 13-26; **5**: severity of his punishments, VII, **4**, 22-26: attacks town of Boi, VII, **9**, 15-18: persuades Gauls to burn their own towns, VII, **14**: reluctantly makes exception of Avaricum, VII, **15**, 5-14: accused of treason, defends himself successfully, VII, **20**, **21**: authority not lessened by fall of Avaricum, VII, **30**, **31**: successfully defends Gergovia, VII, **36**, **41**, **43-53**: is elected commander in chief by a council of all Gallic states but three, VII, **63**: defeated in cavalry battle, retreats to Alesia, VII, **66-68**: sends out cavalry in appeal for help, VII, **71**, 1-12: a huge army responds, VII, **75**, **76**, **79**: but fails, VII, **80-88**: surrenders, VII, **89**: coin of, Fig. 79: portraits of, Figs. 197, 201, 202: ideal representations of, Plate facing p. 479; Fig. 203
VESONTIO, description of, I, **38**, 8-14; plan, p. 163; Figs. 86, 87: false report that Ariovistus was marching on, I, **38**, 1: used as winter quarters, note on I, **54**, 6
vexillum, 47, 48; note on II, **20**, 1; Figs. 28, 112
vīnea, 62, *d*; Figs. 39, 189
VIROMANDUI, II, **4**, 26: defeated by Caesar, II, **16-23**: coin of, Fig. 115
VOLUSENUS, C., advises sortie, III, **5**, 7: sent to report on British coast, IV, **21**, 2, 19; **23**, 12: in command of cavalry, VI, **41**, 5

WAGON, ancient, Fig. 77
WALL:
  of camp, 51; Plate facing p. 287; Fig. 30
  of Gallic towns, 58; VII, **23**; Figs. 33, 107, 191
WISSANT, p. 347; note on V, **2**, 8
WORLD WAR, compared with Caesar's, 65-73

YOKE, Gallic, Fig. 76: British, Fig. 157: as symbol of submission, note on I, **7**, 14

DATE DUE

SEP 14 1999			
NOV 27 1999			
SEP 21 2000			
Taylor III			

#47-0108 Peel Off Pressure Sensitive

A0000302731

3 5134 00158101 2

PA 6236 .W3 1926
Caesar, Julius.
Caesar's Gallic war, books I
-IV

[redacted]

[redacted] STATE LIBRARY
Salem
RULES FOR BORROWERS

BOOKS LENT through local public libraries or traveling libraries are subject to the rules governing those libraries.

TRANSPORTATION CHARGES on books returned to the State Library must be paid by patron, if local library does not pay it; but, use of books is FREE to all citizens of Oregon. Use return label to secure book rate.

BORROWERS.—Adults become registered borrowers upon application for service. Minors should give signature of parent or teacher with first request. Give rural route or necessary information if package is to be delivered to country address. PRINT NAME or write plainly. Individuals having access to a free city or county library must borrow through them. Loans for school use should be requested or authorized by principal or school librarian.

TIME KEPT.—Date upon which books will be due in library is stamped on the date slip and given on notice of shipment. They may be renewed for the same period, upon request, unless reserved for other borrowers. Some books will be issued for shorter periods and may not be renewed.

LOST AND INJURED BOOKS MUST BE PAID FOR.—The number of pieces lent is given on notification postal and borrowers are held responsible for this number unless notice of shortage or error is sent immediately upon receipt of package.

BOOKS MUST NOT BE MARKED, MUST BE KEPT CLEAN, AND CORNERS OF LEAVES MUST NOT BE TURNED DOWN.

S0-EKA-559